



学生实用

高中英语语法

WITH EXERCISES FOR SENIOR
MIDDLE SCHOOL STUDENTS

全解与训练

主编 刘锐诚



人民教育出版社

● 世界各国最新国旗 ●



亚洲
ASIA



中华人民共和国
People's Republic
of China



阿富汗
Afghanistan



阿拉伯联合酋长国
United Arab Emirates



阿塞拜疆
Azerbaijan



巴基斯坦
Pakistan



巴勒斯坦
Palestine



巴 林
Bahrain



不 丹
Bhutan



朝 鲜
D.P.R. Korea



韩 国
R.O. Korea



菲 律 宾
Philippines



格 鲁 吉 亚
Georgia



哈 萨 克 斯 坦
Kazakhstan



柬 埔 泰
Cambodia



吉 尔 吉 斯 坦
Kirghizstan



卡 塔 尔
Qatar



科 威 特
Kuwait



老 挝
Laos



黎 巴 嫩
Lebanon



马 尔 代 夫
Maldives



马 来 西 亚
Malaysia



蒙 古
Mongolia



孟 加 拉 国
Bangladesh



緬 甸
Myanmar



尼 泊 尔
Nepal



日 本
Japan



塞 浦 路 斯
Cyprus



沙 特 阿 拉 伯
Saudi Arabia



斯 里 兰 卡
Sri Lanka



泰 国
Thailand



塔 吉 克 斯 坦
Tadjikistan



土 耳 其
Turkey



土 库 曼 斯 坦
Turkmenistan



文 莱
Brunei



乌 兹 别 克 斯 坦
Uzbekistan



越 南
Viet Nam



新 加 坡
Singapore



叙 利 亚
Syria



亚 美 尼 亚
Armenia



也 门
Yemen



伊 拉 克
Iraq



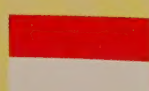
伊 朗
Iran



以 色 列
Israel



印 度
India



印 度 尼 西 亚
Indonesia



阿 曼
Oman



约旦
Jordan



欧洲
EUROPE



阿尔巴尼亚
Albania



爱尔兰
Ireland



比利时
Belgium



爱沙尼亚
Estonia



安道尔
Andorra



奥地利
Austria



白俄罗斯
Belarus



保加利亚
Bulgaria



冰岛
Iceland



波兰
Poland



丹麦
Denmark



德国
Germany



俄罗斯
Russia



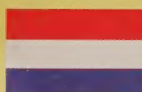
梵蒂冈
Vatican



法国
France



芬兰
Finland



荷兰
Netherlands



捷克
Czech



克罗地亚
Croatia



拉脱维亚
Latvia



列支敦士登
Liechtenstein



立陶宛
Lithuania



卢森堡
Luxembourg



马耳他
Malta



马其顿
Macedonia



摩尔多瓦
Moldova



摩纳哥
Monaco



挪威
Norway



葡萄牙
Portugal



罗马尼亚
Romania



瑞典
Sweden



瑞士
Switzerland



圣马力诺
San Marino



斯洛伐克
Slovakia



斯洛文尼亚
Slovenia



乌克兰
Ukraine



西班牙
Spain



希腊
Greece



匈牙利
Hungary



意大利
Italy



英国
United Kingdom



非洲
AFRICA



阿尔及利亚
Algeria



埃及
Egypt



埃塞俄比亚
Ethiopia



安哥拉
Angola



贝宁
Benin



Perhaps valuing time may not make you a genius, but at least it can narrow the gap between you and genius.

珍惜时间或许不能把你塑造成天才,但至少它可以缩短你和天才之间的距离。



Mastering English is equal to getting a passport of touring round the world.

学好英语就等于拿到了环游世界的通行证。



Those who dare not face failure will never meet with success forever.

不敢面对失败的人永远尝不到成功的滋味。



The three principles for pursuing studies: Being wellinformed, Reading as much as possible and Practising constantly.

治学三大原则: 广见闻、多阅读、勤实践。

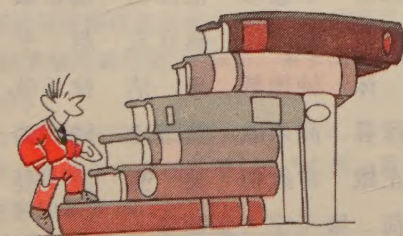
学生实用

高中英语语法

STUDENTS' PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR

全解与训练

主 编:刘锐诚



人民日报出版社

《学生实用高中英语语法全解与训练》

编委会

总策划 张正武

主 编 刘锐诚

副主编 陈光明

常务编委 陈光明 陈应年 李雪峰 张传柱 黄正敏

胡 沐 刘锐诚

编写委员 王 源 付红燕 龙利民 刘景川 刘锐诚

刘颖秀 何 京 张传柱 张亦平 张祖梅

陈光明 陈应年 李雪峰 李怀翔 李治平

李保丽 李慧珍 范江明 杨希敏 郑彩丽

武颖东 赵天印 赵立宏 赵 平 贺宝凤

胡 沐 钟德辉 栗 洁 徐 泳 郭 静

高彦春 高硕欣 贾继忠 顾猗猗 梁用明

黄正敏 常红梅 葛 亮 薛 晏 戴建东

插 图 孙玉荷 康飞宇 张颖绮

审 订 杨希敏

审 校 陈长元 侯明慧

前言

这本语法是专为高中生编写的。在本次精心修订过程中,我们编入了最新的高考试题和语法分析,完善了诸多内容,力图紧跟形势,精益求精,让读者获得更新、更丰富的英语知识。

本书的特点是:

课程标准为准 近年高考为纲

本书围绕《高中英语课程标准》中所规定的“语法项目表”进行系统讲解,使同学们对高中阶段应掌握的语法项目有个全面的认识,以避免在日常学习中遗漏要点或走偏方向。

本书的绝大部分例句都摘自近年高考原题(其后注明出处),这就使得同学们在学好语法知识的同时,也能熟悉高考的命题,摸清高考的“深浅”,消除恐“高”症,增强自信心,在高考中顺利地发挥出自己的水平。

因此,本书既可用作高三年级系统复习语法的教材,又可作为高一、高二年级学生学、查阅语法的工具书。

深入浅出精讲 内容精练丰富

本书使用浅显易懂的语言精辟地分析了英语语法的要点,使纷繁的知识条理化、系统化,使基础较差的同学也能看得懂、学得会。本书侧重讲解“三点”:知识的重点、考试的热点、学生的弱点。

本书中的讲解后面都紧跟例句,所有例句都带译文,便于同学们理解领会。

一般语法书的标题只能给出内容的范围(如:“主谓一致的原则”),而本书各条的标题都给出了本条内容的概要,如:

1-2 主谓一致遵循三条原则:意义一致、形式一致和临近一致。

读了小标题就能了解本条语法内容的关键。同学们在平时轻松的翻阅查找中,会反复地看到这些标题,无形中就强化了对语法要点的记忆,在无意识中轻松地记住英语语法的精要,这样学好英语语法也就水到渠成了。

在内容编排上,每一条讲解集中解决一个问题,使同学们在短短的几分钟(甚至是在课间的两三分钟)里就可读完一小部分相对完整的内容,解决一个问题。这种方法可将语法难点“化整为零”,同学们充分利用平时的零碎时间,经过日积月累地分散学习,最终完成纷繁的语法内容的系统学习。

训练紧跟讲解 演练分层推进

每章后边的“即学即用”栏目是围绕本章内容而设置的专项训练,目的是促进对本章知识的融会贯通,使语言知识转化为语言能力。

训练题都从客观题“单项选择”入手,逐步过渡到主观题“改错”、“书面表达”等,使同学们的语法能力逐步提升。

训练题后均附有“点石成金”栏目,提示解题的思路,点明解题的关键,让读者不仅知其然,而且知其所以然。这样,既方便学生做完题后及时查对答案、纠正错误,又利于学生拾遗补缺、达到能力升华的目的。

目录条理明晰 编排科学美观

全书分为33“章”,各“章”又根据需要进行若干“节”,每“节”包含若干“条”。“条”的编号包含两部分:章号 一条号,“条”号以“章”为单位采取大排队方式编号。例如:“1-3”表示“第一章的第三条”。

中学生看书的最大毛病是“虎头蛇尾”。刚买新书,信心十足,越往后看越马虎。针对中学生这一心理特点,本书将最重要的“动词”部分放在全书的开头处。因为动词不但是学好英语的关键,也是高考的重中之重,多年来一直占语法测试题的一半左右。

本书还配有精美的释疑性插图,帮助同学们激发学习兴趣,提高学习效率。

本书的作者都是多年执教高中的优秀教师,他们融丰富的教学经验和扎实的英语功底于一体,倾心编著了这本语法书,以为为同学们铺路架桥,使大家尽快到达成功的彼岸。

在此特向所有我们曾参考、借鉴过的十几种书籍的作者们表示深切的谢意。同时,我们也向有关专家和出版社的编辑们表示衷心的感谢,他们在本书的审定、出版中做了大量细致的工作。衷心希望广大的高中同学们能从这本书中获得帮助,使作者们智慧和汗水的结晶换来你们丰收的硕果!

编者

目 录

第1章 主谓一致	1
第一节 主谓一致的概念及原则[1-1至1-2]	1
第二节 形式一致的原则[1-3至1-9]	3
第三节 临近一致的原则[1-10]	6
第四节 意义一致的原则[1-11至1-25]	6
第五节 倒装句的主谓一致[1-26]	13
第2章 动词的分类和形式	18
第一节 动词的重要性[2-1]	18
第二节 动词的几种分类方法[2-2至2-6]	19
第三节 动词的兼类[2-7]	26
第四节 动词短语的5种类型[2-8]	27
第五节 动词的5种基本形式[2-9至2-13]	29
第3章 动词的时态	41
第一节 时态的概念[3-1]	41
第二节 一般现在时[3-2至3-5]	42
第三节 一般过去时[3-6至3-8]	43
第四节 一般将来时[3-9至3-10]	46
第五节 过去将来时[3-11至3-12]	47
第六节 现在进行时[3-13至3-14]	49
第七节 过去进行时[3-15至3-17]	51
第八节 将来进行时[3-18]	53
第九节 现在完成时[3-19至3-21]	54
第十节 过去完成时[3-22至3-24]	57
第十一节 现在完成进行时等[3-25至3-26]	59
第十二节 将来完成时等[3-27]	61
第十三节 时态的呼应[3-28至3-29]	62
第4章 动词的语态	69
第一节 语态的概念[4-1]	69
第二节 主动语态与被动语态的转换[4-2至4-11]	72
第三节 被动结构和系表结构的区别[4-12]	77
第四节 不用被动语态的及物动词[4-13]	77
第五节 主动形式表被动概念的不及物动词[4-14]	78
第5章 动词的语气	83
第一节 语气的概念及分类[5-1]	83

第二节	虚拟语气的基本结构[5-2至5-5]	84
第三节	状语从句中的虚拟语气[5-6]	86
第四节	宾语从句中的虚拟语气[5-7至5-10]	88
第五节	主语从句、表语从句和同位语从句中的虚拟语气[5-11]	90
第六节	定语从句中的虚拟语气[5-12]	91
第七节	表“祝愿”、“愿望”句型中的虚拟语气[5-13]	92
第八节	谨防误用虚拟语气[5-14]	92
第6章 助动词		96
第一节	助动词的概念及用法[6-1至6-4]	96
第二节	时态助动词 be, have, will, shall 及 16 种时态和 10 种被动语态结构[6-5至6-12]	99
第三节	结构助动词 do[6-13至6-18]	103
第四节	do, have, be 作助动词与作实义动词或连系动词的鉴别[6-19]	106
第7章 情态动词		110
第一节	情态动词的概念及特点[7-1]	110
第二节	情态动词 + have + 过去分词的结构[7-2至7-6]	111
第三节	表能力的情态动词 can/could 和 be able to[7-7至7-9]	116
第四节	表许可的情态动词 can, could, may, might[7-10至7-12]	118
第五节	表可能的情态动词 can, could, may, might[7-13至7-15]	119
第六节	表请求的情态动词 will, would, can, could[7-16]	121
第七节	表意志的情态动词 shall 和 will[7-17至7-18]	121
第八节	表过去习惯的情态动词 would 和 used to[7-19]	123
第九节	表推测的情态动词 should, ought to, would, will 和 must[7-20]	124
第十节	表征询对方意见的情态动词 shall 和 should[7-21]	125
第十一节	表愿望的情态动词 should, would 和 would rather[7-22至7-25]	125
第十二节	表必须的情态动词 must 和 have to[7-26至7-29]	126
第十三节	表应该的情态动词[7-30至7-31]	129
第十四节	表最好的情态动词 had better[7-32]	130
第十五节	表敢于的情态动词 dare(d)[7-33]	130
第8章 动词不定式		136
第一节	不定式的概念及形式[8-1至8-5]	136
第二节	不定式的时态和语态[8-6至8-10]	139
第三节	不定式作主语[8-11至8-14]	143
第四节	不定式作表语[8-15至8-16]	144
第五节	不定式作宾语[8-17至8-20]	145
第六节	不定式作补足语[8-21至8-24]	147
第七节	不定式作定语[8-25至8-27]	149
第八节	不定式作状语[8-28至8-30]	152
第九节	省略形式的不定式[8-31至8-32]	154

第十节 不定式与动名词的用法区别[8-33至8-34]	156
第9章 分词	162
第一节 分词的概念及形式[9-1至9-4]	162
第二节 分词作状语[9-5至9-11]	165
第三节 分词作表语[9-12至9-14]	172
第四节 分词作定语[9-15至9-16]	173
第五节 分词作补足语[9-17]	175
第六节 分词的时态与语态[9-18至9-22]	176
第10章 动名词	183
第一节 动名词的概念及形式[10-1至10-3]	183
第二节 动名词作主语和表语[10-4至10-6]	184
第三节 动名词作宾语[10-7至10-13]	185
第四节 动名词作定语[10-14]	189
第五节 动名词的复合结构[10-15至10-17]	189
第六节 动名词的时态和语态[10-18至10-22]	191
第七节 非谓语动词(动名词、不定式、现在分词和过去分词)的语法比较 [10-23至10-30]	192
第八节 动名词的特殊用法[10-31至10-33]	198
第11章 形容词和副词	203
第一节 形容词的概念和用法[11-1至11-7]	203
第二节 副词的概念和用法[11-8至11-15]	207
第三节 形容词和副词的比较级、最高级形式[11-16至11-19]	212
第四节 修饰比较等级的状语[11-20至11-21]	214
第五节 原级比较的句型[11-22至11-23]	216
第六节 比较级的句型[11-24至11-27]	217
第七节 最高级的句型[11-28至11-29]	219
第八节 同级别形容词和同级别副词的辨析要注意的几个问题 [11-30至11-33]	220
第12章 代词	227
第一节 代词的概念及分类[12-1至12-2]	227
第二节 人称代词[12-3至12-7]	228
第三节 it 的用法[12-8至12-13]	231
第四节 物主代词[12-14至12-16]	235
第五节 反身代词[12-17至12-19]	236
第六节 指示代词[12-20至12-21]	238
第七节 相互代词[12-22]	240
第八节 不定代词[12-23至12-35]	241
第九节 疑问代词、连接代词和关系代词[12-36]	250
第13章 名词	255
第一节 名词的概念及分类[13-1]	255

第二节	不可数名词量的表达[13-2]	258
第三节	可数名词的复数[13-3至13-8]	259
第四节	名词的格[13-9至13-13]	263
第五节	名词的句法作用[13-14]	265
第六节	名词辨析[13-15至13-17]	266
第14章 数词		271
第一节	数词的概念和分类[14-1]	271
第二节	基数词[14-2至14-12]	272
第三节	序数词[14-13至14-19]	278
第四节	分数、百分数和小数[14-20至14-22]	280
第五节	数学运算式[14-23]	282
第六节	年、月、日[14-24至14-25]	282
第七节	时刻表达法[14-26]	282
第八节	倍数表达法[14-27至14-28]	283
第15章 冠词		288
第一节	冠词的基本概念及分类[15-1]	288
第二节	冠词的用法区别[15-2至15-18]	289
第三节	常用不定冠词 a/an 的情况[15-19至15-22]	296
第四节	常用定冠词 the 的情况[15-23至15-35]	297
第五节	常不用冠词的情况[15-36至15-41]	301
第16章 介词		307
第一节	介词的概念、种类及特点[16-1至16-10]	307
第二节	表时间的介词[16-11至16-15]	312
第三节	表方位的介词[16-16至16-25]	316
第四节	介词的其他用法[16-26至16-43]	320
第五节	英汉差异造成的介词错用[16-44]	328
第17章 连词		334
第一节	连词的概念及分类[17-1至17-2]	334
第二节	并列连词[17-3至17-7]	336
第三节	从属连词[17-8至17-12]	340
第18章 构词法		346
第一节	构词法的重要性及分类[18-1至18-2]	346
第二节	主要构词法之一:合成法[18-3至18-7]	348
第三节	主要构词法之二:转化法[18-8至18-9]	353
第四节	主要构词法之三:派生法[18-10至18-17]	354
第19章 单词、词组辨析的常考热点		376
第一节	动词的辨析[19-1至19-8]	376
第二节	其他词类单词的辨析[19-9]	387
第20章 名词性从句		393
第一节	英语从句的分类及特点[20-1至20-2]	393

第二节	名词性从句的分类及特点[20-3至20-11]	395
第三节	主语从句的用法[20-12至20-15]	401
第四节	表语从句的用法[20-16至20-19]	404
第五节	宾语从句的用法[20-20至20-27]	406
第六节	同位语从句的用法[20-28至20-30]	410
第21章	间接引语和间接引语	415
第一节	间接引语的概念和变化规律[21-1至21-4]	415
第二节	当直接引语是陈述句时[21-5]	418
第三节	当直接引语是一般疑问句、选择疑问句、反意疑问句时[21-6]	419
第四节	当直接引语是特殊疑问句时[21-7]	419
第五节	当直接引语是祈使句时[21-8]	420
第六节	当直接引语是感叹句时[21-9]	421
第22章	形容词性从句	423
第一节	定语从句的概念和基本用法[22-1至22-6]	423
第二节	关系代词引出的定语从句[22-7至22-15]	428
第三节	关系副词引出的定语从句[22-16至22-17]	434
第四节	强调句型[22-18至22-22]	436
第23章	副词性从句(或称状语从句)	444
第一节	状语从句的概念和基本用法[23-1至23-4]	444
第二节	时间状语从句[23-5至23-10]	448
第三节	地点状语从句[23-11]	453
第四节	原因状语从句[23-12至23-15]	453
第五节	条件状语从句[23-16至23-17]	455
第六节	让步状语从句[23-18至23-21]	457
第七节	方式状语从句[23-22]	459
第八节	目的状语从句[23-23]	460
第九节	结果状语从句[23-24至23-28]	461
第十节	比较状语从句[23-29至23-40]	462
第24章	并列句	470
第一节	并列句的概念及分类[24-1至24-2]	470
第二节	联合并列句[24-3]	471
第三节	转折并列句[24-4]	471
第四节	选择并列句[24-5]	471
第五节	因果并列句[24-6]	472
第六节	并列句的使用注意[24-7至24-10]	472
第25章	简单句(含5种基本句型)	476
第一节	简单句的概念[25-1]	476
第二节	简单句的5种基本句型[25-2至25-6]	477
第三节	简单句可分为四类[25-7]	479

第一节	否定句的概念[26-1]	482
第二节	否定谓语的两种形式[26-2至26-3]	483
第三节	否定其他成分的六种形式[26-4至26-9]	484
第四节	不用否定词却暗含否定意思的句式[26-10]	488
第五节	否定句的非否定现象[26-11]	488
第 27 章	疑问句	491
第一节	疑问句的概念及分类[27-1]	491
第二节	一般疑问句[27-2至27-8]	491
第三节	特殊疑问句[27-9至27-14]	495
第四节	选择疑问句[27-15至27-16]	498
第五节	反意疑问句[27-17至27-23]	500
第 28 章	祈使句	508
第一节	祈使句的概念[28-1]	508
第二节	对象不同的各种祈使句[28-2至28-4]	509
第三节	祈使句的句首呼唤语与陈述句的主语的区别[28-5]	510
第四节	祈使句的一些特殊结构[28-6至28-11]	511
第 29 章	感叹句	515
第一节	感叹句的概念及分类[29-1]	515
第二节	常见的 what 型和 how 型的感叹句[29-2至29-4]	516
第三节	其他类型的感叹句[29-5]	517
第 30 章	倒装句	520
第一节	倒装的概念及分类[30-1至30-3]	520
第二节	因语法需要而引起的倒装[30-4至30-11]	521
第三节	因修辞需要而引起的倒装[30-12至30-18]	526
第 31 章	句子成分与词类的关系	533
第一节	英语句子的成分[31-1]	533
第二节	英语词汇的分类[31-2]	534
第三节	句子成分与词类的关系[31-3至31-12]	536
第 32 章	标点符号、斜体及大写	547
第一节	标点符号[32-1至32-15]	547
第二节	斜体字[32-16]	555
第三节	大写[32-17]	555
第 33 章	交际用语	558
第一节	交际用语的特点[33-1至33-3]	558
第二节	交际用语考查中干扰项的设置[33-4至33-5]	560
第三节	交际用语的主要考查项目[33-6至33-15]	561

第1章

主谓一致

高考热点

主谓一致是高考英语的考点之一,尤其近年高考有时把主谓一致与时态、语态、非谓语动词等语法项目综合在一起考查,从而增加了难度。

高考对“主谓一致”考查的切入点通常是:

1. 形式一致原则:主语形式上的单复数要与谓语形式上的单复数一致。
2. 意义一致原则:主语意义上的单复数要与谓语形式上的单复数一致。
3. 临近一致原则:谓语形式上的单复数只与并列主语中最靠近它的那个部分的单复数一致。

因为汉语中没有相应的这种谓语动词的变化,所以英语的主谓一致也是困扰广大中国学生的一大心病,尤其是在英语书面表达中,很多学生在挥毫之时此类错误比比皆是,严重影响文章的水平,考试中必将拉低得分的档次。因此,掌握好主谓一致对于提高英语水平和取得理想成绩都至关重要。

第一节 主谓一致的概念及原则

1-1 谓语动词在人称和数方面须和主语保持一致。



[例] You _____ friendly and I _____ friendly, too. But he _____ very rude. (用 be 的适当形式填空)

答案是 are; am; is。“你友好,我也友好。但是他很粗鲁。”由于人称不同,其谓语动词 be 的形式也不同。第一人称 I 用 am,第二人称 you 用 are,第三人称 he 用 is 搭配。

[例] Nowadays, a large number of women, especially those from the countryside, _____ in the clothing industry. [辽宁高考题]

A. is working B. works C. work D. worked

答案是 C。“如今,大量的妇女,尤其是农村妇女从事服装业。”根据 nowadays,可排除一般过去时 worked;“a large number of + 复数名词(women 为主语部分的中心词语)”表示“大量的(妇女)”,是复数概念,谓语动词应用复数形式 work。

[例] As you can see, the number of cars on roads _____ rising these days. [湖南高考题]

A. was keeping B. keep C. keeps D. were keeping

答案是 C。“正如你们所看到的,路上小车数量近来持续增长”。由时间状语 these days 可知要用现在的时态;“the number(number 为主语部分的中心词语) of + 复数名词”表示“…的数量”,是单数概念,谓语要用单数形式 keeps。

1-2 主谓一致遵循三条原则:意义一致、形式一致和临近一致。



① 一般情况下,主语在词汇意义上和语法形式上都与谓语动词一致。

[例] This book is mine and those books are mine, too. “这本书是我的,那些书也是我的。”

② 当主语是由两个(或两个以上)的部分并列而成时,一般情况下谓语动词按复数对待。

[例] Many books and a pen are on the desk. “书桌上有很多书和一支笔。”

③ 有时候仅有意义上是一致的。[参见 1-11 至 1-25]。

[例] Mathematics _____ the language of science.

A. is B. are going C. are

答案是 A。“数学是科学的语言。”从形式上看“mathematics”其后有“-s”,似乎是复数;但从意义上看,“数学”是“一门语言”,应与单数动词搭配。

④ 有时候仅在形式上是一致的。[参见 1-3 至 1-9]

[例] Many a student loves English. “很多学生都喜爱英语。”

虽然意义上“很多学生”是复数概念,但因“many a + 单数可数名词”这种结构形式上是单数的,故配用动词的单数形式。

(5) 在少数句型中,谓语动词仅与并列主语中相邻的那一部分取得一致。[参见1-10]

[例] There is a pen and many books on the desk. “书桌上有一支钢笔和很多书。”

There are many books and a pen on the desk. “书桌上有很多书和一支钢笔。”

第二节 形式一致的原则

1-3 “many a (或: more than one) + 单数名词”作主语时,动词用单数形式。

[例] More than one example is necessary to make the students understand this rule clearly.

“要使学生清楚地理解这个规律,一个例句不够用,需要更多的例句。”

1-4 each 和 something 等不定代词作主语,动词用单数形式。

有些不定代词常与单数动词连用,如: each, one, either, neither, little, a little, much 和 something, somebody, someone, anything, anybody, anyone, nothing, nobody, no one, everything, everybody, everyone, 等等。

[例] —Are the two answers correct?

—No, correct.

A. no one is B. both are not C. neither is D. either is not

[全国高考题]

答案是C。“两个答案都对吗?”“不,没有一个是正确的。”不选D,因 any, anything, anybody, anyone 与 either 等作主语时,谓语动词不用否定形式。不选A,因 **no one** 只用于人。不选B,因 both 与 not 构成部分否定“不是两个都对(只有一个对)”,与其前表示完全否定的“No”相矛盾。只有 neither is 在形式和意义上都符合此处要求。

[例] Nobody but Jane knows the secret.

A. know B. knows C. have known D. is known

[全国高考题]

答案是B。“除了简外没人知道那个秘密。”nobody 为主语,谓语动词用单数形式 knows,又符合此处的主动含义。

温馨提示

表示人的不定代词再次出现时,常用复数形式的代词来代替,谓语动词也要复数形式。

[例] Nobody was absent at the meeting, were they? 会议没有人缺席,是吗?

反意疑问句的主语用 they 来代替 nobody,此时的谓语动词要用复数形式 were。

1-5 用 and 连接两个带有 each 等定语的单数名词作主语时,谓语动词要用单数。

两个由 and 连接的并列的单数名词作主语,若都被 each, every, many a, no 等词修

饰,要用单数动词。

[例] No boy and no girl is admitted. “男女生一律不准进入。”

1-6 trousers 等复数形式的名词作主语时,动词用复数

由于英汉之间的差异,有些复数形式的英语名词作主语时,其谓语动词常被中国学生错误地采取单数形式。这些词有: glasses “眼镜”, trousers “裤子”, compasses “圆规”, scissors “剪刀”, clothes “衣服”, goods “货物”, savings “储蓄金”, belongings “财产”, 等等。

[例] “我的眼镜在哪儿?” “它在桌上。”

误: “Where is my glasses?” “It's on the desk.”

正: “Where are my glasses?” “They are on the desk.”

温馨提示

当用代词代替这类名词时,要用复数代词(如上句中用 they)。

1-7 单数名词(或代词)作主语,其后跟有 with (together / along with) 等引导的词组作定语或状语时,谓语动词仍用单数形式。

[例] Professor Smith, along with his assistants, _____ on the project day and night to meet the deadline. [上海高考题]

A. work B. working C. is working D. are working

答案是 C。“为赶上最后期限,史密斯教授和他的助手一起没日没夜地在进行这个项目。”along with his assistants 为插入成分(也可理解为状语提前),Professor Smith 才是句子的主语,谓语动词要与之(为单数第三人称)保持一致,只有 C 项为单数的正确形式。

触类旁通

这类作主语的定语用的短语,常见的还有: like “如…”, combined with “加上…”, accompanied by “由…陪同”, as well as “以及”, including “包括”, in addition to/besides “除…外还”, but / except “除…以外”, no less than “不少于…”, rather than “而不是…”, 等等。

[例] The father as well as his three children was skating on the frozen river every Sunday afternoon in winter. [辽宁高考题]

A. is going B. go C. goes D. are going

答案是 C。“冬天每个下午父亲和三个儿子到结冰河上滑冰。”主语是 the father, 而 as well as... 用作状语, 句子谓语动词要用单数形式。再根据时间状语 every Sunday afternoon in winter 可判断此处应该用一般现在时。故选 C。

[例] All the employees except the manager D to work online at home.

A. encourages B. encourage C. is encouraged D. are encouraged

答案是 D。“除了经理以外,所有的雇员受到鼓励在家网上工作。”except the manager 为介词短语,句子的主语为 all the employees(为复数),应首先排除谓语动词为单数形式的 A 和 C。主语又是谓语动词“鼓励”的承受者,此处应用被动语态。故选 D。

1-8 主语部分含有 pair of 等短语时,谓语动词的数要与 pair 等词保持一致。

从含义上看, a pair of glasses 和 two pairs of glasses 之类的短语的中心词是 glasses, a pair of 和 two pairs of 仅是作限定用的量词;但这类短语用作主语时,其谓语动词的数却常和 pair 的数取得一致。

[例] On the bed is a pair of socks. “那张床上有双袜子。”

虽是在谈论复数的“socks”,但 pair 为单数形式,谓语动词不用复数形式 are。



触类旁通

这类词有: a suit of “一套”, three glasses of “三杯”, many boxes of “很多箱”, 等等。

[例] Three glasses of water are what I want. “我想要的只是三杯水。”

虽谈论的不可数是不可数名词“water”,但 glasses 为复数形式,谓语动词可用复数形式 are。

1-9 a (或 this / that) kind / sort / type / form 等 of “一/这/那种/类/型的” + 名词单数时,谓语动词常用单数。

[例] This kind of book is worth buying. 这种书值得买。

温馨提示

(1) 当后接名词用复数时,谓语动词也用复数形式。

[例] This kind of men are dangerous. 这种人危险。

谓语动词用 are 时,更强调复数概念。

(2) 如 kinds 为复数时或用 of this / a kind / sort 等作后置定语修饰名词复数时,谓语动词用复数形式。

[例] Those kinds of fruit (s) are cheap. “那些种类的水果便宜。”

[例] What kinds of birds like to stay here for the winter? “哪些鸟喜欢在此过冬?”

[例] Books of this kind A well.

A. sell

B. sells

C. are sold

D. is sold

[上海高考题]

答案是 A。“这种书畅销。”“书畅销”是表示书所具备的性质特征,应用主动形式来表示被动意义;of this kind 作后置定语,主语部分的中心词 books 为复数,谓语动词应用复数形式 sell。

第三节 临近一致的原则

1-10 在 there be 等少数句型中,谓语动词常与并列主语中相“临近”的那一部分取得一致。

这种“临近一致”的现象一般出现在 there be 句型中和并列主语由 not only... but (also) “不仅…而且…”, neither... nor “既不…也不…”, either... or “要么…要么…”, or “或者”等连接的句型中。

[例] Not only I but also Jane and Mary _____ tired of having one examination after another. [全国高考题]

A. is B. are C. am D. be

答案是 B。“不光是我,就连简和玛丽也烦了没完没了的考试了。”but also 后 Jane and Mary 是两个人(为复数),离谓语动词近,故谓语动词应复数形式 are。

试对比 Not only Jane and Mary but also I am tired of having one examination after another.

[例] Either you or the headmaster _____ the prizes to those gifted students at the meeting. [上海高考题]

A. is handing out B. are to hand out C. are handing out D. is to hand out

答案是 D。“会上,要么是你,要么是校长要为那些有天资的学生发奖。”表示将来理应发生的事或计划,应用 be to do 结构,而 the headmaster 离谓语近。故选 D。

试比较 Are either you or the headmaster to hand out the prizes to those gifted students at the meeting?

当用疑问句时,be(有时为助动词)提前了,you 离之更近,所以用复数形式 are。

第四节 意义一致的原则

1-11 两个并列主语在意义上表示同一人、同一物、同一事或同一概念时,动词用单数形式。

[例] The singer and dancer is talking over there. “那位歌唱家兼舞蹈家正在那边谈话。”句中的两个名词共用一个冠词,表示同一个人。



The singer and the dancer are talking over there. “那位歌唱家和那位舞蹈家正在那边交谈。”

[例] There is a knife and fork on the dinner table. “餐桌上摆着一副刀叉。”

触类旁通

表示单一概念的短语,常见的有:a knife and fork“一副刀叉”,a cart and horse“一驾马车”,the bread and butter“奶油面包”,the needle and thread“针线”,a cup and saucer“一套杯碟”,my house and home“我的家”,cause and effect“因果”,supply and demand“供求关系”,pen and ink“笔墨”,early to bed and early to rise“早睡早起”,等等。

1-12 名词性从句或非谓语动词短语作主语时,往往表达一种抽象概念,其动词用单数形式。

[例] When and where to build the new factory is yet.

A. is not decided B. are not decided C. has not decided D. have not decided

答案是A。“何时何地兴建那座新工厂还没定下来呢”本句中的“when and where”表示一个单一的概念,故谓语动词用单数动词 is not decided。C项为主动语态,不合要求。

温馨提示

如表示的不只一个概念,谓语动词要用复数。

[例] What caused the fire and how much the loss are still unknown.

A. was are

B. is were

C. was is

D. was was

答案是A。“火灾的起因及其损失大小尚不清楚。”并列主语的两部分“火灾的起因”和“火灾造成的损失程度”是两个概念,故后一个 be 动词(为主句的谓语动词)要用复数形式 are,表示“现在尚不清楚”;前个 was 为第二个主语从句的谓语动词。



[例] Driving cars is not easy. “开车不容易。”

[例] To say something is one thing, to do it is another. “说是一回事,做是另一回事。”

[例] 改错: Earning their own money allow them to spend on anything as they please.

[全国高考题]

答案是把 allow 改为 allows。“自己挣钱让他们能按自己的意愿花钱买任何东西。”主语是动名词 Earning their own money, 谓语应该用单数形式 allows。

1-13 表示时间、距离、金钱、重量、容量等的复数名词作主语时,把这些复数名词看作一个整体,即表示“总量”或“总和”时,动词用单数形式;如把它们看作一个个的个体,即强调其具体数量时,动词则用复数形式。



[例] Two hundred kilometres is a long way. “200 公里是段很长的路。”

[例] Ten minutes is enough. “十分钟足够了。”

试比较 There are ten minutes left (或: to go). “还有 10 分钟。”

1-14 cattle 等表示有生命的集体名词作主语时,动词用复数形式。

常见的这类词有 cattle“牛群”, militia“民兵”, police“警察”, people“人们”, poultry“家禽”, 等等。

[例] The cattle are on the hill. “一群牛在小山上。”

[例] The police (= The policemen) are trying to catch the thief. “警务人员正在设法抓那个贼。”

[例] People today like pop music. “当今的人们喜爱流行音乐。”

温馨提示

people 表示“一个民族”时,动词用单数形式;表示“多个民族”时,复数形式为 peoples, 动词用复数形式。若 poultry 作“禽肉”解,则为不可数名词,其动词用单数。

[例] The Chinese people is a brave and hard working one. “中华民族是个勤劳勇敢的民族。”

1-15 news 等词尾含-s 的单数名词作主语,动词用单数形式;men 等词尾不含-s 的复数名词作主语,动词用复数形式。



① 特别要注意那些词尾有-s的单数名词,如:news“消息”,the United States“美国(地名)”,James“詹姆斯(人名)”,*The Arabian Nights*“《天方夜谭》(书名)”,maths“数学”,physics“物理”,politics“政治(学科名)”等。

[例] Here is some news for you.“这儿有些给你的消息。”

[例] The United States is an English-speaking country.“美国是个讲英语的国家。”

温馨提示

表示山脉、群岛、瀑布等名称的或由它们构成的含-s的专有名词,常视为复数,谓语动词用复数形式。

[例] The Philippines lie on the southeast of China.“菲律宾群岛位于中国东南方。”

[例] The Olympic Games are held every fourth year.“奥林匹克运动会每四年举办一次。”

② 那些词尾没有-s的复数名词,如:children“儿童”,men“男人”,women“女人”,mice“老鼠”,oxen“公牛”,等等。

[例] There are a lot of children in the park today.“今天公园里有许多孩子。”

1-16 both 和 few 等不定代词作主语,动词常用复数形式。

[例] While neither team was able to win, both were pleased with the result. 尽管双方都没有能赢,当双方对结果感到满意。

[例] Many are called but few are chosen. 被召的人多,但被选上的人少。

1-17 all, some, any, more, most, none 等不定代词作主语,要根据具体含义确定其动词的单数或复数形式。

所指为单数意义,动词用单数形式;如所指为复数意义,动词用复数形式。

[例] All goes well.“一切顺利。”[表示总的情况]

[例] All have passed the exam.“所有的人都及格了。”[表示所有参加考试的人]

1-18 half 等表“量”的名词作主语,要根据具体含义确定动词的单数或复数形式。



这类名词有:half“一半”,(a) part“一部分”,plenty“大量”,the rest“其余的”,等等。

[例] 改错: The first two of the five questions on the test paper were very difficult, but the rest was easy. [全国高考题]

答案是把“the rest was”改成“the rest were”。“试卷上的五个问题里,头两个非常难,但其余的容易答。”句中的“the rest”意指“剩下的三个”,根据意义一致的原则,动词应用 were。

[例] I have drunk some of the water and the rest is for you. “那水我已喝了些,其余的是给你的。”

1-19 sheep 和 means 等单复同形的名词作主语,要根据意义一致的原则采用单数或复数形式的动词。

① 常见的(词尾无“-s”的)单复同形的名词有: sheep“绵羊”, deer“鹿”, swine“猪”, aircraft“飞机;飞艇”, Swiss“瑞士人”, Chinese“中国人”, Japanese“日本人”, 等等。

[例] This sheep is mine and those sheep are mine, too. “这只绵羊是我的,而且那些绵羊也都是我的。”

② 其他(词尾有“-s”的)单复同形的名词有: means“方法;手段”, works“工厂”, bellows“风箱;减压舱”, series“系列”, species“种类”, 等等。

[例] Every possible means to prevent the air pollution, but the sky is still not clear.

A. is used B. are used C. has been used D. have been used

答案是 C。“各种有可能防止空气污染的手段都用过了,但天空还是不干净。”从后句可知强调对现在造成的影响和结果,应用现在完成时的被动形式;又因有 every 修饰 means, means 为单数,谓语动词应用单数形式。故选 C。

1-20 分数词作主语,要根据其后跟的 of 词组中名词或代词的数(若无 of 介词短语时,则根据上下文判断出分数词的具体含义)来决定用单数或复数动词。若在数学运算中,动词形式既可用单数又可用复数,但单数形式更为多用。

[例] Two thirds of Tom's friends are poor and two thirds of his money goes to these poor friends. “汤姆的朋友里三分之二的都是穷人,而他的钱的三分之二都花在了帮助这些穷朋友上。”

[例] The company had about 20 notebook computers but only one-third used regularly. Now we have 60 working all day long.

A. is B. are C. was D. were

答案是 D。“过去公司有大约 20 台笔记本电脑,但只有三分之一可正常使用。现在我们有 60 台整天在运行。”前后句表示过去的与现在的情况对比,故前句



应用过去的时态,可排除 A 和 B;此处分数代表的是可数名词 computers,谓语动词应用复数形式 were。

[例] Two plus two is(或:are) four. “二加二等于四。”

1-21 family 等集体名词作主语,要根据具体含义来配用单数或复数动词。

某些有生命物的集体名词若被看作一个整体时,用单数动词;如被看作组成该集体的成员时,则用复数动词。这类词有:family“家庭”,group“小组”,class“班级”,team“小队”,government“政府”,enemy“敌人”,population“人口”,committee“委员会”,audience“听众”,public“公众”,majority“多数”,等等。

[例] His family is not large. “他的家不是个大家庭。”

注意 His family are all football players. “他家的人都是足球运动员。”

1-22 “the + 形容词”作主语,若表示一类人,用复数动词;若表示一种抽象概念或品质或指个别人,用单数动词。

[例] The rich are not always happy. “富人并不总是快乐的。”



[例] The beautiful is the ideal of life. “美是生活的理想境界。”

[例] The dead was about thirty years of age. “死者 30 岁左右。”

1-23 关系代词 which, that 和 who 在定语从句中作主语时,从句动词的单复数要根据先行词的单复数来确定。强调句型中对主语进行强调时,其后部的动词要与被强调的主语一致。

[例] Those who 2 to go with me, please raise your hands.

A. wants B. want C. wanting D. are wanting

答案是 B。“（那些）想和我一块儿去的（人），请举手。”先行词“Those(people)”是复数概念,关系代词 who 则为复数概念,从句动词要用复数形式。注意:want, like, hate 等表示心理活动的静态动词不能用于进行时态。

[例] He who B not reach the Great Wall is not a true man.

A. do B. does C. is D. are

答案是 B。“不到长城非好汉。”先行词“he”是单数第三人称,关系代词 who 则为单数第三人称概念,从句动词要用单数第三人称形式。注意:reach 是实义动

词,否定句一般现在时要用 does(不用 is)。

[例] It is I who _____ your true friend.

A. is B. are C. am D. be

答案是 C。“我才是你真正的朋友。”被强调的是“I”,故用 am。此句可还原为普通的(非强调型的)句子: I am your true friend.

在句型“one of the + 复数名词 + who/that/which 引导的定语从句”的结构中,定语从句的先行词是其前的复数名词,故 who 为复数概念,从句动词用复数形式。但当 one 前有 the(only)等修饰时,先行词为 one,从句中的动词要用单数形式。

[例] Tom is one of the boys who are on time. “汤姆是准时的那些男孩中的一个。”

从句中 who 的先行词是 boys,故 who 为复数概念,从句动词用复数形式 are。

[例] He is the only one of the students who _____ a winner of scholarship for three years. [上海高考题]

A. is B. are C. have been D. has been

答案是 D。“他是学生中唯一连续三年获得奖学金的。”从句中 who 的先行词是 the only one,故 who 为单数概念,应用现在完成时的单数形式,表示三年这一段时间的情况。

1-24 当主语由“a lot of 或 lots of 等 + 名词”构成时,谓语动词的单复数要根据名词的单复数来确定。



当 a lot of, lots of, plenty of, a large quantity of, a variety of, varieties of 等短语后跟不可数名词时,谓语动词用单数形式;后跟可数名词复数时,谓语动词则用复数形式。

[例] There is lots of rice here. “这儿有很多大米。”

[例] There are a lot of books here. “这儿有很多书。”

[例] A large quantity of beer was sold out. “大量的啤酒被售出。”

[例] A large quantity of blouses are on sale. “大量罩衫有售。”

温馨提示

(1) a large / vast/ good/ great/ small amount of 只接不可数名词。作主语时,谓语动词用单数。

[例] A large amount of danger is awaiting him. “大量的危险在等着他。”

(2) large/ big quantities 接可数名词或不可数名词或 large amounts of 接复数名词或不可数名词构成的短语作主语时,谓语动词通常用复数。

[例] Large amounts of money were spent on the project. “这个工程上花了大量的钱。”

[例] With more forests being destroyed, huge quantities of good earth each year.

A. is washing away

B. is being washed away

[山东高考题]

C. are washing away

D. are being washed away

答案是 D。“随着更多的森林被毁坏,每年都有大量的良土被冲走。”由句意可知应用被动语态,可首先排除 A 和 C 项;quantities of 虽接不可数名词 good earth,谓语动词应用复数形式。

(3) the quantity / amount of 接复数名词或不可数名词构成主语时,谓语动词通常用单数形式。

[例] The quantity of books in the library is amazing. “图书馆里的藏书数量惊人。”

[例] The quantity of heat in the office has not been increased. “办公室里的热量没有增加。”

[例] The amount of work astonishes her. “工作量令她惊讶。”

1-25 “most of, all of, 百分数 + of 等 + 名词”构成主语时,谓语动词的单复数取决于 of 后的名词,或视具体的上下文而定。

当 all(of), half(of), most of, none of, 5 percent of, two thirds of, the majority of 等短语后跟不可数名词或名词单数时,谓语动词用单数形式;后跟可数名词复数时,谓语动词则用复数形式。

[例] Half of the food is unfit to eat. “这食物中有一半不能吃。”

[例] The majority of her friends have gone abroad. “她的大部分朋友已经出国了。”

[例] Most of what has been said about the Smiths is also true of the Johnsons.

A. are

B. is

C. being

D. to be

[安徽高考题]

答案是 B。“关于史密斯夫妇的说法对于约翰逊夫妇也同样真实”。“most of + what 引导的从句”作主语,从句应视为一件事,全句缺少谓语动词,应用单数形式 is。

第五节 倒装句的主谓一致

1-26 倒装句要特别注意找准主语。

[例] In the dark forests lie, some large enough to hold several English towns.

A. stand many lakes

B. lie many lakes

[辽宁高考题]

C. many lakes lie

D. many lakes stand

答案是 B。“在漆黑的森林里有许多湖泊,有些大得可以装得下几个英国小镇。”湖泊等平面性的事物位于某处,应用 lie;介词短语置于句首时,句子采用倒装结构,根据其后的主语 many lakes,位于动词应用复数形式 lie。故选 B。

[例] Here are some advertisements about English language training from newspapers. “这儿有些报上刊登的有关英语培训的广告。”

[例] Here is a fellow who just walks into a bank and helps himself to so much money.
“有那么个家伙径直走进银行,拿走了那么多钱。”

[例] Such were his words. “这就是他的原话。”

即学即用

I. 单项填空

1. The number of people invited _____ fifty, but a number of them _____ absent for different reasons. [全国高考题]

A. were; was B. was; was C. was; were D. were; were

2. A library with five thousand books _____ to the nation as a gift. [全国高考题]

A. is offered B. has offered C. are offered D. have offered

3. All but one _____ here just now. [全国高考题]

A. is B. was C. has been D. were

4. Telephone messages for the manager _____ on her desk but she didn't notice them. [上海高考题]

A. were left B. was left C. was leaving D. were leaving

5. E-mail, as well as telephone, _____ an important part in daily communication. [上海高考题]

A. is playing B. have played C. are playing D. play

6. _____ of the land in that district _____ covered with trees and grass. [上海高考题]

A. Two fifth; is B. Two fifth; are C. Two fifths, is D. Two fifths; are

7. As a result of destroying the forest, a large _____ of desert _____ covered the land. [上海高考题]

A. number; has B. quantity; has

C. number; have D. quantity; have

8. More than one _____ the people heart and soul.

A. official has served B. officials have serve

C. official has served for D. officials have served for

9. John, together with some of American soldiers who _____ sent to Iraq, _____ killed in a bomb explosion.

A. were; were B. was; was C. were; was D. was; were

10. —The education system rather than the teachers _____ to answer for overburden on the students.

—I agree. I hope the reform being carried out in our country at present will bring about the _____ results.

A. are; desired B. is; desired C. are; desiring D. is; desiring

11. What you said _____ quite to the point but what we need _____ experienced technical workers and the latest information.

A. is; are B. is; is; C. are; is D. are; are

12. Diligently as I work, I'm fully aware that another two weeks _____ necessary for me to finish the paper.

A. are B. is C. will have been D. should be

13. —The guard keeps close watch at the gate.

—So he does. Only those _____ knows well could be let in.

A. who B. he C. that D. what

14. Gorge is one of the brightest students who _____ from New York University.

A. is graduated B. has graduated C. have graduated D. had graduated

15. Two hundred miles _____ a long distance to cover in two hours even by fast car.

A. are B. had C. have D. is

16. He was the only one of the political leaders who _____ able to carry out his every promise.

A. have been B. has been C. were D. was.

17. No one in the department but Tom and I _____ that the director is going to resign.

A. knows B. know C. have known D. am to know

18. It was not I but you who _____ the first to run to the goal in that competition.

A. are B. was C. were D. am

19. According to the schedule, 40 % of the dam _____ to be finished by the end of this year.

A. had B. have C. are D. has

20. What the teacher and the students want to say _____ either of the countries _____ beautiful.

A. are; are B. is; is C. are; is D. is; are

II. 用动词的适当形式填空

1. The glasses here are (be) mine and the pair of glasses there is (be) my father's.

2. Look! The policeman is standing (stand) at the street corner. I know the police are searching (search) for a murderer.

3. It is (be) you who are (be) next.

4. This kind of coins is (be) valuable and these kinds of metal are (be) very rare.

5. His maths is (be) very good.
6. Between the two buildings stands (stand) a hospital.
7. In the 1930s, a lot of people were (be) out of work. 全国高考题
8. What is (be) special about the rock climbing competition? 全国高考题
9. Neither of them likes (like) maths, but both of them like (like) English.
10. Every picture except these two has been (sell).



点石成金

I. 单项填空

1. C “被邀请的人数(为单数概念)为五十,但其中有很多人(为复数概念)因为各种原因而缺席了。”故选 C。
2. A 主语是名词 a library 为单数,并是“被赠给”,故选 A。
3. D 从“but one 除了一人”可知,此处 all 是指代可数名词,指三个或三个以上,故要配复数动词。
4. A 句子的真正的主语为 telephone messages “电话留言”,为复数,又是 leave “留下”的对象,应用复数形式被动语态结构。故选 A 项。
5. A as well as telephone 作插入语,全句的主语为 E-mail,应用单数形式。
6. C 分子为 2,分母要用序数词的复数;分数词 of 接不可数名词 the land,谓语动词应用单数。
7. B desert 为不可数名词,不能用 a large number 修饰,而 a quantity of + 不可数名词时,谓语动词用单数。
8. A more than one + 名词单数,后接谓语单数形式;虽然句意为“不止一个官员全心全意地为人民服务”。serve 为及物动词,不用介词 for。
9. C 定语从句修饰的先行词为复数名词 soldiers,从句的谓语动词用复数形式;句子的主语是 John,故后空用单数形式。
10. B rather than 排除了“教师”,其前的 the education system “教育体制”是句子的主语,前空应用单数 is;后空应用过去分词作定语,表示两者的动宾关系。
11. A “你所说的”为单数概念,前空用单数 is;后空由表语所知,“我们所需要的”是“有经验的技术工人和最新的信息”,为两项,表示复数概念,应用复数 are。
12. B 表示做一件事还需要的时间数量时,应作为整体看待,用单数 is。
13. B 定语从句中的谓语为单数,因此不能用 who 或 that 作从句的主语(先行词 those 为复数),要用 he, knows 的宾语关系代词 whom 或 who/that 省略。
14. B 先行词为 one of + 名词复数,从句的谓语动词应用复数,表示“是从纽约大学毕业的最聪明的学生之一”。
15. D “两百英里要在两个小时走完”,是把这个时间作整体看待,谓语动词应用单数 is。

16. D the only one of... 定语从句的谓语动词, 根据 the only one 用单数, 符合句意“他是那些政治领袖中唯一能实现自己每个诺言者”。应用一般过去时, 与主句的过去时态一致。
17. A 句子的主语是 no one, 而不是 I, 谓语动词用单数 knows,
18. C 在 not... but... 结构中应用就近原则, 选 were, 同时也反映出在表达过去的情况。
19. D 百分数后接可数名词单数, 谓语动词应用单数形式 has, 符合句意“根据计划, 到今年年底, 大坝的 40% 必须完成”。
20. B “老师和学生想说的”为一件事, 前空谓语动词应用单数 is; 后空表示“两个国家中任何一个都漂亮”, 谓语动词也用单数 is。

II. 用动词的适当式填空

1. are; is 2. is standing; are searching 3. is; are 4. is; are 5. is 6. stands
7. were 8. is 9. likes; like 10. has been sold

第2章

动词的分类和形式



高考热点

动词的用法是高考英语考查重点之重点。单选题涉及动词,全国卷一般要占到一半,部分省份试卷高达三分之二;完形填空 20 题中一般都有七、八个空涉及动词。而对动词的考查又是多种多样的,既考查谓语动词,也考查非谓语动词,既考查意义相近的动词之间用法区别,也考查动词与其他词语的搭配;而近年来对动词的考查更趋向综合化和语境化,因此学好动词是我们学好英语的基本保证,也是我们提高自己英语考试成绩的一条捷径。

鉴于很多同学看书的毛病常常是“虎头蛇尾”,本书特意将最重要的“动词”部分放在先。趁同学们“一鼓作气”之时攻克这一难关,以后的内容就越来越易,有利于同学们越学越有信心,越学越自信。

第一节 动词的重要性

2-1 学好动词是学好英语的关键。

英语动词是英语句子的灵魂。谓语动词不但主宰着句子的含义,而且决定着句子的结构。下面五个句子中的谓语动词都是 get (过去式 got),但因在各句中 get 的类型不同,导致词义不同,句型结构也不同。

【例】He got worse yesterday. “昨天他的情况变得更糟了。”[“主—系—表”结构](S+V+P)



He got here yesterday. “昨天他到了这里。”[“主-动”结构](S+V)

He got a letter yesterday. “昨天他收到一封信。”[“主-动-宾”结构](S+V+O)

He got me a ticket yesterday. “昨天他给我买了一张票。”[“主-动-间宾-直宾”结构](S+V+IO+DO)

He got his bike repaired yesterday. “昨天他让(别人)把他的自行车修好了。”
[“主-动-宾-补”结构](S+V+O+C)

[例] If anyone happens to drop in while I am out, _____ him or her leave a message.

A. have B. get C. ask D. tell [福建高考题]

答案是 A。“在我外出期间,如果有人来访,让他或她留个口信。”所给的四个动词只有 have,可构成 have sb. do sth. 这一结构,表示“让某人干某事”。而其他则要用“get/ask/tell + to do”结构。故选 A。

[例] In our childhood, we were often _____ by Grandma to pay attention to our table manners.

A. demanded B. reminded C. allowed D. hoped [江苏高考题]

答案是 B。“儿童时期,我们经常被奶奶提醒要注意餐桌礼节。”demand 和 hope 不能构成“demand/hope sb to do sth”结构。用 remind sb to do sth 的被动结构,既符合结构要求又能吻合句意,而 allow sb to do sth 表示“允许某人干某事”,不合语境。

高中英语语法

第二节 动词的几种分类方法

动词分类对照表

依据	名称	部分例词
按单词的 含义	实义 动态动词	move, dance, speak
	动词 状态动词	stay, remain, keep
	系动词	be (am, is, are), become
	助动词	am/ is/ are, have, do, will, shall
	情态动词	can, may, must, will, shall
按句子的 成分	谓语动词	Leaves fall in autumn
	非谓语动词	to fall, falling, fallen
按需否带 宾语	及物动词	like, give, make
按动作发 生的长度	不及物动词	live, work, fall, come
	延续性动词	live, work, speak, use
	非延续性动词	come, fall, stop, leave

2-2 动词按其能否独立作谓语而分为“谓语动词”和“非谓语动词”两种。

① 谓语动词在句中作谓语,它可以和助动词连用,也可以不和助动词连用。

[例] Four British ships fired on the Bismarck, and she was finally sunk.

“四艘英国军舰向‘俾斯麦’号开火,最后她被击沉了。”

句中 fired 和 sunk 为谓语动词,前者单独构成谓语,后者与助动词 was 连用构成谓语(被动式)。

[例] 改错: For the most part, students working to earn money for their own use.

[全国高考题]

答案是把 working 改为 work。“在大多数情况下,学生为自己花钱而打工。”句子的主语是 students,而 to earn money for their own use 是目的状语,work 是句子的谓语动词。

② 非谓语动词有不定式、动名词和分词三种,它们在句中作主语、宾语、表语、定语、状语等。

[例] Play football not only makes us grow up tall and strong but also gives us a sense of fair play and team spirit.

[全国高考题]

答案是把 Play 改为 Playing。“踢足球不仅使我们能长得更高更壮,而且还能培养我们的公平竞争意识和团队精神。”动词作主语要用非谓语形式;因为是表示一般性、习惯性的事情,要用动名词。它针对谓语动词 makes 来说,是非谓语动词。

[例] 改错: I decided walk around a little before accepting I'd have to spend the night in my car.

[江西高考题]

答案是在 decided 后加 to。“我决定,在接受我将不得不在车里过夜的事实前,到处走一走”。decided 应该接带 to 的动词不定式作宾语。句中的 to walk around 和 accepting 针对谓语动词 decided,是非谓语动词。

[例] My cousin came to see me from the country, _____ me a full basket of fresh fruits.

A. brought B. bringing C. to bring D. had brought

[安徽高考题]

答案是 B。“我表哥从农村来看我,还给我带来满满一篮鲜花。”空前没有 and,说明该动词不是并列谓语(可排除 A 和 D),而是非谓语动词,即谓语动词 came 时的伴随情况(与 came 同时发生,但不表示目的,可排除 C),应用现在分词 bringing 做状语。

2-3 动词按其构成动词词组的作用分为四类:实义动词、连系动词、情态动词和助动词。

① 实义动词意义完全,能够单独用作谓语。

[例] Nobody forgot Merlin's grand entrance for a long time!

[全国高考题]

“好久也没人忘记默林的辉煌的人场式。”

句中 forgot 是实义动词,独立用作谓语。

[例] Mick is reading when Alice enters.

“艾丽斯进去时,迈克正在读书。”



句中 is reading 和 enters 均为实义动词,用作句子谓语。

- ② 连系动词意义不完全,用作谓语,连接主语和表语。

[例] These were the first roller skates.

[全国高考题]

“这些是最早的旱冰鞋。”

句中 were 为连系动词,用作谓语,连接主语 These 和表语 the... skates。

[例] 改错: But one and a half years later, I now think English fun to learn.

答案是在 English 后加 is。“但一年半后,我现在认为学习英语很有乐趣。”think 后的宾语从句的主语 English 和其表语 fun 之间用系动词 is 连接。

- ③ 情态动词有一定的意义,无人称和数的变化,和不带 to 的动词不定式一起构成谓语,表示对动作或状态的各种情感、态度和看法。

[详见第七章]

[例] One should think and decide for oneself.

[全国高考题]

“一个人应独立思考,自作决断。”

句中 should 为情态动词,其意义为“应该”,它和动词原形即不带 to 的不定式 think 一起构成谓语。

[例] I could see why Doug was so shaken.

[全国高考题]

“我能明白道格为什么那样震惊。”

句中 could 为情态动词,其意义为“能”,它和动词原形(即不带 to 的不定式)see 一起构成谓语。

温馨提示



情态动词后有动词省略时,可接带 to 的不定式作其他句子成分。

[例] 改错: My parents love me dearly of course and will do all they can make sure that I get a good education.

[全国高考题]

答案是在 can 后加 to。“我父母当然非常爱我,会尽他们的一切所能来确保我受到良好的教育。”在 they can 定语从句中,can 后省略了前面出现过的 do,故用 to make sure... 作目的状语。

- ④ 助动词一般无实际意义,只是帮助主动词构成谓语,表示时态、语态、语气等,或构成疑问式或否定式。

[详见第六章]

[例] Had anything been taken?

[全国高考题]

“有什么被拿走了?”

句中 Had been 是助动词,帮助主动词 taken 构成过去完成时被动式疑问句。

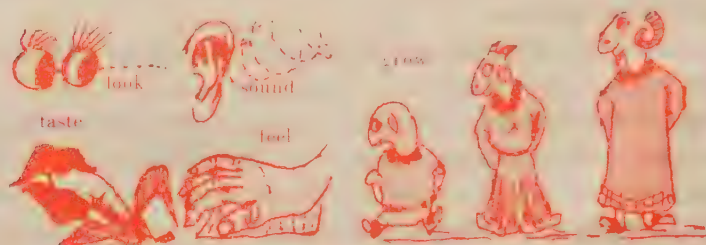
[例] He was always changing his mind and was never satisfied.

全国高考题

“他老改主意,从不满意。”

句中第一个 was 是助动词,帮助主动词 changing 构成过去进行时;第二个 was 是连系动词,作谓语,连接主语 He 和表语 satisfied。

2-4 连系动词在句中作谓语动词,后面跟表语。连系动词有两种:一种表特征或状态,另一种表状态变化过程。



- ① 表示特征或状态的连系动词有 be“是”, appear“看起来”, seem“似乎”, look“看上去”, sound“听起来”, smell“闻上去”, taste“尝起来”, feel“感觉到;摸起来”, stand(处于某种状态), remain“仍然”, keep“保持”等。

[例] His orders were to destroy the British ships that were carrying supplies. [全国高考题]
“他的命令是摧毁运载给养的英舰。”

句中第一个 were 是连系动词,第二个 were 是助动词。

[例] The water _____ cool when I jumped into the pool for morning exercise.

- A. was felt B. is felt C. felt D. feels [全国高考题]

答案是 C。“我跳进池里晨练时,感觉水很凉。”feel 的主语是物 water,表示“摸起来,给…感觉”,是连系动词,后接形容词,不用被动语态。根据从句 jumped 可判断出是过去发生的事,要用一般过去时 felt。

[例] Although he has taken a lot of medicine, his health _____ poor. [全国高考题]

- A. proves B. remains C. maintains D. continues

答案是 B。“虽然他吃了大量的药,但他的身体还很不好。”因 poor 是个形容词,空格处应为系动词。maintain 和 continue 不能用作连系动词,故排除 C 和 D。prove 作系动词意为“证明是”,而 remain 作系动词意为“保持;依然是;仍旧”,故后者符合句意。

- ② 可以和形容词连用表示状态变化过程的连系动词有 become“变成”, get“成为”, grow“变得”, fall“变成”, turn“变成”, prove“证明是”, go“变得”等。

[例] —Can I join your club?

—You can when you _____ a bit older.

[全国高考题]

- A. get B. will get C. are getting D. will have got

答案是 A。“我能加入你们的俱乐部吗?”“等你再大些时才行。”句中的 get 是连系动词,表变化过程。

温馨提示

虽然 become, get, go, grow, run, turn 都可以表示状态的变化,但要注意下面的几点:

- (1) 指人的情绪或身体状态的变化,或表示天气、社会的发展变化,多用 become 与 get,两者可以互换。

[例] Hearing what he said, the teacher got/became angry “听到他所说的话,老师生气了。”

[例] I hope you will get/become well soon. “我希望你不久能痊愈。”

[例] Our country is getting/becoming stronger and stronger. “我们的国家日益强大。”

[例] It's becoming/getting colder and colder. “天变得越来越冷。”

- (2) 指人的身体、精神或事物向不好的方面变化时,多用 go, 所以它后面的形容词常常是表示消极意义的。

[例] The meat has gone bad in such hot weather. “在如此热的天气,肉坏了。”

[例] On hearing the news of the accident in the coal mine, she _____ pale.

A. got B. changed C. went D. appeared

答案是 C。“她一听到煤矿里出事故的消息,就脸色苍白。”表示“朝不好的方面变化”,应用系动词 go。change 作“变化”解,为行为动词,不接形容词 pale; appear 和 get 虽作系动词,但前者表示“似乎;好像”,后者多表示“变为新情感、情形、状态”,两者都不与 pale 搭配使用。

- (3) 指颜色的变化时,多用 turn 或 go。

[例] The leaves turn yellow in autumn. “秋天树叶变黄了。”

[例] The traffic lights _____ green and I pulled away.

A. came B. grew C. got D. went

答案是 D。“交通灯变绿了,我又开车离去”。表示颜色“变”,应用 went; come 作系动词时,常接 true,表示“实现”。

- (4) become 可接表示职业等的带有冠词的单数或复数名词;turn 接无冠词的表示职业的单数名词或接表示一定时间、年龄的数量词。

[例] She became a lawyer. 她成了一名律师。

[例] He used to be a teacher till he turned writer. 成为作家之前他是一名教师。

2-5 实义动词可分为及物动词和不及物动词。



① 及物动词要求有一个或两个(直接和间接)宾语或复合宾语,多数可用于被动语态。

[例] They have short, silky fur.

[全国高考题]

“它们有短而光滑的毛发。”

句中 have 为及物动词,有一个宾语 fur。

[例] The captain told him that John had been picked up by another ship.

“船长告诉他约翰已经被另一艘船救起来了。”

句中 told 和 picked up 为及物动词,前者有两个宾语,一个是间接宾语 him,另一个是直接宾语 that... ship;后者和助动词构成被动语态。

[例] Dan asked his brother to go instead.

[全国高考题]

“丹请他的哥哥代他去。”

句中 asked 是及物动词,后接复合宾语 his brother... instead (to go... 为宾补)。

温馨提示

有些及物动词的运用有其自己固定的主语;而有些动词常接一些习惯性宾语或结构。我们在平时学习中,要留心记忆。

[例] Some passengers complain that it usually _____ so long to fill in travel insurance documents.

A. costs B. takes C. spends D. spares

答案是 B。“乘客们抱怨通常要花那么长时间填旅行保险文件。”spare 表示“节省;抽出(时间)”,不合题意。其他几个动词都含“花、用”之意,但 spend 的主语一般为人;cost 后面的宾语一般为钱之类的东西;而只有 take 既可用 it 作形式主语,也接时间,用于句型 “It takes (some time) to do sth.”。

[例] My brother worked all summer vacation, saving money to _____ his hobby of photography.

[上海高考题]

A. seek B. search C. hunt D. pursue

答案是 D。“我的兄弟整个暑假工作,攒钱来满足摄影的嗜好。”几个动词中 pursue 常接 one's hobby 表示“追求嗜好”。

[例] He is such a man who is always _____ fault with other people.

A. putting B. seeking C. finding D. looking for

答案是 C。“他就是这样一个人,总是挑别人毛病。”find fault with sb 为固定短语,意为“给别人挑毛病”,符合语境;比较:seek“探索,寻求”;look for“找”。

② 不及物动词不能接宾语,不能用于被动语态。

[例] It was already past midnight and only three young men _____ in the tea house.

A. left B. remained C. delayed D. deserted [安徽高考题]

答案是 B。“已经过了午夜,只有三个年轻人还继续待在茶馆里。”leave“留下(某人)”,delay“延迟;耽搁”,desert“丢开;抛弃”,三者都为及物动词,此处要用被动语态;而 leave 作不及物动词,表示“离开”,不合题意。故只有 remain 意为

“逗留(在某处)”,为不及物动词,符合语法及意义的要求。

2-6 实义动词还可分为持续性动词和瞬间动词。

- ① 持续性动词所表示的动作可以延续一段时间或相当长的一段时间,如: live, work, study, learn, sleep 等;持续性动词能与表示一段时间的状态语连用。

[例] They _____ the train until it disappeared in the distance.

[全国高考题]

A. saw B. watched C. noticed D. observed

答案是 B。“他们凝视着火车,直至消失在远方。”因有 until 从句表延续一段时间,动词必须可延续,排除 A 和 C。用 watch (≈ to keep one's eyes fixed on sb. or sth.) 比用 observe (≈ watch carefully) 更加贴切些。

[例] Police are now searching for a woman who is reported to _____ since the flood hit the area last Friday.

[山东高考题]

A. have been missing B. have got lost C. be missing D. get lost

答案是 A。“现在警方在搜寻一位据报道从上周洪水袭击这个地区时就失踪了的妇女。”“失踪”发生在“报道前”,应用 be reported + to have done 结构,可排除 C 和 D, since 引导的为一段时间状语,应用 have been missing (为形容词) 表示持续,不用 have got lost (got 为非延续性动词,又为肯定结构)。

- ② 瞬间动词表示的动作不能延续(即动作一经发生后就完结),如 go, come, arrive, leave, begin, start, open, close, join 等;瞬间动词的肯定式不能与表示一段时间的 for 或 since 或 how long 等状语连用(但它的否定形式则可以)。

[例] His father got ill. His father died. I have received his letter. “他父亲病了。他父亲死了。我已经收到他的信了。”

句中 got, died 和 have received 是瞬间动词。我们不能说:

His father got ill for five days. (×) His father died for five days. (×)

I have received his letter for five days. (×)

异曲同工

我们也可以下列形式来表达:

- (1) “It is (was) + 多少时间 + since... (▲动词要用过去时)”。如:

It is five days since his father got ill. It is five days since his father died.

It is five days since I received his letter.

- (2) “主语 + 谓语 (▲动词要用过去时) + 多少时间 ago”。如:

His father got ill five days ago. His father died five days ago.

I received his letter five days ago.

- (3) 用 be 的完成形式表示。如:

His father has been ill for five days. His father has been dead for five days.

温馨提示

当瞬间动词为否定形式时,表示“该动作一直没有发生”的一种可延续“状态”(而不是表示“动作”)。

[例] Mary didn't leave home for five months. She hasn't come here for five months. I haven't received her letter for five months. “玛丽5个月没有离开家了。她5个月没来了。我5个月没有收到她的信了。”

“没有离开”、“没有来”、“没有收到”等状态都可以延续一段时间,因此,在这种情况下可以与 for 引导的状态语连用。

触类旁通

[例] “How long has he been a Party member?” “他入党多久了?”

“He has been a Party member for over ten years.” “他入党十多年了。”

我们不能说:“How long has he joined the Party?” (×)

“He has joined the Party for over ten years.” (×)

同样,下列句子也是错误的:How long will you leave home? (×)

How long may I borrow the book? (×) How long did you come here? (×)

异曲同工

这些句子中的瞬间性动词应改为持续性动词或表示“状态”的动词:

How long will you be away from home?

How long may I keep the book? How long have you been here?

帮你归纳

常用的瞬间动词与可延续性动词的对应关系有:

买 buy—have; 离开 leave—be away; 借 borrow—keep; 来(某处) come—be in + 某处; 去(某处) go—be in + 某处; 加入 join—be in + 团体; be a member of + 团体; 死 die—be dead; 成为 become—be

③ 瞬间动词与 till(until)的时间状语连用时,常用否定形式。

[例] My uncle _____ until he was forty-five.

[上海高考题]

A. married B. didn't marry C. was not marrying D. would marry

答案是B。“我叔叔直到45岁才结婚。”marry既可用作及物动词,也可用作不及物动词,但都是非延续性动词,应用一般过去时的否定句与until连用,陈述过去的情况。

第三节 动词的兼类

2-7 同一个动词可用作不同种类的动词。

[例] He has a full-time job at home.

“他在家里有份专职工作。”

句中 has 为实义动词,表示“有”。

[全国高考试题]

[例] Now I have finished a car repair course.

“现在我已经学完汽车修理课程。”

句中 have 为助动词,与 finished 一起构成现在完成时。

[例] He had to raise the children all by himself.

“他不得不独自养育孩子们。”

句中 had to 是情态动词。

[全国高考试题]

[例] He feels helpless without Rupert.

“没了鲁珀特他感到孤弱无助。”

句中 feels 是连系动词“感到”。

[全国高考试题]

[例] Dr. Johnson felt in his pocket.

“约翰逊医生在口袋里摸了摸。”

句中 felt 是实义动词“摸”。

[全国高考试题]

第四节 动词短语的5种类型

2-8 五种不同的短语动词。

① “动词 + 介词”相当于一个及物动词,这类短语动词的重音一般都落在动词上。

[例] It depends on our age, education, and even where we live.

[全国高考试题]

“它部分地取决于我们的年龄、教育程度,甚至我们的居住地。”

句中 depends on 为“动词 + 介词”型动词短语。这类动词短语的宾语位置比较固定,一般皆置于介词之后。

[例] If you run into any problems when you arrive at the airport, give me a ring.

“如果你到机场时遇到任何问题,给我来电话。”

句中的 run into 为“动词 + 介词”型动词短语,意为“碰见;遇到”。

[全国高考试题]

② “动词 + 副词”这类短语动词有的可以用作及物动词,有的可用作不及物动词。

[例] After he retired from office, Rogers took up painting for a while, but soon lost interest.

“在解职后,罗杰斯从事绘画一段时间,但很快就失去了兴趣。”

[山东高考试题]

句中 took up 为“动词 + 副词”型动词短语,用作及物动词,表示“从事/开始干某事”。

[例] The dictionary is being printed and it will soon come out. “字典正在印刷,很快就会出版/发行”

句中 come out 属“动词 + 副词”型动词短语,用作不及物动词。

温馨提示

当“动词 + 副词”型动词短语的宾语是名词时,它可以置于动词短语之后,亦可置于动词和副词之间;但若宾语由代词担任时,则只能置于动词和副词之间。

【例】The British tried to slow the Bismarck down.

“英国人设法让俾斯麦号慢下来。”

the Bismarck 为名词短语,也可用... to slow down the Bismarck。

【例】—Smoking is bad for your health.

—Yes, I know. But I simply can't _____.

A. give it up B. give it in C. give it out D. give it away

答案是 A。“抽烟对你的身体有害。”“是的,我知道,但是我就是不能戒掉。”
give in“让步;屈服”,不及物,故 B 错。give out“放出,发出;分发;公布;耗尽”和 give away“奉送;泄漏;塌下”与 smoking 不搭配。give up smoking 意为“戒烟”(it 代替 smoking,须放在 up 前)。

③“动词 + 副词 + 介词”这类短语动词一律用作及物动词。

【例】The German commander wanted to stay away from a fight with British warships.

“德国指挥官想要避免与英国军舰交战。”

句中短语动词 stay away from 为“动词 + 副词 + 介词”型动词短语,用作及物动词。

④“动词 + 名词(或代词) + 介词”这类短语动词也只能用作及物动词。

【例】改错: Suddenly, I caught a sight of my English teacher in the crowd.

答案是去掉 sight 前的 a 去掉。“突然,我看到了人群中的我英语老师。”catch sight of 为“动词 + 名词 + 介词”,习惯上不用冠词。

【例】Dick could do nothing about bad traffic.

“狄克对恶劣的交通状况无能为力。”

句中短语动词 do nothing about 用作及物动词。

⑤“be + 形容词(包括相当于形容词的过去分词) + 介词”这类短语动词也相当于及物动词。

【例】He wondered whether Dr. Johnson was worthy of trust.

“他想知道到底约翰逊医生值不值得信赖。”

句中短语动词 was worthy of 用作及物动词。

【例】People have always been curious _____ how living things on the earth exactly began.

A. in B. at C. of D. about

答案是 D。“人们总是对地球上生命到底是如何产生的感到好奇。”be curious + about 为“be + 形容词 + 介词”型动词短语,是固定搭配。

第五节 动词的5种基本形式

2-9 动词的基本形式。

① 现在时(原形, -s/-es 形式)。

【例】While most people use little white lies to make life easier, the majority of Americans care about honesty in both public and personal life. [全国高考题]

“虽然多数人用一些善意的小谎言使生活更舒适些,但是大多数美国人不论是在公共生活中还是在个人生活中都很重诚实的品质。”

动词现在时原形,是指前面不加to的动词不定式形式,也就是在词典条目中所用的动词形式。(句中 use 和 care 就是动词原形。)

【例】He moves around her office at work and goes shopping with her.

“上班时他在她的办公室周围跑,还与她一起去购物。”

动词现在时的-s/-es形式,即动词现在时原形后加-s/-es的形式,它是主语为第三人称单数、时态为一般现在时的谓语动词形式。(句中 moves 和 goes 即是动词现在时-s/-es形式。)

② 过去式(-ed形式,不规则形式)。

【例】The driver stopped his car when he saw the truck crossing the street.

“司机看见卡车在横穿马路,便把他的小汽车停了下来。”

动词过去式有-ed形式和不规则形式两种类型。属于-ed形式的叫规则动词,属于不规则形式的叫不规则动词,它们都用于一般过去时。(句中 stopped 是动词过去时的-ed形式, saw 是不规则形式动词 see 的过去形式。)

③ 过去分词(-ed形式,不规则形式)。

【例】He had never been trusted.

“他从未被信任过。”

与动词过去时一样,动词过去分词也有-ed形式和不规则形式两种类型。它们用于构成英语的完成时和被动语态。句中 been 和 trusted 分别是动词过去分词的不规则形式和-ed形式。

④ V-ing形式。

【例】Most families in the country are doing everything they can to save money so they can fight the high cost of living. [全国高考题]

“在这个国家,大多数家庭都在尽一切可能地省钱,以对付高昂的生活费用。”

动词的V-ing形式是由动词现在时原形加词尾V-ing构成的,根据其在句子中的作用,它分为动名词和现在分词两种类别。(句中 doing 和 living 分别是现在

分词和动名词。)

2-10 规则动词的过去式-ed形式和过去分词-ed形式的构成方式及读音规则。

例 词	情 况	一般情况下 词尾加-ed	以-e结尾的 加-d	以“辅音字 母+y结尾” 的将y变为 i,再加-ed	以重读闭音节或-r音 节结尾,末尾只有一个 辅音字母(x除外)的, 双写末尾的辅音字母, 再加-ed
在清辅音 后读/t/		work <u>ed</u>	hope <u>d</u>		stop <u>ped</u>
		finish <u>ed</u>	like <u>d</u>	-	map <u>ped</u>
		help <u>ed</u>	joke <u>d</u>		clap <u>ped</u>
		tax <u>ed</u>			
在元音和 浊辅音后 读/d/		follow <u>ed</u>	agree <u>d</u>		plan <u>ned</u>
		stay <u>ed</u>	believe <u>d</u>	study→stud <u>ied</u>	refer <u>red</u>
		call <u>ed</u>	live <u>d</u>	try→tr <u>ied</u>	prefer <u>red</u>
		enter <u>ed</u>	stare <u>d</u>		star <u>red</u>
在辅音/t/、 /d/后读 /ɪd/		want <u>ed</u>			admit <u>ted</u>
		rest <u>ed</u>	-	-	omit <u>ted</u>
		need <u>ed</u>			permit <u>ted</u>

[例] I'm very hungry—I _____ (错过) lunch.

答案是 missed。“我很饿——我错过了午饭。”

温馨提示

少数双音节动词,尽管重音在第一个音节,但仍双写末尾的辅音字母,然后再加-ed(现在分词亦如此),如:travel—travelled program—programmed worship—worshipped

但美国英语不双写辅音字母,如:travel—traveled

2-11 不规则动词的现在时原形、过去时和过去分词的构成模式。

① 第一类不规则动词的现在时原形、过去时和过去分词同形(A-A-A型)。

原形	过去时	过去分词	汉义	原形	过去时	过去分词	汉义
beset	beset	beset	包围	burst	burst	burst	爆炸
cast	cast	cast	抛	cost	cost	cost	花费

原形	过去时	过去分词	汉义	原形	过去时	过去分词	汉义
cut	cut	cut	割	hit	hit	hit	打
hurt	hurt	hurt	受伤	inset	inset	inset	嵌入
let	let	let	让	put	put	put	放置
read	read[red]	read[red]	读	set	set	set	安置
shed	shed	shed	滴下	shut	shut	shut	关闭
split	split	split	割裂	spread	spread	spread	伸展
thrust	thrust	thrust	用力推				

② 第二类不规则动词的过去时和过去分词有两种形式。

原形	过去时	过去分词	汉义
awake	awoke, awaked	awoken, awaked	唤醒
bet	bet, betted	bet, betted	赌
bless	blessed, blest	blessed, blest	祝福
burn	burned, burnt	burned, burnt	燃烧
curse	cursed, curst	cursed, curst	诅咒
dream	dreamed, dreamt	dreamed, dreamt	做梦
dwell	dwelt, dwelled	dwelt, dwelled	居住
kneel	knelt, kneeled	knelt, kneeled	屈膝
knit	knitted, knit	knitted, knit	编织
lean	leaned, leant	leaned, leant	靠
leap	leaped, leapt	leaped, leapt	跳跃
learn	learned, learnt	learned, learnt	学习
light	lighted, lit	lighted, lit	点着
rid	rid, ridded	rid, ridded	免除
shoe	shoed, shod	shoed, shod	使穿鞋
sink	sank, sunk	sunk, sunken	下沉
smell	smelled, smelt	smelled, smelt	发出气味
speed	sped, speeded	sped, speeded	急行
spell	spelled, spelt	spelled, spelt	拼写
spill	spilled, spilt	spilled, spilt	使溢出
spit	spat, spit	spat, spit	吐出
spoil	spoiled, spoilt	spoiled, spoilt	损害
sweat	sweated, sweat	sweated, sweat	发汗

原形	过去时	过去分词	汉义
thrive	thrived, throve	thrived, thriven	兴旺
wake	woke, waked	waked, woken	醒着
wet	wet, wetted	wet, wetted	淋湿

③ 第三类不规则动词的过去时和过去分词同形(A - B - B 型)

原形	过去时	过去分词	汉义
baby-sit	baby-sat	baby-sat	充任临时保姆
behold	beheld	beheld	注视
bend	bent	bent	使弯曲
bind	bound	bound	捆
bleed	bled	bled	流血
breed	bred	bred	养育
bring	brought	brought	拿来
build	built	built	建造
buy	bought	bought	买
catch	caught	caught	捕捉
cling	clung	clung	粘着
creep	crept	crept	爬行
deal	dealt	dealt	分配
dig	dug	dug	挖
feed	fed	fed	喂
feel	felt	felt	触摸
fight	fought	fought	作战
find	found	found	找出

原形	过去时	过去分词	汉义	原形	过去时	过去分词	汉义
flee	fled	fled	逃跑	fling	flung	flung	猛冲
foretell	foretold	foretold	预言	forget	forgot	forgot, forgotten	忘记

原形	过去时	过去分词	汉义	原形	过去时	过去分词	汉义
get	got	got, gotten	得到	grind	ground	ground	磨
hang	hung	hung	挂	have, has	had	had	持有
hear	heard	heard	听到	hide	hid	hid, hidden	隐藏
hold	held	held	拿住	keep	kept	kept	保持
lay	laid	laid	放置	lead	led	led	引导
leave	left	left	离开	lend	lent	lent	借贷
lose	lost	lost	遗失	make	made	made	制作
mean	meant	meant	意思	meet	met	met	遇到
misunderstand	misunderstood	misunderstood	误会	pay	paid	paid	支付
say	said	said	说	seek	sought	sought	寻觅
sell	sold	sold	卖	send	sent	sent	寄, 送
shine	shone	shone	发光	shoot	shot	shot	放(炮)
sit	sat	sat	坐	sleep	slept	slept	睡
slide	slid	slid	滑行	spend	spent	spent	花费
spin	spun	spun	纺织	stand	stood	stood	站立
stick	stuck	stuck	刺	sting	stung	stung	以针刺
strike	struck	struck, stricken	击	string	strung	strung	用线串起来
sweep	swept	swept	打扫	swing	swung	swung	摇摆
teach	taught	taught	教	tell	told	told	告诉
think	thought	thought	思考	understand	understood	understood	了解
weep	wept	wept	流泪	win	won	won	获胜
wind	wound	wound	蜿蜒				

④ 第四类不规则动词现在时原形、过去时和过去分词都不相同(A-B-C型)。

原形	过去时	过去分词	汉义
arise	arose	arisen	发生, 上升

原形	过去时	过去分词	汉义
backbite	backbit	backbitten	诽谤
be[am, is, are]	was, were	been	是
bear	bore	borne, born	生(孩子), 携带
befall	befell	befallen	发生
begin	began	begun	开始
bite	bit	bitten, bit	咬
blow	blew	blown	吹
break	broke	broken	打破
choose	chose	chosen	选择
do, does	did	done	做
draw	drew	drawn	拉, 拖
drink	drank	drunk	喝
drive	drove	driven	驾驶
eat	ate	eaten	吃
fall	fell	fallen	掉落
fly	flew	flown	飞
forbid	forbade, forbad	forbidden	禁止
foresee	foresaw	foreseen	预知
forgive	forgave	forgiven	原谅
freeze	froze	frozen	结冰
give	gave	given	给
go	went	gone	去
grow	grew	grown	成长
know	knew	known	知道
lie	lay	lain	躺
mistake	mistook	mistaken	误认

原形	过去时	过去分词	汉义
ride	rode	ridden	骑
ring	rang	rung	鸣
rise	rose	risen	上升
see	saw	seen	看
shake	shook	shaken	摇
show	showed	shown, showed	显露
sing	sang		唱歌
sow	sowed		种植
speak	spoke	spoken	说话
steal	stole	stolen	偷
strive	strove	striven	努力
swear	swore	sworn	发誓
swim	swam	swum	游泳
take	took	taken	拿
tear	tore	torn	撕裂
throw	threw	thrown	投
wear	wore	worn	穿着
weave	wove	woven	编织
write	wrote	written	书写

⑤ 第五类不规则动词的过去分词与现在时原形相同(A - B - A)。

原形	过去时	过去分词	汉义
become	became	become	变成
come	came	come	来
overcome	overcame	overcome	击败
run	ran	run	跑

2-12 动词的-ing 形式(包括动名词和现在分词)的构成方式。

[例] They finished _____ (测量) that piece of land last week.

答案是 measuring。“他们上周完成了对那块土地的测量。”

情况	构成法	例词
一般情况	加-ing/-ing/	go - go <u>ing</u> study - study <u>ing</u>
以不发音的字母 e 结尾	去 e, 加-ing/-ing/	live - liv <u>ing</u> move - mov <u>ing</u> (区别: be <u>ing</u> , see <u>ing</u>)
以重读闭音节或-r 音节 结尾, 末尾又只有一个 辅音字母(x 除外)	将末尾辅音字 母双写再加 -ing/-ing/	plan - plann <u>ing</u> star - starr <u>ing</u> begin - beginn <u>ing</u> refer - referr <u>ing</u> (区别: open <u>ing</u> , back <u>ing</u> , fix <u>ing</u>)

温馨提示

- (1) 少数双音节的动词, 虽然重音在第一音节, 英国英语中也双写末尾的辅音字母, 然后加-ing, 但美国英语中一般不双写, 如: 旅行 travel—[英] travelling—[美] traveling
- (2) 少数几个以 ie 结尾的重读开音节动词, 应将 ie 变为 y, 再加-ing。如: die—dy-ing“死”, tie—tying“系、拴”, lie—lying“躺、撒谎”
- (3) 要注意下面几个词的-ing 形式: hoe—hoeing“锄”, toe—toeing“用足尖立或走、踢、触等”, picnic—picnicking“野餐”, panic—panicking“惊慌”, dye—dyeing“染”。

2-13 动词第三人称单数现在时-s/-es 形式的构成方式及读音规则(与名词复数的构成方式及读音规则一样)。

[例] Angela Carraro runs an Italian restaurant on 42nd street.

“安吉拉·卡拉罗在第 42 大街开了一家意大利式餐馆。”

情况	构成法	例词
一般情况	加-s	reads, writes, says
以 ch, sh, s, x 结尾的并且发 咝沙的词	加-es/-iz/	teaches, washes, guesses, fixes
以“辅音字母+o”结尾的词	加-es/-z/	goes
以“辅音字母+y”结尾的词	变 y 为 i 再加-es/-z/	try - tries, carry - carries

情 况	读音	例 词
在/p/, /t/, /k/, /f/等清辅音之后	/s/	helps, hates, asks, laughs
在/s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/等咝沙音之后	/ɪz/	faces, rises, urges, watches, wishes
在浊辅音和元音之后	/z/	plans, shows, cries

即学即用

I. 单项填空

- C David and Vicky married.
— For about three years. [北京高考题]
A. How long were; being B. How long have; got
C. How long have; been D. How long did; get
- Do you like the material?
— Yes, it C very soft. [全国高考题]
A. is feeling B. felt C. feels D. is felt
- Mummy, can I put the peaches in the cupboard?
— No, dear. They don't well. Put them in the fridge instead. [北京高考题]
A. keep B. fit C. get D. last
- They've us £ 150,000 for the house. Shall we take it? [湖南高考题]
A. provided B. supplied C. shown D. offered
- How about eight o'clock outside the cinema?
— That A D fine. [全国高考题]
A. fits B. meets C. satisfies D. suits
- The evening news comes on at seven o'clock and only thirty minutes.
A. keeps B. continues C. finishes D. lasts [全国高考题]
- If you are feeling so tired, perhaps a little sleep would B. [浙江高考题]
A. act B. help C. serve D. last
- Her talent and experience C D her to the respect of her colleagues. [湖南高考题]
A. permitted B. qualified C. deserved D. entitled
- If anybody calls, tell them I'm out, and ask them to D their name and address.
A. pass B. write C. take D. leave [全国高考题]
- Ow! I've burnt myself! — How did you do that?
— I A a hot pot. [浙江高考题]
A. touched B. kept C. felt D. held
- I don't want B like I'm speaking ill of anybody, but the manager's plan is unfair.
A. to sound B. to be sounded C. to be heard D. to be listened to [天津高考题]

C. sounding

D. to have sounded

12. The flowers are sweet in the botanic garden attract the visitors to the beauty of nature. [上海高考题]

A. to smell

B. smelling

C. smelt

D. to be smelt

13. His mother had thought it would be good for his character to run away from home and earn some money on his own. [北京高考题]

A. run away

B. take away

C. keep away

D. get away

14. The engine of the ship was out of order and the bad weather added to the helplessness of the crew at sea. [上海高考题]

A. added to

B. resulted from

C. turned out

D. made up

15. Don't mention that at the beginning of the story, or it may give away the shocking ending.

A. give away

B. give out

C. give up

D. give off

16. The idea puzzled me so much that I stopped for a few seconds to try to make it out. [北京高考题]

A. make it out

B. make it off

C. make it up

D. make it over

17. He made out some French while he was away on a business trip in Paris. [上海高考题]

A. made out

B. picked up

C. gave up

D. took in

18. —Four dollars a pair? I think it's a bit too much.
—If you buy three pairs, the price for each will come down to three fifty. [上海高考题]

A. come down

B. take down

C. turn over

D. go over

19. I was still sleeping when the fire broke out, and then it spread quickly. [广东高考题]

A. broke out

B. put out

C. came out

D. got out

20. As I grew up in a small town at the foot of a mountain, the visit to the village called up scenes of my childhood. [湖北高考题]

A. called up

B. called for

C. called on

D. called in

II. 用所给系动词的适当形式填空

sound seem look feel turn taste become get grow go

- What can you observe in the picture? —The girl seems a little nervous.
- His accent seems strange to my ear.
- How are you going today?
- Your son grows so tall!
- They are quite happy about their new apartment.
- She hoped to become an artist.
- I must be off now. I seem late.
- The leaves turn yellow in autumn.
- The frightened girl got mad.
- Food in the south tastes sweet.

III. 用动词短语 make up 的适当形式填空,并解释不同含义

1. Mrs. White and her husband had a quarrel last night but _____ it _____ this morning.
2. _____ a dialogue using "to look for".
3. Is that story true? You _____ it _____, didn't you?
4. The queen went to bed late every night after it _____ by the maids.
5. If you miss a lesson, you must turn to your teacher _____ it _____.
6. The actress went into her dressing-room _____.
7. How is John _____ in his new job?
8. When a quarrel _____ once _____, the best thing is to forget it.
9. The new boy _____ to the teacher by sharpening her pencils.
10. Apples _____ what you lack in your diet.



点石成金

I. 单项填空

1. C “结婚有三年了”,应使用现在完成时,又因 get 为非延续性动词,不能和 how long 搭配使用,排除 B 和 D。
2. C feel 是连系动词,表示材料的特征“摸起来非常柔软”,应用一般现在时的主动语态。
3. A keep 作不及物动词时,符合句意“桃子不能保存得好”。比较:fit well“非常适合”,“get well”“痊愈;复原”,last 和 well 不搭配。
4. D sb. offer sb money for sth. 句型结构表示“主动出价钱”与“我们接受这个价钱(it 指‘所出价钱’)吗?”意义一致。
5. D. suit 常用 suit sb fine 表示“很适合某人”。
6. D keep 表示“保持;持续”时,后接形容词或名词;continue 表示“继续”时,也多不接表示段的时间状语;finish 为非延续性动词。只有 last 可和表示一段的时间状语连用。
7. B help 既可作及物动词,也用作不及物动词,作“使人好受;使情况好转;减轻(痛苦等)”。
8. D entitle sb. to sth. 表示“给某人……权利(或资格)”合句意。
9. D 电话留言时,take 用于接电话一方,leave 用于打电话一方。此句中的 them 为打电话一方,故选 D。
10. A “摸了滚烫的锅。”后面宾语是 a hot pot。不长时间的“摸”或“持有”而短暂地“触”或“碰”,只能用 touch。
11. A want to do sth. 表示“想做某事情”,sound 为系动词,不定式短语中也不用被动式。
12. B 空后的 sweet 为形容词,smell 此处用作系动词,无被动形式;attract 为谓语动

词,故应用现在分词作定语,修饰 the flowers。

因无宾语,及物短语 take away 予以排除。“run away from home”意为“逃离家庭”;“keep away from home”意为“避开家庭”;“get away from home”意为“离开家庭”。纵观全句,D 项比较合适。

A 意为“增加”,B 意为“由…导致”,C 意为“生产”,D 意为“组成”。根据句意,应选 A。

15. “否则会暴露惊心动魄的(故事)结尾”,而 give away 的若干意思中有一个意思为“泄漏,暴露”。

16. “这个想法使我很困惑不解,我停下来花了点时间理解领悟。”make out 的基本意思为“分辨;理解;领悟;写出;主张”等。

17. “pick up”意思较多,其中有一个意为“未经专门上课而学得…的知识”。

18. 前面说“每双四美元?”,后面说买三双“每双三美元五十美分”,说明价格降低了,故选 come down“下降”。

19. break out 指“(战争、火灾等)突然发生,爆发”,符合句意。比较:put out“扑灭”,come out“出来”,get out“离开,逃脱”。故选 A。

20. 由“我在山脚下的一个小镇长大”,可推知“参观这个村庄”应该是“使我想起了”童年的场景。比较:call for“要求;提倡”;call on“号召;拜访”;call in“召集”。

II 用所给系动词的适当形式填空

1. looks/ seems 2. sounds 3. feeling 4. has grown 5. seem/ seemed / got / became 6. become 7. is getting 8. turn / go 9. has gone 10. tastes

III 用动词短语 make up 的适当形式填空,并解释不同意义

- made; up 重新和好
- Make up 编(写)
- made; up 杜撰
- had been made up 收拾床铺
- to make; up 补课
- to make up 化装
- making up 做
- has; been made up 重新和好,不吵架
- made up 交朋友,讨好
- make up 补充

第3章

动词的时态



高考热点

动词的时态是历年高考英语的必考内容。无论是全国,还是近年部分省市卷,在15个单选题中至少有2题。英语中共有16种时态,但1989年以来,在全国高考英语试题中一共只考过9种(加省市卷也只有11种)。近年来对时态考查的热点是一般现在时、一般过去时、现在完成时、过去完成时和过去进行时。另外,部分省市卷上加强了对具体语境的考查。

考生平时应在了解各种时态的用法和构成的基础上,留心英语母语者在实际生活中是如何使用各种时态的,从而领悟时态用法的真谛。在考试答题时,我们要研读题干,寻找尽可能多的“时间参照信息”,尤其是句中其他动词的时态及修饰动词的状语所提供的信息。

第一节 时态的概念

3-1 时态是英语谓语动词的一种形式,表示动作发生的时间和所处的状态。

① 十六种时态形式列表

动词 时态	一般	完成	进行	完成进行
现在	一般现在时 I work.	现在完成时 I have worked.	现在进行时 I am working.	现在完成进行时 I have been working.

时 间	一般	完成	进行	完成进行
过去	一般过去时 I worked.	过去完成时 I had worked	过去进行时 I was working.	过去完成进行时 I had been working
将来	一般将来时 I will work.	将来完成时 I will have worked.	将来进行时 I will be working.	将来完成进行时 I will have been working.
过去将来	一般过去将来时 I would work.	过去将来完成时 I would have worked.	过去将来进行时 I would be working.	过去将来完成进行时 I would have been working.

- ② 英语中的时态是通过动词形式本身的变化来实现的。英语有 16 种时态,但中学阶段要求学习掌握的有 8 个:一般现在时、一般过去时、一般将来时、过去将来时、现在进行时、过去进行时、现在完成时和过去完成时。要求了解的有 4 个:将来进行时、现在完成进行时、过去完成进行时和将来完成时。



第二节 一般现在时

3-2 一般现在时表示习惯性的动作、讲话时人或物的特性或状态,以及客观真理。

谓语除单数第三人称在动词后加-s 或-es 外,其余人称均用原形动词(be 和 have 动词有特殊形式)。一般现在时常与 every day, often, usually, always, seldom, sometimes 等时间状语连用。

[例] 翻译:我发现很难与那些一贯固执己见的人合作。(...it...) 上海高考题

答案是 I find it (is) hard to cooperate with those who always stick to their own opinion.
表示目前的观点,find 应用一般现在时;always 指出了 stick to 动作发生的时间,我们可以看出这是习惯性的动作。

[例] Some homeless people are mentally ill and have no one to look after them.

“一些无家可归的人精神上有病,没有人照看他们。”

陕西高考题

动词 are 和 have 表示主语现在所具有的特征和所处的状态。

[例] Light travels more quickly than sound.

“光比声音传播得快。”

全国高考题

这是一个客观事实,不随时间和地点而转移。

3-3 在以 when, as soon as, if, unless 等引导的时间、条件状语从句中,用现在时表示将来的动作,而主句中的谓语则仍用将来时(或情态动词+动词原形或用祈使句结构)。

[例] —What would you do if it _____ tomorrow?

—We have to carry it on, since we've got everything ready.

A. rain B. rains C. will rain D. is raining

答案是 B。“如果明天下雨你们会怎么办?”“我们不得不进行,因为我们把一切都准备好了。”if 引导的为条件状语从句,其中的将来的情况应用一般现在时表示;it 是第三人称单数,其谓语动词应该用单数形式 rains。

[例] Send my regards to your lovely wife when you _____ home.

A. wrote B. will write C. have written D. write

答案是 D。“当你给家里写信时,代我向你可爱的妻子问好。”祈使句的谓语动词和从句的谓语动词都发生在将来。应用一般现在时于该时间状语从句中。

3-4 在以 if 等引导的条件状语从句中,will 表示“愿意”,不表示将来;当 if 从句指的是主句动作的结果时,也可用 will。

[例] If you will listen, I will tell you about it. “假如你愿意听,我就告诉你。”

本句中第一个“will + 动词原形”不表将来时态,will 是情态动词,表“意愿”,第二个“will + 动词原形”才表示将来时态。



[例] I'll tell you my story, if it will interest you.

“我将把我的经历告诉你,如果这会使你感兴趣。”

“使你感兴趣”为“听我经历”的结果,两者都用“will + 动词原形”。

3-5 一般现在时可用于表示事先安排或计划好的将来的动作。

[例] Look at the timetable. Hurry up! Flight 4026 _____ off at 18:20.

A. takes B. took C. will be taken D. has taken

答案是 A。“看看时间表,赶快! 4026 航班 18:20 起飞。”飞机起飞的时刻是时间表上事先定好的,这种表示按计划要发生的将来动作,应用一般现在时 takes。

第三节 一般过去时

3-6 一般过去时表示过去某一时间发生的动作或所处的状态。

规则动词的过去式是在原形动词后加 -ed 或 -d 构成的, 不规则动词的变化形式需要特殊记忆。一般过去时常跟有一个表示明确的过去时间的状语, 如: then, at that time, just now, three days ago, yesterday 等等; 或跟有一个由 when, while 等引导的表示过去的时间状语从句。而且, 一般过去时表示的动作或状态可能只限于一次, 也可能是经常性的。



[例] —You look very tired. _____ at all last night?

—No, not really. I'm tired out now.

[陕西高考题]

A. Do you sleep B. Were you sleeping C. Did you sleep D. Had you slept

答案是 C。“你看起来很疲劳。你究竟昨天夜里睡觉没有?”“真的没有睡。我现在筋疲力尽了。”提问是昨天晚上情况。有明确的时间状语 last night, 应用一般过去时。

[例] The discussion _____ alive when an interesting topic was brought in.

A. was coming B. had come C. has come D. came

答案是 D。“在一个有趣的话题被引进时, 讨论一下就活跃起来。”有时间状语从句修饰, 表示产生讨论使活跃起来的这一结果, 并非强调动作在持续, 或在此前, 应用一般过去时, 而不能用过去进行时或过去完成时。更不能用现在完成时(不能与 when 从句连用)。

3-7 一般过去时的句子有时用地点状语暗示动作发生的时间是过去。

有时一个使用过去时的句子中并没有表示过去时间的状语, 但却有一个地点状语。这时, 地点状语就暗示了该动作是过去某一时间发生的。

[例] —Have you seen a pen? I left it here this morning. “你看见一支笔了吗? 今天早上我丢在这儿了。”

—Is it a black one? I think I saw it somewhere.

“是一支黑色的吗? 我想我在什么地方见到过。”

第一句中有 this morning 这一时间状语, 因而动词用过去时 left。第二句中虽没有表示过去时间的状语, 却有 somewhere 这一地点状语, 它暗示了“看见”的动作是在过去某时间发生的。

温馨提示

(1) 有时句子的其他成分含有的时间也暗示了动作发生在过去。

[例] The year 2002 _____ remarkable changes in Shanghai's landscape.

A. sees

B. has seen

C. saw

D. had seen

答案是C。“2002年经历/目睹了上海地貌的巨大变化。”see为拟人手法,根据主语的时间2002年(暗示了动作发生的时间),对于2005年上海春季招生时来说,是个过去的时间,应用一般过去时saw。

[例] Sales of CDs have greatly increased since the early 1990s, when people _____ to enjoy the advantages of this new technology. [江苏高考题]

A. begin B. began C. have begun D. had begun

答案是B。“CD的销售量自二十世纪初大大地增加了,当时人们才开始享受这一新科技带来的好处。”句中when是关系副词,引导定语从句,修饰the early 1990s。那么从句中有表示过去具体时间的状语(when相当于in the early 1990s),应用一般过去时began。

(2) 在很多情况下,一般过去时的时间都是通过具体上下文来体现的。

[例] Old McDonald gave up smoking for a while, but soon _____ to his old ways.

A. returned B. returns C. was returning D. had returned

答案是A。“老麦克唐纳戒了一段时间的烟,但很快又回到老毛病上了。”前面用了一般过去时“gave up”,根据“but soon”可知,后面也应该用个一般过去时,表示其后不久又发生了的事情,可排除B。C强调动作的延续,D强调“又抽起烟来”的动作先于“戒烟”。

[例] I _____ you not to move my dictionary — now I can't find it.

A. asked B. ask C. was asking D. had asked

答案是A。“(我此前)要你别动我的字典——我现在找不到了。”由后一句可见,是过去提出的要求,谓语动词要用一般过去时。句子中没有显性的或隐含的另外一过去时间,故不能用过去完成时。

(3) 在口语中, want, hope, wonder, wish, think 等动词可用一般过去时表示现在的一种委婉的语气或试探性的态度。

[例] I wanted to ask if I could borrow your bike. 我想问问能否借用一下你的自行车。句中wanted和could都表示现在,过去式表示了说话人的试探性的态度,显得更加婉转。

[例] We hoped you could give us some help. 我希望你能帮帮我们。

句中hoped和could也都表示现在,用过去式语气上更婉转。

3-8 一般过去时用在条件、时间状语从句中表示过去将来的动作。此时被从句所修饰的主句的动作是表示或含过去的将来。

[例] Helen _____ her keys in the office so she had to wait until her husband _____ home. [全国高考题]

A. has left; comes B. left; had come C. had left; came D. had left; would come

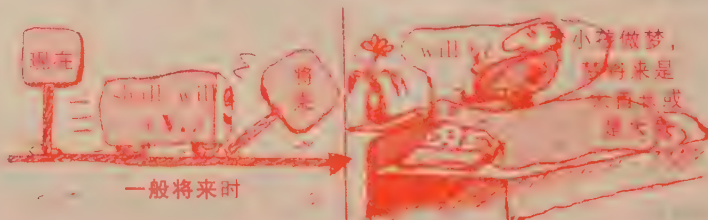
答案是C。“海伦把钥匙忘在了办公室,因此,她得等到她丈夫回家。”前一空应用过去完成时是因为 had left 的动作发生在 had to wait 这一过去时动作之前。后一空,until 这一时间状语从句中“回家”的动作虽然是过去将来的动作,但用一般过去时 came,而不用过去将来时 would come。



第四节 一般将来时

3-9 一般将来时表示将来某一时刻要发生的动作或所处的状态。

一般将来时的形式是“shall 或 will 加动词原形”。(在英国第一人称习惯用 shall,其他人称用 will,在美国各种人称均用 will)。这种时态,通常跟有一个表示将来的时间状语,如 soon, next week, tomorrow 等。



[例] —Did you tell Julia about the result?

—Oh, no, I forgot. I _____ her now.

[全国高考题]

A. will be calling B. will call C. call D. am to call

答案是B。“你把结果告诉朱莉娅了吗?”“啊,没有,我忘了,我现在就告诉她。”告诉这一动作还未发生,故用一般将来时,并带有说话人临时决定做某事的意愿(即非事先考虑的意图)。D项属于 be to sth. 结构,常表示按计划、安排即将发生的动作或命令等;A项表示无意图的或纯粹的将来情况,不合题意。故选B。

3-10 表示将要发生的动作,除了用一般将来时外,还有一些其他结构和时态。

① be going to do 表示事先经过考虑,打算去做的事或有明显的迹象要发生的事,它可用于条件状语从句中表示将来,而 shall/will 则不行。

[例] —_____ leave at the end of this month.

—I don't think you should do that until _____ another job.

[北京高考题]

A. I'm going to; you'd found B. I'm going to; you've found
C. I'll; you'll find D. I'll; you'd find

答案是B。“我打算这个月底离开。”“我认为你应该找到另一份工作后再

离开。”时间状语 at the end of this month 是将来时间,要用 be going to 表示事先考虑的意图。由语境可知说话人还没有找到工作,但在 until 引导的时间状语从句中,要用一般现在时或现在完成时表示将来。故选 B。

[例] If you are going to come to my house, you'd better phone me first. “如果你要到我家来,最好先打电话给我。”

条件状语从句中表示将来时间,不用 shall/will,可用 be going to。

② be to do 表示职责、义务、意图、约定、可能性或注定要发生的动作。

[例] All these things are to be answered for. “所有这一切都应得到偿还。”

这里,“be to do”结构不仅表示将要发生的动作,而且含有注定要发生之意。

[例] He and I are to meet at the railway station tomorrow. “我和他明天要在火车站见面。”

这里,“be to do”结构不仅表示将来的动作,而且有约定或计划之含义。

[例] In such dry weather the flowers will have to be watered if they _____.

A. have survived B. are to survive C. would survive D. will survive

答案是 B。“在如此干旱的季节,花要想活就得

浇。”在 if 条件状语从句中的将来不用 will 和

would,应用 be to do 结构表示“要发生之事”。

③ be about to do 表示“即将(正要)做某事”,句中不再加有时间状语。

[例] Autumn harvest is about to start. “秋收就要开始了。”

温馨提示

be not about to 意为“不愿意…”,不要与 be about to 混淆。

[例] He is not about to do that again. “他不愿意再做那件事了。”

句中 not about to = not willing to。

④ 一般现在时可表示按计划将要发生的动作。[参见 3-5]

⑤ 现在进行时可表示一个按计划、安排将要发生的动作,但仅适用少数动词。[参见 3-14]

第五节 过去将来时

3-11 过去将来时表示从过去某时看来将要发生的动作或将要存在的状态,多用于主句谓语动词是一般过去时的宾语从句中。

过去将来时由“should/would + 动词原形”构成。(在英国,习惯于第一人称用 should,其他人称用 would;而在美国,各人称均用 would)。

[例] He thought he would be able to lock the door



过去将来时

before the animal reached it.

“他认为在这只动物(大猩猩)到门口之前,他会把门锁好的”。

3-12 除宾语从句外,过去将来时也可用于表示从过去某时看来将要发生的事的其他类型的句子中。

[例] He was sixteen. In two years, he would be eighteen. “他十六岁,再过两年就十八岁了。”

在第二个句子中的动词用过去将来时,因为第一个句子已用过去时,说明了过去某一时间。从这一时间看来,“两年以后”的事就将成为将要发生的事。

温馨提示

表示过去将来的情况,也可用 3-10 中的①②③⑤结构,其中 be 用过去式 was / were。

(1) was / were going to do 可表示过去的打算,也可以表示没有实现的动作。

[例] He was going to leave when you arrived. “他正打算离开,你到了。”

只说明有打算离开计划,不涉及是否实现了。

[例] We were going to have a sports meeting last week, but it rained. “我们原打算上周举行运动会,但下雨了。”

“举行运动会”是未曾实现的过去计划。

(2) was / were to do 既可指过去的计划,也可表示“后来结果、注定”的含义;was / were to have done 表示计划没有实现。

[例] She said she was to take up the position. “她说她要接受那个职位。”

表示她过去曾计划“接受这个职位”,不涉及是否实现。

She said she was to have taken up the position, but later changed her mind. “她说她本来想接受这个职位,但后来改变了注意。”

[例] At that time he did not know that quitting the job was to become the turning point in his life. “当时他不知道辞职会成了他人生的转折点。”

“成为人生的转折点”为后来发展的结果。

(3) was / were about to do 表示过去某时看来即将要发生的事。

[例] He paused, and looked slightly troubled by what he was about to say. “他停顿了一下,看起来像是为即将要说的话感到有一点为难。”

讲话中途停顿,与“(继续要)说”的发生极为接近。

(4) was / were doing 表示按计划安排过去将要发生的动作。[参见 3-16]

[例] They were leaving for New York a few days later. 他们几天后就要动身去纽约。
“动身去纽约”是按计划将要进行的。

第六节 现在进行时

3-13 现在进行时表示说话时或现阶段正在进行的动作或发生的情况。

现在进行时由“be 的适当形式(am, is, are) + 现在分词”构成。

[例] Listen to the two girls by the window. What language _____?

- A. did they speak B. were they speaking
C. are they speaking D. have they been speaking

答案是 C。“听窗户旁的两位姑娘,她们在说什么语言?”前面的祈使句决定了后句“说”的动作此时此刻现在正在进行,不然无法听到。故用现在进行时。

[例] Since I won the big prize, my telephone hasn't stopped ringing. People _____ to ask how I am going to spend the money.

- A. phone B. will phone C. were phoning D. are phoning

答案是 D。“自从我赢得了大奖,我的电话就不停地响。人们都在打电话问我打算怎么花那笔钱。”“打电话”是现阶段正在进行的动作,故应用现在进行时。

温馨提示

(1) 下列表示相对静止的状态动词通常不用进行时态:

be“是”, have“有”, belong to“属于”, contain“包含;装有”, cost“值;花费”, depend on“依靠”, matter“关系重大”, exist“存在”, fit“合身”, own“拥有”, stand for“代表”, smell“闻起来”, taste“尝起来”, sound“听起来”, seem“好像;似乎”, hear“听见”, see“看见”, like“喜欢”, mind“介意”, want“想要”, mean“意思是;意味着”, know“知道;认识”, understand“懂;理解”, remember“记得”, think“认为”, believe“相信;认为”, wish“想要”等。

[例] —You're drinking too much.

—Only at home. No one _____ me but you.

- A. is seeing B. had seen C. sees D. saw

答案是 C。“你在狂饮。”“只在家,除了你没有人看见。”前文“are drinking”是现在进行时,表示“现阶段”或“现在”,故排除 B 和 D。又因为 see 表“看见”时不能用现在进行时,故用一般现在时 sees。

(2) want, know, believe, forget, understand 等有时为了强调其一时的心理活动(此时他们具有动态动词的特征),也可用现在进行时。

[例] She finds that no one is believing her. “她觉得竟没有人相信她话。”(包含一种信任感)。

[例] I'm remembering it. “我竟想起来它了。”(有开始的含义)

(3) be 也可用于进行时表示人的活动和行为,但不能用来表示思想状况或情感。

[例] I'm being careful. “(现在)我这次很细心。”

[例] I'm never careful. “(一贯)我从来不细心。”

[例] You're being very patient with me. “你对我真耐心。”

[例] You're being very angry. × (→ You're very angry) “你很生气。”

[例] She's being sick. “她恶心。”

[例] She's sick. “她病了。”

3-14 现在进行时有时表示某个按计划或安排要进行的动作(可有一个时间状语),或即将开始或结束的动作。

常见的这类动词有 go, come, leave, arrive 等趋向性动词及 stay, start 等表示位置转移的动词。

[例] I've won a holiday for two to Florida. I _____ my mum.

- A. am taking B. have taken C. take D. will have taken

答案是 A。“我赢得了两人到佛罗里达去度假的奖,我要带上我妈妈。”此处“度假”是发生在“将来”,排除 B、C 两项。应用进行时表示“按计划、安排要发生的动作”。D 项是将来完成时,是个相对另一个将来时间而存在的时态,强调该动作先于将来的另一个动作,而上下文中没有提供另一个将来的时间,因此排除 D。

[例] Because the shop _____, all the T-shirts are sold at half price.

- A. has closed down B. closed down C. is closing down D. had closed down

答案是 C。“因为商店要关闭,所有的 T 恤衫都半价出售。”主句用的是一般现在时,说明商店还没有关闭(如果关闭了就不可能再出售商品),而从句 close down 在此用作不及物动词短语。只是将要关闭(关闭前的销价处理商品),应用现在进行时,表示即将发生的动作。

[例] —Are you still busy?

—Yes, I _____ my work, and it won't take long.

- A. just finish B. am just finishing
C. have just finished D. am just going to finish

答案是 B。“你还在忙?”“是的,我就要做完了,不会要多久了。”从 it won't take long. 可以知道,即工作是即将完成,而不表示打算完成,所以应该用现在进行时态。故选 B。

温馨提示

与一般现在时的用法比较

- (1) 表示经常性、永久性的动作要用一般现在时;表示现在暂时性动作则用现在进行时。

[例] I don't really work here; I _____ until the new secretary arrives.

- A. just help out B. have just helped out
C. am just helping out D. will just help out

答案是C。“我并不在这儿工作。我只是在这儿帮忙,直到新秘书来。”前个分句表示永久性的职业用一般现在时,而后个分句表示目前临时性打工,应用现在进行时为好。

- (2) 有时短暂动作的动词表示重复动作时,用进行时。否则不用进行时态。

[例] He is jumping to keep warm. “他不停地跳以保暖”。

此处的“跳”发生了不止一次。

- (3) 在体育运动实况报道、戏剧表演的解说词中,一般现在时用来叙述较快的动作(在描写动作的句子结束前,动作早已完结);现在进行时用来描述持续较长时间的动作和情况。

[例] And Smith passes to Devaney, Devaney to Barnes, Barnes across to Lucas—and Tayler intercepts. Taylor to Peters—and he shoots—and It's a goal! Witney are leading by three goals to Nil in the first half. “史密斯将球传给德瓦尼,德瓦尼传给巴恩斯,巴恩斯由卢卡斯——和泰勒断球,断球后传给皮得斯——他射门——射中一球!上半场威特尼队以3:0领先。”

[例] Oxford are drawing slightly ahead of Cambridge now; they re rowing with a beautiful rhythm; Cambridge are looking a little disorganized. ... “现在牛津队划在剑桥队前面一点,他们动作整齐有力;剑桥队看来有点儿乱……”

第七节 过去进行时

3-15 过去进行时表示过去某时刻或某阶段正在进行的动作。

过去进行时由“was/were + 现在分词”构成。由于过去进行时所表示的动作与过去时间有联系,因此句中常有(或暗含有)表示过去的某个具体时间或时刻的时间状语。

[例] I first met Lisa three years ago. She _____ at a radio shop at the time.

- A. has worked B. was working [全国高考题]
C. had been working D. had worked

答案是B。“三年前我第一次遇见莉萨。她那时在一家收音机商店工作。”at the time 是表示过去时间的状语,was working 表示过去某阶段正在进行的动作。

[例] —You were out when I dropped in at your house.

—Oh, I _____ for a friend from England at the airport

A. was waiting B. had waited C. am waiting D. have waited

答案是A。“我走访你家时你外出。”“我正在飞机场等一位来自英国的朋友。”答语中时间状语从句 when you dropped in... 省略, wait 的动作在 drop in 动作之时正在进行, 应用过去进行时, 强调其在进行着。故选A项。

[例] I don't think Jim saw me; he _____ into space.

A. just stared B. was just staring C. has just stared D. had just stared

答案是B。“我想吉姆没有看见我;他正凝视着天空。”此句虽然没有某个具体的时间状语,但从上下文可看出,吉姆没看见我的原因是“那一刻他正在凝视天空”。

温馨提示

(1) 一般过去时表示动作已完成,过去进行时则表示动作处于进行之中,尚未完成。

[例] —Has Sam finished his homework today?

—I have no idea. He _____ it this morning.

A. did B. has done C. was doing D. had done

答案是C。“萨姆今天做完了作业了吗?”“我不知道。他上午在做。”从下文不知做完否,可排除A、B、D项,因为它们都表示已写完。A是说“上午做了它”;B是侧重现在看已做完;D是侧重在早晨前已写完,都不对。只能用过去进行时表示上午“正在做”,生动地说明当时的情况,不涉及到动作是否完成。

(2) 动词 hope, want, wonder 用过去进行时来提出请求,口气更婉转。

[例] —Excuse me, sir. Would you do me a favor?

—Of course. What is it?

—I _____ if you could tell me how to fill out this form.

A. had wondered B. was wondering C. would wonder D. did wonder

答案是B。“劳驾,先生,你能帮一个忙吗?”“当然可以。什么事?”“我想你能不能告诉我怎样填写这个表格。”“I”复述一下刚才问“you”是否愿意帮忙时所同时产生的一个想法,用过去进行时表达最好,符合英美交际时注重婉转的习惯。

3-16 表示位置转移的动词 go, come, start, stay, leave 等的过去进行时,可以表示过去将来要发生的动作。

[例] —What were you doing when Tony phoned you?

—I had just finished my work and _____ to take a shower.

A. had started B. started C. have started D. was starting

答案是D。“托尼给你打电话时你在做什么?”“我刚做完工作,正要去冲淋浴。”

由答语可知,洗澡还没有开始, start 为将要发生的动作,而 start 可用进行时来表示将来。又因问句句询问过去的事情,故此处应用过去进行时表示过去将来。

3-17 进行时与 always, constantly, continually, forever 等连用,可用来代替一般现在时,表达说话人的某种感情,常可表示某种令人不悦的情况。

[例] He is always asking for money. “他总是在要钱。”

这里, is always doing 并非表示动作正在进行,而是表示一种反复性的动作,往往含有某种“讨厌或责备”的感情色彩。

[例] Dorothy was always speaking highly of her role in the play. “多萝西老是夸赞她在剧中的角色。”



第八节 将来进行时

3-18 将来进行时表示将来某时刻正在进行或持续的动作。

将来进行时由“shall/ will + be + 动词的现在分词”构成。

[例] At this time tomorrow _____ over the Atlantic.

A. we're going to fly B. we'll be flying C. we'll fly D. we're to fly

答案是 B。“明天这个时刻,我们正飞越大西洋。”根据“at this time tomorrow”所指的时间,应知说话人强调的“飞越大西洋”这一持续的动作不是开始或结束,而是在将来正在进行中,应用将来进行时,故选 B。

温馨提示

(1) 将来进行时不带意愿色彩,表示“纯粹的将来”或强调持续性。

[例] Professor Gorb will be giving another talk on Etruscan stringed instruments at the same time next week. “戈布教授下周同一时间将就伊特拉斯坎人的弦乐器再次做报告。”

只陈述将来要发生的事实,即“做报告”是已经决定了的将来的事,不带有戈布教授这个人的意图。

[例] It's raining. I hope it won't be raining tomorrow. “下雨了,我希望明天不要下了。”强调“下雨”动作的持续性。

(2) 用将来进行时客气地询问别人的打算。

[例] Will you be having dinner at home this evening? “你今天晚上要在家吃饭吗?”

用这个时态问别人“作出了什么决定”,那就表明我们并不想去影响别人。

—Shall I pick up your shopping for you? “我把你买好的东西给你捎回来好吗?”

—Oh, I couldn't possibly trouble you. “哎呀,我怎么敢劳你的大驾。”

—It's all right. I'll be going past the shops anyway. “不必客气,反正我也要经过那些商店的。”

(3) 进行式也可以和 be going to 连用。

[例] I'm going to be working all day tomorrow, so I won't have time to buy Mother's present. 我明天要工作一整天,所以没有时间给母亲买礼物

第九节 现在完成时

3-19 现在完成时由“have/has + 过去分词”构成,它主要有两个含义。

- ① 现在完成时表示动作发生在过去,但与现在的情况有联系,有时无时间状语,有时和一些表示不确定的过去时间的状语连用,如: many times, recently, just, yet, already, before, so far, by now, 等等。



[例] I wonder why Jenny _____ us recently. We should have heard from her by now.

A. hasn't written

B. doesn't write

[上海高考题]

C. won't write

D. hadn't written

答案是 A。“我不知道珍妮为什么最近没有给我们写信,到现在我们应该收到她的来信了。”根据句意以及前后时态,还有 recently 的出现,空格处应使用现在完成时。

[例] We _____ our new neighbors yet, so we don't know their names.

A. don't meet

B. won't meet

C. haven't met

D. hadn't met

答案是 C。“我们还没有见到新邻居,所以我们还不知道他们的名字。”yet 这个单词是完成时态的标志词之一,并且后一句说明现在的情况,应用现在完成时来强调对现在所产生的结果。没有过去的过去时间,不能选择 D 过去完成时。

[例] _____ my sister three times today but her line was always busy.

A. I'd phoned

B. I've been phoning

C. I've phoned

D. I was phoning

答案是 C。“我已经给我姐姐打了三次电话,但总是占线。”找不到“过去的过去”,排除 A(打电话并不是发生在占线前);又因三次电话应有间隔,排除 B(完成进行时强调持续不停,到现在);过去进行时,表示过去某一时刻动作在进行,与 three times 矛盾。故用现在完成时 I've phoned,表示动作次数的累计。

- 2 现在完成时表示从过去某时间开始一直延续到现在并还可能延续下去的动作,用于延续性动词,且句中常带有表示一段时间的时间状语,如:since, for two months, in the last(或 past)three years, so far,等等。

[例] My friend, who _____ on the International Olympic Committee all his life, is retiring next month.

[湖南高考题]

- A. served B. is serving C. had served D. has served

答案是D。“我的朋友下个月就要退休了,他在国际奥委会服务了一辈子。”从“下个月退休”可知他工作从过去某时一直持续到现在(即已经做了差不多一生的时间了),应用现在完成时。

[例] —How are you today?

—Oh, I _____ as ill as I do now for a long time.

[全国高考题]

- A. didn't feel B. wasn't feeling C. don't feel D. haven't felt

答案是D。“你今天好吗?”“噢,我很久没感到像现在这么糟糕了。”句中 for a long time 是现在完成时态的一个标志,在句中表示“感觉糟糕”开始于一段时间以前,目前仍如此,且此状况可能还往后持续。应注意,做选择时,不要受句中另一时间状语 now 的影响。now 是比较状语从句 as I do now 中的时间状语,故不要选择一般现在时态。

温馨提示

短暂性动词的完成时态不能与表示一段时间的时间状语连用。[详见2-6]

[例] They _____ friends since they met in Shanghai.

- A. have made B. have become C. have been D. have turned

答案是C。“自从他们在上海相遇,就成为朋友了。”since 是表示一段时间的时间状语,且 be 是延续性动词,此动作发生在过去,延续到现在并有可能持续到将来。become, make, turn 都是非延续性(或短暂性)动词,不能与表示一段时间的状态 since 连用。

3-20 现在完成时和一般过去时都可表示过去发生过的动作,但现在完成时表示过去动作对现在的影响,并且表示这一动作已完成或还可能继续下去;而一般过去时与现在的情况没有联系,仅表示过去的动作,且这一动作到说话时已终止。因此现在完成时不能与表示明确的过去时间如 when, in 1949, yesterday, last week 等的状语连用,并且用 when 或 where 对这些时间和地点状语提问时,一般只用一般过去时。



[例] He was hoping to go abroad but his parents _____ that they won't support him unless he can borrow money from the bank.

A. were deciding B. have decided C. decided D. will decide

答案是 B。“他希望去外国,但是他父母已经作出决定,如果他不能够从银行借到钱,他们不会支持他。”由此可见他的父母所作的决定对现在产生了影响,重点在表示现在。应用现在完成时。

[例] —I hear Jane has gone to the Holy Island for her holiday.

—Oh, how nice! Do you know when she _____?

A. was leaving B. had left C. has left D. left

答案是 D。“听说简去圣岛度假去了。”“啊,多好! 你知道她是什么时间离开的吗?”上句中的 has gone 表示 Jane 已去度假,在 when 句中只询问“离开的时间”,不强调与现在的联系,这个 leave 应是一个过去的动作。故用其一般过去时 left。

[例] I _____ in London for many years, but I've never regretted my final decision to move back to China.

A. lived B. was living C. have lived D. had lived

答案是 A。“我在伦敦居住数年,但我从未对最终决定回到中国而感到后悔过。”从后半句可知“我”已经回到中国了,所以前半句在伦敦居住数年,但没有延续到现在,不能用现在完成时;也没有追述强调“过去的过去”的情况,也不用过去完成时。只是平铺直叙过去的事,应用一般过去时。

3-21 在“It is the first/second... time that...”或在“It / this / that is the + 最高级 + 名词 + that...”结构中,that 从句中的动词常用现在完成时;在“It + be... + since 从句”这一结构中,be 可用一般现在时或现在完成时,since 从句用一般过去时。

[例] —Do you know our town at all?

—No, this is the first time I _____ here.

A. was B. have been C. came D. am coming

答案是 B。“你很了解我们这个镇吗?”“不,这是我第一次来这儿。”句中,“来这儿”的动作已发生过,且目前人仍在这里,从句中无任何痕迹表明以后不再到这儿来,所以或许以后还要第二、三次来这里,因此用现在完成时。

[例] It is the best film I've ever seen. “这是我所看过的最好的电影。”

定语从句含到目前的累计,用现在完成时。

[例] That was really a splendid evening. It's years since I enjoyed myself so much.

“那真的是一个美好的夜晚,我已经数年没有如此尽兴了。”

句中有一段时间 + since..., 主句动词用现在完成时 has been, 在此结构中的动词也可用一般现在时 is (本句用的是 is)。从句用过去式 enjoyed。后句相当于 I haven't enjoyed so much for years.

[例] It has been a week since he left home. “他离家已经一周了。”

主句的现在完成时 has been 可用一般现在时 is, 但不能用 was; 从句中一般过去时 left 不能用现在完成时 has left 全句也可说成: He has been away from home for a week.

温馨提示

(1) since 后跟延续性动词的一般过去时, 常表示该状态的结束。

[例] It's three weeks since she was ill. “自从他病愈已经三周了。”

从病态的结束(即病痊愈了)算起三周了。

It is three weeks since he fell ill. “自从他生病已经三周了”(= He has been ill for three weeks.)

(2) 如果 since 后跟延续性动词的现在完成时, 则该状态就意味着延续至今。

[例] It's a long time since he has lived here. “他住在那里已经很久了。”

It's a long time since he lived there. “他不住那里已经很久了。”(= He hasn't lived there for a long time.)

第十节 过去完成时

3-22 过去完成时表示在过去某一时间以前已经完成的动作。

① 过去完成时由“had + 过去分词”构成, 这一过去时间可用 by, before 等介词短语或用连词引导的时间状语来表示, 也可用一个过去的动作或通过上下文来表示。

[例] —Hurry up! Alice and Sue are waiting for you at the school gate.

—Oh! I thought they _____ without me.

A. went B. are going C. have gone D. had gone

答案是 D。“快点! 艾丽斯和休在大门口等你呢。”“哦! 我原以为不等我就走了。”主句用过去时 thought, 宾语从句应用过去完成时, 表示“走了”发生在“认为”之前。故选 D。

[例] He kept looking at her, wondering whether he _____ her somewhere.

A. saw B. has seen C. sees D. had seen

答案是 D。“他一直看着她, 在想自己是否在什么地方见过她。”kept looking at her 用一般过去时, 表示在过去某时“不停打量她”。与此同时大脑里还在琢磨, 应选过去完成时 had seen, 表示该动作发生在 kept looking at her 之前。

② 过去完成时表示从过去某时间开始一直延续到过去另一时间的动作, 用于延续性动词, 且句中常带有表示一段时间的时间状语, 如: since, for two months, 等等。

[参见 3-19]

[例] The news came as no surprise to me. I _____ for some time that the factory was going to shut down.

[北京高考题]

A. had known B. knew C. have known D. know

答案是 A。“消息传来,我一点不吃惊。我知道工厂要倒闭有一段时间了。”“我”已经在消息来之前预先知道此工厂要倒闭,并持续到消息的 came(为一般过去时),而不延续到现在,不用现在完成时,而用过去完成时。故选 A。

温馨提示

(1) 发生在过去的一连串的动作,用 and, but, so 连接它们的先后顺序时,都只用一般过去时。

[例] My cousin went to Canada two years ago. He _____ there for a few months and then went to America.

A. worked B. would work C. would be working D. has been working

答案是 A。“我的叔叔是两年前去加拿大去的,在那里工作了几个月后又到美国去了。”这些动作都发生在过去,并按它们发生的时间先后顺序来叙述的,都应该用一般过去时态。故选 A。

(2) 在含有 when, before, after, until 等连词的主从复合句中,如果主从句的动作不同时发生于过去某时,先发生的动作通常用过去完成时表示。但若句中有 before, after 等连词,由于他们已表明动作发生的先后顺序,两个动作也都可以用一般过去表示。

[例] When the old man _____ to walk back to his house, the sun _____ itself behind the mountain.

A. started; had already hidden B. had started; had already hidden
C. had started; was hiding D. was starting; hid

答案是 A。“当那个老人开始回家的时候,太阳已经落山了。”太阳“落山”的动作发生在老人“回家”之前,从句中要用一般过去时,而主句要用过去完成时。故选 A。

[例] She _____ her hairstyle in her hometown before she came to Chongqing for a better job.

A. would change B. has changed C. changed D. was changing

答案是 C。“她来重庆找一个更好的工作之前改变了发型。”主句动作是过去做完的动作, before 已表明了时间的先后关系,不侧重时间对比,所以用一般过去时即可(当然也可用过去完成时,但选项中没有)。

3-23 think 等表示主观想法的动词,使用过去完成时可以表示过去未曾实现的想法、希望、打算或意图,意为“本来想……”。

这类动词有 think“认为”, hope“希望”, believe“相信”, expect“期望”, suppose“猜想”, want“想要”, mean“意欲”, intend“打算”等。

[例] They had wanted to help, but they could not get there in time. “他们本来想帮忙, 却没能及时赶到那里。”

这里 had wanted 并不表示“过去的过去”, 而表示过去未曾实现的希望。

温馨提示

在具体语境中, 也能表示“过去的过去”。

[例] John, a friend of mine, who got married only last week, spent \$3,000 more than he D for the wedding.

A. will plan

B. has planned

C. would plan

D. had planned

答案是 D。“约翰, 我的一位朋友, 上周结婚了, 婚礼比他计划的多花去 3,000 美元。”结婚花钱发生在过去, 而计划应在此前。所以要用过去完成时。故选 D。

3-24 在 hardly / scarcely... when 和 no sooner... than 句型中, 主句的谓语动词要用过去完成时, 在 hardly / scarcely... when 和 no sooner... than 这类表示“一...就...”句型中, 主句的谓语动词要用过去完成时。

[例] No sooner had he got home than it began to rain. “他一到家天就开始下雨了。”

虽然等于 As soon as he got home it began to rain 但 as soon as 的主从句都用一般现在时。

[例] She had hardly / scarcely gone to bed when the bell rang. “她刚一睡下铃就响了。”

等于 As soon as she went to bed, the bell rang. / Hardly had she gone to bed when the bell rang.

第十一节 现在完成进行时等

3-25 现在完成进行时由“have/has + been + 现在分词”构成, 表示动作从过去某一时间开始进行, 一直延续到现在, 可能还要继续下去, 通常与表示一段时间的状语连用, 如: for hours, since 1990...。

[例] Now that she is out of a job, Lucy B going back to school, but she hasn't decided yet.

[北京高考题]

A. had considered

B. has been considering

C. considered

D. is going to consider

答案是 B。“既然失业了, 露西一直在考虑着回学校, 但她还没有决定。”由主句后半句得知她还没有决定是否回学校, 因此前半句应为她一直“在考虑”, 符合现在完成进行时的含义。故选 B 项。

温馨提示

现在完成进行时和现在完成时的区别:

- (1) 在与表示一段时间的时间状语连用时, 现在完成进行时和现在完成时都可表示一个动作从过去某时开始, 延续到说话时刻, 并可能延续下去, 这时两种结构可互换使用。但现在完成进行时更强调动作的持续性和未完成性。



[例] —Hi, Tracy, you look tired.

—I am tired. I D the living room all day. [全国高考题]

—A. painted —B. had painted C. have been painting D. have painted

答案是C。“嗨, 特蕾西, 你看上去很疲倦。”“我是累了。一整天我都在油漆客厅。”因为有状语“all day”表示“整天”, 故而要用C项现在完成进行时。虽然D项现在完成时也可与一段时间状语连用, 表示从过去开始直到现在, 但此处应强调动作的持续性, 故用现在完成进行时更好。

- (2) 在不用表示一段时间的状态情况下, 两种时态表达的意思区别较大。现在完成进行时表示此动作仍在进行, 而现在完成时则表示动作到说话时刻已经结束。

[例] They have been preparing for the meeting. “他们一直在为会议作准备。”

They have prepared for the meeting. “他们已为会议做好了准备。”

前句强调 prepare 的动作一直在进行, 且有可能持续下去; 后句强调 prepare 的动作已完成, 言外之意是“随时可以开会了”。

- (3) 现在完成进行时可以特别用来表示比较短暂的动作和情况; 现在完成时暗示比较长久的情况。

[例] She's been lying in bed all day. “她在床上躺了一整天”。

临时性的情况, 非长年到头。

[例] For centuries the village of little Barbie has lain undisturbed beneath the brooding shadow of the Black Hills. “多少世纪以来, 小巴比村一直荫蔽在布莱克山脚下, 没有人来惊动它。”

村庄不是轻易地就挪动, 应是长期性的。

3-26 过去完成进行时由“had + been + 现在分词”构成,表示动作从过去某一时间开始进行,一直延续到过去另一时刻或动作,可能还要继续下去,通常与表示一段时间的状态连用,如:for hours, since 1990...

[例] The crazy fans _____ patiently for two hours, and they would wait till the movie star arrived.

A. were waiting B. had been waiting C. had waited D. would wait

答案是 B。“那些疯狂的影迷们已耐心地等待了两个小时,而且他们会一直等到那位影星的出现。”该谓语应是对过去某个时候而言一直持续的动作,故需要用过去完成进行时,故选 B 项。不是过去某个时刻正在发生的动作(A)或即将发生的动作(D)。若选 C 项,最好是不再继续等待。

第十二节 将来完成时等

3-27 将来完成时是由“will/shall + have + 过去分词”构成。

① 将来完成时是由“will/shall + have + 过去分词”构成,表示到将来某个时候为止,某件事已经完成了。常与 by, before 引导短语或状语从句连用。

[例] The snow will have disappeared before the end of March. “到三月底,雪将完全消失。”

强调在三月底之前,“雪”完全“消失”;此处的 before 也可用 by。

② 表示到将来某一深刻持续多久动作或状态,常与 for 引导的时间状语连用。

[例] I'll have been here for seven years by next February. “到二月份我就在这儿住了 7 年了。”

句中 for 和 by 短语,决定该句用将来完成时,表示将来持续性的状态。

温馨提示

(1) 在时间或条件状语从句中,可以用现在完成时,来表示将来完成的概念。

[例] Don't get off until the bus has stopped. “车未停稳,切勿下车。”

主句为祈使句,表示将来的动作,从句将来完成时,用的是现在完成时。

(2) will have done 还可表示说话人对某一已经完成的动作或事态的推测或揣想,主要用语第二、三人称主语,带有明显的情态意义。

[例] The rain will have kept you indoors today. “雨大概会让你今天留在室内了。”

表示对未来推测。

第十三节 时态的呼应

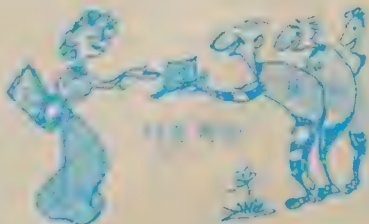
3-28 “时态的呼应”指在从句中,谓语动词的时态常要受主句谓语动词的时间的制约,常见于宾语从句、主语从句、表语从句和同位语从句中。

- ① 若主句的谓语动词为现在时态或将来时态,从句的谓语动词可以根据句意而选用任何时态。

[例] I am pleased that he gladly accepted (接受) our invitation. [全国高考题]

“我很高兴他欣然接受我们的邀请。”

主句用一般现在时,宾语从句按句意使用了一般过去时,表示动作已发生在过去某一时间。



- ② 若主句的谓语动词是过去时态,从句用表示过去的某个时态。也就是说,若从句动作和主句动作同时发生,从句中的动词用一般过去时或过去进行时;如果从句动作先于主句动作发生,从句用过去完成时,如果从句动作后于主句动作发生,从句则用过去将来时。

[例] —Come on in, Peter, I want to show you something.

—Oh, how nice of you! I B you _____ to bring me a gift.

A. never think; are going

B. never thought; were going

C. didn't think; were going

D. hadn't thought; were going

答案是 B。“彼得,过来,我想给你看样东西。”“噢,你真好!我没料到你会给我带礼物来。”never thought 之所以用过去时是因为此动作发生在看到礼物之前,因此排除 A。thought 之后的宾语从句中的动词应用过去将来时 would bring...而此处用 were going to buy 以表示过去将来时间的动作。选项 C 和 D 属于否定前一现象,其实否定的是宾语从句,意为“我认为你不会给我带礼物来”,但实际上题于 I want to show something 已表明“带了礼物来”了。

[例] It worried her a bit that her hair was turning grey.

“她的头发渐渐变白了,这使她有些担心。”

这是一个含有主语从句的复合句。主句动词 worried 是一般过去时,that 引导的主语从句中动词的动作与主句中动词的动作同时发生,因此其动词用过去进行时。

3-29 时态的呼应并不发生在所有从句中,在状语从句和定语从句中可根据意义的需要来选用任何时态;当从句表示客观真理时其时态不受主句谓语动词的影响,而用一般现在时。

[例] This is the bike which I bought five years ago. “这是我五年前买的自行车。”

这是含有由 which 引导的定语从句的主从复合句。主句中的动词是一般现在时,但根据句意,定语从句中的动词用一般过去时。

- [例] He didn't scold his students as he usually does. “他并没有像平时那样责备他的学生们。”

这是含有由 as 引导的方式状语从句的主从复合句。主句中的动词表示过去某一次行为的动作,用一般过去时,而从句中的动词表示习惯的行为动作,用一般现在时。

- [例] That experiment proved that water boils at 100℃. “那个实验证明了水在摄氏 100 度沸腾。”

宾语从句是客观真理,不以时间、地点为转移,所以尽管主句中的动词是过去时,从句中的动词仍用一般现在时。

温馨提示

时间和条件状语从句常不用表示将来的助动词。

- [例] I won't tell the student the answer to the math problem until he finishes on it for more than an hour.

A. has been working

~~B. will have worked~~

~~C. will have been working~~

~~D. had worked~~

答案是 A。“等这个学生钻研一个多小时我才告诉他这道数学题的答案。”

until 引导的时间状语从句中不用将来助动词,可排除 B 和 C;从句中 for more than an hour 表示动作持续一段时间,说明“做”一直在进行,所以要用完成进行时,代替 C 将来完成进行时。故选 A。

即学即用

I. 单项选择

1. —Is this raincoat yours?

—No, mine is there behind the door.

[全国高考题]

A. hangs

B. has hung

C. is hanging

D. hung

2. What we used to think was impossible now does seem possible.

[天津高考题]

A. is

B. was

C. has been

D. will be

3. The young girl sitting next to me on the plane was very nervous. She wasn't before.

A. hasn't flown

B. didn't fly

C. hadn't flown

D. wasn't flying

[广东高考题]

4. I was giving a talk to a large group of people, the same talk I gave to half a dozen other groups.

[湖南高考题]

A. was giving

B. am giving

C. had given

D. have given

5. Scientists think that the continents are always where they are today.

A. aren't; are

B. aren't; were

C. weren't; are

D. weren't; were

[北京高考题]

6. —What are you going?

[重庆高考题]

—I am going to the cinema with some friends. The film _____ quite early, so we _____ to the bookstore after that.

A. finished; are going B. finished; go C. finishes; are going D. finishes; go

7. —What's that terrible noise?

—The neighbors _____ for a party.

[北京高考题]

A. have prepared B. are preparing C. prepare D. will prepare

8. Susan decided not to work on the program at home because she didn't want her parents to know what she _____.

[辽宁高考题]

A. has done B. had done C. was doing D. is doing

9. —What's wrong with your coat?

[重庆高考题]

—Just now when I wanted to get off the bus, the man next to me _____ on it.

A. sat B. had sat C. had been sitting D. was sitting

10. It is said in the book that Thomas Edison (1847 - 1931) _____ the world leading inventor for sixty years.

[辽宁高考题]

A. would be B. has been C. had been D. was

11. My mind wasn't on what he was saying so I'm afraid I _____ half of it.

A. was missing B. had missed C. will miss D. missed

12. —Thank goodness, you're here! What _____ you?

—Traffic jam.

[全国高考题]

A. keeps B. is keeping C. had kept D. kept

13. —If the traffic hadn't been so heavy, I could have been back by 6 o'clock.

—What a pity! Tina _____ here to see you.

[湖南高考题]

A. is B. was C. would be D. has been

14. She has set a new record, that is, the sales of her latest book _____ 50 million.

A. have reached B. has reached

[福建高考题]

C. are reaching D. had reached

15. Years ago we didn't know this, but recent science _____ that people who don't sleep well soon get ill.

[广东高考题]

A. showed B. has shown C. will show D. is showing

16. My brother is an actor. He _____ in several films so far.

[浙江高考题]

A. appears B. appeared C. has appeared D. is appearing

17. The coffee is wonderful! It doesn't taste like anything I _____ before.

A. was having B. have C. have ever had D. had ever had

[全国高考题]

18. When Mark opened the door, he saw a woman standing there. He _____ her before.

A. never saw B. had never seen

[北京高考题]

C. never sees D. has never seen

19. Father D for London on business upon my arrival, so I didn't see him.
A. has left B. left [福建高考题]
C. was leaving D. had left
20. He A more than 5,000 English words when he entered the university at the age of 15.
A. has learned B. would have learned C. learned D. had learned [北京高考题]
21. The mayor of Beijing says that all construction work for the Beijing Olympics by 2006.
A. has been completed B. has completed [北京高考题]
C. will have been completed D. will have completed
22. They A on the program for almost one week before I joined them, and now we on it as no good results have come out so far.
A. had been working; are still working B. had worked; were still working [江苏高考题]
~~C. have been working; have worked~~ D. have worked; are still working
23. It C long before we the result of the experiment.
~~A. will not be; will know~~ B. is; will know C. will not be; know D. is; know [上海高考题]
24. —You haven't said a word about my new coat, Brenda. Do you like it?
—I'm sorry I D anything about it sooner. I certainly think it's pretty on you.
A. wasn't saying B. don't say ~~C. won't say~~ D. didn't say
25. The little girl B her heart out because she her toy bear and believed she wasn't ever going to find it.
A. had cried; lost B. cried; had lost C. has cried; has lost D. cries; has lost [北京高考题]
26. All morning as she waited for the medical report from the doctor, her nervousness C.
A. has grown ~~B. is growing~~ C. grew ~~D. had grown~~ [全国高考题]
27. I thought Jim would say something about his school report, but he D it.
~~A. doesn't mention~~ B. hadn't mentioned [上海高考题]
C. didn't mention D. hasn't mentioned
28. Selecting a mobile phone for personal use is no easy task because technology A so rapidly.
A. is changing B. has changed C. will have changed D. will change [全国高考题]
29. The house could fall down soon if no one C some quick repair work.
A. has done B. is doing C. does D. had done
30. They asked me to have a drink with them. I said that it was at least ten years since I C a good drink.
A. had enjoyed B. was enjoying ~~C. enjoyed~~ D. had been enjoying [全国高考题]

II. 改正下列句子的错误(每句一处)

1. When I was a boy, I ~~was~~ used to swim in the river which was not far away from the highway. *with*
2. She has died for ten years but she is still remembered by all who knew her.
3. When I last saw Janet, she hurried to her next class on the other side of the campus and didn't have time to talk.
4. Although Mr. White had been one of the best known newspapermen in the country, he did not enjoy his work very much.
5. Nancy said that she went to the supermarket before coming home.
6. I use to play ping pong a lot in my spare time, but now I am interested in football.

III. 填入正确时态

We have just moved (just move) into a new house and I worked (work) hard all morning. I 3 (try) to get my new room in order. It 4 (not be) easy because I 5 (own) over a thousand books. The room 6 (be) rather small, so I have temporarily put my books on the floor. My sister 7 (get) a big surprise when she 8 (see) all those books on the floor. "This 9 (be) the prettiest carpet I 10 (ever see)," she said.



点石成金

I. 单项填空

不是经常性挂在门后,不用一般现在时,而应用现在进行时表示暂时“挂着”的状态。

2. “过去我们认为不可能的事情现在好像是可能的了。”“不可能的事”应是过去的情况,要用一般过去时。

由语境可知,“那个女孩以前没有坐过飞机”应发生在“她感到紧张(前句用一般过去时)”之前,即过去的过去,应用过去完成时。

由语境“我当时正在作的报告和我以前曾经给其他人做的报告是一样的”,可知“给其他人作的报告”发生在 was giving 之前,要用过去完成时。

“科学家认为大陆过去并不一直在现在所处的位置。”表示过去状态用 weren't, 表示目前状态,用现在时 are。

答语在表示将来的计划,前一空表示按计划会发生的动作,用一般现在时;后一空表示打算做某事,用 be going to (go to 省略) 结构。故选 C。

前后两句为情景对话,由此可知说话时,邻居正在为一个晚会作准备(还能听到,说明动作还在进行中),应用现在进行时。

因为主语的工作当时尚未完成,又处于过去是时间背景当中,应用过去进行时。

描绘我刚才要下车那一时刻一个人正坐在我的上衣上的情景,应用过去进行

时。

根据题干中的时间 1847 - 1931 (Thomas Edison 已故, 与现在没有联系), 可判断出要用一般过去时, 表示在过去曾连续六十年是全世界发明创造家的领袖人物。故选 D 项。

他说话时我心不在焉, 一半未听进去, *wasn't on what he was saying* 和 *missed half of it* 都发生在过去, 按时间先后顺陈述, 均应采用一般过去时。

两人约好见面, 一人姗姗来迟, 见面后另一人松了口气: “谢天谢地, 你终于来了!”, 接着询问对方迟到的理由(已过去之事), 谓语动词应用一般过去时。

第一个人用虚拟语气。第二个人说“太遗憾了!”说明蒂娜现已离开了, “来这儿看你”只是单纯的过去的事。因此要用一般过去时。

由 *that is* (意为“即; 也就是说”) 可知, 应用现在完成时, 表示累计与完成; 又因 *the sales* 为主语, 谓语动词应采用复数形式, 应排除 B 项。

根据句子中的 *recent science* 可以知道句子中含有过去发生的动作对现在产生的影响, 应用现在完成时。

句末有 *so far*, 应用现在完成时, 表示“到目前(累计)演出过几部影片”。

根据句型结构及句意“咖啡妙极了, 其味道不像我以前吃过的任何东西”, 应用现在完成时强调对现在造成的影响。

前句用一般过去时, “没有看见过该女子”应在此事之前, 为“过去的过去”。应用过去完成时。

D. “父亲动身去伦敦出差”发生在“我到达”之前, 要用过去完成时, 与“我没有见到他”一致。

主句动作“学了 5,000 多英语单词”发生的时间在从句动作“进大学”发生之前, 应用过去完成时态。

2006 年对于考试时是一个将来的时间。by + 将来的时间与将来完成时连用。又因主语是“完成”的承受者, 应用将来完成时的被动式。

前一空由于句中所用的是过去时间状语, 而且表示的是一种持续进行的动作, 应采用过去完成进行时。后空选现在进行时, 表示现在努力仍然在进行中。

由句意可知主句应用一般将来时, 而 *before* 引起的的时间状语从句应用一般现在时表示将来。

当某人说“对不起”时, 一般都是对已发生的事情表示抱歉, 应用一般过去时表示“我没有早些发表评论”。本句中的 *sooner* 相当于 *earlier*。

根据 *believed* 可知事情发生在过去, 可排除 C、D。根据句意可知先丢失玩具后大哭, 故应选 B。

根据 *waited* 一词, 可知事情发生在过去, 排除 A 和 B; 又因 *her nervousness* 和 *waited* 同时发生, 并非先前发生, 故应选 C。

thought 和 *would say* 说明此处陈过去的事情, 原以为会说, 但事实没有提到, 应用一般过去时。

根据常识,我们知道技术的变化是时刻不断的、日新月异的,用现在进行时体现这种变化还没有结束。

could 表示可能性,不是过去时,表示为将来时间,因此 if 条件状语从句的谓语动词应用一般现在时(does)代替一般将来时。如果是虚拟条件句,句式应为“主语 + could have done... if 主语 + had done...”。故排除 D。

since 从句常用一般过去时,表示“自动作发生的那一点起”。

II. 改错

1. 去掉第二个 was
2. has died 改为 has been dead
3. hurried 改为 was hurrying
4. had been 改为 was
5. went 改为 had gone
6. use 改为 used

III. 填入正确时态

1. have just moved
2. have been working
3. have been trying
4. isn't
5. own
6. is
7. got
8. saw
9. is
10. have even seen

第4章

动词的语态

高考热点

动词的语态是高考英语常见考点之一。近年主要是对一般现在时、一般过去时、一般将来时及一般过去时的被动语态的考查。另外,动词的语态常常都是结合时态、主谓一致、从句等相关内容综合考查的,这样加大了考查难度。

作为考生,我们平时要熟记各种时态的被动语态的结构,掌握其相应的用法;在做题时首先根据主语与谓语动词的关系确定:是否是被动关系(尤其要注意能接双宾语或复合宾语的动词,不要受部分宾语的干扰而忽略主语与谓语之间的被动关系);然后再根据有关时间信息确定用哪种时态的被动语态形式。

第一节 语态的概念

4-1 语态是动词的一种形式,表示主语和谓语之间语法或语义的关系。

英语的语态有两种:主动语态和被动语态。主动语态用于主动句,表示主语是动作的执行者;被动语态用于被动句,表示主语是动作的承受者。主动语态的构成方式与动词时态相同,而被动语态由“助动词 be + 过去分词”构成,有人称、数、时态等变化。

[例] 改错: Of course, when my mother was asked, “Have you already taken your medicine?” I said, “Yes.”

答案是把 was 去掉。“当然,当妈妈问‘你已经吃过药了吗?’时,我说‘是的’。”主语“妈妈”是谓语动词“问”这一动作的执行者,不能用被动结构“be + 过去



[天津高考题]

分词”,应用主动语态的过去时 asked。

[例] The article was w _____ in German and translated into Chinese.

答案是 written。“这篇文章是用德语写的并翻译成了汉语。”由句意及首字母 w 可知此处缺少单词应是 write。“文章”与“写”和“译”是被动关系,要用被动语态。形式应为“be + 过去分词”。

帮你归纳

以 do 为例,将各时态的被动语态形式和主动语态形式对比列表如下:

时 态 \ 语 态	主动语态	被动语态 (be + 过去分词)
一般现在	do / does	am / is / are done
一般过去	did	was / were done
一般将来	will / shall do	will / shall be done
现在进行	am / is / are doing	am / is / are being done
过去进行	was / were doing	was / were being done
现在完成	have / has done	have / has been done
过去完成	had done	had been done
过去将来	would do	would be done
将来完成	will / shall have done	will / shall have been done
过去将来完成	would have asked	would have been done
将来进行	will / shall be doing	无
各种完成进行	have / has been doing	无
	had been doing	
	will / shall have been doing	

温馨提示

被动语态的时态用法基本可参照主动句相应的时态的用法。

[例] According to the art dealer, the painting _____ to go for at least a million dollars.

A. is expected B. expects C. expected D. is expecting 全国高考题

答案是 A。“按绘画贩子的话说,这幅画有望以至少 100 万美元出手。”句子的主语是 the painting,不能发出“预料”的动作,应用被动语态,表示“被指望、被预

料”。故选 A。

- [例] After a fire broke out in the lab, a lot of equipment _____ . [北京高考题]
A. is damaged B. had damaged C. damaged D. was damaged

答案是 D。“实验室里失火后,大量的装备毁掉了”主语 a lot of equipment 为“毁坏”的承受者,且从句的时态为一般过去时,说明“被毁坏”发生在大火爆发后,并非指现在的状态。谓语动词应用一般过去时的被动式。故选 D 而不选 A。

- [例] Rainforests _____ and burned at such a speed that they will disappear from the earth in the near future. [上海高考题]

A. cut B. are cut C. are being cut D. had been cut

答案是 C。“雨林正以很快的速度被砍伐、烧毁,它们在不远的将来就会从地球上消失。”该题的主句讲述的是一个目前天天发生的情况,所以应该使用现在进行时;又因主语和 cut 之间为被动关系,所以应使用被动语态的进行时,故选 C。

- [例] Hundreds of jobs _____ if the factory closes. [北京高考题]
A. lose B. will be lost C. are lost D. will lose

答案是 B。“如果工厂倒闭,好几百人会就失业。”从句意看是对将来的假设,if 条件从句中是用一般现在时“closes”代替一般将来时,但主句的“结果”应用将来的时态,排除 A、C 两项。job 和 lose 应为被动关系,排除 D。应用被动语态的一般将来时。

- [例] Millions of pounds' worth of damage _____ by a storm which swept across the north of England last night. [重庆高考题]

A. has been caused B. had been caused
C. will be caused D. will have been caused

答案是 A。句意为“数百万英镑的损失是由昨夜横扫英格兰北部的一场风暴引起的”,表示的时间是从昨晚到现在(没有过去的过去,不能用过去完成时),说明对现在产生的影响,加之主语又是动作承受者,应用现在完成时的被动语态。故选 A。

- [例] The policeman's attention was suddenly caught by a small box which _____ placed under the Minister's car. [广东高考题]

A. has been B. was being C. had been D. would be

答案是 C。“放在部长的车子下的一个小箱子一下子引起了警察的注意。”a small box 和 place 是被动关系,应用过去完成时的被动式,表示“小箱子”是“被人放”,并发生在“警察的注意力被引起”之前。故选 C。

- [例] The mayor of Beijing says that all construction work for the Beijing Olympics _____ by 2006. [北京高考题]

A. has been completed B. has completed
C. will have been completed D. will have completed

答案是 C。“北京市长说到 2006 年所有北京奥运会的建筑工程都将完成”。题

于中有明显时间状语 by 2006, 2006 年对于 2004 年考试时说, 是一个将来的时间。by + 将来的时间与将来完成时连用。又因主语是“完成”的承受者, 应用将来完成时的被动式。故选 C。

[例] I need one more stamp before my collection _____.

A. has completed B. completes C. has been completed D. is completed

答案是 D。“我再有一张邮票就集成全套了。”在 before 引导的时间状语从句中动词用一般现在时代替一般将来时, 被动语态也是如此, 动词应使用被动语态的一般现在时来代替将来被完成。故选 D。

第二节 主动语态与被动语态的转换

4-2 主动句变被动句指主动语态的宾语转换成为被动语态的主语, 而成为动作的承受者。不及物动词不可跟宾语, 因此没有被动语态。

[例] The hero's story _____ differently in the newspapers.

A. was reported B. was reporting C. reports D. reported

答案是 A。“这位英雄的事迹报纸上报道并不相同。”report 为及物动词, 主语 story 为之执行的对象, 只有 A 为被动语态的正确形式, 相当于主动语态 They reported the hero's story differently in the newspapers. (句中的宾语 the hero's story, 成为被动句的主语, 成了动作的承受者。)

[例] — Will you go skiing with me this winter vacation?

— It _____.

A. all depend B. all depends C. is all depended D. is all depending

答案是 B。“今年寒假你和我一起去滑冰, 好吗?”“一切都看情况而定。”depend 为不及物动词, 无被动语态, 可排除 C。此处的 It 为主语, all 指总体情况, 谓语应单数, 可排除 A; 而在 It (all) depends “视情况而定”中常用一般现在时, 而不用现在进行时。

4-3 含有单宾语的主动句“主语 + 动词 + 宾语”变被动句后形式为: “主语 [原宾语] + be + 动词的过去分词 (+ by + 宾语 [原主语])”。



[例] The author had been taught by Krenkel and St. John.

“作者曾经受到克伦克尔和圣约翰的教诲。”

主语 the author 为谓语动词 teach 的承受者,by 后的 Krenkel and St. John 才是“教”的执行者,等于 Krenkel and St. John had taught the author.

4-4 在含有被动语态的句子中,动作的执行者用 by 短语表示,但常常省略不用。

一般说来,当动作的执行者不甚清楚、不甚重要或难以明确说出时,通常不用 by 短语。但是,有时为了强调动作的执行者或者由于上下文和结构上的需要则需使用 by 短语。

[例] He heard over the radio that a bank in Long Island had been broken into by an armed man.



“他从广播中得知长岛的一家银行被一名全副武装的人所抢劫。”

这里,为了特别强调动作的执行者,在被动结构后,用了 by 短语。

[例] More patients _____ in hospital this year than last year.

A. treated B. have treated C. had been treated D. have been treated

答案是 D。“今年到医院就医的病人比去年多。”主语 patients“病人”为谓语动词“治疗”的对象,其执行者当然是医生和护士(即使 by the doctors and nurses 省略了,也应用被动语态),表示现在非过去之事,应用现在完成时的被动语态。故选 D 项。

温馨提示

被动语态的使用是科技文体或说明性文体的一大特点。因为在科技文章中,往往强调对客观事物的描述而较少涉及动作的执行者。

[例] The material is heated and allowed to cool slowly for a certain length of time. Annealing can also be used on other materials, such as glass. [全国]

“金属被加热,然后慢慢冷却一段时间。(这就是退火)。退火还可用于其他材料,比如玻璃。”

4-5 含有宾语从句的主动句“主语+动词+宾语从句”变被动句后形式为:
“形式主语 It + be + 动词的过去分词 + 主语从句[原宾语从句]”。

[例] It can be learned from the text that delicious apples are very big.

“从文中可以得知,好吃的苹果个头儿很大。”

此句的主动语态为: We can learn from the text that delicious apples are very big. 变成被动语态后,that 引导的宾语从句成为主语从句,置于动词之后,句首用 it 作其形式主语。

帮你归纳

英语中类似的结构还很多,常见的有:it is said that...“据说…”;it is reported...“据报道…”;It is hoped that...“有人希望…”;It is believed that...“人们认为…”;It is supposed that...“据推测…”;It is thought that...“有人认为…”;It must be admitted that...“必须承认…”;It must be pointed out that...“必须指出…”等等。他们可酌情改为 people (we, they 等) say / report / hope, believe, suppose, know, think that...或 People (We, They) must admit, point out that...;也可改用类似结构的不定式。

- [例] It is said that he is famous in his own country. 据说他在自己的国家很出名。
 等于 Someone says (People say) that he is famous in his own country. 或 He is said to be famous in his own country.

4-6 带有双宾语的主动句“主语+动词+间接宾语+直接宾语”变被动句时有两种形式:常用的是“主语[原间接宾语]+be+动词的过去分词+保留宾语[原直接宾语](+by+宾语[原主语])”,也可用“主语[原直接宾语]+be+动词的过去分词+to 或 for+宾语[原间接宾语](+by+宾语[原主语])”。

- [例] My brother gave me a birthday present. “我哥给了我一件生日礼物。”(变被动语态)
 答案是: I was given a birthday present (by my brother).
 或: A birthday present was given to me (by my brother).
 give 后要用 to 而不用 for.

温馨提示

这种双宾结构的变形被动句,容易误选主动句,尤其是那些既接单宾又接双宾结构的动词。

- [例] —Why did you leave that position?
 —I _____ a better position at IBM. [北京高考题]
 A. offer B. offered C. am offered D. was offered

答案是 D。“为什么你离开了那个职位?”“我在国际商务机器公司得到了一个更好的职位。”回答离职的原因,自己应被提供了一个更好的职位,应是双宾 offer sb. a better position 的被动语态的一般过去时(这样与问句的时态也呼应一致),而不是单宾的 offer a better position“(我给别人)提供了一个更好的职位”。故选 D。

4-7 含有复合宾语的主动句“主语+动词+宾语+宾补”变被动句后形式为“主语[原宾语]+be+动词的过去分词+主语补足语[原宾语补足语一般不动,但称为主语补足语](+by+宾语[原主语])”。

[例] Mrs. Smith warned her daughter never to drive after drinking.

“史密斯太太警告她的女儿千万别酒后驾驶。”

句中 warn 带有复合宾语(即宾语和宾补)。若变成被动句即成为: Mrs. Smith's daughter was warned never to drive after drinking.



温馨提示

(1) 这种复合宾语结构的变形被动句,容易误选主动句,尤其是那些既接单宾又接双宾或复合宾语结构的动词。

[例] — _____ the sports meet might be put off.

—Yes, it all depends on the weather.

A. I've been told

B. I've told

C. I'm told

D. I told

答案是 A。“有人告诉我们运动会也许要推迟。”“是的,这全凭天气而定。”从上下文可知,该句应是 tell 复合宾语 tell me (that 宾语从句)的被动句,即:“我被告知...”,要用被动语态,可排除 B、D。“告诉”是过去的事,对现在的影响是“我已知道”,要用现在完成时;并不是“总是被告知”或“现在被告知”,不能用一般现在时,可排除 C。

(2) 若宾补是不带 to 的不定式,当句子变成被动式以后,作为主补的不定式必须带 to。

[例] I heard my father cry out, “For God's sake, child, open the door.”

“我听见父亲大喊:‘看在上帝的份上,孩子,把门打开。’”

句中的 hear 是一个常带复合宾语的动词。这里,宾补是由不带 to 的不定式充当的,把它变为被动句:My father was heard to cry out...

4-8 含有短语动词的主动句变被动句,不要遗漏与动词连用的介词或副词。

[例] Good care must _____ babies, particularly while they are ill.

A. take

B. take of

C. be taken

D. be taken of

答案是 D。“一定要给婴儿很好的照顾,尤其是当他们生病的时候。”此句的主动式为:We must take good care of babies...。当变成被动句时,good care 成为主语,动词成为 must be taken of,注意不要遗漏介词 of,因为 take care of 是固定短语。故选 D。

4-9 含有情态动词的谓语变成被动语态后形式为:“主语 + 情态动词(+ not) + be + 动词的过去分词”。

[例] From the text, it can be inferred that in Sweden people care much about dogs.

“从文中能推断出,在瑞典人们对狗是关怀备至的。”

句中,can be inferred 是含有情态动词的被动语态。

全国高考题

[例] Black holes can not be seen directly, so determining the number of them is a tough task.

“黑洞不能直接看见,所以决定他们的数目是一项艰巨的任务。”

句子的前面的分句为否定,not 应放在情态动词后,而不是 be 后。

4-10 含有“be going to”、“be to”结构的谓语变被动语态后形式为:“主语 + be going to be + 动词的过去分词。”

[例] The problem is going to be discussed at the meeting. “那个问题将在会上讨论。”

[例] The sports meet is to be held on Oct. 5. “运动会将于 10 月 5 日举行。”

4-11 被动结构还可由“get + 过去分词”来构成。

[例] Cleaning women in big cities usually get _____ by the hour.

A. pay B. paying C. paid D. to pay

答案是 C。“大城市里的清洁女工是按小时付报酬的。”“女工”与“付酬”是被动关系,应该用被动语态形式“be 或 get + 过去分词。”

温馨提示

(1) “get + 过去分词”除相当于“be + 过去分词”的被动语态,还可用于谈论突然发生的、不期而遇的和偶然出现或最终出现的事。

[例] Be careful when you cross this very busy street. If not, you may _____ run over by a car.

A. have B. get C. become D. turn

答案是 B。“过这条交通繁忙的大街时要小心,如果你不的话,你可能会被车从身上碾过。”“被汽车碾压”为一突发不幸的事件,应用 get + run(为过去分词)over。而 have run 表示对过去主动推测“可能碾过了”,缺宾语;become 和 turn 强调“变化”,不符合此处表示意外突发事件的语境。

(2) “get + 过去分词”还可用来谈论对自身所做的动作或动作的结果(为系表结构)。常见的有: get dressed“穿衣”; get washed“洗脸”; get lost“迷路”; get confused“迷惑不解”; get engaged/married/divorced“订婚/结婚/离婚”; get started“开始”等。

[例] Sarah, hurry up. I'm afraid you can't have time to _____ before the party.

A. get changed B. get change
C. get changing D. get to change

[全国高考题]

答案是 A。“萨拉,赶快!恐怕你在晚会前没有时间换衣服了”。由 hurry up, before the party 等可推断,说话者在催促萨拉赶快更衣去参加聚会,应用 get changed 表示“更衣”,为“get + 过去分词”结构,表示给自身做某事。

第三节 被动结构和系表结构的区别

4-12 被动结构和系表结构的区别在于前者强调动作,而后者表示状态。



“be + 过去分词”并非都是被动语态,因为有些过去分词可用作形容词,所以“be + 过去分词”有时是系表结构。

试比较

[例] The library is closed at 6. “图书馆六点关门。”

The library is closed now. “现在图书馆已经关门了。”

前句中的动词 is closed 是被动结构,强调“关门”的动作(每天)在六点发生;而后一句中的动词 is closed 是系表结构,表示主语现在所处的状态。

第四节 不用被动语态的及物动词

4-13 只有及物动词才有被动语态形式,但不是所有的及物动词都是如此,如某些表示状态或关系的动词或短语动词只有主动语态,而无相对应的被动语态。

常见的这类动词有:

① 宾语为反身代词或互指代词时

[例] They enjoyed themselves at the party. “他们在晚上玩得很开心。” Themselves were enjoyed. (×)

[例] We often help each other. “我们经常互相帮助。” Each other are often helped by us. (×)

② 宾语为不定式或动名词时

[例] The old man likes living in the countryside. “那位老人喜欢住在农村。” Living the countryside is liked by the old man. (×)

③ 有些表示状态的动词: equal “等于”, hold “容纳”, mean “意味着”, belong to “属于”, lack “缺乏”, exist “存在”

[例] Does the coat fit you? “这件上衣合身吗?” Are you fitted by the coat? (×)

[例] The salary lasted him only a week. “这些工资只能维持他一周的生活。”

He was lasted by the salary only a week. (×)

- ④ 当宾语(数量、重量、大小、程度)起状语作用(实为不及物动词)时

[例] The cock weighs two kilos. “这只公鸡重两公斤。”

[例] 改错 After the driving, it was cost just over £ 2 to put the car back into perfect condition.

[安徽高考题]

答案是去掉 was。“驾驶后,只花 2 个多英镑就把车子弄回完美的状况。”just over £ 2 实际上是名词短语作状语, cost 是不及物动词,没有被动语态,故去掉 was,使之成为主动语态的一般过去时。

- ⑤ 当及物动词 leave, enter, reach 等的宾语是表示地点、处所、或组织的名词时。

[例] They left the village at eight in the morning. “他们上午八点钟离开的。”The village was left by them at eight in the morning. (×)

- ⑥ 当 keep one's word “说话算数”, make up one's mind “下决心”, do one's best “尽最大努力”, lose heart “灰心”等已成为一个不可分割的成语动词时或某些“动词 + 介词”短语成固定表达时。

[例] Everybody agrees with me. “大家都同意我的意见。”I was agreed with by everybody. (×)

[例] His brother never loses heart. “他的哥哥从不灰心。”Heart is never lost by. (×)

第五节 主动形式表被动概念的不及物动词

4-14 不及物动词和系动词都没有被动语态形式。但某些不及物动词虽为主动语态形式,却表示被动意义。

- ① 当 feel “摸上去”、smell “闻起来”、sound “听起来”、taste “尝起来”、look “看上去”、prove “证明是”等系动词后接形容词作表语时,主动结构表示被动意义。

[例] —Do you like the material?

—Yes, it _____ very soft.

A. is feeling B. felt C. feels D. is felt

答案是 C。“你喜欢这种料子吗?”“喜欢,它摸上去很软。”虽然材料是“被摸”,但不用被动结构,不选 D。

[例] Good medicine _____ bitter.

A. are tasted B. tastes C. will be tasted D. would be tasted

答案是 B。“良药苦口。”虽然药是“被尝”,但不能用被动语态,不选 A、C、D。

- ② 有些由及物动词转化来的不及物动词,用主动式代替被动式。这类动词有: cut, lock, open, read, sell, shut, wear, write, translate 等。这些句子中的主语多是事物,而这些动词常和表示行为方式的状语连用,或与否定词连用构成否定句,说明主语



[全国高考题]

(通常是“物”)具有某种内在的品质

[例] This poem doesn't translate well. “这首诗不好译”

试比较 This poem isn't translated well. “这首诗译得不好。”

上句的含义是“这首诗本身很难译” 下句意指“没有把这首诗译好”。这说明用该词的主动式和被动式,意义不相同。

[例] Books of this kind A well.

[上海高考题]

A. sell

B. sells

C. are sold

D. is sold

答案是 A。“这类书畅销”表示书本本身所具有的性质特征是“畅销”,并非“销售”具体动作,应用主动形式来表示被动意义;of this kind 作后置定语,主语的中心词 books 为复数,谓语动词应用复数形式 sell。故选 A。

即学即用

I. 单项选择

- The number of deaths from heart disease will be reduced greatly if people _____ to eat more fruit and vegetables. [上海高考题]
A. persuade B. will persuade C. be persuaded D. are persuaded
- The construction of the two new railway lines _____ by now. [陕西高考题]
A. has completed B. have completed
C. have been completed D. has been completed
- Although the causes of cancer _____, we do not yet have any practical way to prevent it. [山东高考题]
A. are being uncovered B. have been uncovering
C. are uncovering D. have uncovered
- When he turned professional at the age of 11, Mike _____ to become a world champion by his coach and parents. [上海高考题]
A. expected B. was expecting C. was expected D. would be expected
- I have to go to work by taxi because my car _____ at the garage. [北京高考题]
A. will be repaired B. is repaired C. is being repaired D. has been repaired
- Customers are asked to make sure that they _____ the right change before leaving the shop. [重庆高考题]
A. will give B. have been given C. have given D. will be given
- Your job _____ open for your return.
—Thanks. [北京高考题]
A. will be kept B. will keep C. had kept D. had been kept
- The moment the 28th Olympic Games _____ open, the whole world cheered. [福建高考题]
A. declared B. have been declared
C. have declared D. were declared

9. It is said that the early European playing-cards _____ for entertainment and education.
 A. were being designed B. have designed
 C. have been designed D. were designed
10. Months ago we sailed ten thousand miles across this open sea, which _____ the Pacific, and we met no storms.
 A. was called B. is called C. had been called D. has been called
11. —George and Lucy got married last week. Did you go to their wedding?
 —No, I _____. Did they have a big wedding?
 A. was not invited B. have not been invited C. hadn't been invited D. didn't invite
12. —The window is dirty.
 — I know. It _____ for weeks.
 A. hasn't cleaned B. didn't clean C. wasn't cleaned D. hasn't been cleaned
13. More than a dozen students in that school _____ around to study medicine last year.
 A. sent B. were sent C. had sent D. had been sent
14. —How long _____ at this job?
 —Since 1990.
 A. were you employed B. have you been employed
 C. had you been employed D. will you be employed
15. By the end of last year, another new gymnasium _____ in Beijing.
 A. would be completed B. was being completed
 C. has been completed D. had been completed
16. Visitors _____ not to touch the exhibits.
 A. will request B. request C. are requesting D. are requested
17. This is Ted's photo. We miss him a lot. He _____ trying to save a child in the earthquake.
 A. killed B. is killed C. was killed D. was killing
18. Why don't you put the meat in the fridge? It will _____ fresh for several days.
 A. be stayed B. stay C. be staying D. have stayed
19. —Why does Ling-ling look so unhappy?
 —She has _____ by her classmates.
 A. laughed B. laughed at C. been laughed D. been laughed at
20. —How are the team playing?
 —They're playing well, but one of them _____ hurt.
 A. got B. gets C. are D. were

II. 用所给动词的适当时态和语态填空

1. I'm afraid you must _____ (feel) terrible now.
 2. He _____ (be) here since last month.

3. Mr. Black often _____ (go) to the theatre but his wife _____ (not go) very often.
4. The hall _____ (paint) at the moment, so it _____ (not look) its best.
5. The house opposite the college _____ (pull) down. That's why we _____ (use) the back entrance at present.
6. —What _____ (you look) for, Tom?
—I _____ (look) for the garage key. I always _____ (look) for the garage key, because nobody ever _____ (put) it back on its hook.
7. I _____ (just hear) that Peter is in Australia.
8. I _____ (buy) a new house last year, but I _____ (not sell) my old house yet, so at the moment I have two houses.
9. It's the third time you _____ (be) late for school this week.
10. A quarrel _____ (break) out between the two neighbours.
11. I _____ (catch) in the hard rain on my way to the cinema.
12. Because he was hurt, the thief had to throw away the things that _____ (not belong) to him.
13. He asked his mother for some money, but _____ (give) a good scolding.



点石成金

I. 单项填空

根据句意及后面的动词不定式,此处为 persuade sb to do sth 用于被动结构,又在条件状语从句中,要用被动语态的一般现在时表示将来。故选 D。

主语是 the construction,而不是 the two new railway lines,谓语动词要用单数形式。the construction 应该是被完成,要用被动语态。故选 D。

原因是被发现,应用被动形式,只有 A 为此结构。

从 by his coach and parents 可知,应用 expect sb to do sth 被动形式的过去时。

从“不得不打的去上班”可知,车在修理厂修理(现在还不能用),应用现在进行时的被动语态。

找对零钱当然是确认之前完成,并强调对现在(确认时)的影响;customers 是动作的承受者。应用现在完成时的被动形式。故选 B。

对方的承诺“你的工作会一致保留着,等你回来”,应用一般将来时;keep 和 your job 之间是动宾关系。故选 A。

由主句时态可知,the moment 引导时间状语从句也应用一般过去时。奥运会自己不能宣布开幕,要用被动语态。故选 D。

early 暗示从句讲述过去的事;主语为动作的承受者,应用一般过去时的被动语态。

在非限制性定语从句中,表示的是现在仍沿用的称呼,因此用一般现在时的

被动语态。故选 B。

主语 I 和动词 invite 之间为被动关系,邀请应写在婚礼前,即“过去的过去”,应用过去完成时的被动式。故选 C 项。

it 代替“窗户”,为动作的承受者;又因对现在产生了影响,谓语动词要用现在完成时被动式。

句子主语是动作的承受者,加之表示过去的时间状语,所以采用了一般过去时的被动语态。故选 B。

答句使用了 since,而且时间指的是直到现在为止,故答句应使用现在完成时。B 为正确选项。

“By the end of last year”意为“到去年年底为止”,为“过去的过去”一段时间,所以句子应用过去完成时的被动形式。答案应选 D 项。

16 根据 request 的一个用法“request sb. (not) to do sth.”以及其被动语态形式“sb. be requested (not) to do sth.”,本题应选 D。

kill 为及物动词,要么带宾语,要么用被动语态。trying 引起的分词短语在句中表过去的一个动作的时间。故选 C。

stay 可以作为系动词,意为“保持”,无被动语态,故不选 A;又因后一句话中缺乏将来的一个具体时间,用将来进行时或将来完成时均不合适,故选 B。

她为嘲笑的对象应被动语态的现在完成,且固定短语 laugh at 不能遗漏 at。

根据主谓一致原则,应排除 C、D 两项。根据题意,“受伤”发生在过去某时,应选 A。如选 gets,则表示天天有一个人受伤,与题意不符。

用所给动词的适当时态和语态填空

1. feel/be feeling 2. has been 3. goes; doesn't go 4. is being painted; doesn't look
5. has been pulled; use/ are using 6. are you looking; am looking; look; puts
7. have just heard 8. bought; haven't sold 9. have been 10. will break / has broken/ broke
11. was caught 12. didn't belong 13. was given

第5章

动词的语气

虚拟语气在上海试卷中出现率较高;在全国试题中,1996年前也频频出现,但此后就很少考了(几乎没有),然而自2004年省市自主命题增加,考虚拟语气的,也再不断地增加了,全国卷也开始涉及语气的考查。另外,阅读理解和完形填空,全国卷和部分省市的英语试卷也都涉及对虚拟语气的理解。由此观之,你能忽略虚拟语气吗?

对虚拟语气考查重点一般都落在对语气运用的理解和选择上,尤其是错综条件句和含蓄条件句的理解。而考生容易错的地方就是各种虚拟结构形式混淆或与陈述、祈使语气混淆。因此,我们平时要做到理解并熟记虚拟语气的谓语构成形式。

第一节 语气的概念及分类

5-1 语气有三种:陈述语气、祈使语气和虚拟语气。

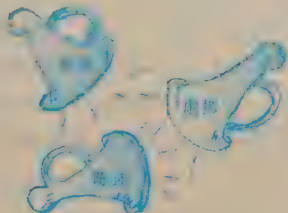
语气是动词的一种形式,它表示说话人对动词所表示的动作或所处的状态持有的态度或看法。

- ① 陈述语气见于大多数句子中,用来陈述事实或就事实提出询问,广泛用于陈述句(包括肯定句和否定句)和疑问句中。

[例] She can't help to clean the house because she's busy making a cake.

[全国高考题]

“她没法帮着打扫屋子,因为她正忙着做蛋糕。”



(2) 祈使语气仅用于祈使句中,表示说话人向对方提出请求、劝告或命令。

[例] —Please remember me to your Mum. “请代我向你妈妈问好。”

—Thank you. I certainly will. “谢谢,我一定会的。”

全国高考题

(3) 虚拟语气表示不可能实现的愿望、想象或与事实相反的假设。其谓语动词形式与陈述语气不同。

[例] If there were no subjunctive mood, English _____ much easier.

A. will be B. would have been C. could have been D. would be

答案是D。“假如没有虚拟语气,英语就容易多了。”本句表示一种与现在事实相反的假设,从句谓语动词用 were,主句中的谓语动词应用 would be。

第二节 虚拟语气的基本结构

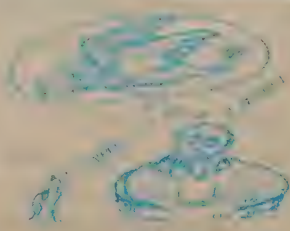
5-2 虚拟语气用在非真实条件句中,主句和从句中的谓语动词形式较为固定。

在 if 引导的非真实条件句中,其假设分三种情况:与现在事实相反、与过去事实相反、与将来事实相反。

表示的时间	条件从句的谓语动词形式	主句中的谓语动词形式
与现在事实相反	If I (we, you, he...) + 动词过去式 (be 动词用 were)	主语 + would / should / might / could + 动词原形
与过去事实相反	If I (we, you, he...) + had + 过去分词	主语 + would / should / might / could + have + 过去分词
与将来情况可能相反或是对将来情况的假设或推测	1. If I (we, you, he...) + 动词过去式 (be 动词用 were), 通常要与一个表示将来的时间状语连用 2. If I (we, you, he...) + should + 动词原形 3. If I (we, you, he...) + were to + 动词原形	主语 + would / should / might / could + 动词原形

[例] If I were a bird, I should fly in the sky. “假如我是一只鸟,我就会在天空中飞翔。”

这是一个表示与现在事实相反的假设,即:我不是鸟,我也不会 在天空中飞翔。



温馨提示

虚拟从句中的谓语动词为 be 动词的过去时,无论主语是什么,在正式语体中一律都用 were;在非正式语体中也有用 was 的。

[例] If he were here this evening, we would play cards. “如果他今晚在这里的话,我们就玩牌。”主语为单数名词,在非正式用语中也可说成:If he was here this evening, we would play cards.

[例] If wishes were horses, beggars might ride. “如果幻想能成为马匹,叫花子们都有了坐骑。”主语为复数名词,只能用 were。

[例] — If he was, he could that food.

— Luckily, he was sent to the hospital immediately.

[全国高考题]

- A. was warned; would not take B. had been warned; would not have taken
C. would be warned; had not taken D. would have been warned; had not taken

答案是 B。“假如有人警告他那食物不能吃,他就不会吃了。”“幸好他被立即送到了医院。”此句表示与过去事实相反的假设,条件从句中的动词应用“had + 过去分词”形式,而且这里应用被动结构;主句中的动词须用“would + have + 过去分词”的形式。

[例] 找出错误的选项: What would happen if the earth would stop turning?

A B C D

答案是 C。应改为 should stop, were to stop 或 stopped。“万一地球停止转动了,将会出现什么情况呢?”此句表示与将来事实相反的假设,因为地球不会停止转动。注意:在 if 条件句中,与将来事实相反的虚拟语气动词形式为“should + 动词原形”,而不能使用 would。

5-3 在 if 引导的非真实条件句中,if 可以省略,但需要用倒装结构。

如 if 从句中含有 were, had, should 时,可将它们提到主语之前,并将 if 省略,而且省略 if 的从句一般置于主句之前(尤其是在肯定句或否定句中)。

[例] What would have happened _____, as far as the river bank?

- A. Bob had walked farther B. if Bob should walk farther
C. had Bob walked farther D. if Bob walked farther

答案是 C。“如果鲍勃走得更远些,一直到河岸,会发生什么情况?”只有 C 项 (= if Bob had walked farther), 在谓语动词形式(与过去事实不符)及倒装结构都正确。

[例] Should the earth stop turning, what would happen? 或 Were the earth to stop turning, what would happen? (由 5-2 的例句变来)。若将原题 would stop 改为 stopped, 则此句不可变为 Stopped the earth turning, what would happen?

5-4 虚拟语气可不用 if 从句表条件, 而用介词 without, but for 等或连词 otherwise 等表示一种含蓄条件。

[例] But for the storm, we _____ earlier.

A. will arrive B. should have arrived C. arrive D. arrived

答案是 B。“要不是由于这场暴风雨, 我们该到得更早些。”but for 短语相当于 “If it had not been for the storm.” 表示与过去事实相反的假设。

[例] Without electricity human life _____ quite different today.

A. is B. will be C. would have been D. would be

答案是 D。“如果没有电, 今天人类的生活会完全不一样。”句中, without 引起的介词短语相当于 if 条件句 “If there were no electricity”, 故后用虚拟结构 would be, 表示与现在的事实相反的假设。

[例] Jack can't have arrived yet; otherwise he would have telephoned me.

“杰克不可能已经到了, 要不, 他早就给我打电话了。”

在这里, otherwise 隐含 “if he had arrived” 这个表示与过去事实相反的假设, 而且前句 “Jack can't have arrived yet” 已陈述了否定的事实。

5-5 表示错综时间的虚拟语气, 指主句的动作和条件从句的动作不是发生在同一时间。

在表示错综时间的虚拟语气中, 主句和条件从句中的动词要根据句意采用不同的时态。

[例] If I were you, I would have taken his advice.

“我要是你, 就听他的忠告了。”

句中, if 从句表示与现在事实相反的假设, 而主句表示与过去事实相反的结果。

[例] If he had listened to me, he would not be in

such trouble now. “如果他当时听了我的话, 现在就不会遇到这样的麻烦了。”

这是个含有错综时间的虚拟语气的句子。if 从句的动词表示过去的时间, 主句的动词表示现在时间。

第三节 状语从句中的虚拟语气

5-6 目的状语从句、方式状语从句和让步状语从句中, 有时要用虚拟语气。

① 在以 so that 和 in order that 引导的目的状语从句中, 动词形式为 “might, could, should, would + 动词原形”。

[例] Mark tried to tie the boat to the buoy so that it wouldn't be hit by other ships.

“马克试图把船系到浮标上,以防被别的船撞上。”

- ② 在 as if 或 as though 引导的方式状语从句中,如其含义与事实相反,其动词用虚拟语气形式。若从句动作与主句动作同时发生,动词用过去时 (be 用 were); 若从句动作先于主句动作发生,则用“had + 过去分词”。

[例] When a pencil is partly in a glass of water, it looks as if it _____.

- A. breaks B. has broken C. were broken D. had been broken

答案是 C。“当一支铅笔部分地插在一杯水中时,它看上去像是断的。”as if 引导的方式状语从句中的动词要用虚拟语气,因为实际上铅笔在水中不可能是断的,只是看上去像是断的。而且从句动作与 looks 同时发生,要用 were broken, 不能用 had been broken, 排除 D。

[例] The two strangers talked as if they _____ friends for years.

- A. should be B. would be C. have been D. had been

答案是 D。“那两位陌生人交谈起来,好像他们是多年的老朋友似的。”题干中 strangers 一词,就表明了他们不会是多年的朋友。因此,从句要用虚拟语气。而且从句动作 be 应发生在主句动作 talked 之前,所以从句的动词用“had been”。

温馨提示

as if 引导的方式状语从句若表示有明显迹象表明将要发生某事时,或可能被设想为真实的时候,可用陈述语气。

[例] The clouds are getting darker and darker. It looks as if it is going to rain. “云越来越黑了,看上去好像要下雨。”

从前半句所提供的情景,我们可以看出下雨是极有可能的,因此 as if 从句中的动词用陈述语气,即 is going to 的形式。

[例] Eliza remembers everything exactly as if it _____ yesterday.

- A. was happening B. happens C. has happened D. happened

答案是 D。“伊丽莎对一切事情记忆犹新,仿佛就是发生在昨天一样。”as if 从句有过去时间状语 yesterday,应用一般过去时 happened (强调被设想为真实的) 或 had happened (用虚拟语气,强调并非事实)。但选项中,并没有 had happened。故选 D。

- ③ even if 或 even though 引导的让步状语从句,若表示与事实相反,其动词用虚拟语气形式。从句及主句中谓语动词形式与非真实条件句中的形式相同。[参见 5-2 表格]

[例] Even if/Even though I were rich, I would work. “即使我很富有,我也要工作。”

句中,even if 引导的从句只是表示一种与现在事实相反的假设,其谓语动词用“were”,而主句中的谓语动词用“would + 动词原形”。

温馨提示

even if 或 even though 引导的从句如表示事实,其动词用陈述语气。

[例] They'll stand by you even if you don't succeed. “即使你成功不了,他们也一定会支持你的。”

句中,even if 引导的从句是陈述事实,即任何人的成功都不是轻而易举的,失败的可能性很大。主句和从句分别用了一般将来时和一般现在时。

第四节 宾语从句中的虚拟语气

5-7 suggest, order, demand 等表示“建议”、“命令”、“要求”的动词之后的宾语从句中的动词要用虚拟语气,其形式为“(should +)动词原形”。

这类动词有 suggest“建议”, demand“要求”, request“要求”, order“命令”, insist“坚决要求”, require“要求”, ask“要求”, advise“劝告;建议”, recommend“建议;推荐”等。

[例] The judge ordered that the thief _____ punished.

全国高考题

A. would be B. should be C. was to be D. must be

答案是 B。“法官命令要给小偷以惩罚。”ordered 之后的宾语从句中的动词应用“should be punished”或“be punished”。

[例] —How do you _____ we go to Beijing for our holidays?

—I think we'd better fly there. It's much more comfortable.

A. insist B. want C. suppose D. suggest

答案是 D。“你建议我们怎么去北京度假?”“我想我们最好乘飞机,要舒服得多。”问句的宾语从句的谓语动词为“should(省略)+动词原形”的虚拟语气,可排除 want(一般不接宾语从句)和 suppose(从句的时态要用将来时)。答语内容为一条建议,而问句中的 how 也说明说话人征询对方意见,应用 suggest“建议”,而不用 insist“坚持”。故选 D 项。

5-8 suggest, insist 等后的宾语从句中的动词并非都使用虚拟语气形式。

① 如 suggest 表示“暗示”或“表明”之意时,其后的宾语从句用陈述语气;如 suggest 表示“建议”,其后从句的动词用虚拟语气形式。

[例] Jane's pale face suggested that she _____ ill, and her parents suggested that she _____ a medical examination.

[上海高考题]

A. be; should have B. was; have C. should be; had D. was; has

答案是 B。“简那张苍白的脸表明她生病了、她的父母建议她进行一次体检。”同一句中出現两个“suggest”，但其意义不同，分别表示“表明”和“建议”，因此，其后宾语从句中的动词分别用陈述语气形式“was”和虚拟语气形式“(should) have”。

- ② 如 insist 表示“坚持要某人做某事”，从句中的动词用虚拟语气形式；如 insist 表示“坚持某种观点或看法”，则从句中的动词用陈述语气。

[例] The guard at the gate insisted that everybody _____ the rules.

A. obeys B. would obey C. will obey D. obey

答案是 D。“门口的卫兵坚持要大家遵守制度。”“坚决要求”大家都来“遵守”应用 should 型的虚拟语气。

The guard at the gate insisted that everybody had obeyed the rules. “门口的卫兵坚持说大家都很遵守规则。”

这里的 insisted that... 表示“卫兵所坚持的看法”，因此 that 从句中的动词用陈述语气 had obeyed。

[例] He insisted that he was right. “他坚持认为他是对的。”

从句中的 insisted that... 表示“他所坚持的看法”，从句动词用陈述语气。

5-9 wish 后的宾语从句中的动词用虚拟语气形式，表示与事实相反的一种愿望。

- ① 如 wish 后宾语从句中动词的动作表示与现在的事实相反或难以实现的愿望，其动词用一般过去式表示（动词为 be 时，用 were）。

[例] How I wish every family _____ a large house with a beautiful garden!

A. has B. had C. will have D. had had

答案是 B。“要家家都有一所带美丽花园的大房子该多好呀！”wish 的宾语从句应使用虚拟语气，故排除 A 和 C；又因本句是对现在情况的愿望，应用一般过去时，所以选 B。

- ② 若 wish 后宾语从句中动词的动作表示与过去事实相反，其动词用过去完成时表示。

[例] I wish I _____ you yesterday.

A. seen B. did see C. had seen D. were to see

答案是 C。“我要是昨天见到了你就好了。”wish 后的从句表示昨天没有见到你，显然与过去事实相反，故用过去完成时表示。

- ③ 若 wish 后宾语从句中动词的动作表示将来没有把握或不太可能实现的愿望，其动词用“would / should (could / might) + 动词原形”。

[例] I wish you would go with us tomorrow. “但愿你明天跟我们一块去。”

在说话人看来对方是很难明天一起去的。

5-10 would rather, would prefer 等表示希望或婉转责备的动词后的宾语从句中的动词要用虚拟语气形式。

在这种结构中,从句的动词用过去时表示与现在或将来事实相反的情况,用过去完成时表示与过去事实相反的情况。

[例] I would rather he came next Saturday. “但愿他下星期六来。”

句中, would rather 后跟的从句表示的只是一种愿望,往往不会成为现实。

[例] I would prefer you had seen the film yesterday. “我倒希望你昨天就看了这部电影。”

在 would prefer 后跟从句,表示与过去事实相反的情况,故其动词用过去完成时。

温馨提示

在口语交际中这种表示转折语气的虚拟语气也常见。

[例] —Do you mind if I open the window?

—_____ I feel a bit cold.

[广东高考题]

A. Of course not. B. I'd rather you didn't. C. Go ahead. D. Why not?

答案是 B。“如果我打开窗户你介意吗?”“但愿你不要打开。我感到有点冷。”do you mind if 从句/doing 的回答是针对 mind,即如果不介意就用 not 等否定词;表示介意时,则反之。本题答语中的 I feel a bit cold 含蓄地表示介意。这样选 A“当然不介意”、C“打开吧!”或 D“干吗不?”,三者都前后自相矛盾。而 would rather 可接虚拟语气的从句,可较为得体婉转地表达自己愿望或希望,即“还是不开为好”。故选 B。

第五节 主语从句、表语从句 和同位语从句中的虚拟语气

5-11 有些主语从句、表语从句或同位语从句中的动词用虚拟语气,其形式为“(should +) 动词原形”。

① 在“It + be + suggested 等表示‘建议’、‘要求’、‘命令’的动词的过去分词 + that 从句”这一结构中,that 引导的主语从句中的动词要用虚拟语气形式。这类动词的过去分词还有 ordered, demanded, required 等。[参见 5-7 所列动词]

[例] It was requested that their working conditions be improved. “有人要求改善他们的工作环境。”

[例] It was suggested that Jane (should) have a medical examination. “有人建议说简应该进行一次体格检查。”

[例] _____ in the regulations that you should not tell other people the password of your email account.

[上海高考题]

A. What is required B. What requires C. It is required D. It requires

答案是C。“按照规章要求你不应把自己电子邮箱的账号密码告诉别人。”that前没有其他动词,说明that引导为主语从句,应it作形式主语,并用require的被动式体现两者关系,符合句意,也符合It is required that 谓语动词为“should not + 动词原形”虚拟结构的要求。故选C。

- ② 在“It + be + important 等表示‘重要’、‘必要’等形容词 + that 从句”这一结构中,that 引导的主语从句用虚拟语气。这类形容词有 important“重要的”,desirable“理想的”,better“更好的”,strange“奇怪的”,necessary“必要的”,surprising“令人吃惊的”等。

[例] —Don't you think it necessary that he _____ to Miami but to New York?

—I agree, but the problem is _____ he has refused to.

[江西高考题]

A. will not be sent; that

B. not be sent; that

C. should not be sent; what

D. should not send; what

答案是B。“难道你不认为不必要送他去迈阿密而应该送他去纽约吗?”“我同意,可问题是他已经拒绝了。”第一空在it is necessary that... (也用于此处复合宾语中)句型中,that从句中常常用“(should) + 动词原形”虚拟语气。第二空引导表语从句(refused to后省略了be sent to New York)应用that,只起一个连接的作用,没有实际意义。故选B。

- ③ 表示“要求”,“建议”,“命令”等意义的名词作主语,表语从句中的动词要用虚拟语气;这类名词后接的同位语从句从句中的谓语动词也要用虚拟语气,即“(should +) 动词原形”。这类名词有:suggestion, demand, request, order, insistence, requirement, advice, idea等。

[例] The workers' requirement was that their working conditions be improved. “工人们的要求是他们的工作条件应得到改善。”

[例] The suggestion that Jane have a medical examination was put forward by her parents. “简应该进行一次体格检查的建议是她父母提出的。”

第六节 定语从句中的虚拟语气

5-12 在“It is (high/about) time + (that) 从句”的句型中,that从句中的动词要用虚拟语气。

在这个句型中,that常常省略。从句中的动词用过去时,有时用“should + 动词原形”。其含义为“该是干某事的时候了”。

[例] It's time we left. “我们该走了。”

that也可省略,从句仍然用主格we,动词用一般过去时left。比用It's time for us to leave的语气显得委婉一些。并且不定式的逻辑主语应用介词for + 宾语us。

第七节 表“祝愿”、“愿望”句型中的虚拟语气

5-13 某些表示祝愿或愿望的句子要用虚拟语气。

① 祝愿句常用原形动词或 may 引导的倒装句

[例] Long live China! “中国万岁!”

[例] God bless you! “愿上帝祝福你”! 或说成:

May God bless you!

② 表示现在或过去不能实现的一种愿望, if only 后用动词过去时或过去完成时。

[例] If only that photo weren't missing! “要是那张照片不丢该有多好啊!”

if only 后用一般过去时表示与现在事实不符合的愿望。

[例] Look at the trouble I am in! If only I _____ your advice.

A. followed B. would follow C. had followed D. should follow

答案是 C。“看我现在所遇到的麻烦! 要是我当初听从你的忠告就好了。”现在已经遇到了麻烦的原因是当初事实上没有听从你的忠告。应用 If only 接谓语动词为过去完成时, 表示与过去事实相反的愿望。故选 C。

第八节 谨防误用虚拟语气

5-14 有些该用陈述语气的句子易被误用虚拟语气, 应引起注意。

[例] —We could have walked to the station, it was so near.

—Yes. A taxi _____ at all necessary.

[全国高考题!]

A. wasn't B. hadn't been C. wouldn't be D. won't be

答案是 A。“我们本来可以步行到车站的, 路很近。”“是的, 坐出租车根本没有必要。”第一句中, 动词 could have walked 表示了虚拟语气, 说明他们没有步行去车站, 但在答句中, 应使用陈述语气, 因为“路很近, 出租车没有必要”是事实, 而并非假设。



即学即用

单项填空

1. Don't smoke in the meeting room, _____?

A. do you B. will you C. can you D. could you

2. _____ down the radio. The baby's asleep in the next room.

A. Turning B. Turn C. Turned D. To turn

3. I didn't see your sister at the meeting. If she _____, she would have met my brother.
A. has come B. did come C. came D. had come
4. The workers requested that their working conditions _____.
A. could be improved B. be improved C. would be improved D. were improved
5. I wish she _____ with us to share the joy.
A. is B. will be C. were D. should be
6. It is necessary that you _____ present at the discussion.
A. will be B. are C. should be D. were
7. It is hard for me to imagine what I would be doing today if I _____ in love, at the age of seven, with the Melinda Cox Library in my hometown.
A. wouldn't have fallen B. had not fallen C. should fall D. were to fall
8. The house could fall down soon if no one _____ some quick repair work.
A. has done B. is doing C. does D. had done
9. He hesitated for a moment before kicking the ball, otherwise he _____ a goal.
A. had scored B. scored C. would score D. would have scored
10. If I _____ plan to do anything I wanted to, I'd like to go to Tibet and travel through as much of it as possible.
A. would B. could C. had to D. ought to
11. —We missed you at this morning's meeting, Diana.
—_____, but if I hadn't had to meet a friend, I would have been there.
A. Me, too B. I'm sorry C. Never mind D. Thank you
12. _____ fired, your health care and other benefits will not be immediately cut off.
- A. Would you be B. Should you be C. Could you be D. Might you be
13. It's suggested by the hotel management that radios _____ after 10 o'clock at night.
A. were not played B. not to play C. not be played D. didn't play
14. —Jane wants to see you tomorrow. —I'd rather she _____ today than tomorrow.
A. comes B. come C. came D. will come
15. I _____ you to how to deal with the matter, but why didn't you ask me?
A. could show B. were to show C. had shown D. would have shown
16. —He looks very hot and dry. —So _____ if you had a temperature of 103.
A. would you B. will you C. would you have been D. do you
17. Thanks for giving me a hand. I _____ in the experiment without your valuable help.
A. have failed B. will fail C. would have failed D. must have failed
18. —Were you shown around Venice in a boat with those American tourists?
—No, but I wish I _____.

- A. am B. were C. had D. should
19. I can't get a good job now. If only I _____ to my parents' advise.
A. listening B. would listen C. were listening D. had listened
20. His failure in the experiment suggested that he _____ the teacher's instructions properly.
A. shouldn't have followed B. should not follow
C. mustn't have followed D. hadn't followed
21. It's high time he _____ home.
A. goes B. went C. to go D. would have gone
22. The old professor gave orders that the experiment _____ before 6.
A. be finished B. will finish C. was finished D. shall be finished
23. But for the snow, we _____ earlier.
A. will arrive B. would have arrived C. arrive D. arrived
24. The work would require that _____ there at 5 o'clock every morning.
A. she be B. she was C. she has been D. she has been
25. The thief closed his eyes _____ he _____ dying.
A. even if; was B. though; would be C. when; had been D. as if; were



点石成金

单项填空

B. Don't... will you? 是以疑问句形式出现的祈使句。

用祈使语气,表示说话人向对方提出请求,动词用原形。

if 表示与过去事实相反的假设,应用过去完成时。

request 宾语从句中的动词要用虚拟语气形式,根据语义,应为被动结构 be improved。

在 I wish 从句中表示与现在事实相反的一种愿望,即“她现在没有与我们共享快乐”。

necessary 的后主语从句用 should 形式的虚拟语气。

由 what 引起的宾语从句显然是一种虚设情况,使用虚拟语气;因 if 从句的内容与过去事实相反。故选 B。

题干主句中的 could 表示可能性,不是过去时,表示为将来时间,因此 if 条件从句的谓语动词应用一般现在时 (does) 代替一般将来时。如果是虚拟条件句,句式应为“主语 + could have done... if 主语 + had done...”。故排除 D。

otherwise 反映了假设,故用 would have score (于主句) 表示对过去的假设,构成前后为意义上的转折,即“他犹豫了片刻才踢球,否则他就会进一分(事实没有进)”。

情态动词 could 表示一种对未来可能性(小)比较; would 表示“意愿”或与事实相反; have to 表示“不得不”; ought to 表示“应该”。

答语中通过虚拟语气“但如果我不是不得不见一位朋友,我会去出席今天上午的会议的”,透露出一种遗憾,故用 I'm sorry 表示歉意,最符合语境。故选 B。

前半句是省略了 if 的虚拟条件句,应把 should 提至句首,表示“万一你要是被解雇了,你的医疗和其他津贴都不会立即被取消了”。

在 It's suggested that... 的主语从句中从句的谓语动词应用“(should) + 动词原形”。

would rather that 从句用过去式的虚拟结构,表示“她有是今天来而不是明天就好了”。

but 后为真实语气,而 but 前为虚拟语气,含如果请我帮忙我会让你看看是怎样来处理这个问题的。而过去事实上并没有这样做。

从句的谓语动词 had 暗示句子使用虚拟语气,故用主句 would you 表示与将来的假设,即“你要有 103 度体温,你也会一样的”。

介词短语“没有你有价值的帮助”,表示与过去事实相反(事实已经帮助过),实验失败也与过去事实相反的假设,故用虚拟语气 would have done。

从 No 可知,过去事实没有被人领着参观, wish 后的从句对过去情况的虚拟,应用 I wish I had。它是 I wish I had been shown around Venice in a boat with those American tourists 的省略。

现在找不好工作的原因是当初没有听父母的忠告,故 If only 的谓语动词用过去完成时,表示对过去情况的虚拟。

suggest 不是表示“建议”,而是表示“说明”,从句不用 should 的型的虚拟结构,根据动作发生是建议前,应用过去完成时,表示“过去的过去”。

“It's high time that (that 可省略) + 过去式”,表示“该他回家的时候了”。

orders 的同位语从句的谓语动词也用“should (可省略) + 动词原形”的虚拟结构,表示“老教授命令实验在 6 点前做完”。

but for... 表示“要不是雪的话,我们会到得更早。”谓语动词要用 would have arrived 表示对过去事实不符合的虚拟结构。

require 的宾语从句的谓语动词应“should (可省略) + 动词原形”,符合句意“工作要求她每天早晨 5 点到达那里”。

“小偷闭上眼,好像是要死了”,可用 as if... 接虚拟语气,符合句意要求。

第6章

助动词

高考热点

助动词在高考单选题中单独出现的并不多见,主要是结合动词的时态、语态、语气、倒装、强调等语法项目来考查的,但这并不说明助动词不重要。由于汉语中没有助动词或类似的用法和习惯,助动词的遗漏和误用常常出现在书面表达中(然而这些小错误最让改卷老师恼火,扣分是可想而知的,不少考生也为此付出了成倍的代价)。在短文改错题中,出题人常会设计此类的错误来迷惑考生。

第一节 助动词的概念及用法

6-1 助动词是帮助主要动词构成各种时态、语态、语气以及否定或疑问结构的动词。助动词分为时态助动词和结构助动词两种。

- ① 时态助动词有 be (am, is, are; was, were), have (has, had), will (would) 和 shall (should)。它们和主动词一起构成各种时态、语态和语气。

[例] America is growing older. [全国高考题]

“美国人口的年龄结构正在老化。”

“be (is) + 现在分词”构成现在进行时。

[例] We've stopped looking with surprise at older people who act in youthful ways. [全国高考题]

“我们已不再以惊奇的目光打量以年轻人的方式生活行事的老年人了。”

“have ('ve) + 过去分词”构成现在完成时。

[例] Everyone is expected to lead an orderly life according to rules laid down by the government.

[全国高考题]

“每个人都应该按照政府制定的规范过一种有秩序的生活。”

“be(is) + 过去分词”构成被动语态。

[例] You didn't let me drive. If we _____ in turn, you _____ so tired. [全国高考题]

A. drove; didn't get

B. drove; wouldn't get

C. were driving; wouldn't get

D. had driven; wouldn't have got

答案是 D。“你没让我开车。如果我们是轮换着开车,你就不会累成这样了。”

条件句中的“had + 过去分词”和主句中的“wouldn't have + 过去分词”构成虚拟语气的过去式。

② 结构助动词有 do (does, did), 本身无词义, 它仅为无助动词的动词提供助动词, 构成疑问结构和否定结构。

[例] Did you see what colour his traffic light was?

“你当时有没有看见他的交通灯是什么颜色?”

“do (did) + 动词原形”构成疑问结构。

[例] “Most people don't seem to mind Allan.”

[全国高考题]

“大多数人似乎不理艾伦。”

“don't (do not) + 动词原形”构成否定结构。

6-2 助动词 be、have 和 do 要根据主语的人称和数变换词形。



[例] “They’ve finally decided to clean them.” “他们终于决定清扫了。”

本句主语若变成第三人称单数形式, 则助动词 have (-'ve) 要改为 has (-'s)。

[例] Some thirty years ago, I was studying in a public school in New York.

“大约 30 年前, 我在纽约的一所公立学校读书。”

本句主语若改为 we, you 或 they, 则助动词 was 要变成 were。

[例] I’m not feeling very well.

[全国高考题]

“我感觉不太舒服。”

本句主语若改成 you, we, they 或 she, he, it, 则助动词 am (-'m) 要相应改成 are (-'re) 或 is (-'s)。

[例] Do you know what time it was?

[全国高考题]

“你知道当时是几点吗?”

本句主语若为 he 或 she, 则助动词 do 要改写成 does。

6-3 助动词和情态动词的 4 个相同点。

① 助动词和情态动词都可构成疑问句, 并且都能用在肯定或否定的简略式回答中。

[例] —Was the car going beyond the speed limit?

—Yes, it was. (No, it wasn't.) [全国高考试题]

“小车是否在超速行驶?”“是的, 在超速行驶。”(“不, 没有超速行驶。”)

[例] —Can you use the catalogue in the library?

—Yes, I can. (No, I can't.) [全国高考试题]

“你会用图书馆的目录吗?”“是的, 我会。”(“不, 我不会。”)

② 助动词和情态动词都可与 not 连用构成否定句。

[例] At first, it didn't sell very well. “起初, 它的销路不好。”

[例] What we can't get seems better than what we have.

“我们得不到的似乎比我们拥有的要好。”

③ 助动词和情态动词都能构成反意疑问句。

[例] You didn't let me drive, did you? “你没有让我开车, 对吗?”

[例] We ought to start at once, oughtn't we? “我们应该立刻出发, 不是吗?”

④ 助动词和情态动词都可用在 so... 或 neither (nor)... 句型中, 代替前面的动词 (短语)。

[例] “Did you enjoy that trip?” “I'm afraid not. And _____.”

A. my classmates don't either

B. my classmates don't too

C. neither do my classmates

D. neither did my classmates

答案是 D。“你那次旅行愉快吗?”“恐怕不愉快。而且我的那些同学也一样。”

[例] You can't do it, nor can I, nor can anybody else. “你不能做那事, 我也不能, 任何人都不能。”

6-4 谓语中只能有一个情态动词, 但可以有多多个助动词。

[例] You may find the information you need.

“你可能找到你需要的资料。” [全国高考试题]

句中只有一个情态动词 may, 表示“可能”。

[例] He was being trained to be a doctor.

“他当时正接受培训, 要成为一名医生。”

句中有两个助动词 was 和 being, 它们与过去

分词 trained 连用构成过去进行时的被动式。

第二节 时态助动词 be, have, will, shall 及 16 种时态和 10 种被动语态结构

6-5 时态助动词 be (am, is, are, was, were)、have (has, had)、will (would) 和 shall (should) 同主动词一起构成十六种时态和十种被动语态。

① 英语动词的时态共有十六种,以 speak 为例,列表如下:

时式	一般	进行	完成	完成进行
现在	speak speaks	am is speaking are	has have } spoken	has have } been speaking
过去	spoke	was were } speaking	had spoken	had been speaking
将来	shall will } speak	shall will } be speaking	shall will } have spoken	shall will } have been speaking
过去将来	should Would } speak	should Would } be speaking	should Would } have spoken	should Would } have been speaking

② 英语动词的被动语态共有十种,以 give 为例,列表如下:

时式	一般	进行	完成进行
现在	am is given are	am is being given are	has have } been given
过去	was were } given	was were } being given	had been given
将来	shall will } be given		shall will } have been given
过去将来	should Would } be Given		should Would } have been given

温馨提示

被动语态没有完成进行时态和将来进行时态。

6-6 助动词 be 的八种形式。

原形	肯定	否定	缩略否定
现在时第一人称单数	be am 'm	am not 'm not	aren't
现在时第三人称单数	is 's	is not 's not	isn't
现在时第二人称单、复数和第一、三人称复数	are 're	are not 're not	aren't
过去时第一、三人称单数	was	was not	wasn't
过去时第二人称单、复数和第一、三人称复数	were	were not	weren't
现在分词	being	not being	
过去分词	been	not been	

温馨提示

在第一人称的反意疑问句的尾句中用“aren't I?”,极少用“amn't I? 或 ain't I?”

6-7 “时态助动词 be + 现在分词”构成各种进行式。

[例] Now you are looking for a place where you can improve your English. [全国高考题]

“现在你正在寻找一个能提高你的英语的地方。”

“助动词 (are) + 现在分词 (looking)”构成现在进行时。

[例] Ten minutes later I was walking into the bank where I worked. “十分钟后,我正走进我工作的银行。”

“助动词 (was) + 现在分词 (walking)”构成过去进行时。

[例] She has been reading that book all morning. “她一上午都在读那本书。”

“助动词 be 的现在完成式 (has been) + 现在分词 (reading)”构成现在完成进行时。

6-8 “时态助动词 be + 过去分词”构成各种被动式。

[例] If the plants are killed, or are even prevented from light so that they cannot live nor-

mally, the corals will die.

“如果这种植物被弄死,或者受到光线的阻碍而不能正常生存,珊瑚就会死去。”

“助动词 be (are) + 过去分词 (killed, prevented)”构成一般现在时的被动语态。

[例] Santa Fe was founded in 1609 by the Spanish.

“圣菲是在 1609 年由西班牙人建立的。”

“助动词 be (was) + 过去分词 (founded)”构成一般过去时的被动语态。

[例] The noise-killing system will be used in most cars in 1996.

“到 1996 年,大多数汽车将使用消音系统。”

“助动词 be 的一般将来式 (will be) + 过去分词”构成一般将来时的被动语态。

[例] The rooms are being painted. “房间正在油漆。”

“助动词 be 的现在进行式 (are being) + 过去分词”构成现在进行时的被动语态。

[例] Metal that has been annealed is soft but does not break as easily.

“经过韧化的金属很柔软,但又不易折裂。”

“助动词 be 的现在完成式 (has been) + 过去分词 (annealed)”构成现在完成时的被动语态。

[例] Otherwise, they may be taken for candies.

“不然的话,它们可能会被误认为是糖果。”

“带情态动词 (may) 的助动词 be + 过去分词 (taken)”构成带情态动词的被动语态。

[例] They thought they might get killed. “他们以为他们会被杀死。”

英语中除了“be + 过去分词”型被动语态外,还有“get + 过去分词 (killed)”型被动语态。这种结构多用在口语中,多侧重动作的结果而非动作本身。

温馨提示

“be + 过去分词”不一定是被动语态,有时可能是系表结构,两者的主要区别是:被动语态表示以主语为承受者的动作;而系表结构则表示主语的特点或所处的状态。



【例】The window was covered with snow. “窗户盖满了雪。”

根据句子所表达的意思来判断,句中的 was 是连系动词,过去分词 covered 已基本失去动词的意义,相当于形容词,在句中作表语,这种“连系动词 + 表语”的结构称为系表结构。

【例】The window was broken with (by) a ball. “窗户让一个球打碎了。”

本句主语为动作所涉对象(即动作的承受者),句中 was 是助动词,随后的 broken 是表示动作的动词的过去分词,属于被动结构。

6-9 时态助动词 have 的五种形式。

	肯定	否定	缩略否定
原形	have	have not	haven't
	've	've not	
现在式第三人称单数	has	has not	hasn't
	's	's not	
过去式	had	had not	hadn't
	'd	'd not	
现在分词	having	not having	
过去分词	had		

6-10 “时态助动词 have + 过去分词”构成各种完成式。

【例】He's lived here since 1960. “他从 1960 年就在这里居住”(至今还住在这里)。

“助动词 has + 过去分词(lived)”构成现在完成时。“住”的动作从过去(1960 年)开始,继续到现在,可能继续下去,也可能刚刚结束。这是现在完成时的“未完成”用法。

【例】I'd been expecting some letters the whole morning, but there weren't any for me.

“整个上午我都在等信,但却没有一封信是我的。”

“助动词 have 的过去完成式(had been) + 现在分词”构成过去完成进行时。

6-11 时态助动词 shall 和 will 的肯定和否定形式。

肯 定	缩略肯定	否 定	缩略否定
shall	'll	shall not	shan't
should	'd	should not	shouldn't
will	'll	will not 'll not	won't
would	'd	would not 'd not	wouldn't

6-12 时态助动词 shall, will 表示单纯的将来时间, should, would 表示单纯的过去将来时间。

[例] I'll look into the matter as soon as possible. “我将尽快调查这件事情。”

[全国高考题]

将来时第一人称用 shall, 第二、三人称用 will, 但现代英语中第一人称已越来越多地用 will, 本句便是如此。

[例] There won't be any concert this Saturday evening, _____ ?

A. will there not B. will there C. is there D. will it be

答案是 B。“星期六晚上没有音乐会, 是吗?” 这是一个反意疑问句。第一部分为否定结构, 第二部分就用肯定结构, 所以可排除 A。另外, 反意疑问句中的第二部分的主语和助动词应与第一部分的主语和助动词保持一致, 因此 C、D 被排除。

[例] We were all surprised when he made it clear that he _____ office soon.

A. leaves B. would leave C. Left D. had left

答案是 B。“我们都大吃一惊, 他宣布他很快要离职。”“宣布”是过去的行为, 所以 A 可排除。又因为“离职”的动作在“宣布”时尚未发生, 是过去未来的事情, 所以 C、D 可以排除。

第三节 结构助动词 do

6-13 结构助动词 do 的三种形式。

	肯 定	否 定	缩略否定
原 形	do	do not	don't
现在式第三人称单数	does	does not	doesn't
过去式	did	did	not didn't

6-14 结构助动词 do 的四种判别法。

① 在疑问句和否定句中见到的最前边的 do(包括 does, did)是助动词, 本身无词汇意义。

[例] Did you do your homework yesterday evening? “昨晚你做作业了没有?”

前面的 Did 是助动词,构成一般疑问句,后面的 do 是实义动词,意思是“做”。

- ② 在肯定句中用 do, does 或 did 而紧随其后又出现主动词,则该主动词之前的 do, does 或 did 是助动词,系加强语气用,其含义为“的确”、“确实”。

[例] She did work there at the time. “当时她确实在那儿工作。”

- ③ 当句首出现 Not only, Hardly, Never, Often,

Only then 等词语时,句中用 do 助动词,并要置于主语之前,即用倒装。

[例] Hardly did I think it possible. “我认为这几乎是不可能的。”

- ④ 用 do 助动词代替前句提到的主动词,以避免重复。判别时要注意逻辑意思,一般来说,在 than, so, nor, as 等后出现 do 助动词时,则该助动词很可能是代替前面的主动词的。如:

[例] This year they have produced less grain than they did last year.

“今年他们生产的粮食比去年要少些。”

that 从句中的 did 用来代替主句中的 produced。



6-15 结构助动词 do 构成疑问式。

[例] Does John know any other foreign language besides French?

“除了法语,约翰还懂别的外语吗?”

do 助动词(does)构成一般疑问句。

[例] He comes late sometimes, _____?

[全国高考题]

A. is he

B. isn't he

C. come he

D. doesn't he

答案是 D。“他有时迟到,不是吗?”这是个反意疑问句。第一部分是肯定式,第二部分就应用否定式,因此 A、C 可以排除。另外反意疑问尾句中的主语和助动词应与第一部分的主语保持一致,所以选 D。

6-16 结构助动词 do 构成否定式。

谓语动词为行为动词或连系动词(be 除外)时,一般情况下,在行为动词的前面加 do not (don't); 单数第三人称的主语用 does not (doesn't) + 动词原形; 过去时一律用 did not (didn't) + 动词原形。

[例] It doesn't surprise us to hear of a 29-year-old university president.

[全国高考题]

“听说有人 29 岁就当上了大学校长我们并



不吃惊。”

[例] Joe didn't want to work with Sam again.

[全国高考试题]

“乔不想再跟山姆一起共事了。”

6-17 结构助动词 do 用于加强语气。

① 在肯定式陈述句一般现在时的谓语动词前加 do 或 does 表示强调, do 或 does 要重读。

[例] People in Sweden do pay taxes on everything.

[全国高考试题]

“瑞典人什么都要纳税。”

People in Sweden do pay taxes on everything “瑞典人确实什么都要纳税。”

[例] Sometimes an animal has a plant partner.

[全国高考试题]

“有时动物有个植物伙伴。”

Sometimes an animal does have a plant partner. “有时动物确实拥有一个植物伙伴。”

② 用 did 加强一般过去时谓语动词的语气。这时过去时的谓语动词要为原形动词。

[例] An awful accident _____, however, occur the other day.

[上海高考试题]

A. does

B. did

C. has to

D. had to

答案是 B。“几天前,一个可怕的事实的确实发生了。”however 作插入语,谓语动词用的动词原形,根据结构和句意可知此处为强调谓语动词结构;the other day = a few days ago,为过去时间状语,应用 did。

[例] The 20 students had a thousand reasons to be proud of themselves.

“这 20 位学生有一千个理由为自己感到自豪。”

The 20 students did have a thousand reasons to be proud of themselves. “这 20 位学生确实有一千个理由为自己感到自豪。”

温馨提示

如果谓语中已有助动词或情态动词,就不能在动词前加 do (does, did) 来强调。常用的方法是把需强调的词全用大写字母来书写。

③ 在一般祈使句的前面加助动词 do, 构成肯定的强语势祈使句, 表示一种强烈的感情, 具有感叹句的性质, 因此句末常用感叹号。

[例] Do go and get your coat. “去拿你的上衣。”

Do go and get your coat! “一定去拿你的上衣!”

[例] First, let me tell you something about myself.

“首先, 让我给你讲讲我的一些情况。”

First, do let me tell you something about myself. “首先, 务必让我给你讲讲我的一些情况。”

温馨提示

第二人称祈使句加强语气的两种其他形式:

(1) 用 **never** 代替 **don't**。

[例] **Don't pick up strangers.**

“别让陌生人搭车。”

Never pick up strangers. “千万别让陌生人搭车。”



(2) 主语 **you** 不省略或加呼语。

[例] **Find yourself someone else to shout at.**

“你跟别人叫喊去!”

Find yourself someone else to shout at, boss.

“老板,你跟别人叫喊去吧!”

6-18 当谓语动词前有否定意义的副词 (**never, seldom, hardly, rarely, scarcely** 等) 时,起强调作用的助动词 (**do, does** 和 **did**) 要加在该动词前面而不是加在副词的前面。

[例] **Joe never asked to go on a trip with Sam again!**

“乔再没要求和山姆一道旅行。”

Joe never did ask to go on a trip with Sam again! “乔确实再没有要求同山姆一道旅行。”

[例] **He seldom does come late.** “他的确极少迟到。”

第四节 do, have, be 作助动词与作实义动词或连系动词的鉴别

6-19 注意区别用作助动词的 **do, have, be** 和用作实义动词的 **do, have** 与系动词 **be**。



106 [例] **So although they can manage without each other, they do better together.**

“所以,尽管他们互不依赖也能生存,然而他们(结合)在一起会做得更好。”

本句中的 do 是实义动词,具有词汇意义(做)。

[例] Tod did see the headlights coming at him. “托德确实看见车灯向他靠近。”

句中 did 本身无词汇意义,不能单独用作谓语,只起强调作用,所以是助动词。

[例] The money paid as dog taxes is used to provide medical care for dogs.

“作为狗税支付的钱被用来为狗提供保健服务。”

句中的 is 是助动词,与主动词 use 的过去分词构成被动语态。

[例] It is always better to live with someone you respect.

“与你尊敬的人生活在一起总是更好些。”

句中 is 是系动词,与 always better 构成系表结构。

[例] I think you should have at least phoned Kate.

“我想你至少该给凯特打个电话。”

句中 have 是助动词,与过去分词 phoned 构成完成时。

[例] Most animals have little connection with animals of a different kind. “大多数动物与异类动物几乎没有什么关系。”

句中 have 是实义动词,具有词汇意义“有”,单独作谓语。

即学即用

I. 单项选择

- There is nothing really new about cheating in exams. Perhaps that was why Mrs. O'Neill _____ even say a word about it. [全国高考题]
A. didn't B. did C. could D. wouldn't
- Soon father said in a calm voice, “Kate and Joan, a friend of mine _____ here to see me this evening.” [全国高考题]
A. was B. comes C. would be D. is coming
- She _____ there since 1974. [全国高考题]
A. is living B. lives C. lived D. has been living
- Last year she was ill and her doctor said: “_____ work so hard.”
A. Stop B. Don't C. Better no D. Cannot
- Is this raincoat yours?
—No, mine _____ there behind the door. [全国高考题]
A. is hanging B. has hung C. hangs D. hung
- I don't know whether it will rain or not, but if it _____, I shall stay at home.
A. does B. will C. did D. rain
- Look at Mary. What _____? [全国高考题]
A. does she B. is she doing C. she is doing D. does she do
- I like sports and _____ my brother? [全国高考题]

- A. so does B. so is C. so D. so likes

9. His "Selected Poems" _____ first published in 1965. [全国高考题]

- A. were B. was C. has been D. have been

10. If your dog runs out on the road and _____ hit by a passing car, you, as the owner, have to pay for any damage done to the car. [全国高考题]

- A. has B. gets C. be D. will

II. 用所给动词的适当形式填空

- From the text it can _____ that in Sweden many car accidents _____ by dogs. (infer, cause) [全国高考题]
- Also _____ 1994 US World Cup star Romario who _____ to play for at least 45 minutes. (come, promise) [全国高考题]
- A well-known old man _____ and was asked if it was correct that he _____ just his ninety-ninth birthday. (interview, celebrate) [全国高考题]
- If the plants _____, or _____ from light so that they cannot live normally, the corals _____. (kill, even prevent, die) [全国高考题]
- There _____ a very bad accident in the road outside. I saw it through the window. I am sure the driver _____ your help. (be, need) [全国高考题]
- That evening Frank _____ a very expensive Havana cigar when a knock _____ on the door. (smoke, hear) [全国高考题]
- But the carmakers _____ if they _____ it into production because it would add several hundred dollars to the cost of their cars. (not decide, put) [全国高考题]
- In fact, the streets are still narrow, but he _____ more than fifty churches, among them the new St Paul's. (build) [全国高考题]
- I _____ Jim saw me; he _____ into space. (not think, just stare) [全国高考题]
- _____ you _____ how he came?
—Yes, I _____, he came by car. (remember) [全国高考题]



点石成金

I. 单项填空

根据语意应选择否定式,且仅表示过去的客观事实,不含“意愿”色彩。故选 A。

- 现在进行时,表“按计划、安排即将发生的动作”。
- since 作介词或副词时通常与句中动词的现在完成时或现在完成进行时连用。
- 句中的 work 有副词 so hard 修饰,为动词,应用 don't + 原形,构成祈使句的否定式。
- 根据句意,动词用现在进行时,表示现在暂时性动作。
- 条件状语从句中的谓语动词通常用一般现在时表示将来时间,用 does 代替前

句中的 rain(s)。

7. B 既然请对方看,应用现在进行时的疑问句式。

表示“我的兄弟也是”,应 so does my brother = my brother likes sports, too。

有明确的过去时间状语 in 1965,应用一般过去时;主语为一本书,谓语动词用单数。

get hit 表示“遭受撞击”,符合此处的被动含义,又因条件状语从句中,应用一般现在时表示将来。

II. 用所给动词的适当形式填空

1. be inferred; are caused 2. is / was coming is; has / had promised
3. was being interviewed; had just celebrated 4. are killed; (are) even prevented; will die
5. has been; will need 6. was smoking; was heard 7. haven't decided; will put
8. did build 9. don't think; was just staring 10. Do; remember; do

第7章

情态动词

高考热点

情态动词是自恢复高考制度以来,每年必考的(极少省市卷上,即使单选题中没有,也在完形填空或在其他题型里出现)。对情态动词的考查主要集中在以下三个方面:

1. 表示轻微的责备或后悔或对过去情况的推测(情态动词 + have + 过去分词)。
2. 表示对现在或将来情况的推测和判断。
3. 情态动词的基本用法及个别语境中的用法。

作为考生平时要掌握常用的情态动词的基本意义和用法,阅读时在真实的语言材料中去印证和领会其用法特点。另外也要对情态动词的相似结构进行归纳,要特别注意比较部分结构间的细微差别以及否定与肯定引起的意义上的差异(对此要反复咀嚼,确保精通)。

做题时,我们要利用细节,想象出话语的实际情景,体会说话人的语气和情态,做出正确的选择。

第一节 情态动词的概念及特点

7-1 情态动词是表示能力、义务、必须、猜测等说话人的语气或情态的动词。

- ① 情态动词与动词原形连用,表示说话人对所说话语的态度和看法。
- ② 情态动词没有人称和数的变化。
- ③ 情态动词各种形式一览表:

现在时形式		过去时形式	
肯定式	否定式	肯定式	否定式
Can	cannot (can't)	could	could not (couldn't)
may	may not (mayn't)	might	might not (mightn't)
shall	shall not (shan't)	should	should not (shouldn't)
will	will not (won't)	would	would not (wouldn't)
dare	dare not (daren't)	dared	dared not (daredn't)
must	must not (mustn't)	had to	had not to (hadn't to)
ought to	ought not to (oughtn't to)		
need	need not (needn't)		
		used to	used not to (usedn't to) didn't use (d) to

- ④除表中所列的情态动词外,本书将 have to, had better, would rather, be going to, be to, be about to 等也都列为情态动词。
- ⑤ can 的否定式一般皆用 cannot。can not 多用于否定 not 后面的词语。但美国英语的 can not 往往等于 cannot。
- ⑥ 缩略式 mayn't 只限于英国英语,且比较少见。

第二节 情态动词 + have + 过去分词的结构

7-2 “must + have + 过去分词”表示对过去事情的推测。

- ① 仅用于肯定句中,表示说话人对过去所发生的行为的推测,意思是“一定曾…”、“准是…了”。

【例】I have lost one of my gloves. I _____ it somewhere. [北京高考题]

- A. must drop B. must have dropped
C. must be dropping D. must have been dropped

答案是 B。“我丢失了一只手套。我一定是把它

掉在什么地方了。”第一句中的时态为现在完成时,表示“掉一只手套”已经发生过了。对于已经发生的事情的推测(可排除 A 和 C 表示现在的情况),应用“must + have done”结构,此处并无被动关系,故排除 D 而选 B。

【例】—Tom graduated from college at a very young age.

—Oh, he _____ have been a very smart boy then.

- A. could B. should C. might D. must

答案是 D。“汤姆年龄很小就大学毕业了。”“啊,那时他一定是非常聪明的孩子。”后者是对前者的话做出非常肯定的推断。用“must + have done”表示对过去事情的肯定推断,最肯定;might 与 could 的肯定程度不如 must;而 should + have done 则表示责备,都不符合语境。

温馨提示

如果表示动作持续进行了一段时间或强调持续进行而没有结束,可用“must + have been + 现在分词(doing)”。

[例] I was on the highway when this car went past followed by a police car. They _____ at least 150 km an hour.

A. should have been doing

B. must have been doing

C. could have done

D. would have done

答案是 B。“我在公路上,就在这时,这辆汽车开过去,后面跟着一辆警车。他们的车速至少是每小时 150 公里。”应用“must + have + been + doing”表示对过去正在发生事情的非常肯定的推测,强调“驾驶”当时还在持续进行着。故选 B。

② 本结构的否定形式不能用 mustn't,而要用 can't 或 couldn't[参见 7-3]

③ 本结构在变成反意疑问句时,其疑问尾句中不可使用“must”,而是要根据具体的时间概念,采用 didn't 或 haven't。

[例] He must have studied English last night, didn't he? “昨晚他一定学英语了,是吧?”
因为有“last night”这个表示确定的过去时间状语,可知所述动作发生在过去,故要用过去时。

[例] He must have studied English for years, hasn't he? “他一定学了多年英语了,是吧?”

因为有“for years”表示一段时间的状语,可谓语动作在过去发生,并一直延续至今,故用现在完成时。

7-3 “can 或 could + have + 过去分词”表示对过去某事的否定或疑问的推测。

① 这种结构只能用在否定句和疑问句中。肯定句中常用“must”。[参见 7-2]

[例] My English-Chinese dictionary has disappeared. Who _____ have taken it?

A. should

B. must

C. could

D. would [上海高考题]

答案是 C。“我的英汉字典不见了。谁可能拿走了字典?”第二句话显然是对过去事实的一种推测,不表示责备“should have done”(“本应该做某事”);“must have done”表“一定做过(某事)”,但不用于疑问句;“would have done”表“将做过(某事)”,用于虚拟语气;“could have done”表“可能做过(某事)”,表示推测。故选 C。

[例] — There were already five people in the car but they managed to take me as well.

— It _____ a comfortable journey.

A. can't be B. shouldn't be C. mustn't have been D. couldn't have been

答案是D。“车里已有五人,但他们还是设法带我同行。”“那么,这趟旅行一定不会舒适了。”must 不用于表否定推测,应排除C。而A和B都意指“现在”,与句意不符,也可排除。故选C。

② 这种结构中的 can 和 could 都用来表示过去的可能性,“时间”上没有区别,但“语气”上有区别:could 的“可能性”、“把握性”要小于 can。若上例中的空白改用“can't have been”,则口气更为肯定。

[例] — Do you know where David is? I couldn't find him anywhere.

— Well. He _____ have gone far—his coat's still here.

A. shouldn't B. mustn't C. can't D. wouldn't

答案是C。“你知道大卫在哪里吗?我什么地方都找不到他。”“他不可能走得很远——他的大衣还在这里。”从后面的 his coat is still here 可看出,要用 can (could) not have done 表示对已经发生的事情做出否定的推测,且说话人的口气非常肯定,而不是用 shouldn't 表示责备,或 wouldn't 表示与过去事实相反的假设;没有 mustn't have done 结构。

温馨提示

“could + have + 过去分词”常表示对过去本来可能做而实际上没能做某事的一种责备、遗憾、不高兴等。

[例] — I stayed at a hotel while in New York.

— Oh, did you? You _____ with Barbara.

A. could have stayed B. could stay C. would stay D. must have stayed

答案是A。“在纽约时我住在一家旅馆里。”“哦,是吗?那你本可以和芭芭拉待在一起的。”上句的过去时和“ Oh, did you?”表明应答者和前者在谈过去事情,这样,情态动词后要加不定式的完成式,排除B和C。应用“could + have + 过去分词”表示“本可以干(而事实上没有干)”,即:为多付住旅馆费用而感到遗憾。

[例] He paid for a seat, when he _____ have entered free.

A. could B. would C. must D. need

答案是A。“即使本可以免费进入的,他还是付了一个座位的钱。”座位的钱已经付过了,应用 could have entered, 表示“本可以免费进”,体现对事实上付钱的赞扬。故选A。

7-4 “should 或 ought to + have + 过去分词”表示该做而实际上未做到,意为“早该…”、“本该…”,带有责备口吻。



① 在肯定句中,这种结构用来表示过去应该做(或值得做)而没有做的事情。

[例] —I'll tell Mary about her new job tomorrow.

—You _____ her last week.

[福建高考题]

A. ought to tell B. would have told C. must tell D. should have told

答案是D。“我明天告诉玛丽她的新工作的事。”“你应该上周就告诉她的。”第一个人用一般将来时,说明“告诉”还没有进行,故应用情态动词 *ought to / should + have done*,表示“本应该干某事(但事实没有干)”,带有责备口吻。故选D项。

② 在否定句中,这种结构表示因出了某种差错而带有非难或不太赞许的口吻,意为“不该做而实际已做了某事”。

[例] I was really anxious about you. You _____ home without a word.

A. mustn't leave B. shouldn't have left C. couldn't have left D. needn't leave

答案是B。“我真为你担心,你不该一声都不吭就离开家。”根据句中的 *was* 暗示事情发生在过去。表示“原本不应该做某事而事实干了”应该用“*shouldn't have done sth.*”,故选B。A和D项表将来,C项意为“不可能离开家”,表示否定的推测,不符合本题的意思。

③ 在这种结构中,*ought to* 比 *should* 的口气更强烈。

[例] She ought to have helped you a lot. “她本该给你更多的帮助。”

[例] Tom ought not to _____ me your secret, but he meant no harm.

[全国高考题]

A. have told B. tell C. be telling D. having told

答案是A。“汤姆本不该把你的秘密告诉我,但他没有恶意。”事实已经告诉过,应用“*should not 或 ought not to + have + 过去分词*”。故选A。

7-5 “*may 或 might + have + 过去分词*”表示对过去某事作可能性推测。

① 该结构中的 *might* 与 *may* 的意义基本相同,只是它表示的可能性比 *may* 表示的可能性更小些。

[例] You may have noticed some birds sitting on the backs of sheep.

[全国高考题]

“你想必已注意到有些鸟停靠在羊背上。”

[例] Sorry I'm late. I _____ have turned off the alarm clock and gone back to sleep again.

[北京高考题]

A. might

B. should

C. can

D. will

答案是A。“对不起,我迟到了,我有可能把闹铃关掉后又睡着了。”这里在解释迟到的原因,对过去所做的不太有把握的事情的一种推测,“might have done”句型正好表达此意。

温馨提示

“might + have + 过去分词”还可表示“本应/可以…而没…”,具有委婉的责备、遗憾或恼怒之意。

【例】He _____ you more help, even though he was very busy.

A. might have given

B. might give

C. may have given

D. may give

答案是A。“即使当时他很忙,他也可以给你更多的帮助的。”might have given 表示恼怒之意,即事实上并没有多帮助。故选A。

【例】You might have come earlier. “你本可以来得更早些的(但却没有)。”

【例】You might not have left the key in the office. “你本不该把钥匙留在办公室里的。”

【例】I might have taken another path. “我本可以走另一条路的。”

② “may + have + 过去分词”通常只用于肯定句或否定句,一般不用于疑问句。在疑问句中通常用 can 表示。

【例】We _____ have proved great adventurers, but we have done the greatest march ever made in the past ten years. [天津高考题]

A. needn't

B. may not

C. shouldn't

D. mustn't

答案是B。“自己是伟大的冒险家,但是我们却取得近十年来最大的进步。”根据后面的语境“但是我们已经…”可知前面应为“我们也许没有证明…”,应用“may + have + 过去分词”的否定式,表示对已经发生的事情做出否定的把握性不大的猜测。

【例】—Can they have found the radio? “他们可能找到收音机了吗?”

—Yes, they may have. “是的,他们可能找到了。”

③ 句中主要动词如果是现在时,间接引语中用句型“may + have + 过去分词”或“might + have + 过去分词”均可。但如主要动词是过去时,则间接引语中只能用句型“might + have + 过去分词”。

【例】We thought you might have had an accident or, forgotten the day or something.

“我们当时以为你也许出了事,或忘了日期什么的。”

7-6 “needn't + have + 过去分词”表示“做了不必要做的事”,意为“本可不必”。作为情态动词的 need 在这一结构中一般只用于否定句或疑问句。

【例】—Catherine, I have cleaned the room for you.

—Thanks. You _____ it. I could manage it myself. [福建高考题]

A. needn't do

B. needn't have done

C. mustn't do

D. shouldn't have done

答案是 B。“凯瑟琳,我已经为你把房间打扫好了。”“谢谢你。你没有必要这样做。我自己能打扫。”由现在完成时可知,打扫房间为过去的事,应用 needn't have done 表示“本不需要做某事,而实际上做了”,也与后面 I could manage it myself 的意义一致。而 shouldn't have done 表示“干了本不该干的事”,不合语境。

温馨提示

“needn't + have + 过去分词”与“didn't need”的意思不同。

[例] She needn't have come to see me yesterday. “昨天她本可不必来看我。”(实际上来看了)

[例] She didn't need to come to see me yesterday. “昨天她不需来看我。”(实际上没来看)

第三节 表能力的情态动词 can / could 和 be able to

7-7 表“能力”可用 can 或 could。can 表示现在或将来的能力;could 表示过去或过去将来的能力。

[例] Robert and Joanna cannot see their friends.

“罗伯特和乔安娜看不见他们的朋友。”(表身体的能力)

[例] A computer _____ think for itself; it must be told what to do.

A. can't B. couldn't C. may not D. might not

答案是 A。“电脑本身不能进行思维活动,它需要指令才能工作。”(表技能)

[例] We couldn't eat in a restaurant because none of us had any money on us.

“我们不能到饭店进餐,因为我们谁也没带钱。”(表做事的能力)

温馨提示

(1) 用 could 询问“现在”是否具有某种能力显得比 can 客气些,还可用于 do。

[例] Could(Do) you speak Chinese? “您讲中文吗?”

(2) can 用于修饰性问句或否定句,可表示惊讶、不满、不耐烦、难办等情绪。

[例] What else can you say? “你还能说什么呢?”(不耐烦)

[例] How _____ you say that you really understand the whole story if you have covered only part of the article?

A. can B. must C. need D. may

答案是 A。“如果你仅仅读了这篇文章的一部分,你怎么能说你真的理解了通篇故事呢?”根据此句意,应用 can 表示“不满或惊讶”的情绪,其他情态动词无此用法,均不符合句意。故选 A。

7-8 “cannot help + V. -ing”表示“不得不”、“忍不住”,这种结构没有相应的肯定结构。

[例] People couldn't help _____ the foolish emperor in the procession.

A. laugh at B. to laugh at C. laughing at D. laughing on

答案是 C。“人们对游行队伍中的愚蠢的国王不禁嘲笑起来。”由句意可知此处应用“can't (过去式 could) help + doing 结构”;而 laugh 常接介词 at。故选 C。

7-9 can 与 be able to 的区别。

① 在表示过去时的一般疑问句和肯定句中,含有“终于有可能”、“好不容易”、“总算”做成某事之意时,用 was/were able to,而不用 could。但在否定句中,两者却可互换使用。

[例] The fire spread through the hotel very quickly but everyone _____ get out.

A. had to B. would C. could D. was able to [全国高考题]

答案是 D。“大火很快燃遍了整个饭店,但大家总算都逃了出来。”其他选项均不能表示“过去成功地干某事”,只有 D 项合语境。

② can 只有现在式和过去式 (could) 两种形式;而 be able to 除现在式和过去式之外,还有将来式、完成式。它还可用作非谓语动词短语。

[例] If you visited Indianapolis you would be able to find your way around easily because most of the streets cross each other like a chessboard. [全国高考题]

“如果你到印第安那波利斯游览,你会很容易找到自己要走的路线的,因为大多数的街道像棋盘似的纵横交错。”

本句中的“would be able to”是主句中谓语的一部分,表示与现在事实相反的设想。

[例] Being able to read in English, he soon found out their secrets. “因为他能用英语阅读,他很快便发现了他们的秘密。”

句中 being able to 为现在分词短语,作原因状语。

③ can 既可用于人,又可用于其他事物作主语的句子中;be able to 只用于有生命的名词、代词作主语的句子中。

[例] I can hardly imagine Peter sailing across the Atlantic Ocean in five days.

“我几乎不能想象彼得在五天内横渡大西洋。”

[例] It can be inferred from the text that the teacher from Guangdong Province felt proud of the gold medal winners. [全国高考题]

“从课文中可推断出来自广东省的那位老师对金牌获得者感到很自豪。”

④ 带 can 的主动式结构的句子可变成被动式结构,但带 be able to 的主动式结构的句子都不能变成被动式结构的句子。

[例] We can use coal to produce electricity for agriculture and industry. “我们能用电为工农业生产发电。”

本句可变为: Coal can be used to produce electricity for agriculture and industry.

“煤能用来为工农业生产发电。” [全国高考题]

⑤ 在 be able to 之前可加一个其他情态动词(但要注意没有 can be able to 这样的结构)或把 be 改为某些系动词(如 seem, turn, look),而 can 则不能这样。

[例] I ought to be able to run an English study class. “我应该能办一个英语学习班。”

[例] He seemed able to find ways to get out of the trouble. “他似乎有能力找到摆脱困境的方法。”

第四节 表许可的情态动词 can, could, may, might

7-10 can, may, could, might 用于主语为第一人称的句子,征求许可或给予许可,作“我可以…吗?”解。“Can I...?”属非正式而有礼貌的用法,“May I...?”属正式而有礼貌的用法。

[例] Good morning. Can I help you? [全国高考题]

“早上好。我可以帮你的忙吗?”

[例] —I hear you've got a set of valuable Australian coins. I have a look?

—Yes, certainly.

A. Do B. May C. Shall D. Should

答案是 B。“听说你有一套有价值的澳大利亚

的硬币。我可以看一看吗?”在对话中,说话人应用句型“May I...?”征求对方的同意或许可。B 为最佳答案。

7-11 在会话中可用 could 和 might 征求许可,表示客气;但给予许可时,通常不用 could 或 might,而用 may 或 can 或其他表示客气的词语。

问句中用 could/ might 比用 can / may 显得迟疑或不让对方听起来好像你有把握,而是更尊重对方,而回答人却不宜用 could / might,否则反映了迟疑的情绪。

[例] — Could I call you by the first name?

— Yes, you .

A. will B. could C. may D. might

[上海高考题]

答案是 C。“我可以叫你的名词吗?”“是的,可以。”答语应用 Yes, you may. 或 Of course you can., 而不用 could 或 might。

[例] — Do you think I could borrow your dictionary?

A. Yes, you may borrow B. Yes, you could C. Yes, help yourself D. Yes, go on

答案是 C。“我可以借你的字典用一下吗?”“好吧,请便。”A 和 D 均不符合用语习惯。B 中 could 不妥,应用 can; help yourself 意为“随意取用”,故选 C。

7-12 主语为第二人称时,“你…可以吗?”中的“可以”只能用 can 和 could 请求听话人答应支持或帮助,不能用 may 或 might。

[例] Can you get me a pencil? “你可以给我拿支铅笔吗?”

[例] Could you help me to move the table? “你可以帮我搬一下桌子吗?”

[例] You can't park here. “此处不准停车。”

温馨提示

当我们要表达已经给予的允许时,一般不能用 may。

[例] It's not fair. Joey can stay till ten and I have to go to bed at eight. “这不公平:乔伊可以呆到 10 点钟才睡觉,而我却 8 点钟就得上床。”(一般不说:… Joey may stay up. …)

[例] A left luggage office is a place where bags _____ be left for a short time, especially at a railway station.

A. should B. can C. must D. will

答案是 B。“行李存放处是可以放包的地方,尤其是在火车站。”按照常识,火车站的行李存放处是为一些需要者而设立的。所以,对乘客来说,此处并非他们“应该(should)”、“必须(must)”或“将(will)”使用的地方,而是“可以;能够”(can 指已经给予的允许)使用的地方。故选 B。

第五节 表可能的情态动词 can, could, may, might

7-13 表示“可能”,可用 can, could 或 may, might。

① can, could, may, might 都可在肯定句中表“可能”,can 的语气最强,可能性最大,其余依次递减。

[例] She is very weak. She can easily get tired. “她非常虚弱,极易疲劳。”

[例] — I've taken someone else's green sweater by mistake.

— It _____ Harry's. He always wears green.

A. has to be B. will be C. mustn't be D. could be

答案是 D。“我错拿了别人的绿色的运动衫。”“可能是哈里的。他总是穿绿色的。”由句子后面的 He always wears green. 可看出此处表示“它有可能是哈里的”，应选 could be, 表示“一种不确定的可能性”。

[例] Helen _____ go on the trip with us, but she isn't quite sure yet.

A. shall B. must C. may D. can

答案是 C。句意为“海伦也许要和我们去旅行,但是她还没有确定。”故用 may 表示一种不是十分肯定的推测;而不用 must(十分肯定,与“还没有确定”冲突)或 can(理论上的或一时的可能性)或 shall(表示命令或警告等)。

[例] —Excuse me. Is this the right way to the Summer Palace?

—Sorry, I am not sure. But it _____ be.

[湖北高考题]

A. might B. will C. must D. can

答案是 A。“劳驾,请问这就是通向颐和园的路吗?”“对不起,我不敢肯定,但也许是吧。”从 I am not sure 可知,答话的人把握性不大,应选情态动词 might,表示可能性很小的推测。故选 A。

② 在肯定句中 can 往往表示“理论上可能”或“一时的可能”,may 往往表示“事实上可能”。

[例] We enjoy good weather in January, but sometimes it can be terribly cold. “我们一月的天气好,但有时偶尔也会很冷。”(并不牵涉到是否真的会发生)

[例] The road may be blocked up. “这条路也许被堵塞了。”(对现在事实的推测)

[例] The road can be blocked up. “这条路可能被堵塞住。”(理论上的可能性)

[例] The World Wide Web is sometimes jokingly called the World Wide Wait because it _____ be very slow.

A. should B. must C. will D. can

答案是 D。“‘万维网’有时被开玩笑地称为‘广泛等候’,因为它可能非常慢。”此处应用 can 表示网络时而出现的情况,即:“一种可能性”或“一时的可能性”。

7-14 can, could, might 表示“可能性”,可用于疑问句,而 may 则不可。

[例] Could this be true?

“这可能是真的吗?”

[全国高考题]

7-15 can, could, may, might 表示“可能”用于否定句时,后面的否定词否定的范围不同。

can 或 could 后面的否定词否定 can 或 could, 意为“不可能”;may 或 might 后面的否定词不是否定 may 或 might, 而是否定后面的不定式,意为“可能不,也许不”。

试比较 [例] He can't be in the classroom. “他不可能在教室里。”

[例] He may not be in the classroom. “他可能不在教室里。”

[例] He could not be honest. “他不可能诚实。”

[例] He might not be honest. “他可能不诚实。”

[例] —Is John coming by train?

—He should, but he not. He likes driving his car.

[全国高考题]

A. must

B. can

C. need

D. may

答案是 D。“约翰乘火车来吗?”“他应该会,但也许不。他喜欢开自己的车。”根据句意,空格处应该是表示推测的词。need 不表推测,故不选。must 表推测时不用于否定句。can not 表推测则表示绝不可能,和前面的 He should 相矛盾。故本题应选 may,表示“有可能不”。

[例] You _____ be tired—you've only been working for an hour. [全国高考题]

A. must not

B. won't

C. can't

D. may not

答案是 C。“你不可能累了——你只工作了一个小时。”破折号后的为解释性的内容,对前一句进行说明,故用 can't 表示“不可能性”的推测。A 项表禁止(不许),B 项表未来,D 项表不允许或也许不(没有把握),均没有用 can't 更合语境。故选 C。

第六节 表请求的情态动词 will, would, can, could

7-16 will, would, can, could 都可表示“请求”,但用 would, could 比用 will, can 语气更委婉,更客气。

[例] Will you do me a favour, please?

[全国高考题]

“请你帮我一下好吗?”

温馨提示

这句话也可改成: Won't you do me a favour? 用“Won't you...?”较“Will you...?”显得更客气些。

[例] I will be away on a business trip. Would you mind looking after my cat?

“我要出差,请你照料一下我的猫好吗?”

[例] Can you lend me a hand? “你能帮我一把吗?”

[例] Could you give me a hand with the cooking? “你能帮我烧饭吗?”

第七节 表意志的情态动词 shall 和 will

7-17 shall 和 will 都能作情态动词表示“意志”。表“意志”时,shall 和 will 的根本区别是:shall 表示说话人的意志,而 will 则表示句子主语的意志。

① 表示强烈意志。

shall 表示说话人的一种强烈意志,有“命令、警告、威胁、强制”等含义,因此 shall 的这种用法只适宜于第二和第三人称。will 表示的是句子主语的意思,它可以用于所有人称。

在表示强烈意志时,shall 和 will 都要重读,且都不能用其缩略形式 'll。

[例] Father will not allow us to use his recorder.

[全国高考题]

“爸爸就是不让我们用他的录音机。”

[例] —Excuse me, but I want to use your computer to type a report.

—You _____ have my computer if you don't take care of it.

A. shan't

B. might not

C. needn't

D. shouldn't

答案是 A。“打扰了,我想用你的电脑打一篇报道。”“如果你不保管好,你决不可以用我的电脑。”当别人借用电脑时,主人用带有威胁地口吻说,应取 shall 用作情态动词用于第二人称后,表示说话人的意愿(威胁、警告、决心)。故选 A。

[例] “The interest _____ be divided into five parts, according to the agreement made by both sides,” declared the judge.

[重庆高考题]

A. may

B. should

C. must

D. shall

答案是 D。“法官宣布:‘按照双方协议,利息被分作 5 部分。’”法官宣布的决定有法律效力,不得违背,且表示了说话人(及法律)的决心、意志、允诺等。shall 用于第三人称后,正有此用法。must 虽译为“必须”,但只是一种主观要求,不具备 shall 的神圣的毋庸置疑的决定口气,A 和 B 就与这种口气相差更远了。

② 表示一般程度的意思。

在表示一般程度的意思时,说话人也完全可以对自己表示此类意思,因此 shall 也可用于第一人称,这样,说话人同时也是句子的主语,shall 和 will 的意思趋于一致。

[例] We shall/will let you know our telephone numbers. “我们会让你们知道我们的电话号码。”

[例] I shan't/won't lend you the money. “我不会借给你这钱的。”

由于表示的是一般程度的意志,shall 和 will 不必重读,也可以用其缩略形式 'll。

温馨提示

在祈使句的答语中,常用 I will 或 I won't,其中的 will 要重读。

[例] —Write to me when you get home. —_____.

A. I must

B. I should

C. I will

D. I can

答案是 C。“当你到家后给我写信。”“我会的。”前者发出请求、提出要求。后者表示应许:“我会的”。应用 will 用于第一人称,表示有意识的行动,表现为意愿、意志等。比较:A 项表“必须(must)”,B 项表“应该(should)”,D 项表“能力(can)”。

7-18 主语若为无生命的东西, won't 不表示意志, 而用来谈论事物的自然属性, 表示拒绝, 意为“不肯”、“就是不…”或“怎么也不能”。

[例] —Can I help you, sir?

—Yes, I brought this radio here yesterday, but it _____. [全国高考题]

A. didn't work B. won't work C. can't work D. doesn't work

答案是D。“先生,您要什么?”“是这样,昨天我在这买了这台收音机,现在它不响了。”doesn't work 强调的是“收音机(现在)不响”这一客观事实,比选B表示自然特性(应是“响”而不是“不响”)好。故D为最佳答案。

第八节 表过去习惯的情态动词 would 和 used to

7-19 用“情态动词 would 或 used to + 动词原形”表示过去的习惯。

① used to 强调与现在对比,含有“过去如此,而现在已不如此”之意,而 would 则没有此意。

[例] Mother _____ us stories when we were young. [全国高考题]

A. was used to tell B. is used to telling C. used to tell D. used to telling

答案是C。“小时候,妈妈常常给我们讲故事。”

[例] Sometimes after supper Mother would sit under the tree and tell us stories. “有时候,晚饭后妈妈就会坐在树下给我们讲故事。”

② used to 在后面可接表示状态的动词,含有“过去一向…”之意,而 would 则一般不能这样用。

[例] The social clock that kept us on time and told us when to go to school, get a job or stop working isn't as strong as it used to be. [全国高考题]

“使我们准时,并告诉我们何时上学、何时找工作或何时退休的社会钟现在不像过去有力了。”

③ used to 用于表示过去有规则的习惯,而 would 表示过去不规则的习惯。

[例] I used to play ping pong a lot in my spare time, but now I am interested in football.

“过去在业余时间我常常打乒乓球,但现在我对足球感兴趣。” [全国高考题]

[例] He would often come to see me when I was living in the country. “我在农村生活时,他常来看我。”

④ would 含有主观的感情色彩,即表示自觉的行为和动作;而 used to 只表示过去的事实,比较客观。

[例] She would help me with my English on Sundays. “星期天时,她会帮我学英语。”

[例] The ancient Egyptian kings used to build pyramids as tombs.

“古埃及的国王们建造金字塔作为自己的陵墓。”

第九节 表推测的情态动词 should, ought to, would, will 和 must

7-20 should, ought to, would, will, must 表示推测或判断, 它们的语气依次递增。

[例] It's nearly seven o'clock. Jack _____ be here at any moment.

A. must B. need C. should D. can

答案是 C。“快 7 点了。杰克随时都有可能到这儿来。”should 在这里表示推测。

[例] —When can I come for the photos? I need them tomorrow afternoon.

—They _____ be ready by 12:00.

A. can B. should C. might D. need

答案是 B。“什么时候我可以来取相片? 明天下午我要用。”“到 12 点钟应该能洗好。”should(≈ will probably) 表示推测“可能”; can(≈ to be able to) 表示“能够”、“可以”; might(≈ to be in some small degree likely to) 表示把握不太大的“也许”、“或许”; need 表“需要”。故选 B 最合语境。

[例] They ought to be home by now. “他们现在就该到家了。”

句中 ought to 表示推测, 其语气较 should 强, 含有“很可能”之意。

[例] Go and ask Mary. She ought to know his address. “去问问玛丽。她该知道他的地址。”

[例] It would seem that something is wrong with this radio. “看来这台收音机出毛病了。”

句中的“would + 动词原形”表示对现在或将来的婉转的推测, 意为“大概…”, 可能…, 似乎…”。

[例] I guess the poet would have been about twenty when she wrote her first poem. “我猜想这位诗人写第一首诗歌时, 大概是 20 岁左右。”

句中“would + 动词完成式”, 表示对过去情况的推测。

[例] You will remember my father. “你大概记得我的父亲吧。”

在本句中 will 表示说话人的主观推测, 意为“大概”。

[例] He has an expensive car. He must earn a lot of money. “他有一辆昂贵的车, 他一定很挣钱。”

句中的 must 表达说话人对句子主语的推测, 表示确信或有很大的可能性。must 和动词原形连用是对现在情况的推测。

温馨提示

(1) will 表示推测时,句子的主语通常是第二和第三人称。

[例] That, I think, will be all that I want to say. “我要讲的话,我想,就是这些吧。”

(2) 推测情态动词 + be + 现在分词(V-ing) 强调现在进行的动作或将来的情况。

[例] Put on more clothes, you _____ be feeling cold with only a shirt on.

A. must B. can C. would D. could [全国高考题]

答案是 A。“多穿些衣服,只穿一件衬衫,你一定会感到冷。”根据句意,此处的可能性相当大,故用 must; 其后接 be feeling,更强调“感到冷”还在进行中。

[例] He ought to be working at the office. “他该在办公室上班。”

句中的 be working 说明对“工作还在进行中”的推测。

[例] He must be calling tonight. “他今晚一定会打电话的。”

句中 be calling 说明对将来的情况的预测。

(3) 推测情态动词 + have done 指到目前为止或过去[参见 7-2 至 7-12 及虚拟语气]

高中英语语法

第十节 表征询对方意见的情态动词 shall 和 should

7-21 shall, should 用于第一人称和第三人称,表征求对方(第二人称)的意见。

[例] — The room is so dirty. _____ we clean it? [北京高考题]

— Of course.

A. Will B. Shall C. Would D. Do

答案是 B。“房间这么脏。我们把它打扫一下,好吗?”用 shall we...? 表示说话人向听话人征求意见或询问听话人是否同意所要做之事。故选 B。

[例] When shall we meet again? “我们何时再见?” [全国高考题]

温馨提示

在征求对方的意见时,用 should 比用 shall 更具试探性。

[例] What should I do now? “我现在该做些什么?”

[例] Shall he go with you? “要他跟你一块儿去吗?”

第十一节 表愿望的情态动词

should, would 和 would rather

7-22 should, would 用于表示委婉的愿望。

[例] Little Jim should love to be taken to the theatre this evening.

“小吉姆今晚想让人带着去看戏。”

[例] I would appreciate your calling back this afternoon.

“今天下午你能回电话,我会感激的。”

7-23 would rather 表示主观意愿,后接不带 to 的动词不定式,意为“宁愿”。

[例] I would almost rather see you dead. “我宁愿看见你死去。”

温馨提示

“would rather + 不带 to 的动词不定式”结构中的 would 可以换成 had,但 would rather 更常用。would(had)rather 通常缩写成 'd rather。

[例] I 'd rather go out this evening. “今晚我宁愿出去。”

7-24 would rather 与 than 连用,其结构是:would rather... than...;或 would... rather than...;也可以颠倒为:rather than... would...。would (rather) 和 than 后都接不带 to 的不定式,如用的动词相同,则 than 后省略该动词。would rather... than... 意为“宁愿...而不愿...,与其...宁可...”等。

[例] I _____ play football than baseball.

[全国高考题]

A. would rather B. had better C. like better D. prefer

答案是 A。“我宁愿踢足球而不愿打棒球。”

[例] Rather than make money in such a dishonest way, John would beg in the street. “约翰宁可在街上乞讨,也不愿用这种不诚实的方法赚钱。”

7-25 would rather 的否定式是把否定词 not 放在 would rather 和不带 to 的动词不定式之间;疑问式是把 would 放在主语之前。

[例] —Shall we go skating or stay at home?

—Which _____ do yourself?

A. do you rather B. would you rather C. will you rather D. should you rather

答案是 B。“我们是去滑冰还是呆在家里?”“你自己愿意做什么?”

[例] I would rather not tell you. “我宁愿不告诉你。”

第十二节 表必须的情态动词 must 和 have to

7-26 表示“必须”这个意思时,must 多表示主观意志,have to 则往往强调客观需要。



[例] According to the local regulations, anyone who intends to get a driver's licence _____ take an eye test. [上海高考题]

A. can B. must C. would D. may

答案是B。“根据当地规定,打算得到驾驶证的人必须参加视力测试。”既然是当地的规定,应是“必须做”之事,应用 must 表示职责、义务,而不用 can, may 表示许可或可能性,也不能用 would 表示愿意。故选B项。

[例] The train leaves at 6:00 pm. So I have to be at the station by 5:40 pm at the latest.
“火车下午6点启程,所以我最近必须在5点40分到达车站。”

温馨提示

(1) must 也作“硬要;偏要”解,表示固执。此时 must 要重读。

[例] Naturally, after I told her what to do, my daughter _____ go and do the opposite!
A. may B. can C. must D. should [安徽高考题]

答案是C。“果然不出所料,在我告诉我的女儿该怎么办后,她偏偏要干那些与我说的相反的事。”应用“must(此处表示过去)+动词原形”表示女儿的很执拗。

[例] John, look at the time. _____ you play the piano at such a late hour?
A. Must B. Can C. May D. Need [全国高考题]

答案是A。“约翰,看看时间。这么晚了,你非弹奏钢琴不可吗?”(Why) Must you...? 意为“(为什么)你非要干…不可吗?”常用来表示告知某固执执行为令人不悦或恼怒。符合对方“这么晚还要弹钢琴”的语境。

(2) if you must... 意为“如果你非…不可的话”,常用来表示在不十分同意或赞成的情况下,允许某人干某事,或责备对方没有礼貌。

[例] — Who is the girl standing over there?

— Well, if you _____ know, her name is Mabel.

A. may B. can C. must D. shall

答案是C。“站在那边的那个女孩是谁?”“如果你一定要知道的话,(我就告诉你吧)她的名字是梅布尔。”应用 if you must know 表示“如果一定要/坚持要知道的话”,含勉强同意。A、B和D项分别表示“可以”、“能够”、“应该”,不合句意。

7-27 must 只有现在时形式,通常用以表示现在,过去时形式经常用 had to 来代替;have to 除了过去时形式 had to 外,还有将来时和完成时形式。

[例] —Must I do it now? “我必须现在做吗?”

—Not if you don't want to. “不,如果你不想做的话。”

全国高考题

[例] They expected that they would have to go to bed hungry.

全国高考题

“他们预料他们将要饿着肚子上床睡觉了。”

[例] I decided that I must stop smoking. “我决定我必须停止吸烟。”

在间接引语中,往往用 must 表示过去。

7-28 must 用来表示“必须”时,它的否定形式是 need not(不必,没有必要;省略形式是:needn't),不是 must not(mustn't);have to 的否定形式是 do (does,did) not have to。

[例] —Lucy doesn't mind lending you her dictionary.

—She _____. I've already borrowed one.

[湖南高考题]

A. can't

B. mustn't

C. needn't

D. shouldn't

答案是 C。“露西不介意把字典借给你”,“她不必了。我已经借到一本。”由答语 I've already borrowed one 可知应用 She needn't 来应答。比较:can't“不能(不许)”,mustn't“不行(禁止)”shouldn't“不该(责备)”。

[例] You don't have to come with me. “你不必跟我一起去。”

温馨提示

mustn't 常用作对 may I... 提出允许时做出否定的回答,比用 may not 更得体。也可用 can't 或其他婉转用语。

[例] —May I take the magazine out? “我可以把这本杂志借走吗?”

—No, you mustn't. “不,不行。”

此处的交际的场合是在图书馆想借走杂志。图书管理员所说“绝对不可以”,含义是图书馆的规定不许这么做,如用 No, you may not. 则强调说话人不允许(有点得罪人了)。

[例] —May I borrow the magazine? “我可以借这本杂志吗?”

—Sorry, I'm afraid you can't. My father wants to read it. “恐怕不行,我爸爸要看。”

此处的交际的场合是在朋友家想借走杂志,can't 比 mustn't 的口气要缓和些,表示“不行,不能”,强调情况不许或没有这个可能性。

[例] Tom, you _____ leave all your clothes on the floor like this!

[全国高考题] mustn't

A. wouldn't B. mustn't C. needn't D. may not

答案是B。“汤姆,千万不要像这样把你的衣服丢得满地都是”,应用 mustn't 表示禁止。wouldn't “不愿意”;needn't “不必要”;may not “也许不”。

[例] You must not eat chocolate. “你不要吃巧克力了。”

第十三节 表应该的情态动词

7-30 ought to 和 should 两者都可表示“应该”,但 ought to 比 should 语气强些。

[例] I often see lights in that empty house. Do you think I _____ report it to the police?

A. should B. may C. will D. can

[上海高考题]

答案是A。“我经常在空房子里看到灯光,你认为我该不该向警察报告?”就一件奇怪而令人生疑的事,说话人在向别人征求意见:是否“应该”向警察报告。是否该做某事要用情态动词 should,其他选项所表达的意义与情景不符。故选A项。

温馨提示

(1) ought to 往往与 should 同义,在生活交际中人们多用后者。但有时 ought to 有针对性,should 则表一般的忠告。

[例] Tom's mother told him that he ought to work harder the next term. “汤姆的妈妈告诉他下学期学习应该再努力些。”

[例] Tom's mother kept telling him that he should work harder, but it didn't help.

[全国高考题]

“汤姆的妈妈一直在给他讲他应该在学习上再下些功夫,但就是没用。”

(2) 情态动词 ought to 有进行时与完成时。

[例] If he took the 10:00 a.m. train, she ought to be arriving soon. “假如他搭上午10点的火车的话,应该就快到了。”

7-31 ought to 的否定式 (ought 后加 not) 和疑问式 (ought 提前, to 不动)。

[例] You ought not (oughtn't) to smoke so much. “你不应该吸那么多的烟。”

[例] —“Ought I to go?” “我该去吗?”

—“Yes, you ought.” “当然,你该去。”

[例] They ought to go, oughtn't they? “他们该去,不是吗?”

反义疑问句中的 to 最好省略。

第十四节 表最好的情态动词 had better

7-32 “had better”是固定词组,作情态动词使用,意思是:“最好…”、“还是…好”。缩写形式是接“'d better”。

① had better 要求接一个不带 to 的不定式。

[例] If you are planning to spend your money having fun this week, better _____ it.

—you've got some big bills coming.

[广东高考题]

A. forget B. forgot C. forgetting D. to forget

答案是 A。“如果你计划本周花钱玩乐的话,最好忘了吧——你有几大笔账单到。”句中的 better 为 you had better(接动词原形)的省略形式,故选 A。

[例] If you plan to control your life, you'd better win your parents over and try to get them to understand you.

[全国高考题]

“如果你打算主宰自己的命运,你最好把父母争取过来,尽量让他们理解你。”

② had better 的否定式是:had better not。

[例] You had better not wake me up when you go. “你走时最好别叫醒我。”

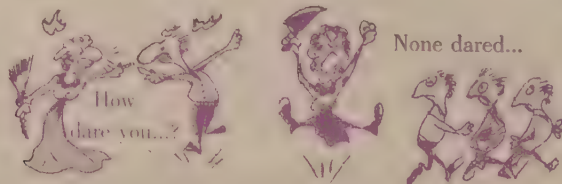
③ had better 有自己的被动语态,其结构是:had better + be + 过去分词。

[例] The flowers had better be watered. “花最好浇一下。”

had better 中的 had 尽管是以 have 的过去式形式出现,但它所表示的却是现在或将来的事情。

第十五节 表敢于的情态动词 dare(d)

7-33 dare 用作情态动词表示“敢”,通常用于否定句和疑问句,其过去式形式是 dared。



[例] How dare you say I'm unfair? “你怎么敢说我不公平?”

[例] None dared speak to him. “谁也不敢跟他说话。”

[例] She daren't tell the boss because she doesn't want to make trouble. “她不敢告诉老板,因为她不愿惹麻烦。”

即学即用

I. 单项选择

- Are you coming to Jeff's party?
—I'm not sure. I _____ go to the concert instead. [全国高考题]
A. must B. would C. should D. might
- Oh, I'm not feeling well in the stomach. I _____ so much fried chicken just now.
A. shouldn't eat B. mustn't have eaten [上海高考题]
C. shouldn't have eaten D. mustn't eat
- It has been announced that candidates _____ remain in their seats until all the papers have been collected. [上海高考题]
A. can B. will C. may D. shall
- I heard they went skiing in the mountains last winter. [北京高考题]
—It _____ true because there was little snow there.
A. may not be B. won't be C. couldn't be D. mustn't be
- Children under 12 years of age in that country _____ be under adult supervision when in a public library. [上海高考题]
A. must B. may C. can D. need
- I don't mind telling you what I know.
—You _____. I'm not asking you for it. [江苏高考题]
A. mustn't B. may not C. can't D. needn't
- I _____ pay Tracy a visit, but I am not sure whether I will have time this Sunday.
A. should B. might C. would D. could [浙江高考题]
- Isn't that Ann's husband over there?
—No, it _____ be him. I'm sure he doesn't wear glasses. [全国高考题]
A. can't B. must not C. won't D. may not
- There _____ be any difficulty about passing the road test since you have practiced a lot in the driving school [上海高考题].
A. mustn't B. shan't C. shouldn't D. needn't
- Mr. White _____ at 8:30 for the meeting, but he didn't show up. [全国高考题]
A. should have arrived B. should arrive
C. should have had arrived D. should be arriving
- He _____ have completed his work; otherwise, he wouldn't be enjoying himself by the seaside. [北京高考题]
A. should B. must C. wouldn't D. can't
- The woman biologist stayed in Africa studying wild animals for 13 years before she returned.

- Oh, dear! She _____ a lot of difficulties! [江苏高考题]
- A. may go through B. might go through
C. ought to have gone through D. must have gone through
13. —Tom is never late for work. Why is he absent today?
—Something _____ to him. [江西高考题]
- A. must happen B. should have happened
C. could have happened D. must have happened
14. I _____ have been more than six years old when the accident happened.
- A. shouldn't B. couldn't C. mustn't D. needn't
15. This cake is very sweet. You _____ a lot of sugar in it. [辽宁高考题]
- A. should put B. could have put C. might put D. must have put
16. The weather turned out to be fine yesterday. I _____ the trouble to carry my umbrella with me. [江苏高考题]
- A. should have taken B. could have taken
C. needn't have taken D. mustn't have taken
17. —May I smoke here?
—If you _____, choose a seat in the smoking section. [山东高考题]
- A. should B. could C. may D. must
18. Black holes _____ not be seen directly, so determining the number of them is a tough task. [上海高考题]
- A. can B. should C. must D. need
19. —Could I have a word with you, mum?
—Oh dear, if you _____. [浙江高考题]
- A. can B. must C. may D. should
20. —What's the name?
—Khulaifi. _____ I spell that for you? [北京高考题]
- A. Shall B. Would C. Can D. Might
21. If it were not for the fact that she _____ sing, I would invite her to the party.
- A. couldn't B. shouldn't C. can't D. might not [福建高考题]
22. —Must he come to sign this paper himself?
—Yes, he _____. [广东高考题]
- A. need B. must C. may D. will
23. Some aspects of a pilot's job _____ be boring, and pilots often _____ work at inconvenient hours. [湖南高考题]
- A. can; have to B. may; can C. have to; may D. ought to; must
24. We hope that as many people as possible _____ join us for the picnic tomorrow.
- A. need B. must C. should D. can [全国高考题]

25. As you worked late yesterday, you _____ have come this morning. [四川高考题]
A. mayn't B. can't C. mustn't D. needn't
26. —Is Jack on duty today?
—It _____ be him. It's his turn tomorrow. [四川高考题]
A. mustn't B. won't C. can't D. needn't
27. There's no light on—they _____ be at home. [全国高考题]
A. can't B. mustn't C. needn't D. shouldn't
28. You know he is not going to let us leave early if we _____ get the work done. [上海高考题]
A. can't B. may not C. shouldn't D. mustn't

29. —Shall I tell John about it?
—No, you _____. I've told him already. [全国高考题]
A. needn't B. wouldn't C. mustn't D. shouldn't
30. Johnny, you _____ play with the knife, you _____ hurt yourself. [全国高考题]
A. won't; can't B. mustn't; may C. shouldn't; must D. can't; shouldn't

II. 研读下面的英文常用谚语, 根据译文用情态动词填空

1. Young men _____ die, but old _____ die. 青年人可能死, 而老年人一定会死。
2. A man _____ keep his friendship in constant repair. 一个人得经常修补他的友谊。
3. He that _____ not work _____ not eat. 不工作者不得食。
4. The bird that _____ sing and _____ sing _____ be made to sing. 生来能唱的鸟, 不愿唱也得叫它唱。
5. They who _____ do as they _____, _____ do as they _____.
不能如愿而行, 也须尽力而为。
6. Every woman _____ be beautiful _____ good. 女人爱美, 甚于爱德。
7. If the mountain _____ not come to Mahomet, Mahomet _____ go to the mountain.
大山不向穆罕默德移来, 穆罕默德只好向大山走去; 他若不迁就你, 你就只迁就他。
8. He is a fool who _____ be angry, but he is a wise man who _____ not.
不会发怒是蠢人, 不愿发怒是聪明人。
9. A fool _____ throw a stone into a well, which a hundred wise men _____ pull out.
一个傻子造成的损失, 一百个智者也无法挽回。
10. One _____ be a servant before that he _____ be a master. 知待人然后能使人。



点石成金

I. 单项填空

1. D 因为前文说“我还没拿准主意”可知, 空格处应填“也许(might)”, 表示一种可

能性 而 A“必须”、B“愿意”、C“应该”与“I'm not sure”相矛盾

must 作“肯定;必定”之意时,不用于否定句,故 B 错 “shouldn't have done”表示“本来不应做”,时间指的是过去,故选 C。

shall 用于二、三人称,表示一种警告或威胁 符合句意“已宣布应试者们务必在卷子收走以前待在座位上”,否则这些应试者将受惩罚

根据答句的句意,空白处应是否定判断或推测,C 项合适 A 项表示不太确定的推测,D 项不用于推测,B 项也针对将来,均不可取。

根据句意首先排除 may 和 can(表示“可以,可能,能够”) 而 need 作情态动词,用于否定句或疑问句,肯定句中,为实义动词,要后接带 to 的不定式 故选 A,取 must 表示“必须”之意。

题干当中的 I don't mind... 和对方回答中的解释“I'm not asking for it.”可知:此时说没有必要,而并不表禁止。故选 D 项。

“我应拜访特露西一下”,应用情态动词 should,表示有必要 might 表示可能性小的推测,would 和 could 表示过去或虚拟语气都不符合语境

从答语后部分可知,否定回答是基于推测而不是基于事实,只有 can't 可表示(在认为很有把握的)否定推测,意为“不可能”。

shouldn't 表示“不应当;不应该”,符合句意 比较:mustn't“不准”,needn't“不必”,shan't“不许”。故选 C。

句意为“Mr. White 8:30 (原本)” 全句谈的是过去的事,故应使用 should have done 结构,表示“应该到会的,但他没到场”。

otherwise 暗示前后在意义上有转折,故用“must + have + 过去分词”表示对过去发生事情的一种较为肯定的推测。

“must + have + 过去分词”对过去发生情况作出肯定的推测,即“她肯定吃了许多苦” 而不用“ought to + have + 过去分词”来责备应该做到而实际上没有做到的。

Tom 上班从不迟到,为什么今天缺席? 这样“出事了”应是对过去发生事情的肯定推测,应用“must + have + 过去分词”、而不能“should + have + 过去分词”表示责备。

“当事故发生时,我不可能超过六岁。”表示对过去某事否定的猜测(并非表示自责),应用 couldn't have done 结构。故选 B。

由“蛋糕很甜”可知用“must + have + 过去分词”,表示“你一定放了许多糖”,对过去所发生事情的做出肯定的推测。故选 D。

needn't have done sth. 表示做了一件本不必要做的事,符合语境“昨天天气很好,我本没有必要那么费事带着雨伞(实际上是带雨伞了)”。

应用 must,表示“如果你非要抽烟不可的话”。比较:should“应该”,could“可以”,may“可以”。

18. A. can not 表示“不能直接被看到”,与“确定它们的数量是一项很难的任务”一

致。比较: should not“应该”, must not“不准”, need not“不必”。

if you must 表示“如果你非说不可的话,那就说吧”,对孩子的固执勉强同意。
比较: can“能够”; may“可以”; should“应该”。

对方问姓名时,说话者说出的名字后,可能担心对方不会拼写,所以用 Shall I... 征求对方意见,即“要不要我拼出来?”

fact 后接 that 引导的同位语从句,解释 fact 的具体内容。本句虽是虚拟语气,但“她不会唱歌”是一个事实,所以要用陈述语气 can't, 表示能力。

用 must 引起的一般疑问句,肯定回答用 must; 否定回答才用 needn't。故选 B。

前空用 can 表示一时的或理论上的可能性,“可能是枯燥的”。后空用 have to 强调客观条件“常常不得不在不方便的时间进行工作”。

can 可表示可能性或能力,符合句意。比较: need“需要”, must“必须”, should“应该”。

根据语境选 needn't have done, 表示本来不必做某事,“上午本来不需要来的”,但实际上已经来了。故选 D。

can't 表示猜测,意为“不可能是他值日”,符合后句提供的情景。mustn't“不准”, needn't“不必”, shouldn't“不应该”均不符合语境。

根据前句提供的情景“没有灯亮着”可知此处应用 can't, 表示“不可能在家”。

can't 表示能力,即“不能把工作做完”。

应用 needn't 表示“不必了”,与 I've told him already 意义一致。

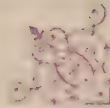
mustn't 表示“禁止”,即“不要/不准玩刀子”; might 表示可能性,即“也许会伤着你自己的。”

11. 研读下面的英文常用短语,根据译文中情态动词填空。

1. may; must 2. should 3. will; shall 4. can; won't; must 5. cannot; would;
- must; can 6. would rather; than 7. will; must 8. cannot; will 9. may; cannot
10. must; can

第8章

动词不定式



高考热点

动词不定式是非谓语动词的一种,在高考中单选题或短文改错里时常出现。近年来动词不定式主要是与分词、动名词以及谓语动词在一起综合考查(涉及非谓语动词每年都大多有1-3题)。另外,题目的设置有注重情景化和结构复杂化的趋势。

平时学习时,我们要记清、记牢一些常接动词不定式的动词和常见的结构和搭配,要注重相似结构或对应结构的对比记忆。

在做题时,要做到“三看”:

一看结构,首先要解析句子的结构,判断其是非谓语动词还是谓语动词;然后要确定要填的非谓语动词在句子中做哪种句子成分。

二看关系,要找出非谓语动词的逻辑主语,判断其与该动词的关系,从而确定用哪种非谓语动词形式。

三看时间,要看谓语动词(或相关部分)与该非谓语的动作发生的先后关系,从而确定该非谓语动词的时态及语态。要有不定式多表示未来的情况的概念,从而处理好其完成式和被动式以及与分词的区别。

第一节 不定式的概念及形式

8-1 动词不定式是由“to + 动词原形”构成,是非谓语动词,在句中不能单独作谓语。

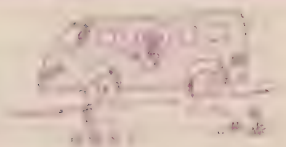
[例] Your mother asked me to give this to you.

[重庆高考题]

“你妈妈请我把这个东西给你。”

[例] When I was in the third grade, I was picked to be the princess in the school play.

“我三年级时被选中在校戏中扮演公主。”



8-2 动词不定式具有名词、动词、形容词和副词的特征。

由于不定式具有名词、形容词和副词的特征,因此,在句中可作主语、表语、宾语、定语、补语和状语。同时不定式还有动词的特征,它又可以带有自己的宾语和状语。这种带宾语或状语的不定式结构称为“不定式短语”。

[例] How are you managing to do your work without an assistant?

“你将怎样才能在没有助手的情况下完成你的工作?”

不定式短语“to do your work without an assistant”在句中作“managing”的宾语。同时,不定式“to do”又带有它自己的宾语“your work”和它自己的状语“without an assistant”。

8-3 动词不定式的否定形式为:“not + to do”。

不定式的否定形式通常是在不定式符号“to”前加否定词“not”构成,也可以在“to”前加“never”表示否定。当“to”需被省略时,否定词则位于不定式的原形动词前。

[例] She pretended _____ me when I passed by.

[全国高考题]

A. not to see D. not seeing C. to not see D. having not seen

答案是A。“我从她旁边走过时,她假装没看见我。”谓语动词“pretended”要接不定式作其宾语,可排除选项B、D。不定式的否定形式为“not to do”,故排除选项C。

[例] Mrs. Smith warned her daughter _____ after drinking.

A. never to drive B. to never drive C. never driving D. never drive

答案是A。“史密斯太太警告女儿绝不要在酒后驾驶。”“warn sb. to do sth.”结构中要用不定式作宾补,排除C、D。不定式的否定形式中,否定词总是位于符号“to”之前,排除B,用never to drive。

[例] I'd better not disturb him. “我还是不打扰他为好。”

8-4 动词不定式的复合结构一般由“for + 名词(或:宾格代词) + (not) 不定式”构成。for 介词短语是不定式的逻辑主语。

不定式的复合结构是指不定式带有逻辑主语。在这种结构中,“for”本身无意义,名词(或宾格代词)在意义上是不定式的逻辑主语。

[例] It was a mistake for her not to marry Tom. “她没有同汤姆结婚是个错误。”

句中for her 作不定式的否定式 not to marry Tom 的逻辑主语,用于 it is... 结

It was a mistake for her not to marry Tom.

构中。

[例] It took twenty minutes for the smoke to clear. 过了 20 分钟烟才散去

句中 for the smoke 作 to clear 的逻辑主语, 用于 it takes... 结构中。

[例] I'm anxious for there to be plenty of discussion. “我渴望能有充分的讨论。”

句中 for there 作 to be plenty of discussion 的逻辑主语, 相当于 I'm anxious that there will be plenty of discussion (that 后接的为从句)。

[例] The box is too heavy for you to lift. “箱子太重了, 你提不起来。”

句中 for you (you 为宾格) 作 to lift 的逻辑主语, 属于 too... to... 结构, 相当于 The box is so heavy that you (you 为主格) can't lift it.

温馨提示

(1) 不定式的逻辑主语有时可用介词“of”连接。[参见 8-14]。

(2) 不定式作宾补, 宾语为其逻辑主语, 宾语前一般不用 for 或 of

[例] My advisor encouraged _____ a summer course to improve my writing skills.

A. for me taking

B. me taking

C. for me to take

D. me to take

答案是 D。“我的指导老师鼓励我参加暑假课程学习来提高我写作技巧。”在 encourage sb. to do sth. 复合宾语中的宾语本身就是宾补的逻辑主语, 宾语前不要介词来引导, 不可与不定式的逻辑主语混淆, 而误选 C 项。只有 D 项符合句型结构要求及句意。

8-5 “连接词 wh- + 动词不定式”结构在句中可作主语、宾语和表语。

在 who, which, what, when, where, how 等连接词之后, 加动词不定式, 构成一种特殊的不定式短语。其功能相当于一个名词性从句, 在句中可作主语、宾语和表语。

[例] It is said in Australia there is more land than the government knows _____.

A. it what to do with

B. what to do it with

[全国高考题]

C. what to do with it

D. to do what with it

答案是 C。“据说澳大利亚的土地多得连政府都不知道该如何处理了。”know 后可跟宾语从句或者“疑问词 + to do”结构, 故可排除 A 和 D。又因“do with”是个短语, 意为“处理; 使用”, C 为正确答案, 相当于宾语从句 what they can do with it。

[例] I've worked with children before, so I know what _____ in my new job. [全国高考题]

A. expected

B. to expect

C. to be expecting

D. expects

答案是 B。“我以前同孩子们打过交道, 因此我知道在我的新的工作中需要的是。”know, learn 等后边常跟“wh-词 + to do”的结构。此处不强调进行, 排

除 C、B 项相当于“so I know what I should expect in my new job”, expect 的主语应该是“人”。若用 A、D 项的动词作 what 从句的谓语动词,它的主语则不是“人”而是“物(what)”,因此句型结构错误。故选 B。

[例] The question was _____ to take the children to the theatre or to leave them at home.

A. how B. however C. if D. whether [全国高考题]

答案是 D。“问题是带孩子去剧院还是让他们留在家。”根据题意,可排除 A、B 选项。if 不能与不定式连用作表语,故选 D。句中的“whether to take... or to leave”相当于 whether we should take... or leave..., 在句中作表语。

[例] When to leave for Beijing is not decided yet. “什么时候动身去北京还没有决定。”不定式短语“when to leave for Beijing”在句中作主语,相当于 when people (we, they, you) will leave for Beijing。

第二节 不定式的时态和语态

8-6 不定式的时态和语态的变化形式。

动词不定式有三种时态形式:一般式、进行式和完成式。语态又分主动语态和被动语态两种。请见下表。(以动词 do 为例)

	主动形式	被动形式
一般式	to do	to be done
进行式	to be doing	
完成式	to have done	to have been done

8-7 不定式的一般式通常表示不定式的动作发生在谓语动词之后或(几乎)同时发生。

[例] We agreed _____ here but so far she hasn't turned up yet. [全国高考题]

A. having met B. meeting C. to meet D. to have met

答案是 C。“我们同意在此见面的,但到目前为止她还没有露面。”agree 之后可加不定式、介词(to, on, with)短语或 that 从句,不能加动名词,排除 A、B。“见面”不可能发生在“同意”之前,排除 D(不定式完成式)。故选 C。

[例] I learned to ride a bicycle as a small boy. [全国高考题]

“孩提时,我就学会了骑自行车。”

句中不定式的动作“to ride”与谓语的动作“learned”几乎同时发生。

8-8 不定式的进行式表示谓语动词的动作发生时,不定式的动作正在进行。 139

不定式进行式表示正在进行的与谓语动词同时发生的动作,可用作主语、表语、宾语、定语、状语、补语等。

[例] The boy pretended to be sleeping when his mother came in.

“妈妈进来的时候,这个男孩假装正在睡觉。”(宾语)

[例] They seem to be fighting over there. “他们好像在那里打架。”(表语)

温馨提示

(1) 不定式的进行式的运用有时是出于句型结构的需要(常用 seem, pretend, appear, happen, is said / hoped / considered / believed 等后),其含义与进行时态相似。上述两句可分别用从句的进行时态: The boy pretended that he was sleeping when his mother came in. / It seems that they are fighting.

(2) 不定式的进行式更多为了描述我们谈论的时间(现在或过去)正在持续的动作,展现生动情景。

[例] Just to be doing something was a help. “做点事是有益处的。”(主语)

[例] You won't want to be washing at this time of night. “在夜里这时候你不要洗澡。”(宾语)

[例] Well, it's time to be making for home. “好,是回家的时候了。”(定语)

[例] You are too young to be meeting young men. “你太小,不能交男朋友。”(状语)

[例] Let's be moving, we're wasting time. “我们就走吧,我们在浪费时间。”(宾补)

(3) 当不定式的进行式与“always”连用时,则表示说话人一种不满或厌恶的情绪。

[例] If you want yourself to be in good health you must _____ always _____ so much.

A. not; be smoking B. not; have smoked C. not; to smoke D. be not; smoking

答案是A。“如果你想身体好,就不要总是吸那么多烟。”根据句意,可排除B、C选项。否定不定式的否定词“not”应放在不定式的前面,排除D。此题因前有情态动词,需选不带“to”的不定式,故选A。

8-9 不定式的完成式表示不定式的动作先于谓语动作。

① 不定式完成式所表示的动作发生在谓语动词动作之前,它的意思同完成时或过去时一样。

[例] You were silly not _____ your car.

[湖南高考题]

A. to lock B. to have locked C. locking D. having locked

答案是B。“连车都不锁,你太傻了。”应用不定式完成式,相当于 You were silly because you had not locked your car. 强调“没有锁车”发生在 were silly 之前。故选B项。

【例】It's good to have finished work for the day. “做完了一天的工作,真高兴。”

相当于 It's good when you have finished... 或 I'm pleased because I've finished...

【例】She said she was sorry to have missed you. “她说她没有见着你很遗憾。”

相当于 She said she was sorry that she had missed you.

② 不定式的完成式经常用在 seem, appear, be said/ hoped /reported 之后。

【例】I don't know whether you happen _____, but I'm going to study in the U. S. A. this September. [辽宁高考题]

A. to be heard B. to be hearing C. to hear D. to have heard

答案是 D。“我不知道你碰巧听说过没有,我今年九月就要到美国去学习了。”happen 可接不定式这四种形式,“to do”为不定式的一般式,表示状态或动作在谓语动作之后发生;to be doing 强调同时发生;to be done 表示被动;to have done 表示不定式的动作先于谓语动词。本题强调“听说过”在先,故选 D。

【例】AIDS is said _____ the biggest health challenge to both men and women in that area over the past few years. [湖北高考题]

A. that it is B. to be C. that it has been D. to have been

答案是 D。“据说艾滋病几年来一直是那个地方男女健康最大的挑战。”根据时间状语 over the past few years 可知要用不定式的完成式于“主语 + be said to 不定式”,相当于 It is said that AIDS has been the... (be said 后接 that 从句时,要用 it 作形式主语)。

【例】He seems to have missed the train. “他似乎误了火车。”

③ 在 hope, plan, expect, should(或 would) like 等动词后,接动词不定式的完成式时,则表示没有实现的愿望或计划。

【例】I would love _____ to the party last night but I had to work extra hours to finish a report. [全国高考题]

A. to go B. to have gone C. going D. having gone

答案是 B。“昨晚我本来想去参加聚会,但为了写完报告,不得不加班了。”根据 would love 后不接动词 V-ing 形式,排除 C 和 D。由下文知道没有“赴会”,故采用“would love + 不定式的完成式”表示“过去没有完成的计划”。

【例】We planned to have met at ten. “我们本来计划十点见面。”(但结果未见面。)

【例】He expects to have written it tomorrow morning. “他期望明天早晨可以写好”。(但还未写好)

8-10 动词不定式的被动式有两种:一般式(由“to be + 过去分词”构成)和完成式(由“to have been + 过去分词”构成)。

① 动词不定式的被动语态的一般式:to be + 过去分词。在句中可用作主语、表语、宾

语、定语、状语、补语等,多表示在未来的某时间将要被执行,即动作与其逻辑主语为动宾关系,且发生在将来。

- [例] It was impossible for lost time to be made up. “要弥补已失去的时光是不可能的。”
to be made up 作主语, for lost time 为不定式的逻辑主语,两者间为被动关系,
“弥补”发生在谓语动词 was 之后。

- [例] Little Jim should love _____ to the theatre this evening.

A. to be taken B. to take C. being taken D. taking

答案是 A。“小吉姆乐意今晚被带到剧院去。”take 的逻辑主语为句子的主语 little Jim, 两者为动宾关系,可排除用主动式的 B 和 D。而谓语动词“should (= would) love”多不接 V-ing 形式(可排除 C 和 D)故选 A。[参见 8-17]

- [例] Have you got ready for the meeting to be held? “你为要举行的会议准备好了吗?”
(定语)

- [例] The Chinese are proud of the 29th Olympic Games _____ in Beijing in 2008.

A. hold B. holding C. held D. to be held [四川高考题]

答案是 D。“中国人对 2008 年要在北京举行的第 29 届奥运会而感到骄傲”。
Olympic Games 应是被举行,要用被动式。in 2008 是将来时间,应该用不定式作
定语表示“被举行”发生在将来(针对 06 年考试时说),故选 D。

- [例] My wish is to be given a chance to have a try. “我的愿望是给我机会让我试一试。”(表语)

- [例] Having a trip abroad is certainly good for the old couple, but it remains _____
whether they will enjoy it.

A. to see B. to be seen C. seeing D. seen

答案是 B。“到国外旅行这对老年夫妇当然有好处,但他们是否会喜欢有待于进一步观看。”it 为形式主语代替 whether 引导的主语从句,而主句的谓语动词用的为将来时,说明“喜欢不喜欢”发生在将来,那么“拭目以待”也是发生在将来,并为被动关系,故用 remain to be seen (to be seen 作 remain 的表语,也可称为主语补足语)。

- [例] The flu is believed _____ by viruses that like to reproduce in the cells inside the human nose and throat. [上海高考题]

A. causing B. being caused C. to be caused D. to have caused

答案是 C。“人们认为流感是人的鼻子和喉咙里细胞中好再生的病毒引起的。”
题干中 by viruses 已经提示 cause 要用其不定式被动形式,表示“由病毒引起”,
全句转换为 that 从句为 It is believed that the flu is caused by viruses..., 此时 that
从句应用被动语态。故选 C。

帮你归纳

believe, say, consider 等常用“主语(人或物) + is / are / were believed”后接动词不定式,而不能接 V-ing 形式,表示被动含义时,常接动词不定式的被动式。

② 动词不定式的被动语态的完成式为“to have been + 过去分词”,强调一个已被完成的动作。

[例] The film happened to have been shown on TV. “碰巧那部电影电视上已经放过。”

[例] He claimed _____ in the supermarket when he was doing shopping yesterday.

A. being badly treated

B. treating badly

[上海高考题]

C. to be treated badly

D. to have been badly treated

答案是 D。“他声称昨天在超市购物时受到了不好的对待。”claim 常接 to do sth,可排除 V-ing 形式的 A 和 B;“受到虐待”发生在“声称”之前,应用动词不定式的完成式。故选 D。

第三节 不定式作主语

8-11 动词不定式作主语时,可用形式主语 it。

不定式在句中作主语时的位置:

① 不定式直接置于句首。

[例] To learn English is a pleasure to me. “学习英语对我来说是一种乐趣。”

[例] To scold her would not be just. “责备她是不公平的。”

② 句首用形式主语“it”,而把真正的主语不定式置于谓语动词之后。

[例] Is _____ necessary to complete the design before National Day? [全国高考题]

A. this

B. that

C. it

D. he

答案是 C。“有必要在国庆节前完成这项设计吗?”不定式短语“to complete the design...”是句子的真正主语,而句子前面的“it”是形式主语,用来表示该不定式主语。其他选项均不用作形式主语,应排除。

[例] It takes a long time to go there by train; it's quicker by road.

“乘火车去那里要花很长时间;走公路比较快。”

8-12 不定式在疑问句或感叹句中作主语时,必须用形式主语 it。

[例] Is _____ possible to fly to the moon in a spaceship?

A. now

B. man

C. that

D. it



答案是D。“乘宇宙飞船登上月球是可能的吗?”不定式短语“to fly to the moon in a spaceship”是句子的真正主语。因为句子是个疑问句,只能用形式主语“it”替代该不定式短语。(不能说:Is to fly to the moon possible?)

[例] What a joy it was to read his book. “读他写的书真是一种乐趣!”

8-13 主语和表语同为不定式时,不能用形式主语it替代该不定式。

[例] To live is to struggle. “生活就是斗争”(不能说:It is to struggle to live.)

8-14 “It is + 形容词 + for(或 of) sb. to do sth.”的用法。

在不定式复合结构“It is + 形容词 + for(或 of) sb. to do sth.”中,如果表语形容词只是说明不定式的特征而不表示人的特征或性质时,要用介词“for”来引出不定式的逻辑主语。常用的这类形容词有:hard, easy, important, necessary, difficult等。

[例] It is impossible for so few workers to do so much work in a single day.

[全国高考题]

“这么少的工人一天做那么多的工作是不可能的。”(不能说:so few workers are impossible, 所以要用“for so few workers”。)

温馨提示

但是,如果作表语的形容词既表示不定式的性质,又表示逻辑主语“人”的特征时,不定式的逻辑主语则要用介词“of”引出。常用的这类形容词有:kind, nice, clever, foolish, silly, wise, rude, selfish等。

[例] 改错:It was very kind for them to meet me at the railway station and drive me to their home.

答案是把“for them”改为“of them”。“感谢他们到车站接我并且驱车把我接回他们家。”根据句意,可以得出:形容词“kind”既表示不定式的性质,又表示“人”的特征。全句也可说成:They were very kind to meet me at the railway station...

第四节 不定式作表语

8-15 动词不定式作表语,说明主语的内容。

[例] The best treatment for fatness is to reduce the internal fat.

[全国高考题]

“减肥的最好办法是减少体内脂肪。”

温馨提示

如果主语部分有动词“do”,则作表语的不定式既可带 to,也可省略 to。

【例】We weren't allowed to stop him. All we could do was (to) watch him. “不允许我们阻止他。我们所能做的就是注视着他。”

8-16 动词“be”后面的不定式与主语有逻辑上的主谓关系时,表示“要做的事”。

【例】A knock on the door made him look up. He was to go on stage in the second scene.
“敲门声使他抬起了头。他将在第二幕出场。”

【例】Either you or the head master is to hand out the prizes to these gifted students at the meeting. [全国高考题]

“或者是你或者是校长将在大会上为这些有天赋的学生颁发奖品。”

第五节 不定式作宾语

8-17 动词不定式可作动词的宾语。

动词不定式作宾语,常用在 want“想;想要”,wish“愿望”,agree“同意”,decide“决定”,begin“开始”,learn“学习”,pretend“假装”,fail“没有能”,manage“设法”,wait“等待”,promise“答应”,plan“计划”,expect“期待”,refuse 拒绝,would like / love“乐意;想要”等动词之后。

【例】改错:I'd like very much come but I have an examination on Monday morning. [北京高考题]

答案是在 come 前加 to。“我非常乐意去但我明天上午有场考试。”very much 为副词短语作状语提前,也可以放在 come 后。那样 I'd (= I would) like 后接动词不定式缺少不定式符号 to。



【例】China has promised to revise its existing regulations and _____ new policies according to WTO requirements. [上海高考题]

A. forming B. to form C. to be forming D. have formed

答案是 B。“中国许诺要按照‘世界贸易组织’的要求来修改其现存的规定并形成新政策。”从句意看出来本句中有一个平行结构,也就是 to form 和 to revise 都是 promise 的宾语要清楚。符合 promise 常接 to do sth 的要求。所以选择 B。

【例】They are planning to visit China next year.

“他们计划明年访问中国。”

8-18 动词不定式作介词的宾语,一般用“疑问连词 wh- + 不定式”结构。

[例] Last summer I took a course on _____.

- A. how to make dresses B. how dresses be made
C. how to be made dresses D. how dresses to be made

答案是A。“去年夏天,我学习了如何制作衣服的课程。”介词“on”后面的宾语要用“wh-带to的不定式”结构,排除B。因不定式的逻辑主语是句子的主语“I”,make要用主动形式,排除C、D。

温馨提示

在表示“除外”的but,except等少数介词的后面,可用带to的不定式;其前如有实义动词“do”字样时,不定式的符号“to”需省略。

[例] He had no choice but to work hard. “他没有别的选择,只有努力工作。”

[例] She did nothing but cry. “她什么也不做,只是哭。”

[例] There is nothing left to do but lie down to sleep. “没什么事可做,只有躺下睡觉。”

8-19 动词不定式与特定形容词的搭配有两种类型。

- ① 第一种类型:句子的主语也是不定式的逻辑主语。此时的不定式动词既可是及物动词,又可是不及物动词。常见的这类形容词有:eager“热切的;渴望的”,anxious“焦急的;渴望的”,sorry“难过的;抱歉的”,happy“高兴的;幸福的”,ready“准备好的;乐意的”,sure“确信的;一定的”,glad“高兴的”,free“自由的”,likely“很可能的”等。

[例] They were eager to know everything about China and asked me lots of questions.

“他们渴望了解中国的一切,问了我许多问题。”

不定式“to know”的逻辑主语是句子的主语“they”。

[例] I am sorry to keep you waiting.

“对不起,让您久等了。”

- ② 第二种类型:句子的主语是不定式的逻辑宾语。此时的不定式动词只能是及物动词。常见的此类形容词有:cheap“便宜的”,expensive“昂贵的”,dangerous“危险的”,difficult“难的”,easy“容易的”,hard“难的”,等。

[例] The question is difficult to answer. “这个问题很难回答。”

主语“question”是不定式“to answer”的逻辑宾语。

温馨提示

如果不定式是不及物动词,则必须加一个在结构或含义上所需的介词,使其相当于一个及物的短语动词。

[例] The chair looks rather hard, but in fact it is very comfortable to _____.

- A. sit B. sit on C. be sat D. be sat on

答案是B。“这把椅子看起来很硬,但实际上坐上去感到很舒适。”从句意和结构上看,主语“chair”是不定式的逻辑宾语,但不定式“sit”是不及物动词,只有加介词才能跟宾语,即“to sit on the chair”。

8-20 作宾语的不定式带有其补足语时,要使用形式宾语 it,并把真正的宾语放在补足语之后。

[例] I don't think _____ possible to master a foreign language without much memory.

全国高考题

- A. this B. that C. its D. it

答案是D。“我认为不去记忆就想学好外语是不可能的。”不定式短语“to master a foreign language...”在句中作真正的宾语,因它带有自己的补足语“possible”,故必须用形式宾语“it”;C项 its 意为“它的”(作定语),不等于 it's“它是”,故不能选C。



第六节 不定式作补足语

8-21 带 to 的动词不定式在句中作宾语补足语。

有些动词不仅能跟宾语,而且还能跟带 to 的不定式作宾语,这种“宾语+不定式”的结构叫复合宾语。宾语是不定式的逻辑主语。跟不定式作宾补的常见动词有:advise“劝说”,allow“允许”,ask“请;叫”,beg“恳求”,encourage“鼓励”,get“让;使得”,force“强迫”,invite“邀请”,expect“期望”,order“命令”,permit“允许”,persuade“说服”,require“要求”,want“想要”,warn“警告”,teach“教”,wish“愿望”,等。

[例] 改错:I'm writing to ask you come to our class for a visit.

答案是在 come 前加 to。“我在写信邀请你到我们班来看一看。”ask sb. to do sth. 结构中遗漏了动词不定式符号 to。

[全国高考题]

[例] I'll try to get her _____ the doctor.

- A. see B. seeing C. to see D. for seeing

答案是C。“我尽力让她去看医生。”“get sb. to do sth.”意思是“使某人做某事”。而“get sb. doing sth.”意思是“使某人变成某种状态”。根据句意,可排除A、B、D。

温馨提示

help 既可用于 help sb. to do sth., 也可用于 help sb. do sth., 表示“帮助某人干某事”; 也可用 help do / to do sth.。

[例] Can anyone help me (to) carry the suitcase upstairs? “有谁能帮把这个手提箱搬到楼上吗?”

[例] 改错: I just want to thank you for helping me becoming a different person.

[天津高考题]

答案是 becoming 改为 become。“我只想感谢你帮助我成了另一个人。”help 作“帮助”解时, 后接带 to 或不带 to 的动词不定式作宾补都行。但不能用 help sb. doing sth. 结构。

8-22 在感官动词或使役动词后, 作宾语的不定式不带 to。

常见的感官动词有: see “看到”, look at “看”, hear “听到”, listen to “听”, watch “观看”, notice “注意到”, observe “观察”, feel “感觉到”等; 使役动词有: make “迫使”, have “使; 让”, let “让”。



[例] The mother felt herself _____ cold and her hands trembled as she read the letter from the battlefield.

[上海高考题]

A. grow B. grown C. to grow D. to have grown

答案是 A。“母亲感到自己身体变得冰凉, 当她读着从战场的来信时手颤抖着。”前个分句的宾语是反身代词 herself, 与 grow (为系动词, 作“变”解) 为主谓关系。应用 feel + sb. + do sth 结构。故选 A。

[例] As you've never been there before, I'll have someone _____ you the way.

A. to show B. show C. showing D. showed [全国高考题]

答案是 B。“你从来没有去过那里, 我让别人带你去吧。”have 是使役动词, “have sb do sth”表示“让某人做某事”。而“have sb doing sth.”则表示“任由某人一直做某事”。根据句意, 应排除 A、C、D。

温馨提示

使役动词 get 后作宾补的不定式要带“to”。[参见 8-21]

[例] The patient was warned _____ oily food after the operation.

- A. to eat not B. eat not C. not to eat D. not eating

答案是 C。“告诫病人手术后不要吃油腻食品。”谓语动词“warn”应跟不定式作宾补。用在被动结构中,宾补变成了主补,故排除选项 B、D。不定式的否定形式是把“not”置于不定式符号“to”之前,故排除 A。

温馨提示

这种结构也常用被动语态结构,这时的动词不定式用作主语补足语。并且如果不定式与句子的主语(即动词不定式的逻辑主语)为动宾关系,应用双重被动结构,即句子的谓语动词和动词不定式都用被动结构。

[例] Energy drinks are not allowed _____ in Australia but are brought in from New Zealand.

[上海高考题]

- A. to make B. to be made C. to have been made D. to be making

答案是 B。“能量型饮料不允许在澳大利亚生产,是从新西兰进口的。”“饮料”与“生产”为动宾关系,且为通常行为,应用不定式的被动式,与 are allowed 构成双重被动结构。故选 B。

8-24 当使役动词和感官动词用于被动结构时,要用带 to 的不定式作主补。

[例] John was made _____ the truck for a week as a punishment

- A. to wash B. washing C. wash D. to be washing

答案是 A。“约翰受到了惩罚,叫他洗车一周。”句中的谓语“was made”为被动结构,其主补应用带 to 的不定式“to wash”,故排除 B、C、D。

第七节 不定式作定语

8-25 动词不定式作定语要后置。

不定式修饰名词,通常只能置于被修饰的名词之后,一般表示将要发生的动作。

[例] 判断正误: There will be more than three hundred

A

B

scientists attending the meeting held the day after

C

D

tomorrow.

[全国高考题]

答案是 D。“将有三百名科学家出席后天举行的会议。”过去分词“held”作后置定语,修饰“the

meeting”表示动作已完成。然而,句意是“后天将举行的会议”,显然是矛盾的。所以,要把表“完成”的“held”改为表“将来”的“to be held”。



8-26 动词不定式作定语与其被修饰的名词(或代词)在逻辑上有主谓关系、动宾关系或同位关系。

① 含主谓关系。

[例] He is always the first one to get up. “他总是第一个起床”

“the first one”与“to get up”有逻辑上的主谓关系。

温馨提示

不定式作定语,常修饰序数词或带有序数词的短语,有时可表示过去的事情。

[例] This company was the first _____ portable radios as well as cassette tape recorders in the world.

A. producing B. to produce C. having produced D. produced

答案是 B。“这家公司是世界上第一家生产便携式收音机及录音机的公司”。the first 后省略了 company,与“生产”为主谓关系,应用动词不定式作定语,相当于定语从句 the first that(that 作从句主语不能省略)produced portable radios...。故选 B 项。

② 含动宾关系

[例] Every morning she would give him breakfast in bed and bring him the papers to read.

“每天早晨,她都把早饭送到他床上并且给他一些报纸读。”

动词不定式“to read”与“the papers”有逻辑上的动宾关系,并宾语 him 的行为。

帮你归纳

逻辑主语已出现于主语或间接宾语的作定语的不定式(谓语动词限于 be, have, give, bring 等)或在 there be 句型中的作定语的不定式,常用主动的形式表示被动含义。

[例] I'm going to the supermarket this afternoon. Do you have anything _____?

A. to be buying B. to buy C. for buying D. bought

答案是 B。“我打算下午去超市,你有什么东西要买吗?”“买”为第二句主语 your 的将来行为,相当于定语从句 Do you have anything that you want to buy. (即说话人并不为你付钱。也可视为其后省略 Let's go together.) 句中的 have 作“有”解,故用句型结构“have sth. to do”(其中 to do 为 sth. 的后置定语),用此主动形式表示被动含义。故选 B。

[例] I'm free today. Do you have some clothes to be washed? “我今天不忙,你有什么衣服要洗的吗?”

此处用不定式的被动式作定语,因为“洗”并非句子的主语 your 的行为,而是

其他人(说话人)的行为。

【例】There is nothing to do. “无事可做。”(含“无聊”之义)

There is nothing to be done. 不能做什么了。(“没有办法了”)

There is nothing to see. 没有什么可看的了。(即“没有什么值得看的”)

There is nothing to be seen. 看不见有什么。(即“什么也没看见”)

③ 有时,动词不定式作定语与其被修饰的名词(或代词)有同位关系。不定式说明被修饰名词的内容。

【例】改错:We usually work only five hours a day, so we will have plenty of spare time visit the area and have fun.

[福建高考题]

答案是在 visit 前加 to。“我们通常一天只工作五个小时,所以我们有充足的业余时间来参观这个地方,来玩乐。”动词不定式用作定语修饰 spare time,说明被修饰名词“time”的内容,并且“we”和“visit the area and have fun”有逻辑上的主谓关系。

8-27 当作定语的不定式与被修饰词有逻辑上的动宾关系时,不定式动词必须为及物动词;如果不定式的动词为不及物动词,则该动词后必须与介词连用,以使其成为及物的短语动词。

【例】After she considered the problem, she got a tall box to stand _____.

[全国高考题]

A. by B. on C. up D. with

答案是 B。“她(指 Washoe, 黑猩猩)想了想,然后,拿来一只高大的箱子站上去。”不定式“to stand”为不及物动词,如果加上介

词“on”,就变成了及物的短语动词。这样,它与所修饰的名词“box”为动宾关系,即为:to stand on a tall box。因此,A、C、D三个选项均可排除。

【例】Then there are always people to _____ if you feel like a chat. [全国高考题]

A. talk to B. talk C. speak about D. speak

答案是 A。“只要你想闲聊,总是有许多人同你聊。”“talk”为不及物动词,后面与介词“to”连用,使之成为及物短语动词,即为:“to talk to people”。



温馨提示

有时候,及物动词如果加上某些介词,其含义就有所不同。

【例】There are five pairs _____, but I'm at a loss which to buy. [上海高考题]

A. to be chosen B. to choose from C. to choose D. for choosing

答案是B。“有五双可供选择,但我真不知道买哪一双。”从后一分句可知,此处表示从五双中选择一双,而不是都要,所以要用“不定式+介词”to choose作定语;又因在there be句型中,可用主动形式表示被动含义“被选择”。故选B。

第八节 不定式作状语

8-28 动词不定式可作目的状语。

动词不定式可作目的状语,并且,表示强调时,常放在句首。

[例] 改错: Jack would fly away and bring it back for us throw again. [江苏高考题]

答案是在throw前加to。“杰克会飞走,把它衔回来,让我们再扔。”应用动词不定式作目的状语,for us为不定式的逻辑主语。

[例] It was unbelievable that the fans waited outside the gym for three hours just _____ a look at the sports stars. [上海高考题]

A. had B. having C. to have D. have

答案是C。“简直难以相信球迷们体育馆外面等了三个小时只是为了看一眼那些体育明星。”have a look at...是“等候”的目的,应用动词不定式作目的状语。其他非谓语动词无此用法。故选C。

[例] _____ late in the morning, Bob turned off the alarm. [北京高考题]

A. To sleep B. Sleeping C. Sleep D. Having slept

答案是A。“为了早晨能睡懒觉,鲍勃把闹钟关了。”“睡懒觉”是“关闭闹钟”的目的,用不定式作目的状语,此处未提前,而不是C项构成祈使句(前后不搭配)。B项sleeping是伴随状语或时间状语,一边“睡着”一边“关闭”显然不合逻辑。D项Having slept说明“睡”发生在“关闭”前,也不合情理。

温馨提示

当要强调不定式所表示的目的时,不定式还可变为“in order(not) to do sth. 为了(不)…”或“so as(not) to do sth. 以便(不)…”的形式。“in order(not) to do sth.”

可置于句首或句中,而“so as(not) to do sth.”多置于句中。

[例] Tom kept quiet about the accident _____ lose his job. [全国高考题]

A. so not as to B. so as not to C. so as to not D. not so as to

答案是B。“汤姆害怕失去工作,没把事故说出去。”“so as to do”在句中作目的状语,其否定形式为“so as not to”,故排除A,C,D。

[例] In order to prevent the fire from spreading, some of the houses nearby had been pulled down before the firemen arrived. [全国高考题]

“为了控制大火的蔓延,在消防队员到来之前就推倒了附近的一些房屋。”

8-29 动词不定式作结果或程度状语常见的五种搭配。

① so... as to do...

[例] Tom was so foolish as to tell lies to the police. “汤姆太傻了,竟对警察撒谎。”

② such... as to do...

[例] I am such a fool as to think that she is a warm-hearted woman. “我真傻,认为她是一位热心肠的人。”

③ enough(...) to do...

[例] I hope there are enough glasses for each guest to have.

[全国高考题]

“我希望有足够的杯子使每位客人都有一个。”

④ too... to do... 在这一结构中,不定式具有否定含义,意思是“太…而不…”。

[例] It was too late to catch a bus after the party, therefore we called a taxi.

“舞会后,天色太晚,没赶上汽车,我们乘坐了计程车。”

[全国高考题]

但这一结构并不总是有否定意义,可表示结果或程度。

[例] It is too kind of you to have told me that. “你告诉了我那件事,真是太好了。”

⑤ only to do... 这一结构通常表示一个相反或出乎意料的结果。

[例] He hurried to the station only _____ that the train had left.

[广东高考题]

A. to find B. finding C. found D. to have find

答案是A。“他匆匆去车站,结果只发现火车已经开走了。”在 only 后面表示一个意想不到的结果(他去时一定是满怀希望的),故用动词不定式 to find。

温馨提示



高中英语语法

(1) “only doing...”则表示由于谓语动词发生的动作而造成的结果。试比较:

They lifted a rock only to have it drop on their own feet. “他们搬起石头(结果却)砸了自己的脚。”

[例] He dropped the plate, only breaking it into pieces. “他把盘子掉下去打碎了。”

(“breaking”是因为谓语动词“dropped”而造成的结果。)

(2) only to 也常接动词不定式的被动式。

[例] The news reporters hurried to the airport, only _____ the film stars had left.

A. to tell B. to be told C. telling D. told

[广东高考题]

答案是B。“新闻记者匆忙赶到飞机场,结果只是被告知影星已经离去了。”

only 常接动词不定式结构(+ to do sth.)作结果状语; tell 为及物动词,常后接双宾语结构,故此处应用被动形式。故选B项。

8-30 动词不定式作原因状语与目的状语的区分标志有二。

- ① 不定式作目的状语时,不定式表示的动作后于谓语动词的动作;而不定式作原因状语时,不定式的动作先于谓语动词的动作。

[例] She wept to obtain sympathy. “她哭是为了得到同情。”(目的状语。“to obtain”表示动作后于“wept”表示的动作。)

[例] She wept to hear the news. “她由于听到这一消息而哭了。”
原因状语。“to hear”表示的动作先于“wept”表示的动作。

- ② 不定式作目的状语,不定式前可以加上“in order”或“so as”;而原因状语则不能。

[例] A great deal of work has been done to improve the people's living standard. “做了大量的工作是为了提高人民的生活水平。”

目的状语。“to improve”可用“in order to improve...”替代。

[例] I pretended to be happy to know him. “我装出了由于认识他而高兴的样子。”
原因状语。“to know him”前不能加“in order”。

◎ 第九节 省略形式的不定式 ◎

8-31 省去不定式时,常保留不定式符号“to”。

一般说来,一些形容词、动词后面的不定式内容是重复前面的内容时,“to”后的成分可承前省略,用不定式符号“to”来代替不定式结构。这种情况常见于口语中,尤其是在某些特殊结构中,如:used to, mean to, would like / love / prefer to, be glad to 等。

[例] — I'll be away on a business trip. Would you
mind looking after my cat?

— Not at all. _____ [全国高考题]

- A. I've no time B. I'd rather not
C. I'd like it D. I'd be happy to

答案是D。“我要出差了,您能帮我看管一下我的猫吗?”“好的,我很乐意这样做。”该

题的答语“Not at all.”意思是“不介意”,表示同意,因此可排除A、B两个选项。C项中的“it”指代不清,应排除。D项中的“I'd be happy to”代替了不定式所指的内容,即省略了“look after your cat”。

[例] The boy wanted to ride his bicycle in the street, but his mother told him _____.

- A. not to B. not to do C. not do it D. do not to [全国高考题]

答案是A。“这个男孩要在街上骑车,但妈妈告诉他不能这样做。”B项中及物动词do缺少宾语it;C少不定式符号to;而D不能用直接引语中的祈使句作宾语宾补,只有not to为not to ride his bicycle in the street的省略式,是正确答案。

8-32 动词不定式省略“to”的场合。

① 在感官动词和使役动词后作宾补的不定式不能带 to。[参见 8-22]

[例] It's a fine day. Let's go fishing, shall we?

[全国高考题]

“天气好,我们去钓鱼,好吗?”

② 在一些固定的结构中,动词不定式不带 to。常见的短语有: rather than, would rather, had better, why not 等。

[例] Rather than _____ on a crowded bus, he always prefers _____ a bicycle.

[全国高考题]

- A. ride; ride B. riding; ride
C. ride; to ride D. to ride; riding

答案是 C。“他总是宁愿骑自行车,而不愿意乘坐拥挤的公共汽车。”“宁愿…而不愿…”的句型是“prefer to do... rather than do...”因此可排除 A、B、D。此题 rather than 放在句首表示强调。



[例] — I usually go there by train.

— Why not _____ by boat for a change?

[全国高考题]

- A. to try going B. trying to go C. to try and to D. try going

答案是 D。“我去那里通常是坐火车的。”“为什么不换一种方式乘船去呢?” why not 后面只跟不带 to 的不定式,故可排除其他选项。

[例] I would rather play football than baseball.

[全国高考题]

“我宁愿踢足球而不愿意打棒球。”

[例] It's freezing outside. You'd better put on your overcoat.

[全国高考题]

“外面很冷,你最好穿上大衣。”

③ 当两个并列的带 to 的不定式由“and”或“or”连接时,第二个不定式的符号“to”可以省略。

[例] I intend to call on him and discuss this question again. “我想去拜访他并且把这个问题再讨论一下。”

[例] She asked you to telephone or write to her on Sunday. “她让你星期天给她打电话或者写信。”

温馨提示



如果这两个并列的带 to 的不定式强调对比,则第二个不定式的符号“to”就不宜省略。

[例] The purpose of new technologies is to make life easier, _____ it more difficult.

A. not make B. not to make C. not making D. do not make

答案是B。“应用新技术的目的是使生活变得更安逸,而并非使其更困难。”从语境看,本题应与与逗号之前的不定式形成对比的否定不定式结构,因此不能用V-ing形式。B项not to make也不能省略to;也可理解为是“and the purpose of new technologies is not to make it more difficult”的省略。故选B。

【例】I haven't decided to go home or to stay at school this summer. “我还没有决定今年夏季是回家还是待在学校。”

两项提供选择,表示对比了。

④情态动词后接动词也可视为动词不定式省略“to”。

【例】改错:Some students may also to save up for their college or future use. [江苏高考题]

答案是去掉save up前的to。“有些学生也为他们的大学或将来的用钱而攒钱。”also为副词,may为情态动词,后应用省略to的动词不定式。

温馨提示

有时句子貌似一个情态动词+动词原形,但实际上是动词不定式作其他用途。

【例】改错:My parents love me dearly of course and will do all they can make sure that I get a good education. [全国高考题]

答案是在make sure前加to。“我的父母当然爱我,愿意尽他们的所能,来确保我能接受良好的教育。”这里情态动词为“can do(do省略)”作定语从句的谓语,to make sure that I get a good education为动词不定式短语作目的状语,当然不能省略。

第十节 不定式与动名词的用法区别

8-33 在某些动词后,不定式或动名词作宾语意义不同。

在remember, forget, regret等动词后,宾语用不定式或动名词意义上有明显的区别。不定式结构指后于谓语动词的动作,而动名词则指先于谓语动词的动作。



【例】—The light in the office is still on.

—Oh, I forget _____.

[全国高考题]

A. turning it off B. turn it off C. to turn it off D. having turned it off

答案是C。“办公室的灯仍然亮着。”“噢，我竟忘了。”“forget”后接不定式作宾语，表示“忘记要做的事”（事实上没做某事）；而对名词作宾语，则表示“忘记已做过的事”（事实上已做过某事但忘记了。）因此，根据句意，可排除其他选项。

8-34 在 try, stop, go on, mean 等动词后，用不定式还是动名词取决于它们本身的含义和用法。

[例] She reached the top of the hill and stopped _____ on a big rock by the side of the path. [全国高考题]

A. to have rested B. resting C. to rest D. rest

答案是C。“她到达了山顶，停下来在小路边的岩石上休息。”“stop”接不定式是作目的状语，表示“停下来去做某事”；而接动名词则表示“停止做某事”。本句意为前者，即“停下来休息”，故排除A、B、D。

[例] Go on _____ the other exercise after you have finished this one. [全国高考题]

A. to do B. doing C. with D. to be doing

答案是A。“做完这个练习之后，接着做其他的练习。”go on 接不定式作宾语表示“接着做另外一件事”；而接动名词则表示“继续做同一件事”。根据句意，应排除其他三项。

帮你归纳



try to do sth. 意为“尽力去做某事”；而 try doing sth. 则是“试着做某事”。
mean to do sth. 意为“打算要做某事”；而 mean doing sth. 则是“意味着做某事”。

即学即用

I. 单项填空

- As the twentieth century came to a close, the raw materials for a great national literature were at hand, waiting _____. [湖南高考题]
A. to use B. to be used C. to have used D. to be using
- An army spokesman stressed that all the soldiers had been ordered _____ clear warnings before firing any shots. [上海高考题]
A. to issue B. being issued C. to have issued D. to be issued
- If anyone happens to drop in while I am out, _____ him or her leave a message.
A. have B. get C. ask D. tell [福建高考题]
- They knew her very well. They had seen her _____ up from childhood. [全国高考题]

A. grow B. grew C. was growing D. to grow

5. She will tell us why she feels so strongly that each of us has a role _____ in making the earth a better place to live. [上海高考题]

A. to have played B. to play C. to be played D. to be playing

6. With a lot of difficult problems _____, the newly elected president is having a hard time. [上海高考题]

A. settled B. settling C. to settle D. being settled

7. The mother didn't know _____ to blame for the broken glass as it happened while she was out. [全国高考题]

A. who B. when C. how D. what

8. In order to gain a bigger share in the international market, many state run companies are striving _____ their products more competitive. [上海高考题]

A. to make B. making C. to have made D. having made

9. The teacher asked us _____ so much noise. [北京高考题]

A. don't make B. not make C. not making D. not to make

10. The purpose of new technology is to make life easier, _____ it more difficult.

A. not making B. not make [上海高考题]

C. not to make D. nor to make

11. Helen had to shout _____ above the sound of the music. [全国高考题]

A. making herself hear B. to make herself hear
C. making herself heard D. to make herself heard

12. —Can the project be finished as planned? [福建高考题]

—Sure, _____ it completed in time, we'll work two more hours a day.

A. having got B. to get C. getting D. get

13. _____ more about university courses, call (920) 746-3789. [浙江高考题]

A. To find out B. Finding out C. Find out D. Having found out

14. All these gifts must be mailed immediately _____ in time for Christmas. [辽宁高考题]

A. in order to have received B. in order to receive
C. so as to be received D. so as to be receiving

15. I send you 100 dollars today, the rest _____ in a year. [湖南高考题]

A. follows B. followed C. to follow D. being followed

16. Mr. Green stood up in defence of the 16-year-old boy, saying that he was not the one _____. [安徽高考题]

A. blamed B. blaming C. to blame D. to be blamed

17. _____ this cake, you'll need 2 eggs, 175 g sugar and 175 g flour. [广东高考题]

A. Having made B. Make C. To make D. Making

18. He hurried to the booking office only _____ that all the tickets had been sold out.
A. to tell B. to be told C. telling D. told [陕西高考题]
19. _____ the employees' working efficiency, the supervisor will allow them to have a coffee break.
A. Improving B. To improve C. Having improved D. Improved [上海高考题]
20. After he became conscious, he remembered _____ and _____ on the hand with a rod.
A. to attack; hit B. to be attacked; to be hit
C. attacking; be hit D. having been attacked; hit [江西高考题]
21. It took a long time for the connection between body temperature and illness _____.
A. to make B. to be made C. making D. being made [江西高考题]
22. It remains _____ whether Jim'll be fit enough to play in the finals. [浙江高考题]
A. seen B. to be seen C. seeing D. to see
23. Charles Babbage is generally considered _____ the first computer. [全国高考题]
A. invent B. inventing C. to have invented D. having invented

II. 用动词的适当形式填空

1. While she lived, her front gate was always locked and no one ever saw her _____ (leave) or saw anybody _____ (go) in.
2. I tried _____ (persuade) him _____ (agree) with your proposal.
3. She rushed out of the room without giving me a chance _____ (explain).
4. —Did you remember _____ (lock) the door?
—No, I didn't. I'd better go back and _____ (do) it.
5. The baby needs _____ (look) after.
6. He is said _____ (send) to hospital already.
7. The library assistant doesn't allow the magazines _____ (take) away.
8. Would you like _____ (go) with me or would you rather _____ (stay) at home?
9. He was ever so happy _____ (admit) to the army.
10. The thief happened _____ (quarrel) about the treasures when the police went in.



点石成金

I. 单项填空

1. B 本句不定式的逻辑主语是 the raw materials, 与 use 是动宾关系, 应用不定式的被动式 to be used.
2. A order 的一个句型为 "order sb. to do sth." 或 "order sth. to be done", 其被动式为 "sb. be ordered to do sth." 或 "sth. be ordered to be done". 根据本题的句意和句子

结构,答案应为 A。

4. 只有 have 可构成 have sb. do sth. 这一结构,而 get / ask / tell 后面接 sb. to do 结构。
5. her 为宾格,其后的宾补不能用谓语动词的形式,可排除选项 B、C。see 是感官动词,宾补要用不带 to 的不定式,故排除选项 D。
6. B 从句的句型结构为“sb. have + 宾语 + to do(用作宾语的后置定语)”,其中的动词不定式只能是一般式,主语(each of us)要发挥(play)作用(role),应用主动式(to play)。
7. C 由于 problem 和 settle 之间为被动关系,故排除 B。A 项表示“已经解决”,C 项表示“将被解决”(主动表示被动)。
8. A “疑问词 + to do”结构可作主语、宾语或表语。本句中此结构里的 blame 为及物动词,其宾语为人,故选 A 中的 who。
9. A strive 常接 for / against sth. (为…而奋斗或与…作斗争)或 to do sth. (努力做…),不定式作目的状语。故选 A。
10. D 根据“ask sb. (not) to do sth.”可知 ask 的复合宾语应由“宾语 + 动词不定式”构成,故选 D。
11. C 逗号之前后的两部分形成对比,都应不定式作表语,not to make 中的 to 不能省略。故选 C。
12. D “Helen 只好喊”的目的是:让别人听到自己的声音,应用不定式作目的状语,可排除 A 项和 C 项。宾语 oneself 与宾补 heard 动宾关系,应用“make + oneself + 过去分词”。
13. B 答语表示“为了让任务及时完成”,应用不定式短语作目的状语。
14. A 拨打此电话号码应在先,更多地了解大学课程情况为其目的,应不定式作目的状语。故选 A。
15. C so as to 相当于 in order to, to 为不定式符合,后接动词原形,表示目的,意为“为了;目的是”;礼物立即寄出的目的是及时赶上圣诞节“被别人收到”,应用不定式被动式。
16. C 逗号没有连词 and 等,说明后面非分句或从句,the rest 和 to follow 构成独立主格结构,应不定式表主动和将来。
17. C 不定式 to blame 作定语和 be to blame 表示“该受到责备,应负责”,主动形式表示被动意义。
18. C “为了做这个蛋糕”,应用不定式表示目的。
19. B “only + 不定式”作结果状语,常表示出乎意料的结果。又因句意,要用不定式的被动式 to be told。
20. B 不定式作目的状语。意思说:为了改善员工的工作效率,老板允许他们有喝咖啡休息时间。to do 可以表示“为了…”实际上等同于 in order to, so as to。

remember 后应接 doing something 的被动完成式(同一般被动式),表示“记得已经被人袭击和被人打过”,符合语境。故选 D(hit 此处为过去分词,与 attacked 并列)。

不定式的逻辑主语 connection 与动词 make 是动宾关系,应该用不定式的被动式。

whether 主语从句用将来时说明“Jim 将是否适合的能够打决赛”仍然有待被观察(发生将来)。应 remain + 不定式的被动式 to be seen。故选 B。

谓语动词“consider”可用动词不定式作宾补,排除 A、B、D 选项。根据句意, invent 的动作发生在谓语动词“is considered”的动作之前,要用完成式。故选 C。

用动词的适当形式填空

1. leave; go 2. to persuade; to agree 3. to explain 4. to lock; do
5. to be looked / looking 6. to have been sent 7. to be taken 8. to go; stay
9. to have been admitted 10. to be quarreling

第9章

分词



高考热点

分词分为现在分词和过去分词,是非谓语动词难中之难,也是历来高考测试的重点。近年来,对分词作状语(有时带有连词)、定语、补语的考查已经成了命题的热点。

两种分词的区别很多,但它们之间的根本区别是:过去分词在时态上强调动作已经完成,在语态上侧重于被动;而现在分词在时态上强调动作正在进行,在语态上侧重于主动。因此我们在平时学习和考试中要抓住这两个线索(主动与被动关系;动作发生的时间)去理解语境,同时与其他的非谓语动词及谓语动词对比和归纳。这样我们就能更加容易地掌握这两种分词的用法。

第一节 分词的概念及形式

9-1 分词有现在分词和过去分词两种,是一种非谓语动词形式,在句中不能单独作谓语。

“be + 现在分词”构成进行时;“be + 过去分词”构成被动语态;“have (had) + 过去分词”构成完成时。



162 [例] You're wasting your time trying to persuade him; he'll never join us. [全国高考题]

“试图劝他加入是在浪费时间;他决不会加入的。”

第一个现在分词“wasting”与助动词“are”一起构成现在进行时,在句中用作谓语动词;第二个现在分词“trying”在句中作状语用。

【例】I've heard that you have been to Greece. “我已经听说你去过希腊。”

[浙江高考题]

过去分词“heard”和“been”分别与助动词“have”一起构成现在完成时,分别作主句和从句的谓语动词用。

【例】I would sit in class feeling completely lost...

[北京高考题]

“我会坐在教室里,感到完全失落...”

现在分词“feeling”作状语表示伴随情况;过去分词“lost”与 feeling 构成系表结构。

9-2 现在分词有时态和语态的变化;而过去分词只有一种形式。现在分词的一般式常表“主动”和“进行”;过去分词的一般式常表“被动”和“完成”。



以 make 和 rise 为例,将分词的各种形式列表如下:

式	语 态	及物动词 make		不及物动词
		主动语态	被动语态	rise
现在分词	一般式	making	being made	rising
	完成式	having made	having been made	having risen
过去分词			made	risen

【例】Reading is an experience quite different from watching TV; there are pictures _____ in your mind instead of before your eyes. [全国高考题]

A. to form B. form C. forming D. having formed

答案是 C。“读书是一件完全不同于看电视的事;画面形成在你的大脑里而不是在眼前。”人们看书时,读到什么情节或场面,这样的情节或场面便(同时)在心中形成。表达主动且进行着的动作时,应用 form(可用作不及物动词)现在分词的一般式作定语。

【例】Prices of daily goods _____ through a computer can be lower than store prices.

A. are bought B. bought C. been bought D. buying [北京高考题]

答案是 B。“通过电脑网络所购买的日常用品的价格会比商店价格低。”已有谓语动词 can be, 空白处不应是谓语动词, 故不选 A。根据句意以及 goods 与 buy 之间的动宾关系, 应选过去分词 bought 作其后置定语。故选 B

9-3 分词的否定结构就是在分词前加 not。

[例] _____ the programme, they have to stay there for another two weeks.

A. Not completing

B. Not completed

C. Not having completed

D. Having not completed

答案是 C。“由于没有完成这个计划, 他们不得不在那里再待两周。”由句意可知, “没有完成”发生在谓语动词之前, 应用现在分词的完成式形式。又因非谓语动词的否定结构是“not + 非谓语动词”。故选 C。

温馨提示

不要受谓语动词否定式的影响, 用分词完成式时, 不能把“not”置于“having”和过去分词之间。

9-4 分词具有形容词的作用, 可作表语、定语和补足语; 分词还具有副词的作用, 可作状语。

分词具有形容词和副词的作用, 因而在句中可以作表语、定语、宾语补足语、主语补足语和状语。分词可以和它自己所带的宾语或状语一起构成分词短语。

[例] I was told that there were about 50 foreign students

_____ Chinese in the school, most _____ were from Germany.

[湖南高考题]

A. study; of whom

B. study; of them

C. studying; of them

D. studying; of whom

答案是 D。“有人告诉我说, 有大约 50 个外国学生在这个学校学习汉语, 其中的大多数来自德国。”前面已有主动词 there were, 前空只能用现在分词作 students 的定语, 表示“正在学习汉语的学生”, 并且现在分词“studying”有自己的宾语“Chinese”。另外, 句中的逗号后面没有并列连词, 是一个非限制性定语从句, 后空用 most of whom 引导, 相当于 and most of them。故选 D。

[例] Five people won the “China’s Green Figure” award, a title _____ to ordinary people for their contributions to environmental protection.

[山东高考题]

A. being given

B. is given

C. given

D. was given

答案是 C。“5 个人获得中国绿手奖, 一个授予对环境保护作出贡献的人的头衔。”空后部分不是句子, 可排除谓语形式 B 和 D; A 项表示“正在授予”不合逻辑。

辑, C项 given 在此为过去分词做定语, 表示完成和被动, 相当于 which was given...。过去分词“given”带有自己的间接宾语“to ordinary people”和原因状语 for their contributions to environment protection。故选 C。

第二节 分词作状语

9-5 分词作状语时, 可表示时间、条件、原因、方式或伴随情况, 多可将其变为一个相对应的状语从句。

分词作状语时, 句子的主语是动作的执行者用现在分词, 相对应的分句为主动语态; 主语为动作的承受者, 用过去分词, 相对应的分句为被动语态。

① 分词可作时间状语, 有时可用“when(或 while) + 现在分词”结构强调分词所表示的动作与谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生。

[例] _____ into use in April 2000, the hotline was meant for residents reporting water and heating supply breakdowns. [上海高考题]

A. Put B. Putting C. Having put D. Being put

答案是 A。“当 2000 年 4 月投入使用时, 这个热线是为居民们报告水热供应故障开设的。”动词 put 的对象是句子的主语 the hotline, 应用过去分词短语作时间状语, 表示被动含义, 相当于 When it was put into use in April 2000, the hotline was intended for...。故选 A。

[例] When _____ different cultures, we often pay attention only to the differences without noticing the many similarities. [浙江高考题]

A. compared B. being compared C. comparing D. having compared

答案是 C。“当比较不同的文化时, 我们常常只注意文化间的不同之处, 而没有注意许多相同之处。”compare 是由句子的主语 we 发出的, 构成主谓关系, 应用现在分词形式, 相当于状语从句 When we compare different culture, we often pay attention only to the differences。故选 C。

[例] _____ with the size of the whole earth, the biggest ocean does not seem big at all. [湖北高考题]

A. Compare B. When comparing C. Comparing D. When compared

答案是 D。“当与整个地球的大小相比较时, 最大的海洋似乎也不大了。”依据逗号不能连接两个句子, 此处排除 A 谓语动词形式。又因主语 the biggest ocean 和 compare 之间为被动关系, 应用其过去分词短语, 相当于时间状语从句 when it (指 the biggest ocean) is compared with the size of the whole earth。故选 D。

[例] While crossing the street, you must be careful. “当你横穿街道时, 一定要小心。”

“While crossing the street”(=“While you cross / are crossing the street”)强调分词所表示的动作与谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生。

帮你归纳

分词短语还可以用在 whenever, once, until, as soon as, since, after, before 等词的后面。

[例] The research is so designed that once _____ nothing can be done to change it.

A. begins B. having begun C. beginning D. begun [全国高考题]

答案是 D。“这项研究是这样设计的,一旦开始任何事都不可能改变它。”在 that 引导的状语从句中含有 once“一旦”引起状语从句(once it is begun)的省略式“once + 分词”结构。由于 the research 和 begin 的关系为被动关系,应选过去分词 begun。

② 分词可作条件状语,强调时可在其前用 if 或 unless。

[例] _____ more attention, the trees could have grown better. [全国高考题]

A. Given B. To give C. Giving D. Having given

答案是 A。“如果多加注意,这些树木本来能够长得更好些。”过去分词短语“Given more attention”相等于“If the trees had been given more attention”,在句中作条件状语。

[例] Unless _____ to speak, you should remain silent at the conference. [上海高考题]

A. invited B. inviting C. being invited D. having invited

答案是 A。“在大会上,如果你没有被邀请发言,你应该保持沉默。”主语 you 和 invite 之间为被动关系,应用过去分词短语于 Unless 后,相当于条件状语从句 Unless you are invited to speak。故选 A。

温馨提示

有时不加连词,含义模糊时,反而为好。

[例] _____ automatically, the e-mail will be received by all the club members.

A. Mailed out B. Mailing out C. To be mailed out D. Having mailed out [海高考题]

答案是 A。“自动发出,这个电子邮件就会被所有的俱乐部成员收到。”mail out 与句子的主语 the e-mail 构成动宾关系,应用过去分词作状语,可首先排除 B 和 D;又因“被发送后”才能“被会员收到”,应排除表示将来的动词不定式 C。然而,到底是等于 when, after, once 接从句还是 if 接从句(it is mailed out automatically),很难说清,还是用模糊处理为好。

③ 分词可作让步状语,此时多要与 though, even if, “no matter how + 形容词/副词”等连用。

[例] Though _____ money, his parents managed to send him to university. [上海高考题]

A. lacked B. lacking of C. lacking D. lacked in

答案是C。“虽然缺钱,但是他父母还是设法送他去读大学了。”主语 his parents 和 lack 之间为主动关系,应用现在分词,相当于 though 引起让步状语从句 though they lacked money. A 和 D 作从句谓语,从句缺少主语;作过去分词,则表示被动关系,可排除。故选 C。

[例] No matter how frequently _____, the works of Beethoven still attract people all over the world.

[广东高考题]

A. performed B. performing C. to be performed D. being performed

答案是A。“无论多么频繁地被演奏,贝多芬的作品还仍然吸引着全球的人们。”works 与“演奏”为动宾关系,因此要用过去分词短语,表示被动。根据语境可知应是一般情况,而不能用 to be performed“将被演奏”或 being performed“正在被演奏”。故选 A。

温馨提示

过去分词作时间、条件或让步状语,也可表示一个一般情况的或将来的被动动作。

[例] Sugar, when _____ with water, dissolves quickly.

[上海高考题]

A. mixed B. mixing C. mix D. is mixed

答案是A。“糖,当与水混合时,溶解得快。”主语 sugar 与 mix 为动宾关系,应用过去分词,在一般情况下相当于一个被动动作。即 when mixed with water 相当于 when it (指 sugar) is mixed with water. 故选 A。

[例] _____ time, he'll make a first class tennis player.

[北京高考题]

A. Having given B. To give C. Giving D. Given

答案是D。“如果给一些时间,他会成为一流网球选手。”主语 he 和 give 之间应为被动关系,所以选 Given,在此表条件,相当于条件状语从句 if he is given time, 其中一般现在时的被动语态,表示一般将来的被动动作。

[例] He won't go to the party even if invited to. “即使有人邀请他,他也不会参加晚会。”even if invited to 相当于让步状语从句 even if he is invited to, invited 不一定表示已经完成,可能是将来的事。

④分词可作原因状语(多放在句子的前半部分)。

[例] _____ his telephone number, she had some difficulty getting in touch with Bill.

A. Not knowing B. Knowing not [全国高考题]

C. Not having known D. Having not known

答案是A。“由于不知道电话号码,她难以与比尔联系。”现在分词短语“Not knowing his telephone number”相当于“As she didn't know his telephone number,”在句中作原因状语。

⑤分词可以作方式状语或伴随状语(一般没有对应的从句)。

[例] The secretary worked late into the night, _____ a long speech for the president.

A. to prepare B. preparing C. prepared D. was preparing

答案是 B。“秘书工作到深夜,为总统准备一个长篇发言稿。”根据句意不作目的状语,排除 A。不可用逗号并列两个谓语动词,排除 C 和 D。这里“preparing a long speech...”在句中作方式状语,说明“工作”的具体方式——“准备”演讲稿子。

温馨提示

分词作方式或伴随状语,一般不改为从句,但有时可改为并列谓语或并列句。

[例] More and more people are signing up for Yoga classes nowadays, _____ advantage of the health and relaxation benefits.

A. taking B. taken C. having taken D. having been taken

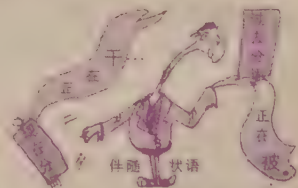
答案是 A。“如今,越来越多的人报名参加愈加功培训课程,利用其健康和休闲的好处。”带有主动含义的,而且动作正在进行的伴随状语,应用现在分词短语,可改写为:More and more people are signing up for Yoga classes nowadays, and (they are taking) / take advantage of the health and relaxation benefits. 故选 A。

9-6 分词作伴随状语时,若表“正在被…”的概念,常用过去分词,而不用现在分词的被动式。

[例] _____ some officials, Napoleon inspected his army.

A. Followed B. Followed by
C. Being followed D. Having been followed by

答案是 B。“拿破仑在一些官员的陪同下检阅了他的部队。”过去分词短语“followed by some officials”在句中作伴随状语。虽与谓语动词是同时的,也不用 C 项。



9-7 分词作状语时,其逻辑主语是句子的主语。

[例] While watching television, _____.

[全国高考题]

A. the doorbell rang B. the doorbell rings
C. we heard the doorbell ring D. we heard the doorbell rings

答案是 C。“正当在看电视时,我们听到门铃响了。”分词短语作状语,它的逻辑主语须和句子的主语保持一致, A 和 B 的主语为 the doorbell, 门铃是不能看电视的,可首先排除。但 D 选项中 heard 与 rings 搭配不一致,应予排除。故选 C。

[例] 改错: Seeing from the hill, our school looks more beautiful.

答案是将“Seeing”改成“Seen”。“从山上看去,我们的学校更美了。”句中分词的逻辑主语是“our



school”,但分词“seeing”却表示主动意义,与句意不符,故用过去分词“seen”表“(学校)被看”。

温馨提示

如果句子的主语是形式主语 *it* 时,或者句子的内容暗示分词的逻辑主语,句子的主语同分词的逻辑主语可以并不完全一致。

[例] _____ such heavy pollution already, it may now be too late to clean up the river.

A. Having suffered B. Suffering C. To suffer D. Suffered

答案是 A。“已经遭受了如此严重的污染,现在要清理这条河也许为时太晚。”逗号前的部分应表原因,不表目的,故不选 C。又因本题中的 *suffer* 为 *vt.*,又有宾语 *pollution*,所以不应用过去分词 *suffered*。又因事情已发生,而且出现 *already*,所以应用现在分词的完成式。本题分词的逻辑主语并不是句子的主语 *it* (为形式主语),但句意暗示清理河道者应为人,即动词不定式的逻辑主语为 *for people / us / them*,“*suffer*”的逻辑主语也就一致了。故选 A。

[例] Speaking to the king for the first time, his legs shook. “第一次同国王谈话,他双腿发抖。”

his legs 暗示主语为 *he*。

9-8 分词作状语时,当分词的逻辑主语不是句子主语时,分词需带自己的主语,从而构成独立主格结构。

分词有时有自己独立的主语,这种独立的主语一般为名词或代词,位于分词之前,和分词一起构成独立主格结构。独立主格结构在句中一般只作状语,多用于书面语。

[例] The meeting _____ over, we all left the room and drove home. [全国高考题]

A. is B. to be C. being D. would be

答案是 C。“会议结束后,我们都离开了房间,驱车回家。”若选 A 和 D,则句子两部分的谓语动词时态不一致,意义上不合逻辑,故排除。B 为动词不定式,表示“将要结束”,与题意不符。“逻辑主语 *the meeting* + 现在分词短语 *being over*”为独立主格结构,在句中作时间状语,相当于“*when the meeting was over, ...*”。

[例] _____, they will go and visit the zoo. [全国高考题]

A. Weather permitting B. Weather permitted
C. Weather being permitted D. Weather having permitted

答案是 A。“如果天气允许的话,他们将去参观动物园。”句中的“*permit*”用作不及物动词,不用被动形式,可排除 B 和 C。D 为分词完成式,不合句意。A 为现在分词独立主格结构,在句中作条件状语,相当于“*If weather permits*”。

[例] So many friends _____ absent, we decided to put the party _____.

A. were; off B. being; off C. were; away D. being; away

答案是 B。“由于这么多朋友缺席,我们决定把聚会推迟。”“逻辑主语 So many friends + 现在分词短语 being absent”是独立主格结构,在句中作原因状语,相当于“As so many friends were absent...”。

[例] She looked at her father, tears rolling down her cheeks. “她泪流满面地看着她的父亲。”

“逻辑主语 tears + 现在分词短语 rolling down her cheeks”是独立主格结构,作伴随状语。

[例] He lay on his back, his hands crossed under his head. “他面朝天,头枕着手躺着。”

“逻辑主语 his hands + 过去分词短语 crossed under his head”为独立主格结构,作伴随状语,相当于... and his hands were crossed under his head.



9-9 在独立主格结构中,除了可用分词表示外,还可不定式、形容词、副词或介词短语表示。

[例] I send you 100 dollars today, the rest _____ in a year.

湖南高考题

A. follows B. followed C. to follow D. being followed

答案是 C。“今天我先给你寄 100 美元,其余的钱一年内陆续寄过去。”逗号后没有连词 and 等,说明后面非分句或从句(也缺少连词),the rest 和 to follow 构成独立主格结构,应用不定式表主动和将来。

[例] He entered the room, his nose red with cold. “他走进了房间,鼻子冻得通红。”

用形容词“red”表示。也可理解为在“his nose being red”结构中省去了现在分词“being”。

[例] He put on his socks wrong side out. “他把袜子穿反了。”

用副词“out”表示,相当于“wrong side being out”。

[例] Peter was sitting near the fire, his back towards the door. “彼得坐在火旁,背朝着门。”

用介词短语“towards the door”表示,相当于“his back being towards the door”。

另外,表示伴随情况的独立主格结构,有时可用“with + 宾语 + 宾语补足语”的结构来代替,尤其是在口语中时。

[例] He fell asleep (with) the light burning. “他没熄灯就睡着了。”

9-10 “judging from...”等少数动词短语为惯用语,用来解释整句话,可看作插入语,是独立成分,其逻辑主语在句中无法找出。

这类分词惯用语还有 generally speaking“一般来说”,honestly speaking“说实话”,strictly speaking“严格地讲”,talking of“谈起”,speaking of“谈到”,given“考虑到”等。

[例] _____ the general state of his health, it may take him a while to recover from the operation. [北京高考题]

A. Given B. To give C. Giving D. Having given

答案是 A。“鉴于他的健康状况,手术后康复还需要一段时间。”此处的 given 表示“考虑到、鉴于、假如”。也有语法家把它归为介词。

[例] _____ speaking(一般来说), parents care more about their children's health than about their own. [全国高考题]

答案是 Generally。“一般来说,父母关心孩子的健康胜过关心自己。”此处分词“speaking”并不是主语“parents”发出的动作。

[例] Judging from(或 by) her accent, she must be from Henan. “从口音来判断,她一定是河南人。”

[例] He speaks Chinese quite well, considering that he has been in China for only a year. “考虑到他到中国才一年,他的中国话讲得很不错了。”

[例] Granted that he did say so, what harm can you see in it? “就算他确实这样说了,你看有什么不好呢?”

9-11 现在分词常作结果状语,过去分词不作结果状语。

现在分词可作状语,表示事实的结果或必然结果。有时为了突出结果,在分词前带副词 thus。

[例] Oil prices have risen by 32 percent since the start of the year, _____ a record US \$ 57.65 a barrel on April 4. [山东高考题]

A. have reached B. reaching C. to reach D. to be reaching

答案是 B。“油价自年初以来已经上升 32%,4 月 4 日达到每桶 57.65 美元。”空前没有 and,说明此处非并列谓语,可排除用现在完成时 have reached;“达到记录”为油价上升的必然性的结果,非目的或意料以外的结果,不能用动词不定式。故选 B。

[例] The bus was held up by the snowstorm, thus causing the delay. “公共汽车被大雪所阻,因此延误。”

“引起耽误”为事实性结果。另外,句中的副词 thus,一般不用同义的连词 so。

温馨提示

现在分词作结果状语,动作发生在谓语动词的同时或稍稍之后,多放在句末。另外动词不定式也表示结果状语,但表示的为未曾料到的不愉快的结果。

[参见 8-29]

第三节 分词作表语

9-12 分词作表语时,其逻辑主语是句子主语,表示主语的性质、特征或状态。

- ① 现在分词作表语,说明主语的性质或特征,意为“令人怎样…”,有主动意味。如: exciting, moving, amusing, astonishing, frightening, interesting, relaxing, shocking, surprising, terrifying, tiring, worrying 等。

[例] It is believed that if a book is _____, it will surely _____ the reader.

- A. interested; interest B. interesting; be interested
C. interested; be interesting D. interesting; interest

答案是 D。“人们认为如果一本书有趣,它一定会吸引读者。”interested(感兴趣的)一般修饰或说明人,interesting(有趣的)一般修饰或说明事物,故第一空应选 interesting。interest 作及物动词时意为“吸引”,其宾语一般为物。be interested 后不能再跟宾语,应排除 B 项。故选 D。

- ② 过去分词作表语多表示主语所处的状态,意为“对什么感受怎样”,有被动意味。如: excited, moved, amused, astonished, frightened, interested, relaxed, satisfied, surprised, terrified, tired, worried 等。

[例] —How did the audience receive the new play?

—They got very _____.

[全国高考题]

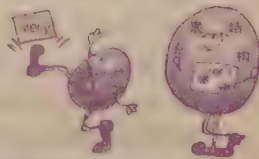
- A. excite B. excited C. excitedly D. exciting

答案是 B。“观众对这部新剧反应如何?”“他们非常激动。”句中,过去分词 excited 作表语,表示观众的感受,即“被剧情所激动”,有被动含义。

9-13 “be + 现在分词”用作进行时态时,强调动作,分词前不能用 very 修饰;如用作系表结构时,说明主语的性质或特征,分词可被 very 修饰。

- [例] His speech is very encouraging. “他的演讲令人非常鼓舞。”

- [例] Her praise is encouraging us to work harder. “她的赞扬激励着我们更努力工作。”



9-14 “be + 过去分词”用作被动语态时,强调动作;而用作系表结构时,说明主语的特点或所处的状态。

- [例] The novel is well written. “这篇小说写得很好。”

“is... written”为系表结构,说明“小说”的一般特点。

- [例] The novel was written by Lu Xun. “这篇小说是鲁迅写的。”

“was written”为被动语态,强调“写小说”的动作。

第四节 分词作定语

9-15 单个分词作定语,常位于被修饰词之前;分词短语作定语,总位于被修饰词之后。

- 【例】The wild flowers looked like a soft orange blanket _____ the desert. (北京高考题)
- A. covering B. covered C. cover D. to cover

答案是 A。“这些野花看上去像一个橘黄色的软毯子覆盖着沙漠。”blanket 是 cover 的动作执行者,要用表示主动意义的现在分词 covering 短语作后置定语。故选 A。

- 【例】Mr. Smith, _____ of the _____ speech, started to read a novel. (北京高考题)
- A. tired; boring B. tiring; bored C. tired; bored D. tiring; boring

答案是 A。“由于厌倦了这个枯燥无味的讲话,史密斯先生开始阅读一篇小说。”本题中第一空格应该修饰和说明 Mr. Smith 的状态,故选 tired... 作原因状语,与主语 Mr. Smith 有被动关系。第二空格为单个分词作前置定语修饰 speech,并与 speech 主动关系,应用现在分词 boring,故答案为 A。

温馨提示

(1) 若单个的分词放在被修饰词的后面,常强调动作。

【例】Make sentences using the words given. “用所给的词造句。”

(2) 分词有时会构成较为固定搭配,其位置较为灵活。

- 【例】The prize of the game show is \$30,000 and an all expenses _____ vacation to China. (北京高考题)

A. paying B. paid C. to be paid D. being paid

答案是 B。“比赛的奖项为三万美元和一次性支付去中国度假的全部费用。”all expenses 与 pay 为动宾关系,应用过去分词 paid。也可写作 all-expenses-paid 作定语修饰 vacation,含度假的全部费用已经由别人付过了。

- 【例】The repairs cost a lot, but it's money well _____. (湖北高考题)

A. to spend B. spent C. being spent D. spending

答案是 B。“修理花了许多钱,但这钱花得合理。”spend 与 money 之间是动宾关系,应用过去分词作定语,符合“well + 过去分词”常见搭配(类似一些分词形容词如:well-known“著名的”;well-dressed“衣着讲究的”等),而 money well spent = a sensible way of spending money 符合语境。故选 B。

9-16 现在分词作定语,多表示“说话时正在进行”或“与谓语动词同时进行”或“经常性的”动作,并且所修饰词与之在逻辑上是主谓关系;而过去分词作定语,则表示分词动作“先于谓语动词表示的动作或被动”或“没有一定的时间性的被动”。

[例] Do you know the boy _____ under the big tree?

[全国高考题]

A. lay B. lain C. laying D. lying

答案是 D。“你认识躺在树下的那个男孩吗?”

“lying under the big tree”为现在分词短语作定语,修饰“the boy”,表示“正在进行”的动作,相当于定语从句“who is lying under the big tree”(说话时正在进行)



[例] When the first English settlers arrived in the New World, the Indians _____ jewelry made of animal bones greeted them warmly.

[上海高考题]

A. wearing B. to wear C. worn D. having worn

答案是 A。“当首批英国定居者到达时,戴着用动物骨头制成的珠宝的印第安人热情地欢迎他们。”欢迎(在过去)的同时,戴着…,应用 wearing... 这个现在分词短语作定语,并与被修饰词 the Indians 为主谓关系,相当于定语从句 who were wearing... 故选 A 项。

[例] The woman selling vegetables has gone. “卖菜的那个妇女已经走了。”

“selling vegetables”为现在分词短语作定语,修饰“the woman”,表示“经常性的动作”,相当于“who sells vegetables”。

[例] As soon as she entered the room, the girl caught sight of the flowers _____ by her mother.

[全国高考题]

A. buying B. being bought C. were bought D. bought

答案是 D。“这女孩一进入房间,就看见了她母亲买的花。”花是“被”买来的,表被动含义,可排除 A;“being bought”虽然也是被动含义,但它为现在分词被动式,强调“买”的动作正在进行,不符合题意;过去分词“bought”既表示“被动”又表示“完成”,相当于定语从句 that / which had been bought。



[例] He is a leader respected by the people. “他是一位受人民尊敬的领袖。”

过去分词“respected”所表示的动作“没有一定的时间性”,相当于定语从句“who is respected by the people”。

温馨提示

有时,可用逗号与句子的其他成分隔开。此时分词相当于一个非限制性定语从句。

[例] The disc, digitally _____ in the studio, sounded fantastic at the party that night.

A. recorded B. recording
C. to be recorded D. having recorded

[上海高考题]

答案是 A。“这迪斯科,是在录音室中用数字化录入的,在那天的晚上让听

起来真是如痴如幻。”应用过去分词作定语,和被修饰词 the disc 构成逻辑上的动宾关系。相当于含被动语态的非限制性定语从句: which was digitally recorded in the studio. 故选 A。

第五节 分词作补足语

9-17 分词可用作宾语的补足语或主语的补足语。

当分词用作宾语补足语或主语补足语时,与宾语逻辑上有一定的关系。如果是现在分词,则表示主动关系,其动作与谓语动作同时进行;如果为过去分词,则表示被动关系,其动作是先于谓语动作。可以用分词作宾语补足语或主语补足语的动词有 see, watch, hear, observe, feel, notice, find, looked at, have, keep, get, leave, send, start 等。

【例】You should understand the traffic rule by now. You've had it _____ often enough.

A. explaining B. to explain C. explain D. explained [天津高考题]

答案是 D。“你到现在应该懂得这项交通规则了,你已经让人解释得够经常的了。”it 指上句的 the traffic rule, explain 与之是动宾关系,应用过去分词作其宾补,构成“have sth. done”结构。

【例】Don't leave the water _____ while you brush your teeth. [天津高考题]

A. run B. running C. being run D. to run

答案是 B。“当你刷牙时,不要让水老是流着。”leave sth / sb doing 表示“让…一直在干某事”,即宾语补足语应选现在分词 running,表示宾语主动且持续。故选 B。

【例】A cook will be immediately fired if he is found _____ in the kitchen.

A. smoke B. smoking C. to smoke D. smoked

答案是 B。“如果厨师被发现在厨房抽烟,就会立即被开除。”根据用法“find + 宾语 + 宾补”或者“be found + 主补”,宾补或主补可以为现在分词或过去分词等,但不可以是动词原形或动词不定式(to be 除外),故首先排除 A 和 C 项;又因 smoke 当“抽烟”之意时,为不及物动词,故选择 B。

温馨提示

with, without 等介词有时也带非谓语动词作宾补。

【例】I couldn't do my homework with all that noise _____. [北京高考题]

A. going on B. goes on C. went on D. to go on

答案是 A。“我不能在这么吵闹的情况下做作业。”“all that noise”的“进行”和“do my homework”同时发生,故用 with + n. + doing 结构中,doing 表示“主动”且“在进行中”。故选 A。

【例】The murderer was brought in, with his hands _____ behind his back.

A. being tied B. having tied C. to be tied D. tied [全国高考题]

答案是 D。“凶手被反绑着双手带了进去”。“tied”在“with”的复合结构中作宾语补足语,强调“绑”的动作与宾语“hands”是被动关系。

[例] With a lot of difficult problems _____, the newly elected president is having a hard time. [上海高考题]

A. settled B. settling C. to settle D. being settled

答案是 C。“有许多困难的问题有待于解决,新当选的总统日子不好过。”由于 problem 和 settle 之间为被动关系,故排除 B。A 项表示“已经解决”,C 项表示“将被解决”,D 项表示“正在被解决”。根据句意,故选 C(用不定式表示将来,主动式表示被动含义)。

第六节 分词的时态与语态

9-18 现在分词的一般式常表“主动”和“进行”;而由及物动词变来的过去分词常表“被动”和“完成”。

[例] The next morning she found the man _____ in bed, dead.

A. lying B. lie C. lay D. laying

答案是 A。“第二天早晨她发现这人躺在床上死了”。“现在分词一般式“lying”在句中作宾语补足语,和宾语“the man”之间有“主动”和“进行”的关系。

[例] Two hundred _____ (被盗的) bicycles were returned to their owners last month.

[全国高考题]

答案是 stolen。“上个月有两百辆被盗的自行车(找回并)交还给了失主。”“stolen”是单个的过去分词作前置定语,修饰“bicycles”,表示“被动”和“完成”的含义。

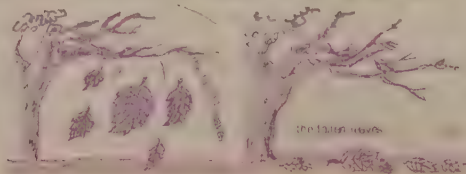
[例] The speaker raised his voice but still couldn't make himself _____. [全国高考题]

A. hear B. to hear C. hearing D. heard

答案是 D。“发言者提高了声音,但别人还是听不见。”过去分词“heard”在句中作宾语补足语,和宾语“himself”之间有“被动”关系。

9-19 不及物动词的过去分词只有“完成”的含义(并不表“被动”)。

[例] the falling leaves“落叶”(正往下落的);the fallen leaves“落叶”(已落到地上的)
中,不及物动词“fall”的过去分词“fallen”没有“被动”意义,只有“完成”的含义。



9-20 现在分词的被动式和及物动词的过去分词两者都可表示“被动”,但前者表示一个正在进行的动作,而后者多表示一个完成了的动作。

[例] The picture _____ on the wall is painted by my nephew.

- A. having hung B. hanging C. hangs D. being hung

答案是 B。“挂在墙上的画是我侄子画的。”因主语“The picture”已有谓语“is painted”与之搭配,故排除谓语动词 C(除非其前有 which,与之构成定语从句)。又因“悬挂”不是发生在谓语动词前,不用完成式,排除 A。要强调正“悬挂着”的状态,用不及物动词;不是强调“正在被挂”的动作,不用现在分词的被动式,排除 D。

[例] The problem _____ now has something important to do with our everyday life.

- A. to be discussing B. discussed C. been discussed D. being discussed

答案是 D。“正在讨论的问题和我们的日常生活有重要关系。”“being discussed”是现在分词的被动式,表示正在进行中的被动行为,在句中作定语,相当于从句“which is being discussed”。

[例] The problem discussed yesterday has something important to do with our everyday life. “昨天被讨论的那个问题和我们的日常生活有重要关系。”

过去分词“discussed”也表被动,但表示一个完成了的动作,在句中作定语,相当于从句“which was discussed”。

9-21 现在分词完成式表示分词的动作发生在句中谓语动词所表示的动作之前,一般在句中作时间或原因状语用。也可用于强调的结果状语。

在含有分词或分词短语的句子中,句中的主语就是分词的逻辑主语,即分词所表示的动作的执行者。

[例] _____ in the queue for half an hour, Tom suddenly realized that he had left his wallet at home. [北京高考题]

- A. To wait B. Have waited C. Having waited D. To have waited

答案是 C。“排队已经等了半小时,汤姆突然意识到钱包忘在家了。”现在分词完成式是用来强调其动作在句子的谓语动词之前已经持续了若干时间。即 wait for an hour 持续到后面的动作 realize,具有明显先后顺序。故选 C 项。

[例] The storm left, _____ a lot of damage to this area. [全国高考题]

- A. caused B. to have caused C. to cause D. having caused

答案是 D。“风暴过去了,对这个地区造成了很大的损失。”逗号前没有 and,不能用谓语动词,应排除 A。此处“很大的损失”应为暴风的结果,应使用现在分词作结果状语,而不能用不定式(非意外的结果)。现在分词的完成式,更强调对现在造成的结果与现状。故选 D。

温馨提示

这样的现在分词短语,既可位于句首,也可位于句末(最强调),还可插入句中(最不强调)。但如果分词表示的动作紧接谓语动词之后就发生,分词应放在句末。

[例] The manager, _____ it clear to us that he didn't agree with us, left the meeting room. [江西高考题]

- A. who has made B. having made C. made D. making

答案是 B。“经理向我们表明他不同意后,离开了会议室。”left 为句子的谓语动词,可排除 C。A 项从句的现在完成时,与谓语动词的时态不一致。应用现在分词的完成式,虽不是太强调,但还是能表达出动作先于谓语动词,相当于非限制性定语从句,who had made it clear....。故选 B。

[例] Alice returned from the manager's office, _____ me that the boss wanted to see me at once. [全国高考题]

- A. having told B. tells C. to tell D. telling

答案是 D。“艾丽斯从经理的办公室回来,告诉我老板要立即见我。”由句中的逗号及句意可知,非谓语动词此处是用来表示第二紧接着发生的动作(甚至为第一动作的一部分),应用现在分词一般式,而不用现在分词的完成式(强调先发生),不定式(表示目的或意外结果)或谓语动词 tells。本句现在分词短语不能提前。

9-22 现在分词的完成被动式和过去分词两者都可表示“完成”和“被动”,但前者更加强调分词动作明显先于谓语动作;而後者的时间性不强。



[例] _____ from other continents for millions of years, Australia has many plants and animals not found in any other country in the world. [湖北高考题]

- A. Being separated B. Having separated
C. Having been separated D. To be separated

答案是 C。“由于与其他大陆分隔已经数百万年,澳大利亚有着许多别的任何大陆都找不到的动物和植物。”句子的主语为 Australia,而 separate 意思为“分开”(separate A from B 为主动的常用结构),与句子的主语有被动的含义,而且

该动作发生在谓语动作之前,故应该用现在分词的完成被动式。故选 C。

[例] _____ in the mountains for a week, the two students were finally saved by the local police.

[江苏高考题]

A. Having lost B. Lost C. Being lost D. Losing

答案是 B。“在山中迷路一周,两个学生最终为当地的警察所救。”全句的主语 the two students 与 lose 为动宾关系,不能用主动 A 和 D,也不能用表示“正在被丢”的 C。应用过去分词 lost,表示一种含有被动意味的状态已经存在。也可用 Having been lost 或 After they had been lost,但选项没有。故选 B。

[例] He is a teacher respected by all. “他是一位受大家尊敬的老师。”

过去分词“respected”强调被动,但只指一般情况,没有“完成”的含义,不能改写成强调正在进行的被动式“being respected”,也不能改写成强调完成的被动式“having been respected”。

即学即用

I. 单项填空

- The managers discussed the plan that they would like to see _____ the next year.
A. carry out B. carrying out C. carried out D. to carry out [全国高考题]
- When _____, the museum will be open to the public next year. [上海高考题]
A. completed B. completing C. being completed D. to be completed
- Don't use words, expressions, or phrases _____ only to people with specific knowledge. [上海高考题]
A. being known B. having been known C. to be known D. known
- Generally speaking, _____ according to the directions, the drug has no side effect. [上海高考题]
A. when taking B. when taken C. when to take D. when to be taken
- I'm very _____ with my own cooking. It looks nice and smells delicious.
—Mm, it does have a _____ smell. [北京高考题]
A. pleasant; pleased B. pleased; pleased C. pleasant; pleasant D. pleased; pleasant
- “You can't catch me!” Jane shouted, _____ away. [全国高考题]
A. run B. running C. to run D. ran
- He glanced over at her, _____ that though she was tiny, she seemed very well put together. [广东高考题]
A. noting B. noted C. to note D. having noted
- Daddy didn't mind what we were doing, as long as we were together, _____ fun. [重庆高考题]
A. had B. have C. to have D. having
- The old man, _____ abroad for twenty years, is on the way back to his motherland.
A. to work B. working C. to have worked D. having worked [江苏高考题]

10. Having been attacked by terrorists, _____. [上海高考题]
 A. doctors came to their rescue B. the tall building collapsed
 C. an emergency measure was taken D. warnings were given to tourists
11. Linda worked for the Minnesota Manufacturing and Mining Company, _____ as 3M. [上海高考题]
 A. knowing B. known C. being known D. to be known
12. When _____ help, one often says "Thank you." or "It's kind of you." [天津高考题]
 A. offering B. to offer C. to be offered D. offered
13. When first _____ to the market, these products enjoyed great success. [全国高考题]
 A. introducing B. introduced C. introduce D. being introduced
14. He had his leg _____ in the match yesterday. [全国高考题]
 A. to break B. broken C. break D. breaking
15. _____ in a white uniform, he looks more like a cook than a doctor. [湖南高考题]
 A. Dressed B. To dress C. Dressing D. Having dressed
16. Laws that punish parents for their little children's actions against the laws get parents _____. [重庆高考题]
 A. worried B. to worry C. worrying D. worry
17. Don't sit there _____ nothing. Come and help me with this table. [湖北高考题]
 A. do B. to do C. doing D. and doing
18. We often provide our children with toys, footballs or basketballs, _____ that all children like these things. [全国高考题]
 A. thinking B. think C. to think D. thought
19. There are hundreds of visitors _____ in front of the Art Gallery to have a look at Van Gogh's paintings. [上海高考题]
 A. waited B. to wait C. waiting D. wait
20. _____ for the breakdown of the school computer network, Alice was in low spirits.
 A. Blaming B. Blamed C. To blame D. To be blamed [福建高考题]
21. _____ with so much trouble, we failed to complete the task on time. [四川高考题]
 A. Faced B. Face C. Facing D. To face
22. A good story does not necessarily have to have a happy ending, but the reader must not be left _____. [天津高考题]
 A. unsatisfied B. unsatisfying C. to be unsatisfying D. being unsatisfied
23. In the dream Peter saw himself _____ by a fierce wolf, and he woke suddenly with a start. [上海高考题]
 A. chased B. to be chased C. be chased D. having been chased
24. There have been several new events _____ to the program for the 2008 Beijing Olympic Games. [北京高考题]
 A. add B. to add C. adding D. added

25. _____ and happy, Tony stood up and accepted the prize. [全国高考题]
A. Surprising B. Surprised C. Being surprised D. To be surprising
26. There was a terrible noise _____ the sudden burst of light.
A. followed B. following C. to be followed D. being followed
27. The _____ boy was last seen _____ near the East Lake. [上海高考题]
A. missing; playing B. missing; play C. missed; played D. missed; to play
28. —Why did you go back to the shop?
—I left my friend _____ there. [安徽高考题]
A. waiting B. to wait C. wait D. waits
29. This news sounds _____. [全国高考题]
A. encouraging B. encouraged C. encourage D. to encourage
30. _____ by the beauty of nature, the girl from London decided to spend another two days on the farm. [辽宁高考题]
A. Attracting B. Attracted C. To be attracted D. Having attracted



点石成金

I. 单项填空

1. C 所选项不是作 see 的宾语,而是作 see 的宾补,宾语是关系代词 that (= the plan),即:to see the plan carried out. 宾补“执行”与宾语“计划”之间应为被动关系。
2. A 相当于 when it is completed,故用过去分词表示被动含义。
3. D 现在分词的完成式不作定语,故排除 B. A 项表示“正在被知”;C 项表示“将被知”;D 项表示“已被知”。根据句意,应选 D 项。
4. B 相当于 when the drug is taken...,故用过去分词表示 drug 和 take 的被动关系。
5. D 动词 please (使…高兴)的过去分词通常修饰或表达人的高兴情绪,而 pleasant 通常用来表示物的令人愉快的特征,故选 D。
6. B “喊”与“跑”同时进行,即 Janet 边跑边喊,应用 running 作伴随状语。故选 B。
7. A 逗号后没有连词 and, but 等,应现在分词 noting,表示“注意到…”与谓语动词的动作 glanced 同时进行;并且 noting 的逻辑主语为主句的主语 he。
8. D “玩得尽情”与“在一起”同时发生,并且都 we 所为,应 V-ing 作状语,表示伴随情况。故选 D。
9. D 现在分词的完成式,表明这个动作已经持续了一些时候了,符合语境。
10. E the tall building 才是 attack 的对象。而其他选项本身都无任何错误,但各句的主语都不是现在分词的逻辑主语。
11. B know 无宾语,应与被修饰词“公司”为动宾关系,不能用现在分词 knowing,而要用 know 的过去分词,构成短语 known as,表示“被公认为…;通常名叫…”。

- 相当于 when one is offered help 时间状语从句,表示 offer 和句子的主语 one 之间是被动的关系。
12. B 相当于 when these products were first introduced to the market. D 项表示进行着的被动,不合语境。故选 B。
14. B 表示“腿受伤”(遭受不幸),应用 have sth done(过去分词作宾补)。
15. A 过去分词短语 dressed (以“人”作其宾语或用于被动结构中)in... 作状语,相当于 when he is dressed in white uniform。故选 A。
16. A 法律使父母“感到担心”。宾语与补足语之间为动宾关系,应用过去分词表被动。
17. C doing 是现在分词作状语,表示伴随状况。如用 do,须加 and,和 sit 并列。不定式表示目的,也不对。故选 C。
18. A 为句子的主语“我们”的行为,故用现在分词短语作状语,表示伴随情况。若加 and,才能用 think,与 provide 并列。to think 表示目的,不合语境。
19. C 现在分词作后置定语。意思说:有成百上千的游客正等在艺术馆门前去看凡·高的油画作品。选择 C。
20. B “Alice 情绪低落”的原因是“受到责备”,应用过去分词作原因状语,表示被动。不定式作目的状语或定语表示将来,与句意不符。故选 A。
21. A be faced with sth. “面临着”用作状语时应用 faced with sth.,而 face 用作主动式时不与 with 连用。故选 A。
22. A unsatisfied“感到不满意的”,表示故事的结尾“一定不要使读者感到不满意”,而表示 unsatisfying“让读者令人不满意”。故选 A。
23. A 表示“被追”应用过去分词作宾补,表示与宾语之间为被动关系。
24. D 应用过去分词 added 作定语,体现出被动已完成含义“已经被加到...”。故选 D。
25. B surprised“感到惊讶的”为过去分词作伴随状语,表示托尼站起来领奖时的心情“既感到惊讶又高兴”,含被动意味。不能用 surprising(含主动意味)或 being surprised(强调动作正在被执行)。
26. B “噪声随光而来”,表示主动意义,应用现在分词“following”。其余不符合题意。
27. A missing 用现在分词作定语,表示“失踪的孩子”, was last seen 用被动结构中,后空用现在分词作主语补足语(突出动作在进行中),表示“最后被人看见在河边玩”。
28. A leave sth doing sth 表示“让某人一直在干某事”,即“我让我朋友在那里等着我”。
29. A 应现在分词作表语,表示主动含义“消息令人鼓舞”。
30. B 逗号前部分为原因状语,表示被动含义,应用过去分词短语,相当于原因状语从句:Because she was attracted by the beauty of nature。

第10章

动名词

高考热点

动名词为非谓语动词的一部分,它与现在分词的形式相同,也有不少语法书把两者合称为动词-ing形式。近年高考主要考查动名词与谓语动词的区别,动词与动名词和动词不定式的习惯搭配,以及动名词被动与主动的关系。

平时学习时要熟悉一些常见的动名词搭配,要加强四种非谓语动词之间的比较(本章也归纳比较了它们之间的相关用法)。

解题时,我们要研读句子结构,充分利用句子介词和动词的常见搭配,准确地把握句意和语境,从而攻克动名词及非谓语动词这一大语法难关。

第一节 动名词的概念及形式

10-1 动名词由“动词原形+ing”构成,是一种非谓语动词形式。

动名词可以起名词作用,同时又保留其动词的特征:有完成式(having done)和被动式(being done),也可以有自己的宾语和状语。

[例] We know that driving without a seat belt is unsafe.

[天津高考题]

“我们知道没有系安全带驾驶是不安全的。”

动词 drive 的动名词“driving”有自己的状语 without a seat belt,与之构成动名词短语作 that 引导的宾语从句的主语。

[例] 改错: I was often a little tired after a day's work and watch TV demands very little effort.

[全国高考题]

答案是把 watch 改为 watching。“一天的工作后,我有一点累,而看电视不费什么力气。”后一个分句的谓语动词是 demands,“看电视”为主语,表示为一般性

情况(谓语动词用一般现在时已经暗示了),应用 watch 的动名词。TV 是动名词 watching 的宾语。

[例] Once your business becomes international, _____ constantly will be part of your life. [上海高考题]

A. you fly B. your flight C. flight D. flying

答案是 D。“一旦你的生意国际化了,经常飞行就会成为你生活的一部分。”副词 constantly 的出现,决定了排除名词而用动名词。A 若为主语从句缺少连词 that。故选 D。

10-2 动名词有时态和语态的变化。

以 make 为例,将动名词的各种时态和语态变化形式列表如下:

式	语 态	主动语态	被动语态
		making	being made
	一般式		
	完成式	having made	having been made

[例] Would you mind _____ your radio a little please?

A. turn off B. turning off C. to turn down D. turning down

答案是 D。“请你把你的收音机关小点声好吗?”mind 后需跟动名词作宾语。turning down 意为“关小点儿声”,在此符合句意。

10-3 动名词的否定式是在其前面加 not。

[例] —I must apologize for _____ ahead of time.

—That's all right.

[全国高考题]

A. letting you not know B. not letting you know

C. letting you know not D. letting not you know

答案 B。“我很抱歉没能让你提前知道。”“没关系。”not 应加在动名词的前面表示否定,故排除 A、C、D。

第二节 动名词作主语和表语

10-4 动名词可以作主语,常表示概括性的或一般性的行为。

[例] It's necessary to be prepared for a job interview. _____ the answers ready will be of great help.

[北京高考题]

A. To have had B. Having had C. Have D. Having

答案是 D。“有必要为求职面试做准备,把答案准备好将非常有帮助。”will 前

部分为第二个句子的主语,不能误为祈使句,而误用动词原形。应用动名词的一般式作主语,表示一般情况下如此。故选 D。

[例] —What do you think made Mary so upset?

—_____ her new bicycle.

[全国高考题]

A. As she lost B. Lost C. Losing D. Because of losing

答案是 C。“你认为是什么事使得玛丽心烦意乱?”“她的新自行车丢了。”答语的完整结构应是 Losing her new bicycle made Mary so upset. 动名词短语 Losing her new bicycle 在句中作主语。

[例] It is no use thinking about it at present. “现在考虑它没有用。”

动名词短语作主语。

温馨提示

在 It's no use/good doing sth. 句型中,用 it 作形式主语,而把真正的主语——动名词短语放在句子的后部。

10-5 动名词可以作表语,表示一般性、经常性的动作。

[例] His job is teaching physics. “他的工作是教物理。”

10-6 动名词作主语和表语应遵循对称原则,即:主语用动名词时,表语也用动名词。

[例] Seeing is believing. /To see is to believe. “眼见为实”

第三节 动名词作宾语

10-7 动名词可作及物动词的宾语。

常用动名词作宾语(而不用不定式作宾语)的及物动词有:admit“承认”、avoid“避免”、consider“考虑”、deny“否定”、enjoy“喜欢”、escape“逃脱”、finish“完成”、imagine“想象”、include“包括”、keep“保持”、stand/bear“忍受”、mind“介意”、miss“失去”、practice“练习”、suggest“建议”、risk“冒险”、prevent“防止”、appreciate“欣赏”、excuse“原谅”、persuade“说服”、advise“建议”、allow/permit“允许”、forbid“禁止”、recommend“推荐;建议”等。

[例] 改错:Soon I began to enjoy talk to myself on paper as I was learning to express myself in simple English. [全国高考题]

答案是把 talk 改为 talking。“当我在学习用简单英语表达自己的意思时,很快我就开始喜欢在纸上与自己交谈。”enjoy 后接动词要用其动名词形式。

[例] The parents suggested _____ in the hotel room but their kids were anxious to camp

out during the trip.

A. sleep

B. to sleep

C. sleeping

D. having slept

答案是 C。“旅途中父母建议睡在旅馆的客房里,但孩子们都渴望在外野营。”
suggest 后跟动名词作宾语。故选 C。

温馨提示

最后六个词(persuade, allow, advise, forbid, permit, recommend)要用不定式作宾补;用动名词作宾语。

[例] They forbid their son to go out at night. “他们禁止他们的儿子夜里外出。”(动词不定式作宾语补足语)

[例] The law forbids selling frogs. “法律禁止出售青蛙。”(动名词作宾语)

10-8 有些短语动词后用动名词作宾语。

动词短语(尤其是“动词+介词”)常跟动名词作宾语,而不用不定式作宾语。常见的短语动词有:give up“放弃”、can't help“忍不住”、insist on“坚持”、be fond of“喜爱”、set about“开始”、depend on“依靠;取决于”、feel like“想要”、be proud of“以……为自豪”、excuse sb. for“原谅某人做某事”、prevent/keep/stop sb. from“防止/阻止某人干某事”、succeed in“成功”等。

[例] The man insisted _____ a taxi for me even though I told him I lived nearby.

A. find

B. to find

C. on finding

D. in finding

[江苏高考题]

答案是 C。“即使我告诉那个人我住在附近,但他坚持要为我叫辆出租车。”insist 当“坚持或坚决要求做某事”时,不接不定式或动名词作宾语,而后接表虚拟语气的从句(从句的谓语动词用动词原形或 should+动词原形)或接 on doing。故选 C。

温馨提示

(1) devote... to“贡献于”、owe... to“归功于”、be used to“习惯于”、be accustomed to“习惯于”、stick to“坚持”、look forward to“盼望”、pay attention to“注意”、get down to“开始;着手”、refer to“参考;提到”等动词短语中的 to 为介词,其后只能接动词的动名词形式,不能接动词的不定式形式,切不可误为不定式符号。

[例] 改错:I look forward to hear from you soon.

答案是把 hear 改为 hearing。“我盼望尽快地收到你来信/我静候佳音。”look forward to 中的 to 为介词,此处应接动名词 hearing。

[例] Accustomed to _____ the steep mountains, he had no difficulty reaching the top.

A. climbing

B. climb

C. having climbed

D. have climbed

答案是 A。“由于习惯于爬陡山,他毫不费劲地到达了山顶。”(be) accustomed to 相当于 (be) used to 表示“习惯于”,其中的 to 为介词,后接动词要用

动名词。而表示一般情况,不能用完成式 having climbed。此处 accustomed to 用作原因状语。故选 A。

(2) 这些短语也应考虑具体句子的结构和句意。

【例】She can't help _____ the house because she's busy making a cake.

- A. to clean B. cleaning C. cleaned D. being cleaned

答案是 A。“她在忙着做蛋糕,所以她不能帮着打扫房子。”虽然 can't help doing 为一常用搭配结构,但本句并不表示“不由自主地做某事,”而表示“不能帮助做某事(can't help to do)”。此句中用 cleaning 不合句意。

【例】The theory he stuck to _____ right later.

- A. proving B. being proved C. proved D. was proved

答案是 C。“他所坚持的理论后来证明是正确的。”用于定语从句中的 he stuck to 的宾语为 which / that (指代 the theory) 省略了。此空为谓语动词,不能用动名词 proving; 又因 prove 接形容词 right 为系动词,不用被动语态。故选 C。

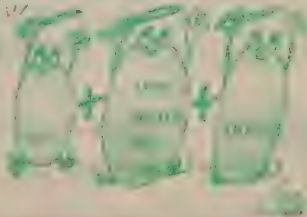
【例】She looks forward every spring to _____ the flower lined garden.

- A. visit B. paying a visit C. walk in D. walking in

答案是 D。“她每年春天都渴望在鲜花成行的园子里散步。”every spring 为副词短语作状语,空缺作 look forward to 的宾语,可排除 A 和 C 动词原形形式; 而 B 项 paying a visit 后须加 to 再加宾语; 而 C 项如作名词短语,walk 前缺冠词或限定代词。故选 D,用动名词短语作宾语。

10-9 “do + 限定词(one's, some, any, the) + 动名词”结构,表示“做…事”之意。

【例】I'll do some shopping this afternoon. “今天下午我将去买东西。”



帮你归纳

常见的这类短语有:

① 表示有目的、有意识地进行练习

或训练某项技能

do some running 跑步

do some reading 看书

do some writing 练写字

do some typing 打字

② 表示做一些不具体的事

do some shopping 买东西

do some washing 洗衣服

do some cooking 做饭

do some cleaning 扫除

do some sewing 做针线活

go + v. -ing: go swimming 去游泳; go skating 去溜冰; go boating 去划船; go hunting 去打猎; go shopping 去购物; go dancing 去跳舞; go skiing 去滑雪; go climbing 去爬山; go sailing 去航行; go shooting 去射击; go dating 去约会

10-10 动名词常作介词的宾语。

动词作介词宾语时,常用其动名词。

[例] 改错: How about join us? The camp is at the foot of a small hill close to a river.

福建高考题:

答案是把 join 改为 joining。“和我们一道怎么样? 营地在一个小山脚下。”how about 中的 about 为介词,后跟动词 join 应用其动名词 joining。

10-11 动名词可作形容词 worth 和 busy 的宾语。

[例] —What do you think of the book?

—Oh, excellent. It's worth _____ a second time.

全国高考题:

A. to read B. to be read C. reading D. being read

答案是 C。“你认为这本书怎么样?”“噢,好极了。它值得再读一遍。”be worth 之后跟主动形式的动名词短语,表示被动概念:“某事值得被做”。

温馨提示

不要和 be worthy of 结构相混淆。在 be worthy of 后要用动名词的被动式或不定式的被动式来表示被动概念。

This book is worth reading. = This book is worthy of being read. 或: This book is worthy to be read. “这本书值得读。”

10-12 动名词作宾语带有补足语时,要用 it 作为形式宾语,而将真正的宾语——动名词短语后置。

[例] We found it no use doing like that. “我们认为那样做没有用。”

句中 it 为形式宾语。动名词短语 doing like that 是真正的宾语,由于其后面有补足语 no use,因此将它置于该补足语之后。



10-13 在动词 want, need, 和 require 后接动名词主动形式作宾语,表示被动含义,意为“需要被…”“该被…”,相当于 want/need/require + to be done。

[例] This sentence needs _____.

全国高考题:

A. improve B. improving C. an improvement D. improved

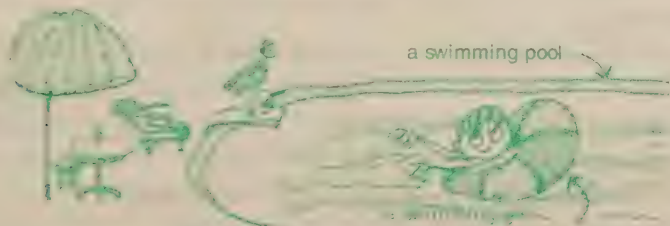
答案是B。“这个句子需要改进。”动名词 improving 为主动形式表示被动意义,相当于 to be done。

第四节 动名词作定语

10-14 动名词可以作定语,说明其所修饰名词的用途。而现在分词作定语,则表示其所修饰名词正在进行的动作。

[例] There is a swimming pool at the back of the garden. “在花园的后面有一个游泳池。”

此句中, a swimming pool = a pool for swimming, 动名词 swimming 作定语, 可以转换成 for... 结构, 说明其所修饰词的用途。



[例] I like that dancing girl. “我喜欢那个跳舞的女孩。”

此句中, a dancing girl = a girl who is dancing. 现在分词 dancing 作定语, 可以转换成定语从句, 表示其所修饰名词的动作或状态。现在分词作定语与所修饰的词之间存在逻辑上的主谓关系。

第五节 动名词的复合结构

10-15 动名词的复合结构由“逻辑主语 + 动名词”构成, 在句中作主语或宾语。

① 动名词的逻辑主语由形容词性物主代词或名词所有格充当。

[例] I would appreciate _____ back this afternoon. [全国高考试题]

A. you to call B. you call C. your calling D. you're calling

答案是C。“你今天下午回电话来, 我将非常感激。”your calling 为动名词的复合结构作 appreciate 的宾语。your 也可以改为宾格代词 you。

[例] _____ the meeting himself gave them a great deal of encouragement.

A. The president will attend B. The president to attend
C. The president attended D. The president's attending

答案是D。“总统亲自出席会议给了他们巨大的鼓舞。”gave 之前应是主语部分。A和C项的 the 前有个 That 也对, 因为它就成了主语从句。B项的 the 前有个 For 也对, 因为它成了不定式的复合结构。D项是动名词的复合结构。

温馨提示

当动名词复合结构为主语时,不能用人称代词或名词的普通格,而用所有格。此处 The president's 不能变为 The president。

- ② 在口语中,还可用宾格代词代替物主代词(通常是动名词作宾语时),如[10-15]第一例中的 your 可改为 you;可用名词普通格代替名词所有格。但在句首时多用名词所有格和物主代词。

[例] I really can't understand _____ her like that.

安徽高考题

- A. you treat B. you to treat C. why treat D. you treating

答案是 D。“我真不能理解你像那样对待她。”understand 意思是“理解,明白”,可与 can 等情态动词连用,可接动名词的复合结构,此处 you treating 也可用 your treating。

[例] I can hardly imagine Peter _____ across the Atlantic Ocean in five days.

- A. sail B. to sail C. sailing D. to have sailed [全国高考题]

答案是 C。“我几乎想象不出彼得能在五天内横渡大西洋。”imagine 后跟动名词, Peter sailing 是动名词的复合结构,在句中作宾语。这里 Peter 用的是名词普通格,也可用名词所有格 Peter's 代替,即为 Peter's sailing...

- ③ 当逻辑主语是表示无生命事物的名词时,一般用普通格。

[例] The noise of _____ could be heard out in the street.

- A. desks opening and closing B. desks opened and closed
C. desks being opened and closed D. desk's being opened and closed

答案是 C。“在街上就可以听得见书桌开关的声音。”“书桌”与“开关”是被动关系,排除 A。过去分词加逻辑主语只能作状语,不能作介词 of 的宾语,排除 B。desks 是表示无生命事物的名词,多用普通格,选 C。

10-16 动名词的复合结构用作主语或宾语,而现在分词独立主格结构用作状语。

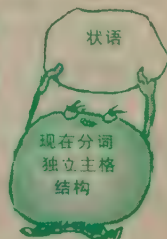
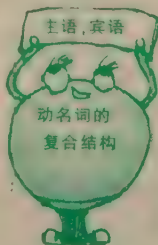
[例] His being knocked down by a car worried us.

“他被汽车撞倒令我们担心。”

句子中动名词复合结构作主语。逻辑主语用“属格”代词 his。

[例] She being absent from the meeting, we felt unhappy. “因为她开会缺席,我们感到不高兴。”

分词独立主格结构作原因状语。逻辑主语用“主格”代词。



10-17 在疑问句中,一般多用动名词的复合结构作主语(而不用不定式的复合结构)。

- [例] Does our saying that mean anything to him? “我们讲了那些对他有任何意义吗?”
 不可说 Does for us to say that mean anything to him?

第六节 动名词的时态和语态

10-18 动名词的一般式通常表示一般性动作(即:无明确时间性的动作),但也可表示与谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生或在那以后发生的动作(后者多在介词或某些结构后)。

- [例] Mike is fond of playing tennis. “迈克喜欢打网球。”
 playing tennis 表示泛指的动作。
- [例] He gained his wealth by printing works of famous writers. “他由于印名作家的作品而发了财。”
 动名词 printing 和谓语 gained 的动作同时发生。
- [例] He insisted on going to Hong Kong the next day. “他坚持要在第二天去香港。”
 动名词 going 的动作在谓语动词 insisted 后发生。

10-19 动名词完成式表示的动作发生在谓语动词之前。

- [例] He hated himself for not having worked hard. “他悔恨自己没有用功。”
 句中“没有用功”发生在“悔恨”之前,故而要用完成式。

10-20 在 remember, forget, regret, excuse, thank, apologize 等动词后,可以用动名词一般式代替动名词完成式。

- [例] She didn't remember _____ him before. 全国高考题

A. having met B. have met
 C. to meet D. to having met

答案是A。“她不记得以前曾见过他。”having met 表示动作发生在 remember 之前。但也可用 meeting 来代替。

- [例] —You should say sorry to your brother.

—Yes, I regret _____ with him.

A. quarrelling B. quarrelled C. to quarrel D. to have quarrelled

答案是A。“你应该向你弟弟道歉。”“是的,我后悔跟他争吵。”因在 regret 后,故 quarrelling 是动名词的一般式代替完成式 having quarrelled。



10-21 动名词的被动式表示动名词的逻辑主语为动名词所表示的动作的承受者。

[例] He got well-prepared for the job interview, for he couldn't risk _____ the good opportunity. [上海高考题]

- A. to lose B. losing C. to be lost D. being lost

答案是B。“他为面试做好了充分准备,因为他不能冒险失去这次好机会。”risk 接 doing sth. 可排除A和C;“失去”的执行者为主语he,应用动名词的主动式。故选B。

[例] _____ to sunlight for too much time will do harm to one's skin.

- A. Exposed B. Having exposed C. Being exposed D. After being exposed

答案是C。“过长时间暴露在阳光下,皮肤会受到损害。”will 的前面显然是主语,动名词短语可以当主语。A项为分词,D项为介词短语,两项应排除。expose 为及物动词,而B项中无宾语,应排除。C项为动名词的被动形式,答案应为C。

10-22 动名词的完成被动式表示该动作发生在谓语动作之前,常可用其一般式来代替。

[例] Tony was very unhappy for _____ to the party.

- A. having not been invited B. not having invited
C. having not invited D. not having been invited

答案是D。“托尼为没有被邀请参加聚会而感到不高兴。”Tony 应是被别人“邀请”,可排除主动形式的B和C,“邀请”发生在先,应用动名词的完成被动式,而其否定式应为 not having invited。故选D。

[例] He still remembers being praised (代替 having been praised) by a famous scientist.
“他记得曾被一位著名的科学家表扬过。”

第七节 非谓语动词(动名词、不定式、现在分词和过去分词)的语法比较

10-23 非谓语动词的语法作用对比一览表。

句子成分	主语	表语	宾语	宾补	介宾	定语	状语
非谓语动词							
不定式	✓	✓	✓	✓	but 后	✓	✓
动名词	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	
现在分词		✓		✓		✓	✓
过去分词		✓		✓		✓	✓

温馨提示

当由现在分词和过去分词变化而来的形容词与定冠词连用表示一类人或事物时,可用做主语或宾语,如:the dying 垂死的, the wounded 伤员, 等。

10-24 不定式和动名词作主语时的区别。

① 表示一次性的动作多用不定式,表示一般性、经常性的动作多用动名词。



[例] _____ is a good form of exercise for both young and old.

- A. The walk B. Walking C. To walk D. Walk

答案是 B。“散步对于年轻人和老人都是一种很好的运动形式。”“散步”在此指“抽象的、一般的行为”,故选 B。

[例] It isn't good for you to smoke so much today. “你今天抽这么多烟对你没好处。”
to smoke 是动词不定式作主语,表示一次性的动作。

② 不定式作主语常用 it 作其形式主语,动名词作主语时常位于句首。只有某些习语如 no use, no good 作表语用时,才用 it 作其形式主语。

[例] In a shop, it is important to please customers. “在商店里,使顾客满意是重要的。”
动词不定式短语作主语。

[例] Eugene's never willing to alter any of his opinions. It is no use _____ with him.

- A. to argue B. arguing C. argued D. having argued

答案是 B。“尤金从不愿意改变自己的任何观点,与他争论没有用。”it's no use 通常接 doing sth. 表示“干某事没有用”。故选 B。

③ 句子表语若是不定式,主语也用不定式;句子表语若是动名词,主语也用动名词。

[例] To see is to believe. Seeing is believing. “眼见为实。”

温馨提示

有时这种对称的结构也可用于其他情况。

[例] Friendship is like money: easier made than _____.

- A. kept B. to be kept C. keeping D. being kept

答案是 A。“友谊像钱一样,取得比保持容易。”后半句其实是 friendship is

easier to be made than to be kept. 的省略式,空白处选项应和 made 并列,英语里有时强调对称美。故选 kept。

10-25 不定式、动名词和分词作表语时的区别。

- ① 不定式、动名词作表语具有名词性质,说明主语的内容。主语是名词时,表示一次性的动作,表语多用不定式;表示一般性、经常性的动作,表语多用动名词。

[例] My job today is _____ all the flowers in the garden.

- A. water B. watering C. to water D. watered

答案是 C。“我今天的工作是给花园里的花浇水。”动词不定式短语作表语,表示一次性的动作。

[例] My job is teaching English. “我的工作是教英语。”

动名词短语作表语,表示经常性的动作。

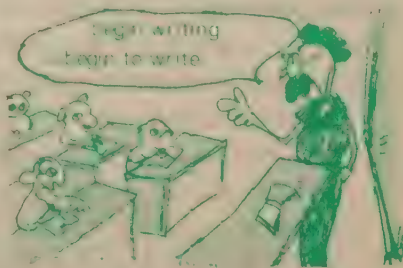
- ② 分词作表语具有形容词性质,说明主语的性质或特征。若主语与分词之间在逻辑上存在主动关系,用现在分词;若主语与分词之间在逻辑上存在被动关系,用过去分词。

[例] This computer game was interesting and the children were interested in it. “这种计算机游戏很有趣,孩子们对它很感兴趣。”

10-26 动词不定式和动名词作宾语时的区别。

- ① 在 begin“开始”、start“开始”、continue“继续”、attempt“企图”、prefer“愿意”等动词后,用动词不定式或动名词作宾语,意义无甚出入。

[例] The teacher said, “You begin writing now,” and the children began to write.
“老师说:‘你们现在开始写吧。’孩子们就开始写了。”



[例] I prefer going/to go there this evening. “我愿意今晚到那里去。”

- ② 在 like“喜欢”、love“爱”、hate“不喜欢;讨厌”等动词后用不定式作宾语常表一次性动作,用动名词作宾语常表习惯性动作,故其意义略有不同。

[例] He likes _____, but he doesn't like _____ today, because it is too cold.

- A. to swim; to swim B. swimming; swimming
C. to swim; swimming D. swimming; to swim

答案是 D。“他喜欢游泳,但是今天他不喜欢游,因为天太冷了。”swimming 是动名词表示经常性的动作, to swim 是动词不定式表示一次性的动作。

- ③ begin 和 start 本身为进行式时,或其前的主语是“物”(而不是“人”)时,或其后的非谓语动词是表示心理状态或精神活动时,其宾语要用不定式(而不用动名词)。

[例] She is beginning (或 starting) to cook supper. “她开始做晚饭。”

[例] The snow began(或 started) to melt when the sun came out. “太阳出来时,雪开始融化。”

[例] I began to understand my past mistakes. “我开始认识到我过去的错误了。”

- ④ 在 remember, forget, regret, mean, stop, try, go on, mean 等动词后用动词不定式或动名词句意不同。[详见 8-33 到 8-34]

[例] In some parts of London, missing a bus means _____ for another hour. 上海高考题

- A. waiting B. to wait C. wait D. to be waiting

答案是 A。“在伦敦部分地区,没有赶上一班公共汽车就意味着再等候一个小时”mean 作“意味着;意思是”之意时,其后应用名词或动名词。另外,本句的主语 missing a bus 也是一个动名词短语,英语里有时强调对称美,所以本题的最佳答案为 A。

[例] Do you mean to go without money? “你想身无分文就走吗?”

mean 接不定式,表示“打算干某事”。

- ⑤ 有些及物动词后只能跟动词不定式作宾语。[详见 8-17]

- ⑥ 有些及物动词后只能跟动名词作宾语。[详见 10-7 及 10-8]

10-27 动词不定式和分词作宾语补足语时的区别。

- ① 宾语和宾语补足语之间存在逻辑上的被动关系时,用过去分词作宾语补足语。

[例] The managers discussed the plan that they would like to see _____ the next year.

- A. carry out B. carrying out C. carried out D. to carry out 全国高考题

答案是 C。“经理们讨论了他们想看到在下一年里得到实施的这个计划。”carried out 是过去分词短语作宾补,和 see 的宾语 the plan(现在用关系代词 that 代替,位于从句首)之间为被动关系。

[例] When he was decorating his house, he got the bedroom _____ first. 全国高考题

- A. to paint B. painting C. painted D. to be painted

答案是 C。“当他装修房子的时候,他先把卧室粉刷了。”painted 是过去分词,和宾语 bedroom 之间存在被动关系。

- ② ask“请”、want“要求”、beg“恳求”、order“命令”、warn“警告”、remind“提醒”、teach“教”、urge“催”、encourage“鼓励”、persuade“劝”、advise“劝”、invite“邀请”allow“让”、permit“允许”、forbid“禁止”、cause“引起”等一般接带 to 不定式作宾补。

[详见 8-21]

[例] Why did you advise her to do that? “你为什么建议她做那件事?”

- ③ would love/like, prefer, want 等表示情感状态的动词,一般接带 to 不定式作宾补。如:

[例] I'd love them to come today. “我想要他们今天来。”

[例] I don't want there to be any trouble. “我不想找麻烦。”

④ catch, set, send 可接现在分词作宾补。

[例] Don't let me catch you napping. “不要让我碰见你偷懒。”

[例] This set me thinking. “这使我深思。”

⑤ keep, find 可跟现在分词、过去分词两种形式作宾补。

[例] I'm sorry to have kept you waiting. “对不起让你久等了。”

[例] Can you keep the whole matter unknown? “你能让整个事件不被人知道吗?”

⑥ let, have, make, get, leave 等表示“致使”意义的动词可跟不定式(不带 to)、现在分词、过去分词三种形式作宾补。

[例] His behavior leaves much to be desired. “他的行为令人不满意。”

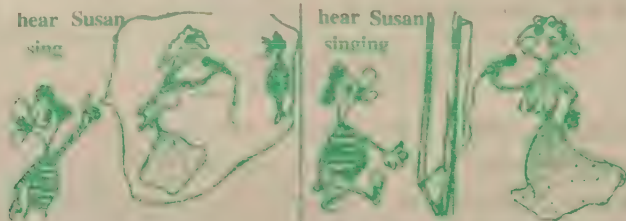
[例] His remarks left me wondering about his real purpose. “他的评论让我怀疑他的真正目的。”

[例] Did you leave the doors firmly fastened? “你把门关牢了吗?”

⑦ see, hear, feel, watch, notice, observe 等感官动词可跟不定式(不带 to)、现在分词、过去分词三种形式作宾补。

[例] Did you notice him pause? “你有没有注意到他停顿一下?”

[例] Did you notice his hands shaking? “你有没有注意到他的手在发抖?”



[例] Did you notice anything moved? “你有没有注意到有什么被人动过了?”

温馨提示

感官动词后,用不定式表示动作全过程,用现在分词表示动作正在进行中。

[例] The missing boys were last seen _____ near the river.

A. playing B. to be playing C. play D. to play

答案是 A。“那些失踪的孩子最后一次被人看见是在河边玩耍。”现在分词 playing 作主语补足语,表示“看见”他们“在玩”。句中的 last 强调了“最后一刻在进行的动作”,而不是“在河边玩”全过程,故选 A。

10-28 动词不定式、动名词和分词作定语时的区别。

① 动词不定式作定语多表示未来的动作。

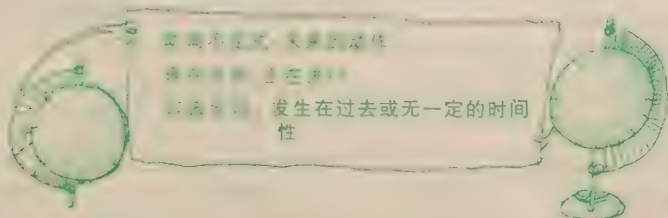
[例] I have a lot of things to do today. “今天我有许多事情要做。”

② 现在分词作定语表示正进行的动作,且被修饰词是其在逻辑上的动作的执行者。

[例] Who is the young man standing over there? “站在那边的那个年轻人是谁?”

③ 过去分词作定语表示发生在过去或没有一定的时间性的动作,且被修饰词是其在逻辑上的动作的承受者。

[例] Two hundred stolen bicycles were returned to their owners last month. 全国高考题
“上个月有两百辆被盗的自行车还给了失主。”



温馨提示

有些动词过去分词和现在分词的形式比较固定:lose 常用过去分词 lost,而 miss 常用现在分词 missing;remain 常用现在分词 remaining;leave 常用过去分词 left。

[例] The missing boy has been found. “失踪的男孩已经找到了。”

The missing boy 相当于 The lost boy.

[例] The lady said she would buy a gift for her daughter with the _____.

A. 20 dollars remained

B. 20 dollars to remain

C. remained 20 dollars

D. remaining 20 dollars

答案是 D。“这位女士说她要用剩下的 20 美元为女儿买个礼物。”remain 常用现在分词作前置定语,表示“剩下的”,相当于 20 dollars left。故选 D。

高中英语语法

④ 动名词作定语表示被修饰词的用途,且与被修饰词之间没有逻辑上的主谓关系。

[例] He bought a washing machine last month. “他上个月买了一台洗衣机。”

等于 a machine used for washing.

10-29 动词不定式和分词作状语时的区别。

① 不定式作状语可以表示目的、结果或程度。

[例] Tom came to borrow a dictionary from me.

“汤姆来向我借了一本字典。”

[例] We are too young to join the army. “我们

太年轻还不能参军。”

② 分词作状语多表示时间、条件、原因、方式或伴随。[详见 9-5 至 9-7]

作状语



10-30 不定式的逻辑主语一般由 for (有时由 of) 介词短语构成, 分词的逻辑主语由主格代词或名词构成, 而动名词的逻辑主语由形容词性物主代词 (或: 宾格代词) 或名词的所有格 (或: 名词的普通格) 来构成。

- [例] It is important for us to learn computer science. “我们学习计算机科学很重要。”
- [例] It is nice of you to come and help me. “你来帮助我真是太好了。”
- [例] She being away, her classmates had to do cleaning for her. “由于她不在, 她的同学得替她打扫。”
- [例] He was forced into the room, his hands tied behind. “他双手反绑着被迫进入房间。”
- [例] There being no pen, I had to write the letter with a pencil. “因为没有钢笔, 我只好用铅笔写信。”
- [例] Would you mind me/my opening the window? “你介意我打开窗户吗?”
- [例] Mary's being late delayed our meeting. “玛丽的迟到延误了我们的会议。”

第八节 动名词的特殊用法

10-31 动名词之前可用冠词 (和形容词), 这时其后常使用介词 of, 这种现象被称为“名词化”。

- [例] I consider _____ of every fish is a kind of murder.
- A. taking B. a taking C. the taking D. to take
- 答案是 C。“我认为对每一条鱼都要捕捞是一种谋杀。”

- [例] Let's give the classroom a good cleaning. “咱们把教室好好地打扫一下吧。”

10-32 简短的揭示语多用动名词表示。

- [例] _____ are allowed here.
- A. No smoking and no drink
- B. No smoking and no drinking
- C. No smoke and no drinking
- D. No smoking and drinking

答案是 B。“这里不许抽烟喝酒。”



10-33 与动名词连用的一些常用句式。

① “idea/method/habit/purpose + of + 动名词”

- [例] She has introduced a new method _____ English.
- A. to learn B. learning C. of learning D. in learning

答案是C。“她已经介绍了一种学习英语的新方法。”

- ② “way/pleasure/time/chance/plan/ power + of + 动名词” = “way/pleasure/time/chance/plan/power + to + 动词原形”

[例] I had no chance of telling him the truth/ to tell him the truth. “我没有机会告诉他真相。”

- ③ “have + difficulty / trouble/ problem/ fun/ pleasure/ a good time/ a hard time + (in) + 动名词”; “spend/ waste time (in) + 动名词”

[例] While zoos had problems keeping warm, supermarkets had problems keeping cool.

[全国高考题]

“当动物园有保暖的问题时,超级市场却有制冷的问题。”

[例] We had some trouble through the snow.

- A. to drive B. driving C. drive D. drove

答案是B。“我们在开车通过雪地时遇到了一些困难。”

- ④ “There is no + need/ use/ harm/ hurry/ point(= need) + (in) + 动名词”

[例] There is no need . He won't come.

- A. to wait B. waiting C. wait D. waited

答案是B。“没有必要等了。他不会来了。”

- ⑤ “On + 动名词”(表示“一…就…”)

[例] On hearing the news, he couldn't help laughing. “一听到这个消息,他不由自主地笑了起来。”

此句还可以改写为:As soon as he heard the news, he couldn't help laughing.

高中英语语法

即学即用

I. 单项填空

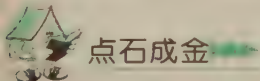
- When asked by the police, he said that he remembered at the party, but not . [北京高考题]
A. to arrive; leaving B. to arrive; to leave C. arriving; leaving D. arriving; to leave
- Russ and Earl were auto mechanics the same pay, but Earl had more ambition.
A. to earn B. to have earned C. earning D. earned [上海高考题]
- I can't stand with Jane in the same office. She just refuses talking while she works. [北京高考题]
A. working; stopping B. to work; stopping C. working; to stop D. to work; to stop
- If you think that treating a woman well means always her permission for things, think again. [湖南高考题]
A. gets B. got C. to get D. getting
- It is no arguing with Bill because he will never change his mind. [全国高考题]
A. use B. help C. time D. way

6. It is difficult to imagine his _____ the decision without any consideration. [陕西高考题]
A. accept B. accepting C. to accept D. accepted
7. Isn't it time you got down to _____ the papers? [重庆高考题]
A. mark B. be marked C. being marked D. marking
8. —How do you deal with the disagreement between the company and the customers?
—The key _____ the problem is to meet the demand _____ by the customers. [北京高考题]
A. to solving; making B. to solving; made
C. to solve; making D. to solve; made
9. The library needs _____ but it will have to wait until Sunday. [全国高考题]
A. to prepare B. preparing C. prepared D. was preparing
10. According to a recent U. S. survey, children spent up to 25 hours a week _____ TV. [上海高考题]
A. to watch B. to watching C. watching D. watch
11. "We can't go out in this weather," said Bob, _____ out of the window. [全国高考题]
A. looking B. to look C. looked D. having looked
12. _____ with a difficult situation, Arnold decided to ask his boss for advice. [北京高考题]
A. To face B. Having faced C. Faced D. Facing
13. It shames me to say it, but I told a lie when _____ at the meeting by my boss. [全国高考题]
A. questioning B. having questioned
C. questioned D. to be questioned
14. Helen had to shout _____ above the sound of the music. [全国高考题]
A. making herself hear B. to make herself hear
C. making herself heard D. to make herself heard
15. He looked around and caught a man _____ his hand into the pocket of a passenger. [北京高考题]
A. put B. to be putting C. to put D. putting
16. It's no use _____ a lot of books without reading them.
A. buy B. to buy C. buying D. bought
17. Our monitor suggested _____ a discussion of this subject. [全国高考题]
A. to have B. should have C. have D. having
18. We are all looking forward to _____ your country. [全国高考题]
A. visiting B. visit C. be visiting D. being visiting
19. The squirrel was lucky that it just missed _____.
A. catching B. to be caught C. being caught D. to catch
20. _____ made her mother very angry.
A. Mary married Jim B. Mary's married Jim
C. Mary's marrying Jim D. Mary's being married Jim
21. While shopping, people sometimes can't help _____ into buying something they don't really need. [上海高考题]

- A. to persuade B. persuading C. being persuaded D. be persuaded
22. Do you mind _____ alone at home? [上海高考题]
A. Jane leaving B. Jane having left C. Jane's being left D. Jane to be left
23. I really appreciate _____ to relax with you on this nice island.
A. to have had time B. having time C. to have time D. to having time
24. How about the two of us _____ a walk down the garden?
A. to take B. take C. taking D. to be taking
25. _____ is a difficult habit to break.
A. Smoke B. Smoked C. Smoking D. To smoke

II. 改正下列句中的错误

- I don't feel like to go to the cinema tonight.
- She is used to live in the village.
- We hoped he being here would make the work easier.
- I regret having not worked harder while young.
- I'm thinking of go to visit my aunt.
- I began knowing about the danger of pollution.
- Remember posting the letter.
- My father used working in the countryside when he was in his teens.
- His letter requires to answer immediately.
- Before use, the machine must be oiled.



点石成金

I. 单项填空

1. () remember doing sth. 此处表示“他记得到达晚会而不是离开”, 不用 remember to do sth. “记得要去做某事(还未做)”。
2. () 主语和 earn 之间构成主谓关系用现在分词 earning 作定语(指一般情况下), 相当于一个定语从句 who earned the same money.
3. () stand 意为“忍受”, 后接动名词作宾语。refuse 意为“拒绝”, 后接不定式作宾语。
4. () that 后接的是宾语从句, 意思是“好好对待一个妇女就意味着”, 应用 mean doing sth., 而不是 mean to do sth. “打算做某事”。故选 D。
5. A. () 应用 It's no use doing sth. 结构。故选 A。
6. () imagine 后接动名词作宾语, his 是动名词 accepting 的逻辑主语。
7. () get down to 里的 to 是介词, 应接动词 mark (“批分数、评成绩”) 的动名词。
8. B. () key (解决问题的) 秘诀后跟由 to 引起的介词短语, 不跟动词原形。另外, demand 和 make 之间为被动关系, 故应用过去分词 made 作后置定语。故选 B。

9. B. 如用不定式,则要用其被动式:to be prepared。

10. C. spend... in doing sth. 这一结构。本句中的介词省略(常可省略),动词仍然要用 watching。

11. C. Bob 看着窗外说,应使用现在分词一般式作伴随状语,表主动和进行。

12. C. face sb. with 表示“使面临;把…摆在…面前”。句中的逗号说明该短语用作原因状语,又因与句子的主语 Arnold 为动宾关系,故选过去分词 faced。

13. C. 应用过去分词,表示与句子的主语 I 为被动关系,(= when I was questioned)。

14. D. 应用动词不定式作目的状语,可首先排除 A 项和 C 项。“make + oneself + 过去分词”表示宾语 oneself 与宾补 heard 在意义上是被动关系。故选 D。

15. D. 用现在分词,表示“伸手”的动作在进行中,应用 catch sb. doing sth. “捉住某人干某事”。

16. C. 在“It is no use...”句型中,常接 doing sth.。

17. D. suggest 后跟动名词作宾语。

18. A. look forward to 中的 to 为介词,应用动名词作宾语。

19. C. being caught 的逻辑主语 the squirrel 为其动作的承受者(抓松鼠)。

20. C. Mary's marrying Jim 是动名词的复合结构,在句中作主语。

21. C. “购了非必须用品”,当然是“禁不住别人的说服”。选 C。

22. C. 动名词虽作宾语,但其逻辑主语与动名词之间存在着动宾关系,即“被单独留在家。”应综合考虑,选 C。

23. B. appreciate 常接 doing sth. 作其宾语。故选 B

24. C. about 为介词,后接动名词作宾语,the two of us 作动名词的逻辑主语,选 C。

25. C. Smoking 为动名词作主语,表经常性的动作。

II. 改正下列句中的错误

1. to go 改为 going
2. live 改为 living
3. he 改为 his
4. not 放到 having 之前
5. go 改为 going
6. knowing 改为 to know
7. posting 改为 to post
8. working 改为 to work
9. to answer 改为 answering
10. use 改为 being used

第11章

形容词和副词

高考热点

形容词和副词在近年全国卷和各省市卷中至少有一道单选题,有时也在短文改错里出现。主要考查形容词和副词的基本用法及位置;比较等级及其修饰语;在特定语境中选择一个恰当的形容词或副词(尤其是在完形填空中,一般有三到五个)。

因此,我们学习时,要掌握所学形容词、副词的基本含义及基本用法,要弄清常见位置及排序,要熟记形容词、副词比较等级的句型结构(要做到张口能诵的程度),要留心部分形容词与介词、名词的常见搭配。

做题时要结合所提供句子的结构和具体的语境,并注意习惯用法或固定搭配,认真辨析。

第一节 形容词的概念和用法

一、形容词的概念及用法

11-1 形容词是用来修饰、描述名词或代词的词,主要用作定语、表语和补足语等。

[例] John was so sleepy that he could hardly keep his eyes

[全国高考题]

- A. open B. to be opened
C. to open D. opening

答案是A。“约翰困得眼睛都快睁不开了。”open此处为形容词,作宾补,补充说明宾语的状态。非



持续进行的动作,不用动词现在分词 opening。

[例] 改错: After learning the basics of the subject, nothing else seemed very practically to me. [北京高考题]

答案是把 practically 改为 practical。“学习了这个学科的基本原理后,别的什么对我来说好像都不实用了。”seem 为系动词,后应接形容词作表语。

[例] 改错: After that, you always gave me specially attention and inspired me to join in activities. [天津高考题]

答案是把 specially 改为 special。“此后你总是特别地关注我,激励我参加活动。”作定语修饰名词 attention,应用形容词 special。

[例] 改错: I would describe myself as shy and quietly.

答案是把 quietly 改为 quiet。“我乐意把自己描述成害羞和恬静的样子。”and 表示前后的词性应相同;此处应用 describe... as + 形容词(作宾补)。

温馨提示

不要受汉语影响,用形容词单独作谓语。

[例] 改错: ... and I wonder if you'll free then so we could chat about the good old days. [山东高考题]

答案是在 free 前加 be。“...并且我想知道到时候你是否有时间,以便我们能谈谈昔日的好时光。”free 为形容词,此处只作表语,从句应加谓语动词 be。

11-2 alive 等形容词只作表语。

① 一般形容词既可作定语又可作表语,但有些形容词只能作表语,常见的有: alive “活着的”, afraid “害怕的;担心的”, asleep “睡着的”, alike “相像的”, alone “单独的”, awake “醒来的”等。

[例] She was afraid to go home and face her stepmother. “她害怕(不敢)回家去见后娘。”

② 还有不是以 a-开头的: ill “生病的”, glad “高兴的”, well “健康的”, unable “不能的”, drunk “喝醉的”, worth “值得的”等,只能作表语而不作定语。

[例] John was unable to afford the house. “约翰买不起这房子。”

[例] Mary's son is ill today. 玛丽的儿子今天病了。

翻译 这棵病树已生长了好几百年了。

The ill tree is several hundred years old. (×)

The sick tree is several hundred years old. (√)

温馨提示

(1) 如果上述形容词出现非引号里所给的含义,有时也可以用作定语。

【例】Ill news runs apace. “恶事传千里。”

ill 表示“坏的;不吉祥的;邪恶的”,可用作定语。

(2) fond “喜欢的”,worth “值钱的;值得的”,worthy “值得的;配得上的”等形容词一般不可单独作表语。

【例】Tom is fond of music. “汤姆喜爱音乐。”

【例】This necklace is worth 1,000 US dollars. “这条项链值一千美元。”

【例】She is worthy to receive such honor. “她应该得到此荣誉。”

【例】The cause is worthy of our continued support. “这一事业值得我们继续不断的支持。”

11-3 live 等形容词多用作定语。

有些形容词多用作定语,常见的有:live [laɪv] “活的”,elder “年长的”,former “前任的”,latter “后者”,wooden “木制的”,golden “金色的”,front “前面的”,back “后面的”,outer “外部的”,chief “首要的;首席的”,main “主要的”,one-eyed “一只眼的”,three-legged “三条腿的”等。

【例】That is a live fish. “那是条活鱼。”

【例】Don was appointed chief engineer of the project. “唐被委任为该项工程的总工程师。”

11-4 “the + 形容词”表示一类人或一类事物:表示人时,泛指某一类人,作复数用;表示物时,指某一种抽象概念,应以单数对待。

【例】The young like skiing. “年轻人喜欢滑雪。”(指一类人)。

比较:The young (man) likes skiing. “这个年轻人喜欢滑雪。”(指一个人)

【例】The unknown is yet to come. “天有不测风云。”(指未知之事)

【例】Four of Robert's children were at the party, including _____, Luke. 安徽高考题

A. the oldest B. an oldest one C. the old D. an old one

答案是A。“罗伯特的孩子中有四个出席聚会,包括最大的——鲁克。”the old 可指老人(=the old people),不表示“孩子中年龄最大的”,the oldest = the oldest child。

二、形容词的位置

11-5 作定语的形容词一般要放在被修饰词前面,但有些要放在被修饰词之后。而 enough 则置于之前或之后都行,多置于之前。

一般情况下,形容词作定语时,放在被修饰词之前。但在下列情况下,要注意形容词的位置:

- ① 当被修饰词是复合不定代词,如 something, nothing, anything等,形容词要后置。

[例] There is nothing important in today's newspaper.

“今天的报纸上没什么重要新闻。”

- ② 形容词短语作定语时,要后置。

[例] Any boy clever at painting, come here. “擅长绘画

的男孩子,到这边来。”

- ③ 表语形容词作定语时,要后置。

[例] He was the only person awake at the moment. “他是当时唯一醒着的人。”

- ④ present“在场的”, absent“缺席的”, concerned“有关的”和 involved“涉及到的”等词作定语时多后置。

[例] The men present were his friends. “在场的那些人是他的朋友。” (= The men who were present were his friends.)

- ⑤ enough 用作定语时,可置于被修饰词之前或之后。

[例] We have enough seats (= seats enough) for everyone. “我们有足够的座位供大家坐。”

[例] If I had _____, I'd visit Europe, stopping at all the small interesting places.

A. a long enough holiday

B. an enough long holiday

[全国高考题]

C. a holiday enough long

D. a long holiday enough

答案是A。“如果我有个足够长的假期,我就会漫游欧洲,每个小小的旅游胜地都要驻足观光。”从表面上看起来,A和D都对,实际上D是错的,因为 enough 不是修饰名词 holiday“足够的假期”,而是修饰 long“足够长”,应放在形容词 long 之后。

11-6 两个或两个以上形容词同时作定语时排列顺序有规律。

- ① 单个形容词作定语时,一般位于被修饰名词之前。两个或两个以上的形容词同时作定语时,排列顺序一般为:限定词(冠词、指示代词、形容词性物主代词、名词所有格)→数词(序数词、基数词)→描绘形容词→特征形容词(大小、形状、新旧、长幼)→颜色形容词→类属形容词(来源、材料、用途)→名词性定语→被修饰名词。

[例] — How was your recent visit to Qingdao? “你最近的青岛之行怎么样?”

— It was great. We visited some friends, and spent the last few sunny days at the seaside. “好极了。我们拜访了些朋友,最后几个晴朗的日子我们是在海边度过的。”

[全国高考题]

the 为冠词, last 相当于序数词, few 相当于基数词, sunny 描绘形容词。

[例] _____ students are required to take part in the boat race.

[浙江高考题]

A. Ten strong young Chinese

B. Ten Chinese strong young

C. Chinese ten young strong

D. Young strong ten Chinese

答案是A。“要求十个强健的中国青年学生参加这次划船比赛。” ten(数词) strong(描绘形容词) young(特征形容词) Chinese(类属形容词)。故选A。



【例】The _____ house smells as if it hasn't been lived in for years.

A. little white wooden

B. little wooden white

C. white wooden little

D. wooden white little

答案是A。“这座白色的小木屋闻起来就好像是多年无人居住过似的。”wooden 表材料,放在最后,white 表颜色,放在 little(大小)之后,故选A。

② 形容词短语作定语时,多是位于被修饰名词之后。

【例】_____ to take this adventure course will certainly learn a lot of useful skills.

A. Brave enough students

B. Enough brave students

C. Students brave enough

D. Students enough brave

答案是C。“有勇气进行这门探险课程的学生们肯定会学到很多有用的技能。”名词 students 的定语是形容词短语(尤其是此处又接了动词不定式短语),应后置,排除A、B。修饰形容词 brave 的 enough 要后置,排除D。

三、以-ly 结尾的形容词

11-7 friendly 和 deadly 等形容词容易被误用。

后缀-ly 常在形容词之后构成副词,但有些以-ly 结尾的词却是形容词,常用的这类派生词有两类:

① “名词+ly→形容词”,如:friendly“友好的”,lovely“可爱的”,weekly(*adj. & adv.*)“每周的”,orderly“有秩序的”,brotherly“兄弟般的”等。

【例】What he said sounds _____.

[全国高考题]

A. nicely

B. pleasantly

C. friendly

D. wonderfully

答案是C。“他说的听起来很友好。”题中 sounds 是连系动词,要求接形容词作表语,这里只有 friendly 是形容词。

② “形容词+ly→形容词”,如:lively“活泼的”,lonely“孤独的”,likely“可能的”,deadly“致命的”等。

温馨提示

有些形容词或副词本身就带-ly,并不是后缀-ly,如:silly(*adj.*)“愚蠢的”,early(*adj. & adv.*)“早”等。

第二节 副词的概念和用法

一、副词的概念及分类

11-8 副词是用来修饰动词、形容词、其他副词、介词短语或全句的词。

【例】Attention, please, the game will begin _____ (立即).

[全国高考题]

答案是 immediately。“请注意!比赛立即就要开始了。”副词 immediately 作状语,修饰动词 begin。

[例] Standing straight helped him look _____ attractive and special.

A. wonderful B. wonder C. wonderfully D. wondering

答案是C。“他站得笔直,看上去极其吸引人,而且与众不同。”wonderfully 修饰形容词 attractive,作状语。

[例] I was standing outside the bank building and I saw it all quite clearly. “我就站在银行大楼外面,这一切我都看得相当清楚。”

句中副词 quite“相当地”修饰副词 clearly。

[例] Two middle aged passengers fell into the sea. Unfortunately neither of them could swim.

[北京高考题]

“有两位中年乘客掉入大海,不幸的是,两人都不会游泳。”

副词 unfortunately 作状语,修饰全句,起评注性作用,也有语法书称为评注性状语。

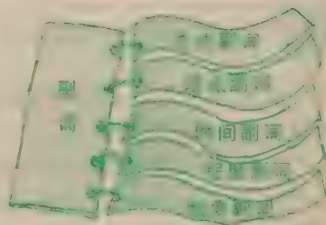
11-9 按词汇意义,副词可分为方式副词、地点副词、时间副词、程度副词和频度副词。

① 副词中方式副词居多,多由形容词加后缀-ly 变来,例如:carefully“认真地”,secretly“秘密地”,seriously“严肃地”,angrily“生气地”,foolishly“愚蠢地”,beautifully“漂亮地”等。

[例] You will be better accepted if you can speak more _____ (自然地) in public.

[全国高考题]

答案为 naturally。“如果你能在公共场合说得更自然些,你就更有可能被接受。”naturally 是形容词 natural + ly 构成的副词,作状语,表示“说话”的方式。



温馨提示

修饰及物动词的方式副词常放在宾语后。

[例] 改错:She looked at me serious and said, “It’s bad to tell lies!”

答案是把 serious 改为 seriously。“她严肃认真地看着我说,‘说谎不好!’”修饰动词 look,表示方式,应用副词 seriously。

② 地点副词 例如:here“在/到这里”,there“在/到那里”,above“在……上方”,downstairs“在或去楼下”,home“在/回家”等。

温馨提示

地点副词前一般不用介词 to。

[例] 改错:Their children cannot go to school because they have not enough money to send their children to there.

答案是去掉第三个 to。此处 there 用作副词,其前不用介词 to。

- ③ 时间副词 例如: before“以前”, ago“……前”, now“现在”, soon“不久”, then“然后;接着”, late“晚”, yesterday“昨天”等。
- ④ 程度副词 例如: very“非常”, so“如此,那么”, completely“完全地、彻底地”, well“好”, too“太”, nearly“几乎”, that“这么;那么”等。

[例] Sometimes it was a bit boring to work there because there wasn't always _____ much to do. [广东高考题]

A. such B. that C. more D. very

答案是 B。“有时候在那里工作有点令人生厌因为不是总是有那么多工作可做。”much 后省略了 work, 可用副词 that 修饰。此时, that 作“如此;那么”解, 相当于 so, 多用于疑问句或否定句中, 用来修饰形容词或副词。故选 B。

- ⑤ 频度副词 例如: always“总是”, often“经常”, usually“通常”, sometimes“有时”, never“从不”等。

[例] 改错: She was usual patient with her students and never made them disappointed.

答案是把 usual 改为 usually。“她对自己的学生通常很有耐心, 从不让他们感到失望。”修饰谓语动词 be patient with, 应用频率副词 usually。

[例] 改错: Whenever I see them I will often think of my English teacher.

答案是去掉 often。“每当我看到它们, 我就会想起我的英语老师。”often 与 whenever 引导的时间状语从句含义重复, 甚至有点冲突。

二、副词的位置

11-10 副词修饰全句时多见于句首。

[例] Normally it would be forbidden to let these poisonous snakes guard exhibition objects, ...

“一般情况下是不允许让这些毒蛇守护展品的, ……”

副词 normally 修饰全句, 位于句首。

温馨提示

修饰全句的副词有时可插入句中, 这时一般紧跟在主语后面。

[例] All small children act naturally and as they grow up they normally learn to control their actions.

“所有小孩的行为都是随心所欲的, 随着他们长大, 正常情况下他们都学着约束自己的行为。”

副词 normally 修饰主句 they learn to control their actions。

[例] The reason that I seldom travel by plane is quite simple:...

“我很少坐飞机旅行的理由相当简单:……”

程度副词 quite 修饰形容词 simple。

[例] You were brave enough to raise objections at the meeting.

“你真够勇敢,竟在会上提反对意见。”

enough 此处为副词,修饰形容词 brave,作状语。

11-12 副词修饰动词时可置于动词后或者动词前。

① 地点副词位于动词之后;方式副词和程度副词

可在动词之前,但在动词之后的情况较多;频度

副词一般位于动词之前;时间副词可位于动词

前(或主语前),也可位于动词之后。

[例] As Frank went downstairs his eyes fell on a large

brown envelope by the door. [全国高考题]

“富兰克下楼时看见门口有一个棕色的大信封。”

地点副词 downstairs 修饰动词 went。

[例] _____, I went to the railway station to see my friend off.

A. After eating quickly my dinner

B. After my quickly eating dinner

C. After eating my dinner quickly

D. After eating my quickly dinner

答案是 C。“匆匆吃完饭后我就去火车站送我的朋友。”quickly 修饰动名词 eating,为方式状语,该短语也可写成 after quickly eating my dinner。

[例] Suppose you work in a big firm and find English very important for your job because you often deal with foreign businessmen. [全国高考题]

“假设你为一家大公司工作,由于你经常与外商打交道所以发现英语对于你的工作非常重要。”

频度副词 often 修饰动词 deal。

[例] Yesterday I did some reading. “昨天我看了会儿书。”

该句也可以写成: I did some reading yesterday。

② 如果句中有情态动词、助动词或 be 动词,副词一般不放在它们前面,除非特别强调情态动词或 be 动词,或句中省去了实义动词。

[例] He can never understand. (一般情况)

比较: He never can understand. (特别强调 can) “他决不会理解。”

[例] —Can you park your car near the shops? “你能将车停在商店附近吗?”

—Yes. I usually can. “是的。通常是可行的。”

由于句中谓语部分只剩情态动词 can,不可写成: ... can usually。

11-13 作状语时,各类副词的排列顺序一般为:方式副词 + 地点副词 + 时间副词。

这几种副词同时作状语时,方式副词 + 地点副词 + 时间副词这种排列比较固定,时间副词则既可以在地点副词之后,又可以在句首。

例] He behaved _____.

- A. well yesterday here B. yesterday here well
C. here yesterday well D. well here yesterday

答案是 D。“昨天他在这儿表现不错。”这句也可写成:Yesterday he behaved well here.

温馨提示

else 用于疑问词、不定代词后。

[例] — I hear they aren't pleased with the house you've chosen for them.

“我听说他们对你为他们挑选的房子不满。”

— Well, where else could they live in such comfort?

“哎,他们在其他的什么地方能住的如此舒适?”

where else 虽然可翻译“在其他的什么地方”(= What other places)但 else 不能放在 where 前。

11-14 hardly 和 never 等含有否定意义的副词位于句首时,主谓须倒装。

这类副词中常用的还有:little“很少;几乎不”,seldom“很少”;scarcely“很少”,nor“也不”,neither“也不”,only + 状语“只有……”等。

例] Little _____ about his own safety, though he was in great danger himself. [全国高考题]

- A. does he care B. did he care C. he cares D. he cared

答案是 B。“尽管他自己处境很危险,但他很少顾及自己的安危。”

三、某些副词的特殊含义

11-15 deep 等用作副词时,常表具体含义;而 deeply 等副词则常表抽象含义。

例] He dived deeply into the water. [改错]

答案是把 deeply 改为 deep。“他潜入水的深处。”deep 一词表示潜入水中的具体、一定的深度(此类副词尤其常见于介词短语前)。

比较 Even father was deeply moved. “连父亲也深受感动。”(指情感上)

温馨提示

这类副词中常见的还有 high—highly, wide—widely, close—closely 等,由于字面意思接近,常易被误用。

【例】改错:They were high praised. “他们受到高度赞扬。”

答案是将句中的 high 改为 highly。high 表示实际高度,而 highly 具有抽象含义,意为“高度地”。

The eagle flies high. “鹰飞得很高。”(含具体的高度)

【例】It was raining heavily. Little Mary felt cold, so she stood _____ to her mother.

A. close B. closely C. closed D. closing

答案是 A。“下着大雨,小玛丽感到冷,所以她靠近妈妈站着。”close 是副词常与介词 to 连用,指具体的,而非抽象的概念。比较:closely(指程度上)“密切地/的”;closed(为过去分词形容词),表示“已关门”;closing(动词)和 to 不搭配。故选 A。

【例】Please open your mouth _____.

A. large B. wide C. widely D. big

答案为 B。“请把嘴张大”。此处 wide 表示具体含义,意为“宽”或“大”,而 widely 则表示抽象含义,意为“广泛地”,如:read widely“广泛阅读”。

第三节 形容词和副词的比较级、最高级形式

一、规则形容词、副词的比较级、最高级的构成规则

11-16 单音节及部分双音节形容词或副词加后缀即构成比较级和最高级形式。

- ①一般形容词、副词加 -er, -est。如 small(小的)→smaller, smallest; short(短的)→shorter, shortest。
- ②以“e”结尾的形容词、副词只加 -r, -st。如:wide(宽)→wider, widest safe(安全的)→safer, safest
- ③以“辅音字母 + y”结尾的形容词或副词,去 y 后加 -ier, -iest。如:heavy(重的)→heavier, heaviest; early(早)→earlier, earliest
- ④以重读的“单个元音字母 + 单个辅音字母”结尾的形容词或副词,双写词尾辅音字母后再加 -er, -est。如:fat(胖的)→fatter, fattest; big(大的)→bigger, biggest
- ⑤以“r”结尾的形容词或副词加 -er, -est 后,原来不发音的“r”要发 /r/ 如:clever(聪明的) /'klevə/ → cleverer /'klevərə/, cleverest /'klevərist/; near(附近) /nɪə/ → nearer /'nɪərə/, nearest /'nɪərist/
- ⑥以 -ng 结尾的形容词或副词加 -er, -est 后,原来的 /ŋ/ 音后出现一个 /g/ 音。如:young(年轻的) /jʌŋ/ → younger /'jʌŋgə/, youngest /'jʌŋgɪst/; long(长的) /lɒŋ/ → lon-

ger /'lɒŋgə/, longest /'lɒŋɡɪst/ strong (强壮的) /strɒŋ/ → stronger /'strɒŋɡə/, strongest /'strɒŋɡɪst/

11-17 多音节及部分双音节形容词或副词前加 more, most 即构成比较级和最高级形式。

① 这种情况下, more, most 后的形容词或副词必须是原级(原形), 不可在后面再加 -er, -est; 另一方面, 以加 -er, -est 的方式构成的比较级和最高级形式, 前面不可再加 more, most

[例] They are _____ than they used to.

A. happy B. more happy C. happier D. more happier

答案是 C。“他们比以前幸福。”happy 比较级的正确形式为 happier。

② often, fit 等词的比较级及最高级形式可以是 -er, -est, 也可以是 more ~, most ~, 但后者较常见。

[例] No one can be more fit for the office than he is. “没有人比他更能胜任这个职位了。”

[例] Sometimes we have milk and bread for breakfast, but more often we have eggs and rice. “有时候早饭我们喝牛奶、吃面包, 但更多的时候吃鸡蛋和米饭。”

二、不规则形容词、副词的比较级、最高级的构成

11-18 形容词、副词原级前加 less, least 即构成降级比较级及最高级形式。

“less + 形容词、副词的原级”, “least + 形容词、副词的原级”即构成降级的比较级和最高级形式。

[例] John behaved less politely than Bob. “约翰没有鲍勃礼貌。”

[例] They say that people today are less honest than they were ten years ago. “他们说当今的人们不如他们十年以前诚实。”

[例] The salesman showed her several bags and she chose _____ one as she didn't want to spend too much money on it.

A. the less expensive B. less expensive
C. the least expensive D. least expensive

答案是 C。“售货员给她看了几个包, 她选了个最便宜的, 因为她不想在包上花太多的钱。”

11-19 不规则形容词、副词的比较级及最高级形式需要逐个记住。

① 常见不规则形容词、副词一览表:

good }
well } better, best
many }
much } more, most
bad }
badly } worse, worst
ill }

little-less, least
far { farther, farthest
further, furthest
old { older, oldest
elder, eldest
late { later, latest
latter, last

[例] David has won the first prize in singing; he is still very excited now and feels _____ desire to go to bed. [苏高考试题]

A. the most B. more C. worse D. the least

答案是 D。“戴维唱歌比赛得一等奖,他现在仍然非常激动,没有丝毫想睡的意思。”一般情况下,获奖后会很激动,应用 feels the least desire to go to bed,符合句意。

[例] Professor White has written some stories, but he is _____ known for his plays.

A. the best B. more C. better D. the most [全国高考试题]

答案是 C。“怀特教授已经写了一些故事,但他写的剧更有名气。”此处是 stories 和 plays 两者间的比较,用比较级,排除 A 和 D。“闻名”是 be well known, well 的比较级用 better,故排除 B。

② far, old 和 late 的比较级及最高级分别都有两种形式,含义也有所不同,以比较级为例:

{ farther 表具体含义:“较远”	{ older 指年龄:“较老的,年龄较大的”
{ further 表抽象含义:“进一步”	{ elder 指排行:“年长的”
{ later 指时间:“较晚的”	
{ latter 指顺序:“后者”	

[例] This washing machine is environmentally friendly because it uses _____ water and electricity than _____ models. [北京高考试题]

A. less; older B. less; elder C. fewer; older D. fewer; elder

答案是 A。“这种洗衣机是环保的,因为它比老式的用的水和电都少”,water and electricity 是不可数名词,应用 little 的比较级 less 修饰;elder 表示人的长幼顺序,不能修饰 model(洗衣机的型号)。故选 A。

() 第四节 修饰比较等级的状语 ()

11-20 much, little 等在比较级及最高级前作程度状语。

形容词、副词的比较级前的程度状语,一种是用来加强比较的程度,常见的有: much“……得多”, far“远远”, a lot“……得多”, a great deal“……得多”, still“甚至;还”, even“甚至”, by far“远远”等;另一种是用来弱化比较的语气,常见的有: little“几

乎不”, no“不比……”, (only) a little“稍稍”, slightly“稍稍地”等。

[例] —How did you find your visit to the museum?

—I thoroughly enjoyed it. It was _____ than I expected.

- A. far more interesting B. even much interesting
C. so more interesting D. a lot much interesting

[全国高考题]

答案是 A。“你去参观博物馆感觉如何?”“我觉得太好了!比我想的有趣得多了。”根据题意,应用比较级,故排除 B、D; A、C 选项虽均有比较级 more interesting,但只有 far 可在比较级前作状语,故排除 C,答案是 A。

[例] If there were no examinations, we should have _____ at school.

- A. the happiest time B. a more happier time
C. much happiest time D. a much happier time

[全国高考题]

答案是 D。“要是没有考试,我们在学校的日子就好过多了。”much 作状语修饰 happier。

[例] Mary kept weighing herself to see how much _____ she was getting.

[全国高考题]

- A. heavier B. heavy C. the heavier D. the heaviest

答案是 A。“玛丽总是称自己的体重,看看重了多少。”句意中隐含 than before“比过去”,有比较要使用比较级;已经有 how much 修饰,不需要冠词。故选 A 项。

温馨提示

by far 作程度状语时,可置于比较级及最高级前,也可置于其后,且比较级前常加 the。

[例] This book is by far the best. “这本书显然是最好的。”

11-21 表“倍数”时,要在原级或比较级前加 twice, three times 等程度状语,句型为:“... times + as... as...”, “... times + 比较级 + than...”表示“前者是后者的……倍”。

- ① 表示“两倍”一般用“twice”。
② 表示三倍或三倍以上时才能用“... times + ...”结构。

[例] It is reported that the United States uses _____

energy as the whole of Europe.

- A. as twice B. twice much C. twice much as D. twice as much

答案是 D。“据报道美国所用的能源是整个欧洲的两倍。”“两倍于...”既可用 twice as much as, 也可用 twice as many as 表示,但 energy 为不可数名词,应选 D。

[例] After the new technique was introduced, the factory produced _____ tractors in 1988 as the year before.

[全国高考题] 215



- A. as twice many B. as many C. twice as many D. twice many as

答案是 C。“引进新技术后,这家工厂 1988 年拖拉机产量是前一年的两倍。”

[例] What a table! I've never seen such a thing before. It is _____ it is long.

- A. half not as wide as B. wide not as half as
C. not half as wide as D. as wide as not half

[湖北高考题]

答案是 C。“这是怎样的一张桌子啊!我从来没有看过这样一个东西。宽度不到长度的一半。”half 修饰形容词、副词的比较等级,应该放在 as wide as 的前面,另外 not 也应该放在 half 前。故选 C。

第五节 原级比较的句型

11-22 形容词、副词原级比较的句型肯定式为“as...as”,表示“前者同后者一样”;否定式为“not as(或 so)...as”,表示“前者不如后者”。

[例] 改错:In some places, you may borrow as more books as you need.

答案是把 more 改为 many。“在有些地方,你需要多少本书可以借多少本” as...as...应用形容词/副词的原级。

[例] 改错:Before my classmates, it seems always difficult for me to do things well as them.

[全国高考题]

答案是在 well 前加 as。“在我的同学面前,好像我总是难以把事情干得和他们一样地好。”as well as 表示同级比较。

[例] He speaks English well indeed, but of course not _____ a native speaker.

- A. as fluent as B. more fluent than
C. so fluently as D. much fluently than

[上海高考题]

答案是 C。“他的英语讲得很好,但当然没有母语为英语的人说得流利。”修饰动词 speak English 应用副词,和 well 构成并列关系,应先排除运用形容词的 A 和 B。D 项中的 much 不能于形容词或副词的原级前构成比较级,也应排除。C 项中 so(代替肯定句中的 as)fluently (adv.) as 用于否定句中。故选 C。

温馨提示

这些 as...as...可用于形象的、更精确的描述。

[例] A typhoon swept across this area with heavy rains and winds _____ strong as 113 miles per hour.

[上海高考题]

- A. too B. very C. so D. as

答案是 D。“台风夹着大雨席卷了这个地区,风力强达每小时 113 英里”。as...as 为固定结构,在肯定句中前一个 as 不能用 so 代替。as...as 113 miles per hour 此处形容“风”的强烈的程度。故选 D。

11-23 just, about, nearly 等在原级比较句中作状语。

- ① just as...as...“恰好和……一样……”, about as...as...“大约和……一样……”, nearly as...as...“几乎和……一样……”, not nearly 修饰 as...as...时表示“远不如”。

【例】从 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出与原句同义的句子。

原句: He is not nearly as active as he used to be.

[全国高考题]

- A. He was much more active before. B. He is used to being very active.
C. He is far from being active. D. He is not so active as he wishes to be.

答案是 A。“他现在远不如从前那么活跃。”或“他从前比现在活跃多了。”根据句意,排除 B、C、D。此句为原级比较句的否定式, not nearly 修饰 as active as...

- ② 在“as...as...”句式中,第一个 as 为副词,其后应紧跟形容词或副词;若形容词还附带名词,应采用句式“as + 形 + 名词”。如名词为可数名词单数,则采用“as + 形容词 + a / an + 可数名词单数 + as”或“a / an + 可数名词单数 + as + 形容词 + as”。

【例】Our neighbor has _____ ours.

[北京高考题]

- A. as a big house as B. as big a house as
C. the same big house as D. a house the same big as

答案是 B。“我们邻居的房子和我们的一样大。”house 为可数名词单数,应用 as big a house as 或 a house as big as; 另外, the same 后只能跟名词,不能直接跟形容词,故 A、C 和 D 全为错误结构。答案为 B。

第六节 比较级的句型

11-24 形容词、副词比较级比较的句型中常用的有“比较级 + than...”等。

比较级比较句型主要用于两者之间的比较,比较双方可以都出现,也可能只出现一方。

- ① “比较级 + than...”

【例】This year they have produced _____ grain _____ they did last year.

[全国高考题]

- A. as less; as B. as few; as C. less; than D. fewer; than

答案是 C。“今年他们生产的粮食比去年少。”句中 grain 是不可数名词,不能用 few 或 fewer 修饰,故排除 B、D。如句子为原级比较, A 应为 as little as, 故排除 A。

- ② “比较级, ... or...” (选择疑问句中)

【例】Which is _____ country, Canada or Australia?

[全国高考题]

- A. a large B. larger C. a larger D. the larger

答案是 D。“加拿大和澳大利亚哪个国家更大?”形容词比较级后有名词,同时又有比较范围,须在比较级前加定冠词 the。

- ③ “the + 比较级 + of (the two...)”

【例】Of the two sisters, Betty is _____ one, and she is also the one who loves to be

A. a younger B. a youngest C. the younger D. the youngest

④不点明被比的对象

A. more B. much C. many D. most

[例] Bob ran the 100 meters in 9.91 seconds, and I have not seen _____ this year.

答案是 B。“鲍勃跑 100 米用了 9.91 秒,今年我没有看到更好的成绩了”。把 Bob 这次的成绩与今年另外时期(含其他人)的情况进行比较,应用比较级;赛跑时用的时间应越少越好。故选 B。

(1) 这种比较级可构成“a + 比较级 + 可数名词单数”,有时表示一个最高级的含义。

[例] Mr. Smith owns _____ collection of coins than anyone else I have ever met.

A. larger B. a larger C. the largest D. a large 山东高考题

答案是 B。“史密斯先生收集的硬币比我遇见的任何人都多。”由 than 可知应用比较级;“a + 比较级 + 名词”意为“一个更……的人或物”,表示最高级含义,即相当于 Mr. Smith owns the largest collection of coins. 故选 B。

(2) 在没有比较含义时,要用形容词或副词的原形。

[例] 改错: I can wait more patiently above the sea for quite a long time.

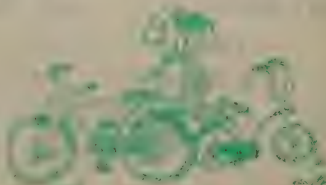
答案是把 more 去掉。“我能在海上耐心地等待很长时间。”本句和上下文没有提供比过去/现在或其他人“更耐心”的依据,此处 more 纯属多余。

11-25 在比较句型中,所比较之事物在逻辑上要保持一致(即:须为同类的、可互比的事物)。

〔例〕挑出错误的一项来：

The cost of living in Shanghai is still higher

A B C



than any other city in China.

D

答案是D。“上海的生活费用比中国任何其他城市(的生活费用)都高。”前边是“费用 the cost”,后边的比较对象也应该是“费用 the cost(或 that)”(即:中国任何其他城市的生活费用 the cost of living in any other city in China),而原句D项中用了“城市 city”去与“花费 cost”进行比较,故而错了。

11-26 “比较级 + and + 比较级”表示“越来越……”,其形式有两种:“~er and ~er”或“more and more ~”。

例] It's getting warmer and warmer(或: more and more terrible). “天气变得越来越暖和(或:越来越糟糕)。”

温馨提示

不能用“more + 原形 + and + more + 原形”,不说“more beautiful and more beautiful”。

11-27 “The + 比较级..., the + 比较级...”句型表示“越……,就越……。”前半句相当于一个条件句,要用一般时代替将来时。另外假如句中有形容词(及所修饰的名词等)或副词,应将它们放在主语之前。

例] As far as I am concerned, education is about learning and the more you learn, _____.

[上海高考题]

A. the more for life are you equipped B. the more equipped for life you are
C. the more life you are equipped for D. you are equipped the more for life

答案是B。“在我看来,教育就是学习,你学习的越多,你为人生的准备就越充分。”根据“the more..., the more...”句型,故先排除D。题中的 equipped 是表达状态的形容词,应放在主语 you 之前。故选B。

第七节 最高级的句型

11-28 形容词、副词最高级比较的句型:“(the)最高级 + of/among/in + 范围”。

例] 改错:

Last year, my English teacher proved to be the more popular in our school.

[辽宁高考题]

答案是把 more 改为 most。“去年,我们的英语教师被证明是我们学校最受欢迎的老师。”most + 多音节形容词 popular, 表示其

the tallest

among...

最高级,符合句意。

[例] John has three sisters. Mary is the _____ of the three. 全国高考题

A. most cleverest B. more clever C. cleverest D. cleverer

答案是 C。“约翰有三个姐妹,其中玛丽最聪明。”

温馨提示

若“范围”是与主语同范畴的词,则用 of 或 among,如本句中的 Mary 与 of(或 among) the three sisters;若为不同范畴的词,则常用 in 等,如:本句可改为 Mary is the cleverest in her class. 句中 Mary 与 class 是不同范畴的词,用 in(不用 of 或 among)。

11-29 可用形容词、副词的比较级形式表示最高级意义,主要方法有二:用“否定词+比较级”,或用“than anybody else/than anything else/than any other+单词可数名词/than(all) the other+复数可数名词”。

关键是把被比的多个事物分成两类来进行比较。

[例] —Did you enjoy yourself at the party?

—Yes. I've never been to _____ one before. [四川高考题]

A. a more excited B. the most excited C. a more exciting D. the most exciting

答案是 C。“在晚会上你玩得愉快吗?”“是呀,我以前从未参加过更令人兴奋的晚会”。此处“a+比较级+单数可数名词”(省略了 than this one)用于否定句中,表示最高级含义 This is the most exciting one I've ever been to. 修饰 party 应用 exciting“令人激动的”,表示主动意味,而不用 excited“感到激动的”。故选 C。

[例] Your story is perfect; I've never heard _____ before.

A. the better one B. the best one C. a better one D. a good one

答案是 C。“你的故事很完美,我以前从未听过更好的故事”。a better one 后省略了 than this one。此种比较级用于否定句时,表示最高级的意义。即“这是我听过的最好的故事”。

[例] Jimmy is the oldest boy and is taller than _____ boy in the class. 全国高考题

A. the other B. any other C. each D. all

答案是 B。“吉米年龄最大,而且他比班里任何男生的个子都高。”any other 排除其他一切,即是最高的,全句相当于 Jimmy is the oldest boy and the tallest boy in the class.

第八节 同级别形容词和同级别副词的辨析要注意的几个问题

例] It is _____ any wonder that his friend doesn't like watching television much.

- A. no B. such C. nearly D. hardly [广东高考题]

答案是 D。“他的朋友不喜欢看电视几乎不足为奇了。”句中的 any 具有否定意义的暗示,因此可排除 B 和 C, no 要直接放在名词前,要说 no wonder(相当于 not any wonder),而 hardly 具有否定意义,意为“几乎不”,可以与 any 连用,符合句型结构及句意。

例] I used to earn _____ than a pound a week when I first started work. [陕西高考题]

- A. a little B. a few C. fewer D. less

答案是 D。“我刚开始工作时,曾每周挣不到一英镑。”than 常见的习语有 more than, less than, fewer than 等。由 earn a pound a week 可知说话人在谈论“钱”。由于英语中 money 为不可数名词,应用 less than 修饰。故选 D。

例] 改错: At night, I was sometimes very tired to do my homework. [江西高考题]

答案是 very 改为 too。“晚上,我有时太疲劳了而不能做家庭作业。”too...to... 为固定句型。

例] Quite a few people used to believe that disaster _____ if a mirror was broken.

- A. was sure of striking B. was sure of having struck [海南高考题]
C. was sure to be struck D. was sure to strike

答案是 D。“相当多的人过去认为如果镜子被打破一定会有大灾难。”be sure of doing 意为“确信要做……”,它的主语一般是人。因空格前的主语为 disaster,所以可以排除 A 和 B。而 be sure to do 的主语可以是人也可以是物,意为“一定会……”;又因 strike 应为 disaster 的主动行为,所以选 D。

11-31 排除汉语习惯思维的影响。

英语的形容词、副词有自己固定表达式,如按汉语的思维方式,反而出错。

例] Come and see me whenever _____. [北京高考题]

- A. you are convenient B. you will be convenient
C. it is convenient to you D. it will be convenient to you

答案是 C。“请你随时方便随时来看我。”convenient 意为“方便的,合适的”,一般用来修饰或说明事物,显示它们对人们是方便的。A 和 B 项的主语为人,为汉语式的思维,是不正确的表达。又因 whenever 所引起的是时间状语从句,不应使用将来时而应使用一般现在时。故选 C。

11-32 注意近义形容词(副词)之间用法上的细微差别。

例] Letterboxes are much more _____ in the UK than in the US, where most people have a mailbox instead. [浙江高考题]

- A. common B. normal C. ordinary D. usual

答案是 A。“信箱在英国比在美国更普遍,在美国大多数人都有一个邮箱。”common 意为“普遍的;普通的”,强调常发生,人员多,地点广,符合语境。比较: normal“正常的”;ordinary“一般的”;usual“通常的”。

11-33 注意在具体语境中形容词(副词)之间用法上细微差别。

[例] When we plan our vacation, mother often offers _____ suggestions.

- A. careful B. practical C. effective D. acceptable

答案是 B。“当我们安排度假时,母亲常提出实用的建议。”题干中 mother 一词应引起足够注意,在孩子们眼中,母亲永远是有经验的,可信任的,可依赖的。因此无论什么时候,孩子们安排度假时,母亲提出的建议总是“实际的,实用的”。本题反映有时试题的语言情景就体现在一两个关键词上。阅读题干不能囫囵吞枣,不能只注意语法和结构,要从题干本身去发掘语言情景。所谓情感等“其他的能力”不是高深莫测、虚无缥缈的,更不是游离于语言之外,而是蕴藏在语言本身之中的。



即学即用

I. 单项填空

- All the people _____ at the party were his supporters.
A. present B. thankful C. interested D. important
- It is generally believed that teaching is _____ it is a science.
A. an art much as B. much an art as C. as an art much as D. as much an art as
- Allen had to call a taxi because the box was _____ to carry all the way home.
A. much too heavy B. too much heavy C. heavy too much D. too heavy much
- After supper she would sit down by the fire, sometimes for _____ an hour, thinking of her young and happy days.
A. as long as B. as soon as C. as much as D. as many as
- That doesn't sound very frightening, Paul. I've seen _____. What did you like most about the film?
A. better B. worse C. best D. worst
- The more I think about him, the more reasons I find for loving him _____. I did.
A. as much as B. as long as C. as soon as D. as far as
- The number of people present at the concert was _____ than expected. There were many tickets left.
A. much smaller B. much more C. much larger D. many more
- John Smith, a successful businessman, has a _____ car.

- A. large German white B. large white German
C. white large German D. German large white
9. This _____ girl is Linda's cousin. [北京高考题]
A. pretty little Spanish B. Spanish little pretty
C. Spanish pretty little D. little pretty Spanish
10. Everyone was on time for the meeting — _____ Chris, who's usually ten minutes late for everything. [湖南高考题]
A. but B. only C. even D. yet
11. If you can't come tomorrow, we'll _____ have to hold the meeting next week.
A. yet B. even C. rather D. just [全国高考题]
12. —Have you been to New Zealand?
—No, I'd like to, _____. [山东高考题]
A. too B. though C. yet D. either
13. _____, the more expensive the camera, the better its quality. [全国高考题]
A. General speaking B. Speaking general
C. Generally speaking D. Speaking generally
14. —What a nice fire you have in your fireplace!
—During the winter I like my house _____. [上海高考题]
A. warmly and comfortably B. warm and comfortable
C. warm and comfortably D. warmly and comfortable
15. Of the two shirts, I'd like to choose _____ one. [全国高考题]
A. the less expensive B. the most expensive C. less expensive D. most expensive
16. Green products are becoming more and more popular because they are environmentally _____. [福建高考题]
A. friendly B. various C. common D. changeable
17. Fitness is important in sport, but of at least _____ importance are skills. [天津高考题]
A. fair B. reasonable C. equal D. proper
18. Small cars are _____ of fuel, so they have more appeal for consumers. [广东高考题]
A. free B. short C. typical D. economical
19. The performer was waving his stick in the street and it _____ missed the child standing nearby. [上海高考题]
A. narrowly B. nearly C. hardly D. closely
20. Tom sounds very much _____ in the job, but I'm not sure whether he can manage it.
A. interested B. interesting C. interestingly D. interestedly [安徽高考题]
21. I don't think this film is by far the most boring. I have seen _____. [江西高考题]
A. better B. worse C. the best D. the worst
22. Some experts think that language learning is much _____ for children as their tongues

are more flexible.

[上海高考题]

A. easy B. easier C. easily D. more easily

23. I don't care about the good salary offered by the company. What I need is a (n) _____ position. [上海高考题]

A. creating B. awarding C. challenging D. competing

24. If it is quite _____ to you, I will visit you next Tuesday.

A. convenient B. fair C. easy D. comfortable

25. Mr. Smith used to smoke _____ but he has given it up.

A. seriously B. heavily C. badly D. hardly

26. I don't mind picking up your things from the store. _____, the walk will do me good. [全国高考题]

A. Sooner or later B. Still C. In time D. Besides

27. Most people on this island are recreational fishers, and _____, fishing forms an actual part of their leisure time. [上海高考题]

A. accidentally B. purposefully C. obviously D. formally

28. John is very lazy. He falls _____ behind in his studies.

A. very B. far C. more D. still

29. That his only son was killed in the air crash was a _____ blow to the old man.

A. heavy B. broad C. plain D. main [上海高考题]

II. 单词拼写

1. The German battleship Bismarck, the _____ (强大) warship in the world, was moving out into the Atlantic Ocean. [全国高考题]

2. Birgitta and Allan live in Sweden, a country where everyone is expected to live an _____ (有秩) life. [全国高考题]

3. According to one U. S. study, women are _____ (诚实) than men, and honesty increases as we get older. [全国高考题]

4. The students were listening to the teacher _____ (专心).

5. Rice is grown in China, Japan and other _____ (亚洲) countries.

6. Bill has a large collection of _____ (外国) stamps.

7. Don't be frightened by the television camera. Just speak n _____.

8. I am pleased that he g _____ accepted our invitation.

9. Uncle Ben will also come back for Christmas. I'm sure we'll have a w _____ time together. [全国高考题]

10. Playing football not only makes us grow up t _____ and s _____ but also gives us a sense of fair play and team spirit. [全国高考题]

11. Do you know the _____ (平均) monthly rainfall in this area? [全国高考题]

12. Sleep is _____ (必要) to health. [全国高考题]

13. They lived in London until quite _____ (最近).
 14. She looks _____ (面熟) to me, but I don't remember her name.



点石成金

I. 单项填空

1. A 根据句意以及短语 (be) present at (出席; 到场)。
 有些程度副词, 如 as, so, that, too, how 等有一种具有相同语序的用法, 即“副词 + 形容词 + a(n) + 名词”。
2. 程度副词 much 应放在所修饰的形容词 heavy 之前, 故排除 C 和 D 项。too much 后只可跟不可数名词, 不跟其他词, 故 B 项不对。much too 修饰形容词和副词的原级。
3. as long as 表示“长达”。因动词 sit 为延续性动词, 搭配 as long as an hour 最为合适。
4. B 形容词需用比较级 worse, 表示“还看过比这部更糟的电影……”。
5. 应用 as much as 表示“爱”的程度上“尽可能地多”。
6. A 句子的主语是 the number, 而并非 people, 应用 small 或 large 的比较级来修饰, 故不用 more。从后句的意思可推出: 出席音乐会的人比原计划少, 而不是多。
7. B. large (特征) white (颜色) German (类属)。
8. A. pretty (描绘) + little (特征) + Spanish (类属)。
9. C 破折号引出一个需要强调的内容“甚至就连 Chris……”。even 作副词, 可用于表示意外的词语前以加强语气。
10. D just 可用来加强语气, 作“只好(得)”解, 符合语境。
11. B 由 no 可知, 应答者没有去过 New Zealand, 这样与“想去 New Zealand”构成意义上的转折, 应用副词 (常置于句末) though (“不过、可是”)。
12. C 短语 generally speaking 为固定结构, 用作插入成分, 表示“一般说来”, 符合语境。
13. B like 可表示习惯, 应用形容词作宾语补足语, 即“冬季里我喜欢让自己的房子温暖舒适 (故壁炉里的火才旺)”。
14. A 在两个人或物的比较中, 用 of the two... 的结构, 要在比较级前加定冠词 the。
15. A environmentally (副词) friendly (形容词) 表示“环保的”, 为“绿色产品越来越受欢迎”的原因。比较: various “多种多样的”; common “常见的; 普通的; 共同的”; changeable “可变化的”。
16. C equal 意为“相等的, 同等的”, 符合句意。比较: fair “公正的”; reasonable “合理的”; proper “合适的”。
17. D 本句是: 小车很省燃料, 也就是说“很经济”。
18. A narrowly missed 表示“差点, 险些”, 符合语境“差点打中了”。

sound 意为“听起来”,是系动词,后要接形容词 interested in (“对……感兴趣”)作表语,符合句意。

后句为 I have seen a worse one than this one 的省略,“比这更乏味的”。

有个平行结构,说明两处都是比较级,并符合句意。

不在乎公司所给的薪水,暗示所需要的一个职位本身应 challenging“具有挑战性的”。故选 C 项。

be convenient to sb. 表示“对于某人方便”,符合句意。比较:fair“公平的”;easy“容易的”;comfortable“舒服的”。

形容烟瘾大,用 heavily。而 smoke badly 则表示“冒烟厉害”。

两个句子为递进关系,后者做补充说明。只有 besides(意为“再说;另外;此外”),可以表示递进、补充。

根据句意应用 obviously“显而易见地”作评注性状语。accidentally(偶然地);purposefully(故意地);formally(正式地)不合语境。

短语 fall far behind 意为“远远落后于”,符合全句意义。

heavy 可形容“(力量、数量或程度上)异常大的”,符合此处语境“沉重的打击”。

II. 单词拼写

1. most powerful 2. orderly 3. more truthful 4. attentively 5. Asian 6. foreign
7. naturally 8. gladly 9. wonderful 10. tall; strong 11. average/ mean
12. necessary / essential / indispensable 13. recently/ lately 14. familiar

第12章

代 词

高考热点

纵观历年各地高考试题,在单项题中代词一直是一个非常重要的考点,主要涉及对不定代词、替代词(it, that, (the) one(s), those)及it的用法的考查,而人称代词、物主动词、反身代词等主要出现在短文改错中(有时不光涉及相关的语法知识和固定搭配,还涉及短文行文逻辑上指代错误)。

既然代词是必考内容,我们不能以为它看似简单而掉以轻心。我们务必认真对待。在整体把握各类代词的基本用法的基础上,必须重点掌握不定代词的用法和替代词的用法,尤其要注意的是在具体的语境中辨别它们。

第一节 代词的概念及分类

12-1 代词是代替名词的词。

例] His camera is more expensive than _____.

A. hers B. her C. it D. its [全国高考题]

答案是 A。“他的相机比她的相机贵”。从句中的“hers”指“her camera”代替了主句中的名词“camera”。

12-2 英语的代词按照其不同的含义与作用可分为9类。人称代词、物主动词、反身代词、指示代词、相互代词、不定代词、疑问代词、连接代词和关系代词。

例] The doctor advised Vera strongly that she should take a holiday, but _____ didn't help.

[全国高考题] 227

- A. it B. she C. which D. he

答案是 A。“医生强烈地建议维柯度假,但是这却没有任何的作用。”but 连接表示转折的并列分句,应用人称代词 it 用来代替“医生强烈地建议 Vera 度假”这件事。故排除 B、D。如去掉 but, 应该选 C。

[例] You will find as you read this book that you just can't keep some of these stories to _____. You will want to share them with a friend. [湖南高考题]

- A. itself B. yourself C. himself D. themselves

答案是 B。“当你读这本书的时候,你会发觉自己会情不自禁地要把其中的一些内容告诉别人。你想与朋友分享他们。”反身代词 yourself 作介词 to 宾语,用于 keep sth. to oneself 结构中,应与主语 you 一致。

[例] —Which driver was to blame?

—Why, _____! It was the child's fault, clear and simple. He suddenly came out between two parked cars. [北京高考题]

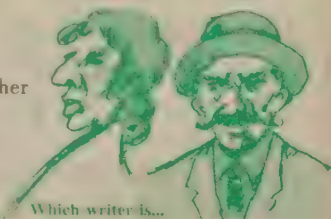
- A. both B. each C. either D. neither

答案是 D。“要怪哪个驾驶员?”“很清楚,是那个孩子的错,他突然从两辆停着的车之间跑了出来。”由答语的后部分可知“两个驾驶员都没有责任(过错)”,应用不定代词 neither 作主语,其后省略 was to blame。故选 D。

[例] _____ writer is better known in China, Charles Dickens or Mark Twain? [全国高考题]

- A. Which B. What C. Either D. Whether

答案是 A。“在中国哪一位作家更出名,查理·狄更斯还是马克·吐温?”这是一个由疑问代词引导的特殊疑问句,可排除 C、D。而“what”表示“什么样的”,与句意不符,应排除 B。



[例] In the dark street, there wasn't a single person she could turn for help. [全国高考题]

- A. that B. who C. from whom D. to whom

答案是 D。“在这漆黑的街上,连一个她可以求助帮忙的人都没有。”这是一个含有由“介词+关系代词”引导的定语从句的复合句,在定语从句中动词“turn”为不及物动词,得与介词 to 连用。whom 为关系代词,是介词“to”的宾语。

第二节 人称代词

12-3 人称代词主要是指人的代词。人称代词有人称、数和格的变化。

人 称 格	单 数		复 数	
	主 格	宾 格	主 格	宾 格
第一人称	I	me	we	us

人 称	数		数	
	单数		复数	
格	主格	宾格	主格	宾格
第二人称	you	you	you	you
第三人称	he	him	they	them
	she	her		
	it	it		

12-4 主格代词常作主语,宾格代词常作动词或介词的宾语。

例] I intended to compare notes with a friend, but unfortunately _____ couldn't spare me even one minute.

A. they B. one C. who D. it

答案是 A。“我原打算跟一个朋友谈谈,但不幸的是,他们甚至一分钟时间都匀不出给我。”句中的 but, 表示该句前后为并列句, 故排除 C。句子的主语是人(挤时间), 故排除 D。应用 they 表示特指, 暗示我的朋友不止一个。one 指朋友中某一个人一点时间都抽不出来, 那么还可同其他人谈, 因此也与语境不符合。故选 A。

例] Neither nor _____ liked the idea of going on foot.

A. him; me B. her; we C. I; them D. she; I

答案是 D。“她和我都不喜欢步行去。”“neither... nor”表示“既不...也不”, 作关联词用时, 应连接相同的成分。此句应连接两个主语, 因此用主格代词, 故排除 A、B、C。

12-5 宾格代词有时可代替主格代词。

① 在比较状语从句中, 在不引起误解的前提下, 有时用宾格代词代替主格代词(尤其是其后跟有同位语“all”时)。

例] He is taller than I (或 me). “他比我高。”

He is taller than us all. “他比我们都高。”

温馨提示

若可能引起误解, 就不能用宾格代替主格。如:

例] He loves you more than I. “他爱你胜过我爱你。”

例] He loves you more than me. “他爱你胜过爱我。”

② 在情景对话中, 当省去谓语时(句中不用谓语动词)。

例] —Who can drive a bus? —Me. “谁能开公共汽车?” “我能”。

[例] —I want to be at peace with all here. —Me, too. “我想与这里的所有人都和睦相处。”“我也是。”

温馨提示

如果带谓语,就得用主格,而说 I can. 和 I do, too / So do I.

③ 表示惊奇、猜疑、反问、不满、厌烦等情绪!

[例] —Susan, go and join your sister cleaning the yard.

—Why? John is sitting there doing nothing.

A. him B. he C. I D. me

答案是 D。“苏珊,去和你妹妹一起打扫院子。”“为什么是我呀?约翰坐在那里什么也不干。”

Why me? 表示一种不满的情绪,也可认为是 Why do you ask me to do that? 的省略式。



④ 用作表语时,口语中常用宾语。

[例] —Who is there? —It's me. “谁在那里?”“是我。”

“me”是第一人称 I 的宾格,口语中用作表语。

温馨提示

若在强调句中,则常保持原来的形式(尤其是有可能引起误解时)。

[例] It was her that I saw in the street. “我在大街看到的是她。”

[例] It is he that teaches us. “是他教我们。”

[例] It is us that he teaches. “他教的是我们。”

12-6 三个人称的代词同时出现时,其单数人称排列顺序一般是“2→3→1”(与汉语顺序“我、你、他”不同);复数人称排列顺序一般为“1→2→3”(与汉语顺序相同;我们、你们、他们)。

[例] _____ all enjoy music.

A. I, you and she B. She, you and I C. You, she and I D. I, you and she

答案是 C。“我、你、她都喜欢音乐。”

温馨提示

在承担责任、承认错误、检讨工作时,排列顺序为“1→2→3”。

[例] I and she are to blame for the accident. “这个事故怪我和她。”

12-7 常用 she 代替 country, ship, car, nature, moon 等。有时用 he/she 代替 it 指动物。

[例] The moon is shining brightly tonight. _____ is like a round silvery plate.

A. Which B. He C. This D. She

答案是D。“今夜月光明亮,她好像是一个银色的圆盘。”句中“she”指代“moon”。

[例] The elephant is proud of himself, for _____ has a big and strong body.

A. she B. he C. which D. that

答案是B。“大象很骄傲,因为他有庞大强壮的身体。”句中“he”指代“elephant”,与 himself 一致。

第三节 it 的用法

12-8 it 用作人称代词,代替事物。

① 代替刚提到的过的一件事情,既可以指一个具体的东西,也可以指前面所谈的事情或情况。

[例] I was disappointed with the film. I had expected _____ to be much better.

A. that B. this C. one D. it [全国高考题]

答案是D。“我对这部电影很失望。我原指望它要好得多。”that 指上文所提到的事;this 指下文要叙述的事;one 泛指任何一个,故排除前三项。应用 it 指上文中的名词“film”。

[例] Tom's mother kept telling him that he should work harder, but _____ didn't help.

A. he B. which C. she D. it [全国高考题]

答案是D。“汤姆的母亲一再告诉汤姆他应该更加努力地学习,但这却没有丝毫的作用。”“it”为人称代词,代替上文整个句子的内容,即:“母亲一再告诉汤姆应该努力学习”这件事。句中有并列连词 but,不能用 which 引导非限制性定语从句。

[例] The Parkers bought a new house but _____ will need a lot of work before they can move in.

A. they B. it C. one D. which

答案是B。“帕克家买了新房子,但他们入住前,还需要做大量工作。”一般来说,人们在搬入新房之前,新房(而不是人)总要进行一番装修工作。空格处的代词应指 the new house,故选 it。

② 习惯上答语常用 it 代替指示代词 that/that(复数 these 或 those 用 they 代替),而不用 that/this。

[例] —What's that? —It's a silkworm. “那是什么?”“是蚕。”

起指示代词的作用,指一个人或事物,it 所指的是东西不很具体。

12-9 it 代替“人”。

it 常代替无法或没有必要分性别的人;有时指某个动作的人或心里所指的人。

[例] The baby cried because it was hungry. “婴儿哭了是因为饿了。”

婴儿习惯不分性别。

[例] Someone is ringing the doorbell. Go and see _____.

A. who is he B. who he is C. who is it D. who it is

答案是 D。“有人在按门铃,去看看是谁”“按门铃”的人,现在无法知道其性别,不能用“he”,可排除 A 和 B,由于作 see 的宾语从句,应用陈述句语序。故选 D。

12-10 指距离、时间、季节、天气、气候等自然现象(明暗等)、指环境、情况等。

[例] It's noon now. “现在是正中午了。”(时间)

[例] It's low tide. “落潮了。”(自然现象)

[例] It's about half an hour's walk from here to the hospital. “从这里到医院需走半个小时的路程。”(距离)

[例] It's sunny today. “今天天气晴朗。”(天气)

[例] It is snowing here now. “这里现在正在下雪。”(自然现象)

[例] It was very quiet (noisy) at the moment. “当时非常安静(吵闹)”(环境)

12-11 it 常用作形式主语。

① 代替作真正主语的动词不定式。

[例] 改错:And I came to understand that was not easy to earn money...

答案是在 that 后加 it。“我明白了挣钱不容易……。”它在 that 引导的宾语从句中作主语,代替动词不定式 to earn money。

[例] Is _____ possible to fly to the moon in a spaceship?

A. now B. man C. that D. it

答案是 D。“乘坐宇宙飞船飞往月球是可能的吗?”根据句意,句子的真正主语是 to fly to the moon,但由于该短语太长,故用“it”作其形式主语,从而排除其他三项。

② 代替作真正主语的动名词,常用于“It's no use/good / a waste doing sth.”句型中。

[例] It's no good looking up every new word that you come across while reading. “阅读时碰到一个生词查一个是不好的。”

[例] It's a waste spending so much money drinking and eating. “花那么多的钱吃喝是一种浪费。”

③ 代替主语从句。

[例] _____ is our belief that improvements in health care will lead to a stronger, more prosperous economy.

A. As B. That C. This D. It

答案是 D。“我们相信医疗保健的改善会导致一个更强、更加繁荣的经济。”应用 it 作形式主语,代替后面的主语从句(“…是我们的信念”)。其他几个选项

的词一般都不需要做形式主语或宾语。

温馨提示

不要与 there is no... 表示“没有...”结构混淆。

【例】Since you have repaired my TV set, _____ is no need for me to buy a new one.

A. it B. there C. this D. that [上海高考题]

答案是B。“既然你修好了我的电视机,我就没有必要买一个新的了。”

“there be no need for sb. to do sth.”为一个固定句型,意为“某人无必要去做某事”。故选B。

【例】The Foreign Minister said, “_____ our hope that the two sides will work towards peace.”

A. This is B. There is C. That is D. It is [北京高考题]

答案是D。“外长说,‘双方朝和平方向努力是我们的希望。’”引语中的it放在句首作形式主语(不能用this或that引导),真正的主语为that引导的从句。B项“有我们的希望”和从句搭配意义不通顺。故选D。

12-12 it 常用作形式宾语。

高中英语语法

① 代替作复合宾语中的宾语的不定式、V-ing 形式或宾语从句。

【例】The chairman thought _____ necessary to invite Professor Smith to speak at the meeting.

A. that B. it C. this D. him [全国高考题]

答案是B。“主席认为邀请史密斯教授在会上发言是有必要的。”it用作形式宾语,代替后面的真正宾语不定式to invite Professor Smith to speak at the meeting,符合句意。此句式为:think/ consider/ feel/ suppose/ believe etc. + it + adj. + (for sb.) to do something 把真正的宾语(不定式短语)置于宾补之后,避免头重脚轻。

【例】As the busiest woman in Norton, she made _____ her duty to look after all the other people's affairs in that town.

A. this B. that C. one D. it [湖南高考题]

答案是D。“作为诺顿最忙的女性,她把关照镇上所有其他人的事当作自己的职责。”it作形式宾语,构成“make + it + 形容词或名词(作宾补) + 不定式短语(真正宾语)”结构,从而使句子保持平衡。

② 在 appreciate“欣赏”、dislike“不喜欢”、hate“恨”、like“喜欢”、love“爱”等表示心理方面的谓语动词后面,常用it作形式宾语,引导出一个状语或if/when从句,对it的内容进行解释说明。这种it形式宾语不明确表示具体事物,或叫模糊的情形,但说话人双方心里都知道。

【例】I hate _____ when people talk with their mouths full.

A. it B. that C. there D. them [全国高考题]

答案是 A。“我讨厌人们满嘴食物讲话。”it 无具体意思, hate 内容应是从句内容。

[例] I'd appreciate _____ if you would like to teach me how to use the computer.

A. that B. it C. this D. you 山东高考题

答案是 B。“如果你愿意教我怎样使用电脑,我将感激不尽。”it 是形式宾语,它指代的是 if 引导条件状语从句。

[例] I like _____ in the autumn when the weather is clear and bright.

A. this B. that C. it D. one

答案是 C。“我喜欢秋天晴空万里、阳光灿烂的天气。”like 是及物动词,需要宾语。此处 it 指模糊的情形或环境,无具体指代。

温馨提示

it 这种无具体指代(表示说话人和听话人双方心照不宣)有时也用作主语或表语。

[例] —Where does it hurt? —It hurts here, just under the stomach. “哪里痛?”“这里痛,就在胃的下面。”

两句句中的 it 都无法明确指代具体事物,并都作主语。

[例] That's it. “那正是我想知道的。”

相当于 That's something I want to know.

[例] That must be it. “准是那么回事。”

③ it 同某些动词结合可以组成习惯短语或句型结构,而 it 此时作(形式)宾语。

[例] — When shall we start?

— Let's _____ it 8:30. Is that all right?

A. set B. meet C. make D. take 北京高考题

答案是 C。“我们什么时候开始?”“咱们把时间定在八点半,可以吗?”几个选项中只有 make 可构成“make it + 时间”,表示“把时间定在某时”。故选 C。

[例] I take it that you wanted something else. “我认为你还想要些什么。”

take it(形式宾语) that(从句)...表示“猜想,认为...”

[例] We published it that we had finished the project ahead of time. “我们宣布我们提前完成了这项工程。”

publish it (形式宾语) that...(从句)表示“宣布...”

帮你归纳

take it easy. 别着急,慢慢来

go it alone 独自干

beat it 走开(滚开)

fight it out 决一雌雄

put it that... 表达/写到/说到...

come to it that 确保...

depend on it that 依靠...

have it that... 表明/坚持说...

it 用于强调句,其结构为:“it is/was + 被强调部分 + that...”[参见 22-18 至 22-20]

[例] Was _____ that I saw last night at the concert?

「全国高中」

- A. it you B. not you C. you D. that yourself

答案是 A。“昨天晚上我在音乐会上见到的人是你吗?”这是强调句型,其结构为“it + is/was + 强调的部分 + that + ...”。此句强调的是宾语,原句为 I saw you last night at the concert. 故用宾格代词“you”表示。“it”为形式主语,不可省略。

[例] It was not until 1920 _____ regular radio broadcasts began.

- A. while B. which C. that D. since

答案是 C。“直到 1920 年,定期的无线电广播才开始。”这是个强调句,强调的是时间状语“not until(1920)”,原句为 Regular radio broadcasts didn't begin until 1920.

第四节 物主代词

12-14 物主代词分形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词两种。多数名词性物主代词由“形容词性物主代词 + s”构成。

高中英语语法

数	人 类 别	形容词性 物主代词	名词性 物主代词
单数	第一人称	my	mine
	第二人称	your	yours
	第三人称	his	his
		her	hers
复数	第一人称	its	its
		our	ours
	第二人称	your	yours
	第三人称	their	theirs

12-15 形容词性物主代词作定语;名词性物主代词(=形容词性物主代词 + 名词)作主语、宾语和表语。

[例] Some of the stamps belong to me, while the rest are _____.

- A. him and her B. his and hers C. his and her D. him and hers

答案是 B。“有些邮票属于我的,而其余的是他和她的。”the rest 应指“其余的邮票”,其表语不应是人,故 A 与 D 应予以排除。作表语应使用名词性所有格(his and hers = his and her stamps),而不是形容词性所有格。故选 B。

[例] 改错:It is clear that your life in your country is quite different from me.

答案是把 me 改为 mine。“很清楚你在贵国的生活与我的大不相同。”应用 mine 代替 my life (in my country)。

[例] 改错:In our Greece unit, we have been learning about it's rich culture and long his-

logy.

[浙江高考题]

答案是把 *it's* 改为 *its*。“在我们关于希腊的单元里,我们一直在学习它的丰富的文化和悠久的历史。”*it's* 为 *it is* 的省略式,多表示“它是…”;而“它的”应用形容词性物主代词 *its*。

温馨提示

物主代词在句中与句子的主语在人称和数方面要保持一致(有时从上下文语境中可知)。

[例] 改错: The Smiths did his best to make me feel at home.

答案是把 *his* 改为 *their*。“史密斯夫妇尽量让我感到不拘束。”主语“the Smiths”非一个人,是“史密斯夫妇”或“史密斯全家人”,是复数概念,应用复数的物主代词 *their*。

12-16 名词性物主代词在双重所有格中用于介词 *of* 之后。

① 用于“*a (an, some, few) + 名词 + of + 名词性物主代词*”结构,表示“部分、其中之一”。

[例] I have read some books of his. “我读过他的一些书。”

② 用于“*this, that... + of + 名词性物主代词*”结构,表示“一种感情色彩”。

[例] Kate and her sister went on holiday with a cousin of _____.

[浙江高考题]

A. their B. theirs C. her D. hers

答案是 B。“凯特和她妹妹与她们的一位表兄一起去度假。”根据句意,应用名词性物主代词,可排除 A、C,因为 *their* 和 *her* 都为形容词性物主代词。另外,因主语是两个人,故名词性物主代词应用第三人称复数形式,故选 B。theirs = their cousins。

第五节 反身代词

12-17 反身代词有人称和数的变化。第一、二人称同“形容词性物主代词 + *self / selves*”构成;第三人称由“宾格代词 + *self / selves*”构成。

人 称	数	单 数	复 数
第一人称		myself	ourselves
第二人称		yourself	yourselves
第三人称		himself	themselves
		herself	
		itself	

12-18 反身代词常用作宾语、同位语,也可用作表语。

[例] Tom felt that he knew everybody's business better than they knew it _____.

A. themselves B. oneself C. itself D. himself [全国高考题]

答案是A。“汤姆觉得他了解每个人的事情比他们自己了解得更清楚。”反身代词作主语 they 的同位语,是第三人称复数,故排除B、C、D。

[例] 改错:I just smiled to me and thought, "What can I do?..."

答案是把 me 改为 myself。“我只是暗自发笑,想‘我能怎么办?’”myself 作介词 to 的宾语。

[例] —Who called me this morning when I was out?

—A man calling _____ Robert. [福建高考题]

A. him B. himself C. his D. 不填

答案是B。“当我上午外出时,谁给我打电话了?”“一个自称罗伯特的人”“call + 反身代词 + 名词”表示“自称...”,符合答语意;若用 him 作宾语,则指别人称他为罗伯特。

温馨提示

(1) 当动作对象为主语的本身时,宾语常用反身代词。

[例] 改错:At once I apologized and controlled me at my best till the dinner started.

[江苏高考题]

答案是把 me 改为 myself。“我立即道歉,最大限度地控制自己直到开席。”主语“I”控制的对象是自己本身,应用反身代词 myself。

(2) 反身代词常作 express, behave 等动词的宾语,构成固定用语。

[例] 改错:Soon I began to enjoy talking to myself on paper as I was learning to express me in simple English. [全国高考题]

答案是把 me 改为 myself。“不久当我在学习用简单英语表达自己的意思时,我就开始喜欢在纸上与自己谈话了。”express oneself 为固定习语,意为“(清楚地)表达自己的意思”。

[例] Tom, _____ yourself. Did you forget the school rules? [上海高考题]

A. behave B. believe C. perform D. conduct

答案是A。“汤姆,规矩点!你忘了校规吗?”behave yourself 意为“规矩点!”,与后面的提醒,意义一致。故选A。

帮你归纳

dress oneself “穿衣”; seat oneself “就座”; enjoy oneself “玩得高兴”; teach oneself... “自学...”; devote oneself to... “献身于...”等。

12-19 “介词 by / for / of / to + 反身代词”结构的用法区别。



① by oneself 单独、独自

[例] We did the experiment all by ourselves. “我们独自做实验。”

② for oneself 亲自

[例] You are free to decide for yourself who you are going out with. “你们可以随意由自己决定和谁一道出去。”

③ of oneself 自动

[例] The lamp went out of itself. “灯自动灭了。”

④ to oneself 独享、独有

[例] I can tell you that, but you must keep it to yourself. “我可以告诉你,但你必须保守秘密。”

第六节 指示代词

12-20 指示代词是表示空间上和时间内远近关系的词。有单数的 this 和 that、复数的 these 和 those、单复数都可用的 such 和 same。

① 指示代词不但有远近之分 (this/these 指离说话者较近的空间或时间; 而 that/those 指离说话者较远的空间和时间), 还有单复数之分 (this 和 that 为单数; 对应复数分别为 these 和 those)。

[例] 改错: Although this few words sound simple enough, they have clearly pointed out one of the causes of the population explosion. [广东高考题]

答案是把 this 改为 these。“虽然这寥寥几个字听起来够简单的了,但它们清楚地指出了引起人口爆炸的原因之一。”these 指上句中几个单词,为复数,也与主



句的主语 they 一致。

- ② this / these 常指后面要讲到的事物,而 that / those 则指前面讲过的事物(有时表示强调时,也可用 this / these 指前面讲到的事物)。

【例】—He was nearly drowned once.—When was _____?

—_____ was in 1998 when he was in middle school.

[北京高考题]

A. that; It B. this; This C. this; It D. that; This

答案是 A。“他有一次差点被溺死”“那是什么时候?”“是在 1998 年,当时他在上中学。”代词 that 可指第一人所说之事,而不用 this(可指下文要说之事)。指时间时应用 it(也可理解为强调结构中省略了的 that he was nearly drowned)而不用 this。故选 A。

- ③ such 作为指示代词,与名词连用表示“这样一个人或物”,“such...as”表示“像这样的...”,作定语或主语。

【例】She told us _____ story that we all forgot the time.

[全国高考题]

A. such an interesting B. such interesting
C. so an interesting D. a so an interesting

答案是 A。“她给我们讲了一个这样有趣的故事,使我们大家都忘了时间”。
意搭配:“such + a(n) 形容词 + 单数可数名词”与“so + 形容词 + a(n) + 单数可数名词”意思一样。

温馨提示

such 常位于 no 后,且不用冠词。

【例】As I know, there is _____ car in this neighborhood.

A. no such B. no a C. not such D. no such a

答案是 A。“据我所知,这个邻区没有这样的小车。”no 可等于 not a,因此不用冠词,且要放在 such 前。故选 A。

- ④ same 用作指示代词,之前须有定冠词“the”;可用作定语、主语、表语、宾语等。

【例】The word “write” has the same pronunciation _____ the word “right”.

A. of B. as C. to D. from

答案是 B。“‘write’ 这个词的发音和 ‘right’ 一词发音相同。”the same...as 为固定搭配,表示“与...相同”。故排除其他三项。

- ⑤ that/those 除了可表示“那一个/那些个”外,还常被用来代替前面已经提到过的名词,以避免重复。

【例】Few pleasures can equal _____ of a cool drink on a hot day.

[全国高考题]

A. some B. any C. that D. those

答案是 C。“在炎热的日子里没什么比喝一杯冷饮更快乐了。”根据句意,此处应用“单数”的代词 that 来代替上文所提到的“pleasures”以形成比较,故而排除

A、D。“any”表示“任何”,与句意不符,故排除 B。

[例] Equipped with modern facilities, today's libraries differ greatly from _____.

[上海高考题]

A. those of the past B. the past C. which of the past D. these past

答案是 A。“由于装备了现代设施,今天的图书馆和过去的图书馆非常不同了。”from 后应跟能表示图书馆的词语,故排除 B 和 D;又因 those 可用来指代一个复数名词 the libraries 以避免重复,而 which 无此功能,且如用从句,缺少谓语动词。故选 A。

12-21 在打电话用语中,表达第一、二人称宜用指示代词 this, that, 而不用人称代词 I 或 you。

[例] —Good morning. I'm ringing from the circulation department of the Daily Mirror to say...

— _____?

—A newspaper, dear lady. A famous newspaper.

[全国高考题]

A. What's that B. Who are you

答案是 A。“早上好,我从《每日镜报》的发行部打电话想...”“你是哪位?”“是一家报社,尊贵的夫人,是一家著名的报社。”在打电话时,询问对方是“什么人”时不能用 Who are you? 而要用 Who's that? 或 What's that?



[例] —Can I speak to Mr. Wang, please?

— _____

[全国高考题]

A. Who are you? B. I'm Wang. C. Speaking D. Are you John?

答案是 C。“请问我可以找王先生接电话吗?”“我就是。”汉语打电话中说“我是...”;英语中则用 speaking, 可视为 This is Mr. Wang speaking 或 It's Mr. Wang speaking 的省略。

帮你归纳

在习惯说法中 this 和 that 用法比较固定:

What's all this? 怎么回事呀? That's all right / OK. That's nothing. 没有关系。

That's that. 就这么定。 That's all. 就这些了。 That is... 也就是……。

第七节 相互代词

12-22 相互代词 each other 与 one another 都可表示“彼此、互相”,常可互换。one another 表示三个或更多个之间的相互关系(不能用于两者),常用于正式文体。而 each other 则既可用于表示两者之间又可用于表示多个之间的相互关系。

[例] The two sisters love each other. “这两姐妹相亲相爱。”

[例] They sat for two hours without talking to each other. (或: one another) “他们坐了两小时,彼此没说一句说。”

第八节 不定代词

12-23 不定代词是那些用来代替任何特定名词(或形容词)的代词。不定代词有名词和形容词的性质,并有可数和不可数之分。

some	someone	somebody	something	
一些,某个	某人	某人	某事(物)	
any	anyone	anybody	anything	
任何	任何人	任何人	任何事(物)	
every	everyone	everybody	everything	
每个	每人	每人,大家	一切,每件事(物)	
none	no one	nobody	nothing	
没人,没物	没人	没人	没事(物)	
each	one			
各个	一个			
both	either	neither		
二者	二者之一	二者都不		
other	another	others		
别的	另一个	其他那些		
all	many	few	much	little
所有的[二者以上]	许多[可数]	少数[可数]	许多[不可数]	少量[不可数]

[例] I had to buy _____ these books because I didn't know which one was the best.

A. both B. none C. neither D. all [上海高考题]

答案是D。“我不得不买下所有的这些书,因为我不知道哪本是最好的。”注意信息词 the best 表达的是三者及以上的概念,所以只有 none 和 all 可以考虑;再根据代词的使用规则 none 后面不可以接指示代词 these (需加 of, none 也不符合句意)。故选D项。

[例] It is easy to do the repair. _____ you need is a hammer and some nails. 天津高考题

A. Something B. All C. Both D. Everything

答案是B。“做这修理容易,你所需要的就是一把锤子和一些钉子。”all you need 中的 all 正是表明这一特定范围的“一切”,而并非 something “所需的一些东西”。everything 意为“每一样东西”,强调个体,显得无确定范围,不合题意。句子谓语是 is, 应排除C项。故选B。

12-24 不定代词 all、both、each 在句中可作主语、宾语、定语和同位语。作同位语时,位于单个实义动词之前、单个 be 动词之后或第一个助动词或情态动词之后;each 还可位于句末。



[例] There are two windows in the room. They _____ face south.

- A. all B. both C. each D. either

答案是 B。“屋里有两扇窗户,它们都朝南。”由前句提到“两”可排除 A。侧重“两者都”,应用 both(比 each 确切)作主语 they 的同位语,位于单个实义动词 face 之前。

[例] I don't know which book is the better, I shall read _____.

- A. all B. both C. each D. either

答案是 B。“我不知道哪本书更好,我要两本都读。”由于前句给出信息“the better”意指从两本书中“作选择”,故排除 A、D。此处强调两本都读,要选 both。both 在句中作动词 read 宾语。

[例] Do September and April have thirty days _____?

- A. all B. each C. every D. neither

答案是 B。“九月和四月各有 30 天吗?”根据句意,空白处是不定代词作主语的同位语,强调两者中的任意一个,要用 each,位于句尾。every 和 neither 都不能用作同位语,排除 C、D。all 和 every 用于三个(或以上)的人或物,排除 A、C。

温馨提示

在“all/both/each + of + the + 名词”结构中,“of”后面的“the”不可省略;若省去 of 时,all 和 both 后面的“the”可有可无。如:all/both/each of the students; both/all (the) students

12-25 总括代词 all/each/both/everybody/everything 等词与否定词 not 连用时,通常表示部分否定。

[例] Not all ants go out for food = All ants don't go out for food. “并非所有的蚂蚁都出去觅食。”(有的出去觅食,有的留在家里。)

[例] We haven't enough books for _____; some of you will have to share.

A. somebody B. anybody C. everybody D. nobody

答案是C。“我们没有足够的书提供给每个人,你们中的一些人将不得不共用。”由后部分可知前句为部分否定,即有的有,有的没有书,故用 not enough... for everybody。

12-26 总括代词 all/each/both/everybody/everything 的全部否定应改用否定代词 none, no one, nobody, neither, nothing 等。

[例] Of all the books on the desk, _____ is of any use for our study.

A. nothing B. no one C. neither D. none

答案是D。“在桌子上所有的书里,没有一本对我们的学习有用”。应用 none 对应 all 表示全部否定。而 neither 表示“两个都不”;nothing 脱离了特定的范围;no one 只能指人,均与语境不符。故选D。

[例] I invited Joe and Linda to dinner, but _____ of them came.

A. neither B. either C. none D. both

答案是A。“我邀请乔和琳达来吃饭,但他们两个都没有来。”题干中前半句指明了两个人,故首先排除 none,后半句与前半句之间有连词 but,表示意义转折,因此从句意得知“但是两个都没来”。故选A。

12-27 one 用于代替前面出现过的可数名词,它可有复数形式、所有格形式及反身代词形式。只有当 one 之前有形容词时,one 才可与 a/an 连用;可泛指“人们”,在重复 one 和 one's 的地方可用 he 和 his 来代替。

[例] We needed a new cupboard for the kitchen. So Peter made _____ from some wood we had. [北京高考题]

A. it B. one C. himself D. another

答案是B。“我们需要一新橱柜,所以彼得用我们有的一些木材做了一个。”应用 one 代替 a new cupboard,而非上句所提到的具体的同一事物,不能用 it。C 项离题意太远,D 项指“又”、“再”的意思,亦不可。

[例] One should take care of one's (或:his) health. “人们应注意自己的健康。”one's 或 his 都可使用,无意义差别。

温馨提示

(1) one 一般不与 a 连用,即使有后置定语 one 前也不用 a。但如有前置形容词修饰时,one 可与不定冠词 a 连用。

[例] Meeting my uncle after all these years was an unforgettable moment, I will always treasure.

A. that B. one C. it D. what

答案是 B。“这些年后遇见我的叔叔是一个难忘的时刻,一个我将永远珍惜的时刻。”如果逗号后为非限制性定语从句,关系代词应用 which,所以 A、C 和 D 项均不正确;one 可以用作同位语,指代前面的一个单数可数名词——a moment,而 I will always treasure 是 one 的定语从句(one 表示泛指“一个”,但不能用 a one)。故选 B。

[例] —Where is my blue shirt?

—It's in the washing machine. You have to wear _____ different one.

A. any B. the C. a D. other [安徽高考题]

答案是 C。“我的蓝衬衫哪里去了?”“在洗衣机里。你得换穿一件了。”one 前有形容词 different,应用 a,泛指不同的“一件”(即同类中一个)。

(2) 与 such 连用时,a 可前置于一前。

[例] The scientist is such a one as is admired by all of us. “这位科学家就是我们大家所敬慕的一个人。”

(3) ones 不能单独使用,总是和形容词连用或接后置定语。

[例] Cars do cause us some health problems—in fact far more serious _____ than mobile phones do.

A. one B. ones C. it D. those

答案是 B。“汽车的确引起我们的健康问题,一事实上比移动电话引起的问题严重得多。”ones 被用来代替前面已出现过的复数名词 problems,符合句意。故选 B。

[例] Mr. Zhang gave the textbooks to all the pupils except _____ who had.

A. the ones B. ones C. some D. the others

答案是 A。“张老师把课本发给所有的学生,那些已有课本的学生除外。”ones 指代前面的可数名词 pupils,但后面有 who 引导的限定性定语从句特指“那些有课本的学生”,故而要在其前面加“the”。

12-28 不定代词 one 指“同一类”(可数)中的一个;人称代词 it 指前面所提到的“那一个”(单数可数或不可数);指示代词 that 指上文(单数可数或不可数);指示代词 this 既可指上文也可指下文(单数可数或不可数)。



[例] I prefer a flat in Inverness to _____ in Perth, because I want to live near my Mom's.

[天津高考]

- A. one B. that C. it D. this

答案是 A。“我更希望在英弗里斯买一套房子,而不是在珀斯买一套,……”应用 one 指代前面的 a flat,即指代的是同名异物的可数名词,而不用 it(指的是同一物体)。故选 A。

[例] —Have you found the bike you lost yesterday?

—Yes, I've found _____ already.

- A. the one B. it C. that D. this

答案是 B。“你找到你昨天丢失的自行车了吗?”“是的,我已找到它了。”根据题意指上文提到的“the lost bike”,故故选 B。

[例] I'm moving to the countryside because the air there is much fresher than _____ in the city.

- A. ones B. one C. that D. those

答案是 C。“我要搬到农村住,因为那里的空气要比城市里的空气新鲜得多。”that 此处代替上文出现过的同类不可数名词 the air,不能用 one(代替可数名词,指同类中某一个)。

12-29 no one 只泛指“人”,后面不能与 of 介词短语连用,看做单数,与单数谓动词连用。none 指“人”或“物”皆可,可与介词短语连用,可与单数或复数谓动词连用。

[例] As we were asleep, _____ of us heard the sound.

- A. both B. none C. either D. any

答案是 B。“由于我们都睡着了,我们没有人听到这声音。”

[例] We couldn't eat in a restaurant because _____ of us had _____ money on us.

- A. all;no B. any;no C. none;any D. no one;any [全国高考题]

答案是 C。“我们不能在饭馆里吃饭,因为我们中没有人身上有钱。”

温馨提示

在回答“How many...? 或 How much...?”问句时,用 none 而不用 no one 或 nothing。

[例] —How many fish did you catch? “你钓了几条鱼?”

— None. “一条也没钓着。”

12-30 either 表示“两者中的任何一个”，与单数动词连用；neither 表示“两者中哪一个也不”，一般也是与单数动词连用。

[例] —Do you want tea or coffee?

— _____. I really don't mind.

[北京高考题]

A. Both B. None C. Either D. Neither

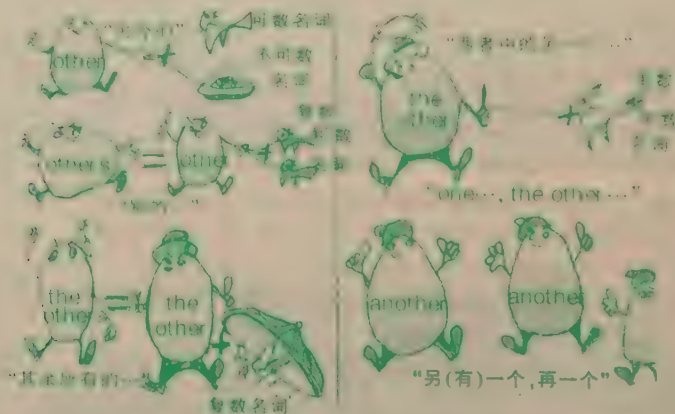
答案是 C。“你要茶还是咖啡？”“任意一种，我真的不在乎。”从答语的后部分可知，答语应为“(两者中)哪一样都行。”neither 表示“(两者)都不”。both 表示“(两者)都要”；但从上文的“or”可知，只应选其一。none 表示“(三者或三者以上)都不”。

[例] We asked John and Jerry, but _____ of them could offer a satisfactory explanation.

A. either B. none C. both D. neither [北京高考题]

答案是 D。“我们问了约翰和杰丽，但两人都没有提供令人满意的解释。”but 表示转折，提示后面的分句表示否定意义，故可排除表示肯定意义 A 和 C。故选 D 项 neither 指 John 和 Jerry“两者都不”。

12-31 other 泛指“另外的”，常与可数名词或不可数名词连用；“others”等于“other + 复数名词”，泛指“别的人或物”。“the other(+ 单数可数名词)”指“两者中的另一个”，常用“one... the other...”结构。“the others”等于“the other + 复数名词”，表示“其余所有的人或物”。another 指“另(又)一个”、“再一个”、“另外的任意一个”，用作代词或形容词。



[例] We had a picnic last term and it was a lot of fun, so let's have _____ one this month.

[天津高考题]

A. the other B. some C. another D. other

答案是 C。“上学期我们野餐了，很有乐趣，这个月咱们再野餐一次吧。”another

指多个东西中的另一个,符合语境。some 和 other 都不与此处 one 单独搭配使用;而 the other 表示“(两个中的)另一个”(野餐不仅仅是两次),故选 C。

[例] No progress was made in the trade talk as neither side would accept the conditions of _____.

- A. others B. the other C. either D. another

答案是 B。“贸易谈判没有取得进展,因为双方都不接受对方的条件。”neither 暗示贸易谈判只有两方,应用 the other, 为 the other side(“对方”特指两者中的另外一个)的省略,也符合句意。

[例] I got the story from Tom and _____ people who had worked with him.

- A. every other B. many others C. some other D. other than

答案是 C。“我是从汤姆以及和他一起工作过的其他一些人那里了解到的。”every other 修饰单数可数名词,而 people 为复数,故排除 A 项;others 不能修饰名词,排除 B 项;D 项的 other than 表示“除了;决不是”,离题意相去甚远。some other people 则意为“一些别的人”,符合此处的语境。

温馨提示

(1) “another + 数词 + 名词复数”,表示“另外几个…;又/再多少…”。

[例] Shanghai is really a fascinating city and we've decided to stay for _____ two weeks.

- A. another B. other C. the other D. other's

答案是 A。“上海真是一个迷人的城市,我们已经决定再呆两周。”another 放在基数词之前,在此等于 two more weeks。但 more 一般放在基数词之后。故选 A。

(2) another day 意为“改日”,the other day 意为“几天前”。

[例] I think he's just going to deal with this problem _____ day.

- A. next B. other C. following D. another

答案是 D。“我认为他将改天处理这个问题。”根据句意用 another day 表示“改天”。故选 D。

(3) else 常位于不定代词后,表示“其他的”。

[例] I don't think we've met before. You're taking me for _____.

- A. some other B. someone else C. other person D. one other

答案是 B。“我想我们以前没有见过面,你把我当成另外某个人了。”可用 someone else; another one/ some other person; another person/ another。故选 B。

(4) the rest 既可表示可数名词中的“余下的人或事”(谓语动词用复数),也指不可数名词中的或一个事物中的“剩余部分”(谓语动词用单数)。

[例] I have done much of the work. Could you please finish _____ in two days?

- A. the rest B. the other C. another D. the others

答案是 A。“我已经做了大部分工作,你能在两天之内完成剩下的工作吗?”
本句 the work 为不可数名词,只能用 the rest (of the work) 表示,而不能用 another, the other, the others (多指代可数名词) 故选 A 项。

12-32 some 表示“一些”、“某些”、“某个”, any 表示“一些”、“任何”, 都可修饰可数或不可数名词, 都可作主语、宾语或定语等。some 常用于肯定句; some 用于疑问句时表示期望得到对方肯定答复或表示建议。any 常用于否定句、疑问句和条件从句; any 用于肯定句时表示“任何的”。

[例] —Your coffee smells great!

—It's from Mexico. Would you like _____?

[安徽高考题]

A. it B. some C. this D. little

答案是 B。“你的咖啡闻起来棒极了!”“是墨西哥的。你来点吗?” some 用于表示建议的疑问句, 相当于祈使句 please have some (但不是全部, 不能用 it)。故选 B。

[例] —Which of the three ways shall I take to the village?

—_____ way as you please.

A. Each B. Every C. Any D. Either

答案是 C。“三条路我从哪一条到村子?”“任何一条, 随你的便。”应用 any, 指三者或三者以上中的任何一个。

[例] We had three sets of garden tools and we seemed to have no use for _____.

A. none B. either C. any D. each [浙江高考题]

答案是 C。“我们有三套园艺工具, (三个中) 没有一个我们管用。”根据前句中的 three 后面不能用 either (指两者)。后句已经用否定词 no, 也不用 none (表示否定) 或 each (用作不定代词或形容词时, 一般不与否定词连用)。只有 any 指“(三个或三个以上的人或物) 任何的”, 多用于否定句、疑问句中, 符合句意。

12-33 表“许多”时, 用“many / many more / a (large) number of + 可数名词复数”, “much / much more / a (great) deal of + 不可数名词”, “a lot of / lots of / plenty of + 不可数名词或可数名词的复数”。



[例] I need _____ cloth, for I'm going to make _____ clothes.

- A. a lot of; many B. much; much C. many; many D. many; a lot of

答案是A。“我需要大量的布料,因为我要做许多衣服。”布料,为不可数名词,故而排除C、D。第二个空白后的名词为复数名词,不能用much修饰,故排除。

12-34 表“少许”时,few和little趋于否定,而a few和a little表示肯定。(a) few代替或修饰可数名词的复数,与复数名词配用;(a) little代替或修饰不可数名词,与单数名词配用。它们在句中可作主语、宾语、定语等。



[例] There's _____ cooking oil left in the house. Would you go to the corner store and get _____? [北京高考题]

- A. little; some B. little; any C. a little; some D. a little; any

答案是A。“家里没有多少油了。你去拐弯处那家商店买些,好吗?”由句意可知前空用little表否定含义,不用a little(表肯定含义)。后句提出请求,后一个空中,应用some表示委婉请求的疑问句。故选A。

[例] —Would you like some wine?

—Yes, just _____.

[全国高考题]

- A. little B. very little C. a little D. little bit

答案是C。“你想喝点酒吗?”“是的,只喝一点。”a little表示肯定意义,排除A、B、D。

[例] —Are the new rules working?

—Yes, _____ books are stolen.

[全国高考题]

- A. Few B. More C. Some D. None

答案是A。“这些新规则奏效吗?”“是的,几乎没什么书丢失了。”根据句意,此处应为否定形式,故排除B、C。None为代词指“人”或“物”,可与介词of连用,但不能直接接名词,故也排除。

12-35 “some/any/no/every/ + -body/-thing/-one”构成复合不定代词,作单数用。some-类词和any-类词在用法上的区别与some和any的区别一样。修饰它们的形容词要位于它们之后;当其后为else时,属格词缀-'s要加在else上(如:somebody else's bike)。

[例] Playing tricks on others is _____ we should never do.

[湖南高考题]

A. anything B. something C. everything D. nothing

答案是 B。“捉弄别人是我们永远不应该做的事情。”表示“只是其中一件”，应用 something(某事)来代替，不能用 everything(一切)、anything(任何事)或 nothing(无事)。

[例] —One week's time has been wasted.

[重庆高考题]

— I can't believe we did all that work for _____.

A. something B. nothing C. everything D. anything

答案是 B。“一周的时间已经浪费了。”“我不能相信我们所做的一切都是徒劳的。”句中的 for 有“替换/兑换”之意。for nothing 表示“徒劳的”，系比较固定的短语，符合句意。故选 B 项。

[例] I made so many changes in my composition that only I could read it. To _____ else, it was hard to make out.

[上海高考题]

A. none B. everyone C. someone D. anyone

答案是 D。“我的作文改动太多了，只有我自己能看得懂。对于其他任何人来说，都看不明白”。anyone else 意为“(除…以外的)其他任何人”，符合语境。

[例] —Is _____ here?

—No, Bob and Tim have asked for leave.

[全国高考题]

A. anybody B. somebody C. everybody D. nobody

答案是 C。“大家都到了吗?”“不，鲍勃和蒂姆请假了。”

第九节 疑问代词、连接代词和关系代词

12-36 疑问代词用来引出特殊疑问句，连接代词用来引出名词性从句，关系代词用来引导定语从句[用法参见各有关章节]。

[例] — Which skirt do you want to buy for your daughter? “你想给你女儿买哪件裙子?”

—I don't know which colour she likes best.

Maybe I should buy the yellow skirt which has some red flowers on it. “我不知道她最喜欢哪种颜色。也许我买那件上边有红花的黄裙子。”

在句中有 3 个 which，第 ① 个 which 是疑问代词；第 ② 个 which 是连接代词，引出宾语从句；第 ③ 个 which 是关系代词，引出定语从句，修饰 skirt。

即学即用

1. My grandma still treats me like a child. She can't imagine _____ grown up.
A. my B. mine C. myself D. me [重庆高考题]
2. My daughter often makes a schedule to get _____ reminded of what she is to do in the day.
A. herself B. her C. she D. hers [上海高考题]
3. Catherine bought a postcard of the place she was visiting, addressed _____ to _____ and then posted it at the nearby post office.
A. it; her B. it; herself C. herself; her D. herself; herself [安徽高考题]
4. Most of us know we should cut down on fat, but knowing such things isn't much help when it _____ shopping and eating.
A. refers to B. speaks of C. focuses on D. comes to [天津高考题]
5. — Do you like _____ here?
— Oh, yes. The air, the weather, the way of life. Everything is so nice.
A. this B. these C. that D. it [全国高考题]
6. He hasn't slept at all for three days. _____ he is tired out.
A. There is no point B. There is no need C. It is no wonder D. It is no way [湖北高考题]
7. If I can help _____, I don't like working late into the night.
A. so B. that C. it D. them [湖南高考题]
8. We've been looking at the houses but haven't found _____ we like yet.
A. one B. ones C. it D. them [广东高考题]
9. — Why don't we take a little break?
— Didn't we just have _____?
A. it B. that C. one D. this [全国高考题]
10. If you want to change for a double room you'll have to pay _____ \$ 15.
A. another B. other C. more D. each [全国高考题]
11. If this dictionary is not yours, _____ can it be?
A. what else B. who else C. which else's D. who else's [北京高考题]
12. — You're always working. Come on, let's go shopping.
— _____ you ever want to do is going shopping.
A. Anything B. Something C. All D. That [北京高考题]
13. — There's coffee and tea; you can have _____.
— Thanks.
A. either B. each C. one D. it [北京高考题]
14. That's an unpleasant thing to say about your father after _____ he's done for you.

- A. something B. anything C. all D. that [北京高考题]
15. I made a call to my parents yesterday. To my disappointment, _____ of them answered it. [福建高考题]
- A. either B. none C. neither D. nobody
16. She doesn't know anyone here. She has got _____ to talk to. [广东高考题]
- A. anyone B. someone C. everyone D. no one
17. First, it is important to recognize what kind of person you are and which special qualities make you different from _____. [湖北高考题]
- A. everyone else B. the other C. someone else D. the rest
18. The boy promised _____ mother never to lie to _____ again.
- A. his; him B. her; her C. her; him D. his; her
19. —Victor certainly cares too much about himself.
—Yes. He's never interested in what _____ is doing. [重庆高考题]
- A. no one else B. anyone else C. someone else D. nobody else
20. Don't worry if you can't come to _____ party — I'll save _____ cake for you.
- A. the ; some B. a; much C. the; any D. a; little [浙江高考题]
21. If you can't decide which of the two books to borrow, why don't you take _____? I won't read them this week. [浙江高考题]
- A. all B. any C. either D. both
22. You may drop in or just give me a call. _____ will do.
- A. Either B. Each C. Neither D. All
23. Both sides have accused of _____ breaking the contract.
- A. another B. the other C. neither D. each
24. Bill's aim is to inform the viewers that cigarette advertising on TV is illegal, _____?
- A. isn't it B. is it C. isn't he D. is he [上海高考题]
25. _____ of them knew about the plan because it was kept a secret.
- A. Each B. Any C. No one D. None
26. I don't think _____ possible to master a foreign language without much memory work.
- A. this B. that C. its D. it [全国高考题]
27. —Who's there?
—It's me. _____ else could _____ be?
- A. Who; it B. Who; I C. What; I D. Whose; it
28. Is her hair shorter than _____?
- A. me B. I C. my D. mine [全国高考题]
29. Tara: This is Tara Patel from Cotton House in Kidderminster. Could I speak to Mr. Smith, please?
Mr. Smith: _____ [广东高考题]

- A. Hello. B. I'm Mr. Smith. C. Who are you? D. Speaking.



点石成金

单项选择题

1. **B** imagine 用了带复合宾语的结构, 缺少宾语 me; grown up 为过去分词, 其前不用物主代词 my 作宾语, 主语为 my grandma, 宾语不需反身代词 myself.
2. **A** get 的宾语与主语 my daughter 指同一人(或事物), 应用反身代词 herself, 而不用宾格 her.
3. **B** address 作动词的意思是“在…上写姓名住址”, addressed 后接 it, 作直接宾语, 代替上文中的 postcard to 后接 herself, 作间接宾语, 表示“把 postcard 寄给她自己”.
4. **D** when it comes to “谈到, 涉及”是一个常用搭配. refer to “指的是, 说起, 关于”; speak of “说起, 谈论”; focus on “集中在”, 这三者的主语通常“人”, 均不能用 it 作主语.
5. **D** like 是及物动词, 须接宾语, here 是副词, 不能作宾语, 选 it 合理. 此时的 it 指模糊的情形、环境、状况, 符合惯用法. 其余各项指具体事物、不可用.
6. **C** 前句意为“他三天时间都没有睡觉了”, 应用 “It is no wonder. (that)…” 句型结构“难怪他这么筋疲力尽”. 而不用 There is no point “…没有用的; …没有意义的”; There is no need “…没有必要的”或 It is no way “不可能”.
7. **C** it 指主句的内容“工作到深夜”, 即“没有办法不工作到深夜”.
8. **A** one 来代替同类中的一个, 即“自己喜欢一所房子”. 故选 A.
9. **C** 用 one 指代 a rest (“同一类事物中的一个”).
10. **A** “再付 15 美金”用 “another + 基数词 + 复数名词”.
11. **D** “…它还可能是别的什么人的呢?” 属格的符号 “'” 要加在 else 上.
12. **C** 因答话者的指责性味道浓, 语气重, 故应用 All, 而 A 项与 B 项欠火候, 故选 C.
13. **A** coffee 和 tea 为两项, 应用 either “任意两者之一”.
14. **C** 由句子含义和结构看, 只有 C 项中的 all 可填入空缺, 表达“你父亲为你所做的一切”.
15. **C** them 指上句提到的 my parents 两个人; 从“让我失望”可以知道后句表示“父母两人都没有回答”.
16. **D** 前句表示: 她在此地不认识任何人, 后句当然表示: 她没有人可交谈. 故选 D 项.
17. **A** 应用 everyone else 表示“把自身排除在外的一切人”, 符合语境“让你与众不同”.
18. **D** his mother 指“男孩的妈妈”; 后空 her 为宾格作介词 to 的宾语.

19. D 答语中已经有了 never 否定词,应用 anyone else,表示“他从不对任何其他他人所做的事感兴趣”,这样与第一个人说“他太关注自己”的意义也一致。
20. A 句中的 party 应该是双方都知道的“聚会”,应用定冠词 the;后一句表示肯定意义,应用 some。
21. D 句中提到的是两本书,可排除表示“三者(或以上)”的 all 和 any;此处建议“把两本都拿去”,而不是 either。
22. A 指“顺便拜访”和“给我打电话”两种可能性中的任何一种都可以,应用 either。
23. B 双方都控告对方违约。只有 B 表示两者的另一方。
24. A 由于本句的主语是 Bill's aim,所以用 it 来替代;又由于主句是肯定句,所以答案选 A。
25. D No one 不能与 of 短语连用,应用 none,符合语境“他们中没有一个人知道”。
26. D 由于宾补 possible 很短而不定式短语很长,用 it 作形式宾语。
27. A it 回答了“Who”的问题,作了主语,并提出反问,意指“This is me, not others”。
28. D. mine = my hair。
29. D 电话应答语 Speaking 为 This is / It's Mr. Smith speaking 的省略。故选 D。

第13章

名词

高考热点

名词的用法是高考的考点之一。纵观历届高考试题,对名词的考查主要体现在以下几个方面:1. 名词的可数性与不可数性;2. 名词词义辨析;3. 名词中固定搭配;4. 名词的句法功能。近年来对名词的数的考查主要出现在短文改错题里,而单选更趋于考查名词辨析,完形填空也更是如此(一般3到5个)。

要掌握名词,我们首先要形成名词数的概念(我们写作时常常会出这方面的错误),其次要比较并牢记一些意义相近和拼写相似的词语,最后我们要逐步形成结合语境并根据句子意思和前后搭配从意义相近或拼写相似的几个名词中选出一个最恰当的选项的能力。

第一节 名词的概念及分类

13-1 名词是表示人、事物、地点或抽象概念的名称的词,按意义可分为专有名词和普通名词,按其可数性可分为可数名词和不可数名词。

- ① 专有名词是表示个别的人、国家、团体、地方、机构、组织等专有的名称。专有名词中实词(即:名词、代词、形容词、副词、数词、动词)的第一个字母要大写。

【例】We are going to learn _____ next week. 全国高考题

- A. Lesson Twelve B. Lesson Twelfth
C. Twelfth Lesson D. the lesson Twelfth

答案是A。“我们下周将学习第12课。”专有名词中

每个实词的第一个字母都需要大写,第十二课用“Lesson Twelve”或“the Twelfth



Lesson。”来表示。

② 普通名词是表示某一类人或物、某种物质或抽象概念的名称。可分为四种：

- | | | | |
|------|---|--|---------|
| 普通名词 | { | 个体名词(表示某类人或物中的个体。如:student 学生) | } 可数名词 |
| | | 集体名词(表示若干个体组成的集合体。如:family 家庭) | |
| | | 物质名词(表示无法分为个体的物质。如:water 水) | } 不可数名词 |
| | | 抽象名词(表示动作、状态、品质、感情等抽象概念
如:work 工作、beauty 美) | |



[例] Chinese arts have won the appreciation of a lot of people outside China.

“中国艺术在国外赢得许多人的赞美。”

句中的 Chinese 和 China 是专有名词(首字母大写), art 是个体名词, people 是集体名词, appreciation 是抽象名词。

③ 可数名词是指个体名词和集体名词,它们大都可以用数目来计算,有单复数之分。单数时,其前多有冠词、代词限定;超过两个数目要用其复数形式。

[例] 改错:Finally we had good idea.

[四川高考题]

答案是在 good 前加 a。“终于我们有了个好主意。”idea 作“主意,办法,想法”解时,是可以数目来计算的,此处需与不定冠词连用。

[例] 改错:That night, we sat down to what we thought would be a pleasant, uninterrupted meals.

[四川高考题]

答案是把 meals 改为 meal。“那天晚上,我们坐下来吃我们认为会是一顿令人愉快、不被打扰的饭。”meal 虽为可数名词,但在此表示一个晚上所吃就一顿,并且前面有不定冠词 a。故应用单数。

[例] 改错:You know, that was a dinner we had waited for several month.

[江苏高考题]

答案是把 month 改为 months。“你知道,那是我们已经等了数月的一顿饭。”month 为可数名词,其前用 several 限定,应用复数。

④ 不可数名词是指物质名词和抽象名词,它们大多无法用数目来计算,一般也没有复数形式。

[例] 改错:And I came to understand that it was not easy to earn money, and that knowledges could change my life.

[辽宁高考题]

答案是把 knowledges 改为 knowledge。“我明白了挣钱不容易而知识能改变我的人生。”knowledge 在此为抽象名词,为不可数名词,没有复数形式。

[例] Tables are made of _____. [全国高考题]

- A. wood B. woods C. wooden D. some woods

答案是A。“桌子是由木头做的。”wood为物质名词,不可数,不用复数形式,排除B、D。wooden是形容词,这里应选用名词,故排除C。

温馨提示

- (1) 有些名词按汉语的习惯理解是可数的,但在英语中,它们常用作不可数名词。常见的有:news(新闻、消息), information(信息), advice(建议), weather(天气), progress(进步), jewellery(珠宝), furniture(家具), clothing(服装)等。

[例] 改错: I'm glad you have made such a great progress that you can write a good letter in Chinese. [四川高考题]

答案是去掉such后的a。“我高兴你取得如此大的进步都能用汉语写很好的一封信了。”progress为不可数名词。

[例] Father went to his doctor for _____ about his heart trouble.

- A. an advice B. advice C. advices D. the advices

答案是B。“父亲去看医生请教有关他的心脏病的事。”“advice”为不可数名词,不能用不定冠词,也没有复数形式,故排除A、C、D。

[例] We have only a sofa, a table and a bed in our new apartment. We need to buy _____ more furniture. [上海高考题]

- A. any B. many C. little D. some

答案是D。“在我们的新公寓里只有一个沙发、一张桌子和一张床,我们需要买更多的家具。”furniture指家具的总称,一般为不可数名词,不能与many连用;前句暗示了后一句没有否定的内涵(不能用little或any),some有肯定之意。

- (2) 有些名词:它们既可用作不可数名词,也可用作可数名词,但意义常有所不同。这是个难点,也是常考热点,应特别注意。

[例] You should do more _____. Don't always sit at the desk busy doing your _____.

- A. exercise; exercises B. exercises; exercise
C. exercises; exercises D. exercise; exercise

答案是A。“你应该多做运动,不要老坐在桌旁忙着做练习。”“exercise”既能作可数名词(意为“练习”),又能作不可数名词意为“运动”、“锻炼”。

帮你归纳

表 1: 有时复数名词的含义不同于单数名词的含义

单数形式及其词义	(a) 复数相同于单数词义	(b) 复数不同于单数词义
damage 损害	— damages (a) —	(b) 损害赔偿金
effect 结果	— effects (a) 结果	(b) 财产; 动产
pain 痛	— pains (a) 阵痛	(b) 努力
quarter 刻; 1/4	— quarters (a) 刻; 1/4	(b) 住房; 营房
scale 鳞; 尺度	— scales (a) 鳞; 尺度	(b) 磅秤
spectacle 场面	— spectacles (a) 场面	(b) 眼镜

表 2: 有些物质名词的复数表示种类或具体事物

tea(茶)	— teas(各种茶)	green(绿色)	— greens(绿色蔬菜)
fish(鱼)	— fishes(各种鱼)	paper(纸)	— a paper(文件; 论文; 试卷)
steel(钢)	— steels(各种钢)	hair(头发)	— a few hairs(几根头发)
fuel(燃料)	— fuels(各种燃料)	copper(铜)	— two coppers(两枚铜币)
		coffee(咖啡)	— two coffees(两杯/份咖啡)

表 3: 表示“一种, 一阵”等意思时不可数名词成为可数名词

rain(雨)	— a fine rain(一阵/场小雨)
wind(风)	— a strong wind(一阵大风)

表 4: 抽象名词的具体化后不可数名词成为可数名词。

pleasure(高兴)	— a pleasure(乐事; 趣事)
experience(经验)	— an experience(经历)
relation(关系)	— a relation(亲戚)
success(成功)	— a success(成功; 成功者)
surprise(惊奇)	— a surprise(意想不到的事)
comfort(安慰)	— a comfort(一种安慰)
comfort(安慰)	— comforts(安慰)
joy(乐趣)	— joys(乐事)
difficulty(困难)	— difficulties(困难, 难做的事)

- (3) 若可数名词用来表示抽象或物质意义时, 就成为不可数名词。如: a room(房间) → room(空间); a talk(报告) → talk(空谈); a chicken(小鸡) → chicken(鸡肉)

第二节 不可数名词量的表达



不可数名词若计量时,通常使用“数词(或 a/an,或 many 等)+单位词+of+不可数名词”的结构。常见的单位有:piece“块、条”,article“件”,drop“滴”,pack“包”,pile“堆”,bar“支”等。并且它们有复数形式。

【例】There are two pieces of work for you to do: to buy a bowl of rice and to make three cups of tea. “有两件事要你办,买一碗米饭来,并沏三杯茶。”

温馨提示

(1) 若有修饰语时,多放在“单位词”之前。如: a nice cup of tea 一杯好茶(从意义上看,nice 是修饰 tea,并非修饰 cup;是“好茶”,不是“好杯子”)。但有些词的习惯用法与此规律不同,如: two pieces of red chalk 两支红粉笔,等等。

(2) 这样表示量的方式,有时也可接可数名词的复数形式。

【例】She ate two bowls of boiled eggs. “她吃了两碗煮鸡蛋。”

bowl 和 egg 都表示复数意义。

第三节 可数名词的复数

13-3 绝大多数可数名词的复数形式是通过加后缀-(e)s 来构成的。

- ① 一般在词尾加-s,其读音在清辅音后读/s/,在浊辅音和元音后读/z/,在咝沙音(通常为/s/ /z/ /ʃ/ /tʃ/ /dʒ/)后读/ɪz/。如: books /s/ (书), dogs /z/ (狗), days /z/ (天), faces /ɪz/ (脸)。
- ② 在以“s, sh, ch, x”结尾的名词后,一般要加-es,其读音为/ɪz/。如: buses /ɪz/ (汽车), watches /ɪz/ (手表), boxes /ɪz/ (盒子)。

温馨提示

若结尾的 ch 等不读咝沙音,则只加-s/s/。如: stomach /'stʌmək/ → stomachs /'stʌməks/ (胃口)。

【例】An ant has two stomachs. “蚂蚁有两个胃。”

- ③ 以“辅音字母+y”结尾的名词,须变“y”为“i”再加-es,读/z/, (即-ies 读作/ɪz/)。如: baby → babies /ɪz/ (婴儿), lady → ladies /ɪz/ (女士), factory → factories /ɪz/ (工厂)。
- ④ 在以 f 或 fe 结尾的名词后,一般加-s;但可数名词须变“f”或“fe”为“v”再加-es,且-ves 读音为/vz/。

帮你归纳

要变作-ves 的名词有: knife“刀”, life“生命”, wife“妻子”, self“自己”, shelf“架子”, leaf“叶子”, half“一半”, thief“贼”, sheaf“一捆”, elf“精灵”, calf“小牛”, loaf“长面包”, wolf“狼”等等。

[例] _____ turn green in spring.

[全国高考题]

- A. Leaf B. Leafs C. Leaves D. Leaves

答案是 D。“春天树叶都变绿了。”根据句意,应用复数形式。leaves 是 leaf 的复数形式。

帮你归纳

直接加-s 构成复数名词的有: belief“信念”, chief“首领”, gulf“海湾”, roof“房顶”, proof“证据”, safe“保险箱”, serf“农奴”等等。

两种都可以的有: handkerchief→handkerchiefs/handkerchieves“手绢”。

- ⑤ 以“元音+o”结尾的词,其后直接加-s,读/z/(如: radios“收音机”, zoos“动物园”)。以“辅音+o”结尾的词,大多数要加-es 读/z/,如: potatoes“土豆”, tomatoes“西红柿”, heroes“英雄”;少数词(主要是截短词)则只加-s,读/z/,如: photos←photographs“相片”, kilos←kilogram(me)s“公斤”, autos←automobiles“汽车”,以及外来词 pianos“钢琴”等。

13-4 有些名词的复数形式是通过改变元音等来构成。

[例] Don't leave the water running while you brush your teeth.

“刷牙的时候不要让水流着。”

有些要把 oo 变为 ee,如: foot→feet“脚”, goose→geese“鹅”, tooth→teeth“牙齿”;

有些是把 a 变为 e,如: man→men“人、男人”, woman→women“女人”;

有些要增加字母,如: ox→oxen“牛”, child→children“孩子”;

有些须改变拼写方式,如: mouse→mice“老鼠”

温馨提示

有时习惯表达,也可用单数代替复数形式。

[例] John is the tallest boy in the class, as tall as five foot eight according to himself.

“约翰是班上最高的男孩,根据他自己说他高达五英尺八英寸”

five foot eight 为习惯用语,相当于 five feet eight inches.

13-5 有些名词的单、复数形式相同,如:sheep 绵羊,means 方法。



① sheep 等词尾无“s”的单复同形的名词主要有三类:

表示动物的词:如 deer“鹿”,sheep“绵羊”,fish“鱼”等。

表示市制单位的词:如 jin“斤”,mu“亩”,yuan“元”等。

表示“某国人”,并以 ese 结尾的名词:如 Chinese“中国人”,Japanese“日本人”等。

另外,还有:aircraft“飞机”等。

② means 等词尾有“s”的单复同形的名词有:works“工厂、工程”,means“方法”,species“种类”,series“系列”,bellows“风箱”,lazybones“懒骨头”,headquarters“司令部”,crossroads“十字路口”等。

[例] An accident happened at crossroads a few metres away from _____ bank.

A. a; the B. /; a C. /; the D. the; / [上海高考题]

答案是 A。“事故是在距银行几米远的一个十字路口发生了一个事故。”crossroads 作“十字路口”之意时,单复数同形。此处指某一个十字路口,应该有一个不定冠词或定冠词,可以选用 A 或 D;但 bank 在此应是特指的,或心中已知的,前面应该有冠词,故选 A。

[例] There _____ some _____ in the field.

A. is; deer B. are; deers C. are; deer D. is; deers

答案是 C。“田野上有一些鹿。”deer 是单复数同形的名词。

[例] _____ means _____ not been tried.

A. One; has B. All; has C. One; have D. All; are

答案是 A。“还有一种方法没试过。”means 在这里用作单数概念。若将 B 项改为“All; have”,则也正确,这时的 means 用作复数概念。

13-6 表示“某国人”的名词构成复数的方式有 3 类。

① 通常是直接加-s。如:Russians“俄国人”,Germans“德国人”,Americans“美国人”等等。

[例] - Both Marx and Engels were _____.

A. Germans B. Germen C. from German D. Germany

答案是 A。“马克思和恩格斯都是德国人。”根据句意,应用复数形式,“Ger-

man”的复数是直接加-s。

- ② 以 man 或 woman 构成的合成词,要变为 men 或 women。如:Englishmen“英国人”, Frenchwomen“法国女人”等。
- ③ 以 ese 结尾的词和 Swiss(瑞士人)是单复同形。如:Chinese“中国人”,Japanese“日本人”等。

13-7 复合名词的复数形式常见的有 3 种构成方式:一般是将主体名词改为复数,没有主体名词的则在词尾加-s,含有 (wo)man 时,将其变为复数。

- ① 一般需在主体名词之后加“s”。如:sons-in-law“女婿”,step-sons“继子”,lookers-on“旁观者”等。

[例] Many _____ saw the accident. (passer-by)

答案是 passers-by。“很多过路人都目击了那次事故。”复数词缀 s 要加在主体名词 passer 之后。

- ② 有些没主体名词的,要在词尾加“s”。如:grown-ups(成年人),go-betweens(媒人、中间人)等等。

[例] I mean everything, not just houses and shops and grown-ups.

“我是指所有东西,不仅仅是房子、商店和大人。”

- ③ 含有构词成分 (wo)man 的,要将其变为 (wo)men。如:newspapermen(新闻记者), chairwomen(女主席)等。

温馨提示

若是用独立的词 (wo)man 作另一个名词的定语,则 (wo)man 与被修饰名词都需要变成复数。如:two men servants“两位男仆人”,three women scientists“三位女科学家”等等。

13-8 名词单、复数的几种特殊表达方式。

- ① 有些以 s 结尾的名词,作“学科”解时往往作单数用。如:maths“数学”,physics“物理”等。[参见 1—15]
- ② 有少数名词,形式上是单数,但用作复数。如:police“警察”,cattle“牲畜”,people“人们”等。[参见 1—14]

[例] Two _____ died of cold last winter.

[全国高考题]

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| A. hundreds old people | B. hundred old people |
| C. hundreds old peoples | D. hundred old peoples |

答案是 B。“去年冬天 200 名老年人死于寒冷。”本句 hundred 之前有具体数字,应用其单数形式,故排除 A、C。people 为集合名词表复数概念,故排除 D。

温馨提示

people 若作“民族”讲,则有单复数之分。如: a people(一个民族), many peoples(很多民族)

- 3 有些名词和数词连用表示复数时,仍保持单数形式。如 two dozen eggs“两打鸡蛋”, forty head of cattle“40头牲口”,但是,如果这些词的复数形式和介词 of 的短语连用时,可表示“多”的概念。如: dozens of eggs“几十个鸡蛋”, hundreds of ducks“数百只鸭子”。[参见 14—7、8、9]

第四节 名词的格

13-9 名词的主格与宾格形式上没有区别。所有格多作定语(有时作表语),表示人或物的隶属关系。

[例] _____ car broke down on the way, but luckily they knew how to fix it.

A. Tom's and Jane's B. Tom's and Jane C. Tom and Jane's D. Tom and Jane

答案是 C。“汤姆和简的车在路上坏了,但幸运的是他们知道如何修理。”(car 作主语, way 作介词 on 的宾语,都没有其特殊的形式。)空格处作定语,表示“某人的”,要用所有格形式,排除 D。从被修饰词“car”为单数可看出是“汤姆和简共有的”,只能在最后一个名词上加所有格符号,故选 C。而 A 项表示“汤姆和简各自所拥有的”,要与复数 cars 连用才可以。

13-10 “名词 + 's”的所有格形式主要用于表示有生命名词的所属关系,也可用于表时间、距离、城镇、国家等表示无生命事物的名词。

[例] The village is far away from here indeed. It's _____ walk. [上海高考题]

A. a four hour B. a four hour's
C. a four-hours D. a four hours'

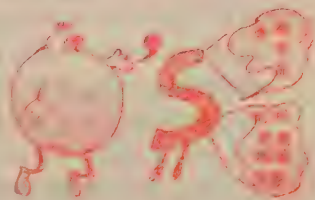
答案为 D。“那个村离这里确实远,它步行有四小时”, four hours 后有名词,要用名词所有格,为名词 walk 的定语。

[例] The house was quiet at 5 am and Tim's mother was asleep.
“早晨 5 点,房子很安静,蒂姆的妈妈还没有醒。”

[例] “Where is your brother?” “At _____.” [全国高考题]

A. Mr. Green's B. Mr. Green C. the Mr. Green's D. the Mr. Green

答案是 A。“你兄弟在哪儿?”“在格林先生家。”相当于“At Mr. Green's house.”



温馨提示

表示“家”、“店铺”、“办公室”等处所时,由“名词 + 's”所有格所修饰的名词 house, shop, office 常被省略。又如: at the tailor's (shop) (在服装店), at the doctor's (office) (在医生的诊所)。

13-11 “名词 + 's”所有格的构成方法有两种: -'s 和 -'; 其读音规则类似于名词复数词尾 -(e)s 的读音规则。

构成法	读音	例词
复数名词末尾加's	1. -'s 在清辅音后读 /s/	1. Jack's /dʒæks/ pen 杰克的钢笔
	2. -s' 在浊辅音和元音后读 /z/	2. the teacher's /'ti:tʃəz/ book 这位老师的书 Jane's /dʒeɪnz/ room 简的房间
	3. 在 /s/ /z/ /ʃ/ /tʃ/ /dʒ/ 等读音后读 /ɪz/	3. Charles's /'tʃɑ:lɪz/ home 查尔斯的家
以 s 或 es 结尾的复数名词, 末尾只加'	读音不变	the students' exercise books 学生们的练习本 the boys' game 男孩子们的游戏
不以 (e)s 结尾的复数名词末尾仍要加 -'s	-'s 的读音与单数名词加 s 相同	women's rights 妇女们的权利 Children's Day 儿童节

[例] 改错: She always made sure that our homework was finished on time, and she marked strictly on student's actual performance.

[辽宁高考题]

答案是把 student's 改为 students' 或 our。“她总是确保我们的作业按时完成, 并根据学生的实际表现严格地评分。”这里的学生指我们所有的学生, 应用复数所有格。

13-12 “of + 名词”的所有格形式主要用于表示无生命名词的所属关系 (有时也表示一种逻辑上的主谓关系、动宾关系或同位关系); 有时也可用于表示有生命名词的所属关系 (尤其是当名词较长时)。

[例] The mayor of Beijing says that all construction work for the Beijing Olympics will have been completed by 2006.

[北京高考题]

“北京市市长说北京奥运会所有的建设工作将会在 2006 年完成。”

of Beijing 修饰 the mayor, 表示所属关系。比较: the city of Beijing “北京城” (同位关系)

[例] I only know the girl's name. I don't know _____ standing by the door.

A. the boy's name

B. the name of the boy

C. the name of the boy's

D. the name of the boys

答案是B。“我只知道那女孩的名字。我不知道站在门口的那男孩的名字。”“boy”虽与“girl”同为表示有生命事物的名词,但因其后跟有长长的定语 standing by the door,使得整个名词短语太长了,故不用's形式,而用of形式。所给A项放入句中的话,“站在门口的”则成了“name,”而不是“boy”,逻辑上不合理。

13-13 “of + 名词的's 所有格”或“of + 名词性物主代词”称为双重所有格,常表示“部分”概念(被修饰名词前通常有表示数量的词 a, two, many 等)或感情色彩(被修饰名词前通常有指示代词 this, that, these, those 等)。

[例] Miss Smith is a friend of _____.

A. Mary's mother's

B. Mary's mother

C. Mother's of Mary

D. Mary's Mother's

答案是A。“史密斯小姐是玛丽母亲的一位朋友。”根据题意,应用名词双重所有格表达“部分”概念,即“玛丽母亲的朋友中的一个朋友。”

[例] Look at this lovely daughter of my teacher's. “你看我们老师的这个可爱的女儿。”

第五节 名词的句法作用

13-14 名词在句中可充当除谓语动词以外的各种成分(主、宾、表、定、状、补、同位语及独立成分)。

[例] The roofs of the cottage were covered with leaves. “这间村舍的屋顶盖满了树叶。”

名词“roofs”(是 roof 的复数)作主语。

“leaves”(是 leaf 的复数)作介词宾语。名

词 cottage 作介词 of 的宾语。

[例] He dropped the _____ and broke it.

A. cup of coffee

B. coffee's cup

C. cup for coffee

D. coffee cup

答案是D。“他失手掉了咖啡杯,并且打碎了。”A意为“这杯咖啡”,与后半句“打碎了”句意不符;B用了名词所有格形式 coffee's,表示杯子 cup 是属于“coffee”的,不合适;D中 coffee 为名词作定语修饰 cup,表示 cup 的用途。

温馨提示

名词作定语时一般用单数形式,如:two apple trees“两棵苹果树”,two shoe shops“两家鞋店”,many bus drivers“许多汽车司机”等等。但如作定语的名词,是(wo)man 时,则定语与被修饰名词要单复数一致,如:a man nurse“一位男护理员”,three women doctors“三位女大夫”。

[例] He is a student of _____.

- A. Class First B. the Class One C. Class One D. First Class

答案是 C。“他是一班的一个学生。”专有名词“Class One”作介词的宾语；普通名词 student 作表语。

[例] — If you like I can do some shopping for you.

— That's a very kind _____.

- A. offer B. service C. point D. suggestion

答案是 A。“如果你愿意,我能为你购物。”“那是非常友善的帮助。”offer“提供帮助”。service“服务”;point“观点”;suggestion“建议”。名词 offer 充当表语,也体现了该词作动词表示“主动提出帮助”的语境。

[例] But I can't give these orders, unless you can wait _____.

- A. some time B. sometimes C. for sometime D. sometime

答案是 A。“但我现在还不能订购这些,除非你能等些时候。”B 为“有时,”不合题意;C、D 中的 sometime 表示“某时”与句意不符。A 表“一段时间”为正确选择,some time 是名词短语作时间状语。名词 orders 是作动词 give 的宾语。

第六节 名词辨析

13-15 利用句子结构。

有时,句子的平行、对比等结构可为解题提供线索。

[例] To make members of a team perform better, the trainer first of all has to know their _____ and weaknesses.

- A. strengths B. benefits C. techniques D. values

答案是 A。“为了使队员有更好的表现,教练首先要了解队员的优势和弱点”。and 后为 weak 的名词形式,正好与 strong 的名词形成对比,符合句意。而 benefit“利益,好处”;technique“技术、工艺”;value“价值”都不合语境。

13-16 利用固定搭配和习惯表达。

我们可以观看通过了解动词与名词构成的主谓关系或动宾关系是否搭配融洽(特别是利用课本出现过的相似或相近的短语和搭配)和利用常见的介词短语搭配,再结合具体语境,做出判断。

[例] Bill was doing a lot of physical exercise to build up his _____.

- A. ability B. force C. strength D. mind

答案是 C。“为了强身健体,比尔在做大量的体育锻炼。”build up one's strength 这一搭配表示“增强体力”,符合句意。power(指使出的“力气”或指“权力”或

“电源”)、ability(泛指一切的“能力”)或 mind(“心智,意志”)皆不合语境。

【例】Do you have any _____ of what life would be like if we lived on other planets?

A. plan B. idea C. impression D. imagination

答案是 B。“你知道如果我们生活在别的星球上,生活会是什么样子吗?”课本上出现的否定句 I have no idea“我不知道”,而本处用的疑问句,如果我们能适当联系两者,再结合语境,可排除 plan(计划)、impression(印象)、imagination(想象),而做出正确的判断。

【例】Don't leave matches or cigarettes on the table within _____ of little children.

A. hand B. reach C. space D. distance [湖北高考题]

答案是 B。“不要把火柴和香烟留在小孩子们能够得着的桌子上。”within reach of sb. 或 within one's reach 为固定搭配,意为“在某人伸手可及之范围内”,符合语境。

【例】At the meeting they discussed three different _____ to the study of mathematics.

A. approaches B. means C. methods D. ways [湖北高考题]

答案是 A。“在会上他们讨论了三种不同的学习数学的方法”approach 指经过考虑或有计划的“方法”,后面常接 to sth.。而 means 指与“目的”而相对存在的“手段,方式”或整套的“方法”,常接 of (doing) sth.; method 指著名的或常用“方法”,后接 of 和 for...; way“方法,方式”,常接 to do sth. 或 of doing sth.。

温馨提示

平时注意比较意义相似、相近的名词用法上的差异和习惯搭配。

13-17 充分把握具体的语境。

【例】Always read the _____ on the bottle carefully and take the right amount of medicine. [福建高考题]

A. explanations B. instructions C. descriptions D. introductions

答案是 B。“要仔细阅读药瓶上的说明,吃适量的药。”药瓶上一般情况应是 instructions 意为“说明,须知”,即指导人们怎么服药,与后面 take the right amount 的意义一致。而让你读 explanations“解释”、descriptions“描写,描述”、introductions“引导,介绍”三者用于此处就不贴切。

【例】The faces of four famous American presidents on Mount Rushmore can be seen from a _____ of 60 miles. [全国高考题]

A. length B. distance C. way D. space

答案是 B。“拉什莫尔山上四位知名美国总统的头像能在 60 英里之外看到。”从 60 英里开外,即两点(或两地)之间的“距离”为 60 英里。只能用 distance(指两点或两地之间的“距离”。比较:way“路”、space“空间”、length 指某物体本身的“长度”。



即学即用

项选择

1. When Jane began to take swimming lesson, her main _____ was the fear of water.
A. evidence B. crisis C. obstacle D. danger [上海高考题]
2. My _____ of this weekend's activity is going out with some good friends.
A. idea B. opinion C. mind D. thought
3. For the sake of her daughter's health, she decided to move to a warm _____.
A. weather B. temperature C. season D. climate [上海高考题]
4. —Would you like _____, sir
—No, thanks. I have had much. [福建高考题]
A. some more oranges B. any more oranges C. some more orange D. any more orange
5. Beginners are expected to be familiar with the _____ of the reading material before they come to the class. [上海高考题]
A. condition B. concept C. contest D. content
6. The environmentalists and wild goats' _____ on the vast grasslands was a good indication of the better environment. [上海高考题]
A. escape B. absence C. attendance D. appearance
7. In dealing with public relations, we should make every effort to prevent the _____ in personality. [上海高考题]
A. contact B. contrast C. connection D. conflict
8. I keep medicines on the top shelf, out of the children's _____.
A. reach B. hand C. hold D. place
9. I am sure David will be able to find the library—he has a pretty good _____ of direction.
A. idea B. feeling C. experience D. sense [浙江高考题]
10. He proved himself a true gentleman and the beauty of his _____ was seen at its best when he worked with others. [安徽高考题]
A. temper B. appearance C. talent D. character
11. The _____ on his face told me that he was angry. [湖北高考题]
A. impression B. sight C. appearance D. expression
12. Finding information in today's world is easy. The _____ is how you can tell if the information you get is useful or not. [天津高考题]
A. ability B. competition C. challenge D. knowledge
13. Put the _____ of your tongue against your upper teeth when you produce the sound.
A. tip B. top C. peak D. pole [上海高考题]
14. The head office of the bank is in Beijing, but it has _____ all over the country.
A. companies B. branches C. organizations D. businesses [上海高考题]

15. School children must be taught how to deal with dangerous _____.
A. states B. conditions C. situations D. positions
16. —I'd like _____ information about the management of your hotel, please.
—Well, you could have _____ word with the manager. He might be helpful.
A. some; a B. an; some C. some; some D. an; a [全国高考题]
17. He gained his _____ by printing _____ of famous writers.
A. wealth; work B. wealths; works C. wealths; work D. wealth; works
18. I need _____ cloth, for I'm going to make _____ clothes.
A. a lot of; many B. much; much C. many; many D. many; a lot
19. Many people agree that _____ knowledge of English is a must in _____ international trade today.
A. a; / B. the; an C. the; the D. /; the [全国高考题]
20. Let's stop by the _____ on the way there.
A. flowers shop B. flower's shop C. flower shop D. flowers' shop

II. 改错

1. We stopped to rest for a while and to drink some waters from a stream. [全国高考题]
2. Modern people know more about the health, have better food and live in cleaner surroundings. [全国高考题]
3. We have been to Europe many time. [全国高考题]
4. These are branch library in many villages. [全国高考题]
5. I hope that you two could come and visit us some times soon. [全国高考题]
6. They were eager to know everything about China and also asked me lots of question. [全国高考题]
7. A journey of a thousand mile must begin with a single step. [全国高考题]
8. He has lost a lot of weights in the past few years.
9. The tree was bursting leaf, fresh and green and lovely.
10. Parents should help their children to form good habit. [全国高考题]



点石成金

I. 单项选择

1. C “Jane 上游泳课的最大障碍是怕水。”obstacle 可作“障碍”解,符合句意。
2. A idea 为“想法、意见、主意”等,更侧重于计划与建议成分。
3. D weather 指“天气”(为不可数名词),而 climate 指“气候”条件(为可数名词),更符合语境和语法要求。
4. C 从答语中 much 可以看出 orange 为不可数名词。在表示请求疑问句中应用 some,希望对方给予一个肯定的回答。

期望初学者在来上课前所了解的应是阅读材料的“内容”(content),而不是 condition“条件”或 concept“概念”或 contest“竞争,比赛,争辩”。

“环境好转的迹象”应是“野山羊在广阔的草原上的 appearance 出现”。而不是 escape“逃跑,逃避,避免”、absence“缺席”或 attendance“到场,出席,护理,照料”。

在处理公共关系中,作努力要防止的应为 conflict“冲突”,而不是 contact“联系,接触”或 contrast“对照”或 connection“联系,连接”。

out of one's reach 符合语境:药品应放到孩子够不到的地方。

D sense of direction 指“方向感”,符合语境。

在工作中能看到的应是“品格、性格”的美;而不是 temper“脾气”、appearance“外表”、talent“天资,聪明”。

“表情”told me“他很生气” sight“视觉”、impression“印象”、appearance“外表,外貌”均与句意不符。

challenge“挑战,难题,艰巨的任务”,符合语境。比较:ability“能力”;competition“竞赛”;knowledge“知识”。

A the tip of one's tongue 表示“舌尖”,符合语境。比较:top:“顶部,顶端,上层部分”;peak:“山峰,山顶,最高点”;pole:“极点,顶点(用于物理和地理学)”。

B branches 是名词,意思为“分部,支行(遍及全国)”,与前面“总部(在北京)”对应。

C situation 意为“情况,局面,形式”,多指危急情况或重大的事态,合句意。比较:state“状态,状况”;condition“条件,环境”;position“位置,地点”。

A information 是不可数名词,其前不可用 an, have a word with sb. (与某人说话)是一固定搭配。

D wealth“财富”(不可数名词,没有复数形式);work 此处表示“作品”,应使用复数形式。

A 前空 cloth 意为“布”,是不可数名词,其前不能用 many 或数词修饰;后空因 clothes 是复数名词,不能用 much 修饰,应使用 many。

A a knowledge of 表示“对…懂;对…有某种程度的了解”;international trade 泛指“国际贸易”,前面不用冠词。

C 指“花店”,应用名词 flower(常用单数,此处不用复数)作定语表示类型或用途。而不用表示“归属”所有格 flower's 或 flowers'。

II. 改错

1. waters 改为 water
2. 去掉 health 前的 the
3. time 改为 times
4. library 改为 libraries
5. some times 改为 sometime
6. question 改为 questions
7. mile 改为 miles
8. weights 改为 weight
9. leaf 改为 leaves
10. habit 改为 habits

第14章

数 词

高考热点

高考中,数词直接出现在单选题中并不多,但在听力和阅读理解中也常会有数词出现。纵观历年高考题,单选题主要考点体现在英语中数词单位的使用以及倍数的表达上。我们要注意熟练掌握表示倍数的常用句型,弄清那些易混结构的用法与异同,掌握 hundred, thousand, dozen, score 等词和具体数量词连用时的用法以及表示约数的用法,同时也要避免序数词与基数词的混用和错用。

第一节 数词的概念及分类

14-1 数词可分为基数词和序数词。表示数目的词叫基数词,如 one, ten 等;表示顺序的词叫序数词,如 first, tenth 等。



【例】If you buy more than ten, they knock twenty pence off the price.

四川高考题

“如果你买 10 个以上,他们将每个便宜 20 便士。”

这里 ten、twenty 都是基数词。

[例] I did a good job and won the first place.

“我做得不错且获得了一等奖。”

这里 first 为序数词。

第二节 基数词

14-2 基数词 1-12 都各自具有特殊形式。

从 1 到 12 的基数词分别是 one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, eleven, twelve。

[例] When asked to point out one or two things that are most important to themselves, many put friends ahead of homes, jobs, clothes and cars.

“当被要求指出一两样对他们来说最重要的东西时,很多人把朋友放在家人、工作、衣服和车子的前面。”

14-3 基数词 13-19 都以 -teen 结尾。

从 13 到 19 的基数词: thirteen, fourteen, fifteen, sixteen, seventeen, eighteen, nineteen。

[例] Owner Iain Powell said he had had cats at the gallery for fifteen years.

“主人艾恩·鲍威尔说他在画廊养猫已经有 15 年了。”

这里的 fifteen years 也可写成 15 years。

14-4 20-90 的整十位数基数词都以 -ty 结尾。

从 20 到 90 的整位数的基数词分别是 twenty, thirty, forty, fifty, sixty, seventy, eighty, ninety。

温馨提示

forty 的拼写不要写成 fourty。

[例] I went through the test many times but I could only answer three of the twenty questions.

“我仔细检查了试卷多次可在二十题中我只能回答三题。”

这里 twenty 以 ty 结尾。

14-5 21-99 之间的基数词除整数十位的外,其余都是在整十位数后面加上从 1-9 的基数词,且中间有连字符。

例如: 21 是 twenty-one, 31 是 thirty-one, 43 是 forty-three, 54 是 fifty-four。

[例] There is, however, a small-sized greyhound(灰狗), which stands only 33 cm.

“然而,有一种小个子的灰狗站起来只有 33 厘米。”

这里 33 读作 thirty-three,也可直接这么写。

14-6 101-999 之间数字的表达方式为:“基数词 + hundred + and + 整十位数词 + 连字符 + 个位数”。

234→two hundred and thirty-four

209→two hundred and nine;650→six hundred and fifty.

[例] Calment lived to 122, so it wouldn't surprise me if someone alive today reaches 130 or 135. “卡门特活到 122 岁,因此如果现在有活着的人达到 130 或 135 岁是不会让我吃惊的。”

[北京高考题]

句中 122 读作 one hundred and twenty-two, 135 读作 one hundred and thirty-five, 但一般以数字出现在文中。

温馨提示

一个百位数如包含十位数及个位数,中间的 and 可省略,如只包含个位数,即十位数为零时,则 and 不可省略。

896→eight hundred (and) ninety-six (and 可省)

101→one hundred and one; (and 不可省)

14-7 英语中数词单位:hundred 百,thousand 千,million 百万,billion 十亿。英语中没有“万”这一单位,万在英语中用 ten thousand 来表示。



请注意下面万、十万、千万、亿的不同表达方式:

① 从 10,000 到 99,999 之间“万”的单位是用“几十个千”来表示。如:

10,000 “一万”→ten thousand

36,927 “三万六千九百二十七”→thirty-six thousand, nine hundred and twenty-seven

99,999 “九万九千九百九十九”→ninety-nine thousand, nine hundred and ninety-nine

② 从 100,000 到 999,999 之间“十万”的单位是用“几百个千”来表示。如:

100,000 “十万”→one hundred thousand

369,275 “三十六万九千二百七十五”→three hundred (and) sixty-nine thousand, two hundred and seventy-five

③ 从 10,000,000 到 99,999,999 之间“千万”的单位用“…百万”来表示。如:

10,000,000“一千万”→ten million

50,000,000“五千万”→fifty million

76,568,239“七千六百五十六万八千二百三十九”→seventy-six million, five hundred (and) sixty-eight thousand, two hundred and thirty-nine

④ 从 100,000,000 开始“亿”的表达方式。如:

100,000,000“一亿”→one hundred million

7,564,938,021“七十五亿六千四百九十三万八千零二十一”→seven billion, five hundred and sixty-four million, nine hundred and thirty-eight thousand and twenty-one

帮你归纳

每三位数打一撇号十分重要,自右向左分别读为 thousand, million, billion... 反过来即为:读完一个百位数后加 billion, 再读完一个百位数后加 million, 再读完一个百位数后加 thousand, 最后读完一个百位数。一个百位数没有百位或十位,直接读十位或个位数。

附:基数词的基本词及读法

1 ~ 12	13 ~ 19	20 ~ 90	百、千、百万、十亿
1 one	13 thirteen	20 twenty	
2 two	14 fourteen	30 thirty	100 a hundred
3 three	15 fifteen	40 forty	
4 four	16 sixteen	50 fifty	1000 a thousand
5 five	17 seventeen	60 sixty	
6 six	18 eighteen	70 seventy	1,000,000 a million
7 seven	19 nineteen	80 eighty	
8 eight		90 ninety	1,000,000,000 a billion
9 nine			
10 ten			
11 eleven			
12 twelve			

14 ~ 8 hundred、thousand、million、billion 等几个词的用法。

① 表示不确切数目时,这时要在 hundred, thousand, million, billion 后加-s 和 of 连用,表示成百、成千上万的意思,此时这些词前不可加基数词。

[例] The winner makes a record and millions of copies of the record are sold.

“获胜者制作了唱片,数百万张被销售出去。”

② 这几个词在一个确定的数字后表确切的数目时不能接 of, 且不用复数形式。

【例】Again, it was a great success and the final program was watched by 15 million people. [江苏高考题]

“它又一次变得很成功,最后的节目有一千五百万人观看。”

本句中 million 前有具体数字,应用单数。

温馨提示

但如表不确切数量,又不接名词(多根据上下文省略了),不用介词 of。

【例】—How much does she earn? —She earns many hundreds / thousands. “她挣多少钱?”“好几百/千。”

many hundreds / thousands 后省略了 of dollars。

14-9 dozen 和 score 的用法与 hundred 等几个词相似。dozen(十二)、score(二十)前有具体数词或 some、several 等词时,没有复数;其复数形式后接 of 短语时,则表“数打、数十”,是概数。

① dozen“十二”前有具体数字时通常用单数形式,且后面多直接跟名词。如:three dozen pencils.

【例】Shortly after the accident, two _____ police were sent to the spot to keep order.

A. dozen of B. dozens C. dozen D. dozens of [全国高考题]

答案是 C。“事故刚发生不久,24 名警察就被派往现场维持秩序。”dozen 与数词 two 连用表数量,用单数形式。

② score“二十”是单复同形的名词,后跟复数名词时常先加介词 of。如:a score of people 二十人。但是习惯说“活七十岁”为“to live for three score years and ten”。

③ 复数形式 dozens 和 scores 常与 of 连用,表示“许多”。

【例】—She went to the bookstore and bought _____. [北京高考题]

A. dozen books B. dozens books C. dozen of books D. dozens of books

答案是 D。“她去了书店,买了许多书。”dozen 意思是“一打,十二个”,前加数词时要用单数形式,后接 of 时要用复数形式。dozens of 意为“若干,许多”。

【例】I have heard of that scores of times. “那件事我已听过很多遍了。”

帮你归纳

类似不具体数量的修饰语常见的还有:

I. a great deal of 大量

a large amount of 大量

much 许多;大量

a bit of 一点

a little “一点”(不接 of) + 不可数名词;或 + of + the, my 等限定词 + 不可数名词

} + 不可数名词

II. (无 a) plenty of 足够的; 大量

a lot of 许多; 大量

a great mass of 大量

a large quantity of 大量

+ 不可数名词
+ 可数名词复数

III. a (large) number of 若干; 大量

a good / great many (无 of) 大量

many 许多; 大量

many a “许多; 大量” + 可数名词单数; many of + the, my 等限定词 + 可数名词复数

IV. lots of 许多; 大量

(large) masses of 大量

(large) quantities of 大量

(large) amounts of 大量

(large) numbers of “若干; 大量” + 可数名词复数

+ 可数名词复数
+ 不可数名词

[例] The young dancers looked so charming in their beautiful clothes that we took _____ pictures of them. [上海高考题]

A. many of B. masses of C. the number of D. a large amount of

答案是 B。“那些年轻的舞者穿着漂亮的衣服多么迷人,我们拍摄了他们大量照片。”A 项中若没有 of 也对。C 项中如把 the 换成 a 也正确。D 项修饰不可数名词。masses of 可修饰可数名词与不可数名词。本题中的 pictures 为可数名词。故选 B。

[例] 改错: I was happy with any programme but the others spent a lot time arguing. . .

答案是在 a lot 后加 of。“我对任何电视节目都满意,但其他人花许多时间争论…” a lot of 作定语修饰 time, 其中的 of 不能遗漏。 [全国高考题]

14-10 年龄表示法

基数词表示年龄一般有以下几种方法:

① “基数词 (+ years old)”;

[例] I was 9 years old when I found my father was ill.

“当我发现父亲生病时我九岁。”

[例] For children six to twelve years old, give half the amount. For children under six years old, ask your doctor's advice.

“对 6 岁到 12 岁的儿童,用量减半。6 岁以下的儿童,谨遵医嘱。”

② “at (或 under) the age of + 基数词”,也可把 the 和 of 省略。

[例] The 20 gold medal winners are all primary and middle school students under the age of 14. “这20位金牌获得者全是14岁以下的中小學生。”

[例] She took up skating at age 85. “她85岁从事溜冰。”

③ “a + 基数词-year-old + 名词”。

[例] Allan goes everywhere with Birgita Anderson, a 54-year-old secretary. “艾伦(一只狗)和54岁的秘书波尔吉塔·安德森一起到处跑。”

温馨提示

带上连字符构成一个形容词,即使名词表示复数概念也不用复数形式。数词的这种构词情况在英语中十分常见。

[例] It took us quite a long time to get here. It was _____ journey.

A. three hour B. a three hour C. a three-hour D. three hours

答案是C。“我们用了很长的时间才到达那里。是三个小时的行程。”journey为可数名词,表示“一次旅行或行程”时,应与不定冠词连用。“三个小时”在此作前置定语修饰journey,应用“数词+连字符+名词单数(即使为复数概念)”,故选C项(也可换为a three hours)。

④ “of + 基数词(+ years)”。

[例] Sun Shuwei, a world champion in diving, is a boy of 14 from Guangdong. He came to the national team at the age of 13.

[全国高考题]

“世界跳水冠军孙淑伟是来自广东的一位选手,今年14岁,他是13岁时来到国家队的。”

14-11 年代表示法:“in the + 年代 + s(或's)”表示“在…世纪…年代”。“in one's + 整10数的复数形式”表示一个不确定的年龄。



[例] It is not rare in _____ that people in _____ fifties are going to university for further education.

[上海高考题]

A. 90s; the B. the 90s; / C. 90s; their D. the 90s; their

答案是D。“人们在50多岁时上大学进行深造在90年代不稀奇。”

[例] Records showed the LeBemuth came from Belgium and studied in the school in the 277

1920s.

[全国高考]

“记录表明莱贝默斯来自比利时,20世纪20年代在这所学校学习过。”

14-12 基数词在句中可作主语、宾语、定语、表语和同位语。

- [例] Fifty years ago, only 4 out of every 100 people in the United States were 65 or older.
“50年前,美国100个人里只有4个人能活到65岁或更老些。”
本句中基数词4作主语,65作表语。

- [例] Is there room for us two? “有我们两人的位置吗?”
two作us的同位语。

第三节 序数词

14-13 表示数目顺序的词是序数词。1-3的序数词形式特殊,是first, second和third。

- [例] On the first day of Camp, you came up to me while I was sitting alone.
“在野营的第一天,当我正一个人坐着时你向我走来。”

- [例] One store has three different jars of low fat milk. One says “1 percent fat” on the jar. The second says “99 percent fat free”. The third says “LOW FAT” in big letters and “1%” in small letters.

[全国高考题]

“有家商店出售三种不同的罐装低脂肪的牛奶。一个瓶子上写着‘1%的脂肪’,第二个写着‘99%不含脂肪’,第三个瓶子上用大写字母写着‘低脂’但用小写字母写着‘1%’。”

14-14 4-19之间序数词的构成方式都是在基数词后加-th;但有4个拼写有变化:5th/fifth, 8th/eighth//, 9th/ninth, 12th/twelfth。

- [例] As is planning, I'm coming to Boston around the 15th, and I wonder if you'll be free then so we could chat about the good older days.
“作为计划,我将在15号左右去波士顿,我不知你那时是否有空这样我们就能聊聊美好的过去。”

- [例] Their office is on the _____ (第九) floor.

答案是ninth。“他们的办公室在第九层上。”注意基数词nine后的“e”要去掉,再加th。

14-15 以-ty结尾的整十位数的序数词(除ten)将y变为i,再加eth构成单词。注意读音中的/ɪə/。

整10位数的词,除10外,全都以ty结尾。在变序数词时要先将y变成i,再加

eth 构成序数词。它们是 twentieth/'twenti:tɪθ/, thirtieth/'θɜ: tɪθ/, fortieth, fiftieth, sixtieth, seventieth, eightieth, ninetieth。

14-16 21 以上的多位序数词, 只将末位数变为序数词, 前面的其他位数仍用基数词。

21st→twenty-first 33rd→thirty-third 49th→forty-ninth 100th→one hundredth
1001st→one thousand and first

[例] The 21st Century English Training Center offer morning or afternoon classes, both of which last three months and a half at a cost of 800 yuan. [全国高考题]

“二十一世纪英文培训中心设上午或下午班, 都是 3 个半月, 学费 800 元。”

14-17 序数词前常用定冠词, 但表示“又一”的概念时用不定冠词, 表示“又一个”、“另外的”、“再来一份”等概念。

[例] She sat at the last seat but one. “她坐在倒数第二个座位上。”

[例] Luckily, the teacher did not punish me for cheating but instead gave me a second chance. [湖南高考题]

“幸运的是老师没有因我作弊惩罚我, 相反他给了我第二次机会。”这里 a 表示“又一个(次)”

14-18 基数词表顺序, 置于名词之后; 序数词表顺序, 置于名词之前。

基数词与序数词都可表示顺序, 但基数词往往放在名词之后, 而序数词却放在名词之前, 且与 the 连用。例如:

Part Two—the Second Part

Lesson Seven—the Seventh Lesson

page 48—the forty-eighth page

Room 302, World War II (等多用基数词表示, 也

可说 the 302nd room, the Second World War.)

[例] He is a student of _____.

[全国高考题]

A. Class First B. the Class One C. Class One D. First Class

答案是 C。“他是一班的学生。”

温馨提示



(1) 多少世纪、多少届会议/赛事, 事实上在排序, 常用序数词。

[例] The 29th Olympic Games will be held in Beijing. “29 届奥运会将在北京举行。”

[例] We are now in the 21st century. “我们现在都 21 世纪了。”



- (2) 上述序数词前用定冠词 the, 但如上情况作定语, 修饰单数可数名词, 要与不定冠词连用。

[例] The Wilsons live in _____ A-shaped house near the coast. It is _____ 17th century cottage. [浙江高考题]

A. the, / B. an, the C. /, the D. an, a

答案是 D。“威尔逊一家住在靠近海边的一座 A 形房子里。它是一座 17 世纪的别墅。”前空表示“一所 A 形的房子”, 应用不定冠词 an (A 元音因素开头), 表示泛指。后句中的 17th century 作定语, 因此后空也用不定冠词, 限定 cottage, 表示泛指“一座别墅”。

- (3) 不可受汉语影响多加名词。

[例] 改错: Today I visited the Smiths—my first time visit to an American family.

答案是把 time 去掉。“今天我拜访了史密斯一家人,——我第一次拜访一个美国家庭。”英语中的序数词含有汉语的排序名词“次、届”等意。

14-19 序数词在句中可做主语、定语、宾语、表语和状语。

[例] When you first came here, were there any other courses taught? “当你第一次来到这里时, 开设有其他课程吗?”

这里 first 做状语。

[例] With a population of 48,953, Santa Fe is now the second largest city in the state.

“圣菲有 48,953 人口, 现在是这个州的第二大城市。”

本句中的 second 修饰 largest, 可看作是状语。

[例] He is among the first to arrive. “他是第一批到达的。”

the first 做介词 among 的宾语。

[例] He is always the second in his class. “他在班里老是第二。”

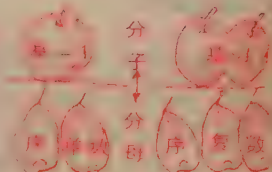
第四节 分数、百分数和小数

14-20 分数由基数词与序数词构成, 基数词做分子, 序数词做分母。分子大于 1 时, 分母用复数。先读分子, 再读分母。复杂的分数的读法为“分子 + over + 分母”, 分子和分母都用基数词来读。

[例] He did it _____ it took me. [北京高考题]

A. one third a time B. one third time
C. the one third time D. one third the time

答案是 D。“他做此事的时间是我做此事的时间的



三分之一。”“one third”表示“三分之一”

[例] The 10-year study of 150 American children found two-thirds of children with overweight parents became overweight.

[天津高考题]

“对150名美国儿童进行10年的研究发现超重父母的三分之二儿童变得超重。”

[例] 请用英语读出 234/5687

答案是“two hundred and thirty-four over five thousand six hundred and eighty-seven”。

温馨提示

$1/2$ 常读作 a half (而不是 one second); $3/4$ 除可读作 three fourths 外, 还可读作 three quarters。

14-21 小数的读法: 整数部分按基数词的读法读, 小数点读作“point”, 小数部分只需依次读出数码。“0”读作 zero 或 nought/nɔ:t/. 也可所有的部分都依次读出数字。

[例] 读出下列小数: 0.03, 12.12

答案是 0.03 读 (zero) point zero three; 12.12 读 twelve point one two 或读 one two point one two。



高中英语语法

14-22 分数可做主语、宾语、表语、定语和状语, 做主语时句子谓语动词的数与分数所代表的名词保持一致。

[例] Two fifths of the machines on display were new items. “展出的机器五分之二都是新产品。”这里分数后的名词 the machines 是可数名词复数, 是复数概念, 所以谓语动词用 were。

温馨提示

百分数由“基数词 + percent”构成。由百分数构成的短语做主语时, 句子谓语动词与百分数所代表的名词保持一致。

[例] More than 40 percent (of the students) wear glasses. “40% 以上(的学生)戴眼镜。”(这里的主语“40% 的学生”是复数概念。)

[例] Nearly 70 percent of the fund (资金) was supplied by the government. “将近70% 的资金由政府提供。”(这里 the fund 是一个不可数名词, 所以, 主语“约70% 的 fund”也是不可数的概念。)

第五节 数学运算式

14-23 数学运算的“+、-、×、÷”常读作 plus, minus, times 和 divided by。

[例] 读出下列算式: $3 + 4 = 7$ $7 - 4 = 3$ $4 \times 3 = 12$ $12 \div 3 = 4$

答案是: $3 + 4 = 7$ 读作: Three plus four is (或 makes, equals) seven.

$7 - 4 = 3$ 读作: Seven minus four is three. 或: Four from seven is three.

$4 \times 3 = 12$ 读作: Three times four is twelve. 或 Four multiplied by three is twelve.

$12 \div 3 = 4$ 读作: Twelve divided by three is four. 或 Three goes into twelve four times.

第六节 年、月、日

14-24 年份的读法一般两位两位地读。整百的后加“hundred”。BC 表“公元前”;AD 表“公元后”。

[例] 读出下列年份: 1999, 2000, 2001, 685 B. C. A. D. 685 1900's/1990s

答案是: 1999 读 nineteen ninety-nine 2000 读 the year two thousand

2001 读 twenty oh one 685 B. C. 读 six eight five B C

A. D. 685 读 A D six eight five 1990's/1990s 读: nineteen nineties

14-25 日子的读法用序数词,其前常加 the。先读日子后读月份时,月份前加“of”。

[例] 读出: April 4 (th)

答案: April (the) fourth 或 (the) fourth of April “4月4日”

[例] I'd like to book a room for the nights of the 18th and 19th.

“我想为 18、19 号两晚订房间。”

第七节 时刻表达法

14-26 时刻的读法常用的有两种:倒读法是前半个小时用“分钟数(或 quarter, half) + past + 刚过的点钟数”;后半个小时用“分钟数(或 quarter) + to + 下一个点钟数”。顺读法只需依次读出点钟数和分钟数。整点钟时其后都可加“o'clock”。

正午前可加“a. m.”;正午后可加“p. m.”。

[例] 读出下列时刻: 8:00 8:10 8:15 8:30 8:45 8:50

答案是: 8:00 p. m. 读 eight (o'clock) p. m. “晚上八点整”

8:10 倒读: ten past eight 顺读: eight ten

8:15 倒读: (a) quarter past eight 顺读: eight fifteen

8:30 倒读:half past eight 顺读:eight thirty

8:45 倒读:(a) quarter to nine 顺读:eight forty-five

8:50 倒读:ten to nine 顺读:eight fifty

温馨提示

时刻也可以用24小时制读法。只需依次读出点钟数和分钟数。整点钟时,可在最后加读“hundred(hours)”。

[例] 用顺读法和24小时制读法读出下列时刻:18:00 18:15 18:30 18:45

答案是:18:00 eighteen hundred (hours) 18:15 eighteen fifteen

18:30 eighteen thirty 18:45 eighteen forty-five

第八节 倍数表达法

14-27 表达倍数时,常用 half 表示“一半”,用 double、twice 表示“两倍”,用 times 表示三以上的倍数。

① “half + of + (代)名词”做主语时,谓语与代词或名词保持一致。

[例] Half the orange was rotten. “半个橙子已经烂掉了。”

这里 orange 是单数,主语 Half 代表单数概念,所以谓语动词用单数 was。

[例] Half of the oranges in the box were rotten.
“箱子里的橙子有一半是坏的。”

这句话的 oranges 是复数,主语 Half 代表复数概念,故谓语动词用复数 were。

② half 可与 a(n), the 或 one's 连用。

[例] Having waited in the queue for half an hour, Tom suddenly realized that he had left his wallet at home.

[北京高考题]

“在队伍中等了半个小时,汤姆突然意识到他把钱包丢在家里了。”

[例] I have read half the book already. “这本书我已看了一半。”

③ “half as many (much)... as...” 表示“...的半数”。

[例] He has collected half as many stamps as you. “他收集的邮票数量是你的一半。”

④ two miles and a half = two and a half miles.

six hours and a half = six and a half hours.

⑤ twice 表示“两倍”的句型。

[例] Americans eat _____ vegetables per person today as they did in 1910.

A. more than twice

B. as twice as many

C. twice as many as

D. more than twice as many

答案是 D。“美国人今天每人吃的蔬菜是他们在 1910 年吃的两倍多。”首先要了解“as...as...”的句型应用。句中已出现一个 as(连词),所以空格处也只能出现另一个 as(副词),故先排除 A 和 C。如有倍数词,则倍数词应放在第一个 as 的前面。

[例] It is reported that the United States uses _____ energy as the whole of Europe.

A. as twice B. twice much C. twice much as D. twice as much

答案是 D。“据报道,美国所用的能源是整个欧洲的两倍。”“两倍于...”用 twice as much as 或 twice as many as 表示。energy 为不可数名词。

⑥ double 也可以用来表示“二倍或增加了一倍”。

[例] Our total income of 1986 was double that of 1980. “我们 1986 年的总收入比 1980 年增加了一倍。”

[例] Sales doubled this year. “今年的销售额增加了一倍。”

14-28 表示倍数的常用句型。



① “...times as + big/high/long/wide/heavy 等形容词 + as...”

[例] The house rent is expensive. I've got about half the space I had at home and I'm paying _____ here. [上海高考题]

A. as three times much

B. as much three times

C. much as three times

D. three times as much

答案是 D。“房租很贵,在这里我付了是在家三倍的房租却只得到约在家里一半的空间。”本题中的第二句的第二分句采用的是省略式。其完整式应为“I'm paying three times as much rent here as at home.”。

② “...times + the size/height/length/width/weight/amount 等名词 + of...”

[例] A rough estimate, Nigeria is _____ Great Britain. [上海高考题]

A. three times the size as

B. the size three times of

C. three times as the size of

D. three times the size of

答案是 D。“粗略估计,尼日利亚的面积是英国的三倍。”size 为名词,应用“倍数 + 名词 + of...”结构。

③ “...times + bigger/higher/longer/wider/heavier 等比较级形容词 + than...”

[例] The meeting room is three times bigger than our office. “会议室比我们的办公室大 3 倍。”(是 4 倍大)

即学即用

- After the new technique was introduced, the factory produced _____ tractors in 1988 as the year before. [全国高考题]
A. as twice many B. as many twice C. twice as many D. twice many as
- In 1948, the place where his father had been buried was finally discovered, marked only by _____, on a simple stone.
A. a 43-number B. the number 43rd C. the number 43 D. the 43 number
- Mr Smith _____ me to buy several _____ eggs for the dinner party. [上海高考题]
A. asked; dozen B. suggested; dozens of C. had; dozen D. persuaded; dozens
- _____ of the land in that district _____ covered with trees and grass. [全国高考题]
A. Two fifth; is B. Two fifth; are C. Two fifths; is D. Two fifths'; are
- With the help of the German experts, the factory produced _____ cars in 1993 as the year before. [全国高考题]
A. as twice many B. as many twice C. as twice many D. twice as many
- Paper produced every year is _____ the world's production of vehicles. [全国高考题]
A. the three times weight of B. three times the weight of
C. as three times heavy as D. three times as heavier as
- Two _____ died of cold last winter. [全国高考题]
A. hundreds old people B. hundred old people
C. hundreds old peoples D. hundred old peoples
- Many students signed up for the _____ race in the sports meeting to be held next week. [上海高考题]
A. 800-meter-long B. 800-meters-long C. 800 meter length D. 800 meters length
- The village is far away from here indeed. It's _____ walk. _____ [上海高考题]
A. a four hour B. a four hour's C. a four-hours D. a four hours'
- As a result of destroying the forests, a large _____ of desert _____ covered the land. [全国高考题]
A. number; has B. quantity; has C. number; have D. quantity; have
- _____ twenty-fifth of December is _____ Christmas Day.
A. The; a B. The; the C. A; the D. The; /
- Every few _____ along the Great Wall there are some watch towers.
A. hundreds metres B. hundreds of metres
C. hundred metres D. hundred of metres
- He served in the army in _____, when he was in _____.
A. 1940's; his twenties B. 1940's; the twenties

C. the fifties; his sixties

D. fifty; sixty

14. Because of the traffic jam they got to the theatre just before the end of _____.

A. Act Second

B. the Act Two

C. Act Two

D. Second Act

15. He has been here for _____.

A. two and a half months

B. two and half a month

C. two and the half months

D. two and a half month

16. Seven _____ of the students in our class _____ from the north.

A. nineths; are

B. ninths; are

C. ninth; is

D. ninths; is

17. It's said that _____ of people have visited the museum since it was set up.

A. thousand upon thousand

B. thousands upon thousands

C. thousands upon thousand

D. thousand upon thousands

18. He was urged _____ time to hand in his composition.

A. the second

B. a first

C. the first

D. a second

19. —What time is it now?

—It's _____.

A. ten to nine

B. fifty past eight

C. eight past fifty

D. fifty eight.

20. He has _____.

A. ten-five-yuan notes

B. ten-five-yuan notes

C. ten five yuans' notes

D. ten five-yuan notes

II 改错(一句话中只有一处错误)

1. I have come here for a first time.

2. Monday is a second day of the week.

3. We have fourteen Party members in our factory.

4. The two Germans live in the five floor.

5. The 21 Century English Training Centre is only 15 minutes' walk from the city centre.

6. It doesn't surprise us to hear a 29 years old university president.

7. They had just climbed their way to the top rung(阶梯) out of hundred of students taking part in the Fifth National Hua Luogeng Gold Cup Mathematics Contest.

8. Five thousands of them are female.

9. Much to our surprise, as much as 60% of the army men here have had high education.

10. The palace was built from more than two millions stone blocks, each of them twice the weight of a car.



点石成金

I. 单项选择

1. C 应用 twice as many 与后面的 as 构成倍数句型,表示“拖拉机的产量的两倍”。

基数词 43 作 the number 的同位语,表示“43 这个数字”,置于名词 the (表示特指) number 之后。

根据第一空,B、C 错误,因为 suggest 后不用不定式,had 使役动词后要省略 to;而 several 修饰 dozen 为具体的数,dozen 后不能用复数形式。

分子大于 2,分母要用复数。the land 为不可数,决定了谓语的数是单数。

根据倍数表达法,应用 twice (倍数词) + as many...as (中间为其他成分隔开)。

表示“是…重量的三倍”,应用 three times the weight (名词) of...亦可用 three times as heavy (形容词应用原级,可排除 D)或 twice heavier than...。故选 B。

指具体数目“二百老人”,hundred 不用复数;非指“民族”people 的复数形式不能用 peoples。

有连字符时,短语作定语相当于一个形容词,meter 不能用复数形式;也不用名词 length。

表示“四个小时的路程”,应用 a four hours' (名词所有格)作定语,相当于 a four-hour (用连字符)。

A large quantity of + 不可数名词,谓语用单数形式;a number of + 可数名词复数形式,谓语用复数形式。

序数词表示日期要用定冠词 the。Christmas Day 为节日不用冠词。

every few + 数词,数词常用单数(hundred)。

A 和 B 的前项都缺少定冠词 the;D 为单数;三者都应排除。故选 C。

表示“第二场/幕”,应用“名词+基数词”,即 Act Two,相当于 the Second Act。

表示“两个半月”,应用 two and a half months 或 two months and a half。

分子大于 2,分母要用复数(ninths 为正确的书写形式),分数修饰的为可数名词 the students,谓语动词应用复数 are。

由 of 及句意可知,此处表示不具体数目“成千上万的”,应用 thousands of;更强调,前一个 thousand 也非指具体数目,也用 thousands。

18. D. 表示“再次受到催促”,应 a second time。

19. A 为时间的正确的读法,也可说成 eight fifty。超过不用 past;小时没有 50。故可排除 B、C、D。

20. D 表示“十张五元的钞票”,应用 ten(数词,修饰 notes,不能与 five yuan 连写,应排除 A 和 B)five-yuan(为汉语单位没有复数形式应排除 C)notes。

II 改错。

1. a 改为 the 2. a 改为 the 3. fourteen 改为 fourteen 4. five 改为 fifth

5. The 21 改为 The 21st 6. 29 years old 改为 29-year-old 7. hundred 改为 hundreds

8. thousands 改为 thousand 9. 第二 much 改为 many 10. millions 改为 million

第15章

冠词



高考热点

冠词的用法是高考的考点之一。纵观历届高考试题,对冠词的考查主要集中在定冠词与不定冠词的基本用法、名词前不用冠词的情况以及习语中冠词的用法等。对冠词用法的考查几乎每年单选题中都有,有时也会在改错题中出现。单选题一道题多设计为两空,甚至三空。这不但增加冠词的考点,也反映出英语中冠词数量虽然最少,但使用的频率极高(一、两个句子或一个单对话就可能出现几个冠词的不同用法)。

掌握冠词用法的关键是:记住可数名词与不可数名词的用法特点;熟悉习惯搭配以及具体名词与抽象名词的转化规律;搞清泛指和特指、类指和专指等概念。

第一节 冠词的基本概念及分类

15-1 冠词是一个虚词,一般不能单独使用。它置于名词之前,限定名词的意义。冠词可分为不定冠词(a、an)、定冠词(the)和零(不用)冠词三类。

[例] 改错: I started writing down words from books that I read.

答案是在 books 加 the。“我开始从我看的书中摘录词语。”由 books 后的定语从句可知此处的 books 为特指“自己看的那些书”,应与定语冠词 the 连用。

[例] If you grow up in _____ large family, you are more likely to develop _____ ability to get on well with _____ others.

[江西高考题]

A. /; an; the B. a; the; / C. the; an; the D. a; the; the

答案是 B。“如果你在一个大家庭里长大,你就更有可能养成与别人融洽相处

的能力。”泛指“一个大家庭(第一次提到)”,前空要用不定冠词 a;第二空特指具体“与别人相处的能力”,要用定冠词;后空泛指“其他人,别人”,用复数形式 others,用零冠词(不用冠词)。

温馨提示

冠词是限定词的一种。多个限定词修饰一个名词时,冠词一般居首位;但少数结构特殊,主要有:“all / both / half + the + 名词”,“such / quite / what + a(n) + 形容词 + 名词”和“so/how/too/as + 形容词 + a(n) + 名词”的结构。[参见 11—6、12—20 等]

[例] 改错 It is so a beautiful place!

答案是把 so 改为 such。“它是如此美丽的地方。”such 应于不定冠词 a / an 前:such a beautiful place。此外,本题亦可改成:so beautiful a place。

[例] We were in _____ when we left that we forgot the airline tickets.

- A. a rush so anxious B. a such anxious rush
C. so an anxious rush D. such an anxious rush

答案是 D。“我们离开时是如此匆忙以致忘了飞机票。”rush 为可数名词,应用“such + a(n) + 形容词 + 名词”。

帮你归纳

还可说:

quite a rich country 相当富有的国家

what a rich country = how rich a country 多么富有的国家

so rich a country = such a rich country 如此富有的国家

too rich a country 特别富有的国家

as rich a country as America 像美国那么富有的国家

all the countries 所有的国家 both the countries 两国

half the country 全国有一半人

第二节 冠词的用法区别

15-2 a 用于辅音音素开头的单词前;an 用于元音音素开头的单词前。

[例] Choosing right is an art, I believe.

“我认为选择合适是一种艺术。”

art 是元音音素开头, 前用 an。

[例] Mrs. Taylor has _____ 8-year-old daughter who has _____ gift for painting-she has won two national prizes.

[浙江高考题]

A. a; a B. an; the C. an; a D. the; a

答案是 C。“泰勒夫人有一位对绘画有天赋的八岁女儿——她已经获得过两次国家奖。”前一空 8-year-old 读音是以元音音素 [eɪ] 开头, 要用 an, 这里 an 具有 one 的含义, 表示“一个”。第二空 have a gift for 意思为“对…有天赋”(为固定用法), 其中 gift 辅音 [g] 开头, 用 a。

温馨提示

元音音素前用 an, 而不是元音字母前。

[例] Please pay attention to your spelling. You have dropped _____ “m” here.

A. an B. the C. / D. a

答案是 A。“请注意你的拼写, 你这儿少写了一个 m。”m [em] 的第一个音是元音音素 [e], 所以用不定冠词 an。

15-3 第一次提到某人或某物时, 一般用 a 或 an。特指前文已提到的或谈话双方都知道的人或物时要用 the。

[例] Childhood was an illusion and the illusion was this: everything was bigger.

“童年是一场错觉, 这错觉是这样的: 任何东西都更大一点。”

第一次提到 illusion 用 an; 第二次提到 illusion 时则用 the, 特指与上文所提到的为同一件事。

[例] —I knocked over my coffee cup. It went right over _____ keyboard.

—You shouldn't put drinks near _____ computer.

A. the; 不填 B. the; a C. a; 不填 D. a; a

答案是 B。“我打翻了 my 咖啡, 它正好流到键盘上。”“你不应该把饮料放在电脑附近。”keyboard 表示特指, 指双方心中都知道的那个键盘, 用 the。第二空用“a”类指“电脑”这一类事物。当然也可用 the (表示特指或类指), 但选项中没有。故选 B。

15-4 表“类别”时, 不可数名词前一般不用任何冠词 (不用冠词)。

[例] Mr. Smith, there's a man at _____ front door who says he has _____ news for you of great importance.

[北京高考题]

A. the; 不填 B. the; the C. 不填; 不填 D. 不填; the

答案是 A。“史密斯先生,前门有一个人说他有一个非常重要的消息要告诉你。”“前门”是特指“说话人双方都知道的”,要用定冠词 the。“消息(news)”此处表“类别”(说明带给你的不是别的东西),不用任何冠词。

15-5 表“类别”时,复数可数名词前不用冠词(零冠词);单数可数名词前可加 a(n), (是以其中的一个来代表一类),也可加 the(是用来指出事物的整体,暗示与其他类事物区别开来),即前不用零冠词。

[例] Everywhere man has cut down _____ forests in order to grow crops, or to use _____ wood as fuel or as building material. [重庆高考题]

A. the; the B. the; / C. /; the D. /; /

答案是 C。“人类到处砍伐森林来种植庄稼或用其木材作燃料或建筑材料”。前空 forests 用复数形式泛指一类事物,不用任何冠词。第二空 wood 特指被砍伐的森林里的木材,应用定冠词 the。

[例] Alexander Graham Bell invented _____ phone in 1876. [全国高考题]

A. / B. a C. the D. one

答案是 C。“亚历山大·格雷厄姆·贝尔于 1876 年发明了电话。”the 与 phone 连用,指“电话”这类东西(而不指特定的对象),以区别于“电视”、“电灯”等其他类别。

15-6 当名词后有后置定语时,前面多用 the,特指某人或某物;但若指一类事物时(尤其是下定义的句子),前面则常用 a/an。

[例] I know you don't like _____ music very much. But what do you think of _____ music in the film we saw yesterday? [全国高考题]

A. 不填;不填 B. the; the C. the; 不填 D. 不填; the

答案是 D。“我知道你不很喜欢音乐,但是你认为我们昨天看的电影里的音乐怎样?”music 为不可数名词,前一空类指“音乐”,用零冠词;第二空有定语修饰,表示特指,故用定冠词 the。

[例] It is _____ world of wonders, _____ world where anything can happen.

A. a; the B. a; a C. the; a D. /; / [福建高考题]

答案是 B。“这是一个奇妙的世界,一个什么事都有可能发生的世界”。题中两个 world 都有定语修饰,都类指,尤其后者是前者的同位语,起解释说明作用,等于在下定义。

15-7 西洋乐器名称前用 the,而中国民族乐器前不用冠词。

[例] After watching _____ TV, she played _____ violin for an hour. [全国高考题] 291

A. 不填, 不填 B. the, the C. the, 不填 D. 不填, the

答案是 D。“看过电视后,她拉了一个小时的小提琴。”play(弹,演奏)后接西洋乐器 violin,要用 the; watch TV 是习惯说法,不用冠词。

[例] Ah Bing played Erhu very well. “阿炳的二胡拉得非常好。”
“二胡”为中国民族乐器,其前不用冠词。

15-8 序数词强调顺序时一般用 the。但有时用“a(n) + 序数词”结构表示在原来的基础上增加,意思为“又,还,再”。



[例] The cakes are delicious. He'd like to have _____ third one because second one is rather too small. [上海高考题]

A. a; a B. the; the C. a; the D. the; a

答案是 C。“那块蛋糕好吃,他想再来一块,因为第二块实在太小了。”前空泛指“又一”、“再一”,a third 相当于 another。后空特指“已经吃下的(按顺序的)第二块”。

15-9 形容词和副词的最高级前一般要用 the; 副词前的 the 常可省略。但“a(n) + 最高级”结构表示“非常…”、“极其…”。



[例] Of all _____ reasons for my decision to become a university professor, my father's advice was _____ most important one. [全国高考题]

A. the; a B. 不填; a C. 不填; the D. the; the

答案是 D。“我决定成为大学教授的所有理由中,我父亲的建议是最重要的之一。”of all 特指“在所有的…中”,后接复数名词时,名词前要加 the。而在此范围内的比较,most important 是形容词的最高级,前面也要加定冠词 the。

[例] That was a most exciting game. “那是场极其令人兴奋的比赛”。
没有比较范围。

15-10 表自然现象的名词前要用 the;但其前有形容词修饰时,则常用 a (n)。

[例] The wind is rising. It's a fair wind. “风刮起来了,是顺风。”

联想记忆

a west wind 西风, a warm gentle wind 温暖的微风, 等等。

in the rain 在雨中, in a heavy (light, fine) rain 在大(小, 细)雨中, 等等。

15-11 “a + 不可数名词”常使抽象名词具体化为“一种”;通常抽象名词前不加任何冠词。[参见 13-1 附表]

[例] One way to understand thousands of new words is to gain _____ good knowledge of basic word formation. [上海高考题]

A. / B. the C. a D. one

答案是 C。“理解上千个生词的一个方法就是获得良好的单词基本构词法知识。”knowledge(知识)本为不可数名词,但“a good knowledge of...”已具体化为“对...有良好的知识(或了解)”。

[例] Jumping out of _____ airplane at ten thousand feet is quite exciting experience.

A. /; the B. /; an C. an; an D. the; the [全国高考题]

答案是 C。“从一万英尺高的飞机上跳下是一个十分令人兴奋的经历。”前空泛指“飞机”这一类事物;后空 experience 此处指具体的一次“经历”,而不是作不可数名词“经验”解。故两者都用不定冠词。

15-12 表三餐的名词前一般不用冠词;但若其前面有修饰性形容词时,用 a/an;如特指某餐时用 the。

[例] They did not want breakfast because they were going out early in the morning.

“他们没要早餐因为他们早晨早要出去。”

[例] This is a good lunch. “这是顿丰盛的午餐。”

[例] How do you like the breakfast? “你觉得这早餐怎么样?”

15-13 表季节、月份、星期的名词前一般不用冠词;但若表特指时可用 the,表示具有某种特点时或某一个时,可用 a/an。

[例] August comes before September. “八月份在九月份之前。”

[例] It's cold in winter. “冬天冷。”

[例] During the summer of 2001, I started reading books in English, mostly stories.

“2001 年的夏天,我开始阅读英文书,大多是小说。”

[例] It was a hard winter. “那是个严寒的冬季。”

[例] I can't remember when exactly the Robinsons left _____ city. I only remember it was _____ Monday.

[湖南高考题]

A. the; the B. a; the C. a; a D. the; a

答案是 D。“我记不得罗宾森夫妇离开城市的确切时间,我只记得是某一个星期一。”前空是指说话双方都知道的那个城市,是特指,应用 the;后空是指“某个(星期一)”,用不定冠词 a。

15-14 学科名词前一般不加冠词;但表特指时要加 the。

[例] Five years ago her brother was _____ university student of _____ physics.

A. a; the B. an; the C. an; / D. a; / [上海高考题]

答案是 D。“五年前她的哥哥是一位物理学大学生”,因为 university 是以辅音[j]开头的要用 a,排除 B 和 C;后空泛指 physics 学科,其前面不用冠词。

[例] What's the English for“钢笔”?“英语中的‘钢笔’怎么说?”

English 已不是单纯的学科“英语”的意思,而是特指“钢笔”所对应的“英文”,其前要加 the。

15-15 表示西方节日的名词前一般不用冠词,但中国有的传统节日名称前常用 the。



[例] How did you celebrate May Day this year? “你怎么庆祝今年的劳动节?”

帮你归纳

- (1) 表示节日的常见名词有: New Year's Day 元旦, Christmas Day 圣诞节, April Fools' Day 愚人节, Easter Day 复活节(11月第4个星期四), Thanksgiving Day 感恩节, Father's Day 父亲节(6月的第3个星期天), 等。
- (2) 在中国有的传统节日前多要用 the, 如: the Spring Festival 春节, the Lantern Festival 元宵节, the Mid-autumn Festival 中秋节。

[例] When I was a boy, the most exciting thing was to celebrate the Spring Festival.

“当我是小男孩的时候最兴奋的事就是庆祝春节”。

15-16 专有名词前一般不用冠词;但“a(n) + 人名”可表示“一个名叫…的人”或“一个具有某名人特色的人”。若有由普通名词构成的专有名词,则其前多用 the。

[例] —Hello, could I speak to Mr. Smith?

—Sorry, wrong number. There isn't _____ Mr. Smith here.

[全国高考题]

A. 不填 B. a C. the D. one

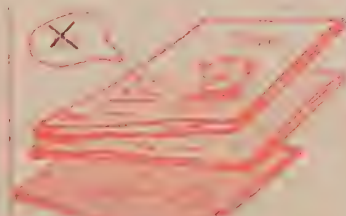
答案是 B。“喂! 请找史密斯先生接电话, 好吗?”“对不起, 你打错了。这里没有叫史密斯先生的人。”根据语境可判断出应用 a 表示泛指“一位叫史密斯先生的人”, 用 a Mr. Smith。

[例] After dinner he gave Mr. Richardson _____ ride to _____ Capital Airport.

A. the; a B. a; the C. 不填; a D. 不填; the [安徽高考题]

答案是 B。“饭后他开车送理查森先生到首都机场。”give sb. a ride 为固定短语, 而第二空表示的是特指“首都机场”(虽为专有名词, 但 capital 和 airport 原本为普通名词), 应用定冠词 the。

15-17 表示报纸的名称前常加 the, 但杂志的名称前常不加 the。



Time《时代》(周刊), New Scientist《新科学家》, The Times“泰晤士报”, The New York Times“纽约时报”, the People's Daily“人民日报”。

温馨提示

若以专有名词开头, 则不用 the。如: China Daily“中国日报”。

15-18 有些短语中用冠词与不用冠词含义不同。

[例] This book tells _____ life story of John Smith, who left _____ school and worked for a newspaper at the age of 16.

A. the; the B. a; the C. the; 不填 D. a; 不填 [辽宁高考题]

答案是 C。“这本书讲述了约翰·史密斯的生平故事, 他在 16 岁时离开了学校为一家报社工作”“of John Smith”作后置定语修饰名词 story, 用 the 特指“他的

生平故事”; leave school 表示“离校,毕业”,习惯上用零冠词(不用冠词)。

[例] —Where is Jack?

—I think he is still in _____ bed, but he might just be in _____ bathroom.

A. 不填;不填 B. the; the C. the; 不填 D. 不填; the

答案是 D。“杰克在哪儿?”“我想他还在床上呢,但也许在洗澡。”“be in bed”是固定词组,表示“卧床、(躺)在床上”,不要冠词。若用了 the,则特指在某张特定的床上,与上下文不符,故排除 B、C。而 in the bathroom(在洗澡)也为固定表达,应用 the。

帮你归纳

常见的这类短语有:

go to school 去上学——go to the school 到那所学校去办事

be in hospital 住院——be in the hospital 在医院里

go to sea 去航海,当水手——go to the sea 到海滨去

in church 做礼拜——in the church 在教堂里

go to college 上大学——go to the college 到那所大学去

take place 发生——take the place (of) 代替

at table 吃饭——at the table 在桌子旁边

few people 极少数人——a few people 一些人

little water 几乎没有水——a little water 一点水

two of us 我们中的两个人——the two of us 我们两个人

in front of 在前面——in the front of... 在...前部

第三节 常用不定冠词 a / an 的情况

15-19 “a(n) + 作表语或 as 后的名词”表示身份或职业。

[例] When he left _____ college, he got a job as _____ reporter in a newspaper office.

A. 不填; a B. 不填; the C. a; the D. the; the

答案是 A。“他大学毕业时,找到一份工作,在一家报社当记者。”leave college 表示“毕业”,名词前不必用任何冠词。后一空填不定冠词,表示类别或身份,不是特指。

15-20 a/an 表示“每一”(相当于 per),用于表示价格、速度、比率等的名词前。

[例] I earn 10 dollars _____ hour as supermarket cashier on Saturdays.

A. a; an B. the; a C. an; a D. an; the

答案是 C。“在星期六,作为一个超市的收银员,我每小时挣 10 美元。”不定冠

词可表达“每一”的概念。因 hour 的国际音标为元音,故第一空应选 an。又因 cashier 为单数可数名词,此处泛指一职业,故应选 a。

15-21 a/an 与 of 连用时,表示“同一的”、“相同的”。

[例] They are of a kind. “他们是同类的人”。

[例] Birds of a feather flock together. [谚]“物以类聚。”

15-22 在某些固定短语中必须用“a(n)”。

[例] —I'd like _____ information about the management of your hotel, please.

—Well, you could have _____ word with the manager. He might be helpful.

A. some; a B. an; some C. some; some D. an; a [全国高考题]

答案是 A。“我想了解一些有关你们旅馆经营管理的信息。”“好吧,你可以和经理谈一谈,他可能对您会有帮助。”have a word with sb. 为固定短语,表示“谈一谈”。另外,“information(信息)”为不可数名词,其前不用 an。

帮你归纳

常见的固定搭配有:

have a population of + 数词 有...人口; all of a sudden 突然; as a rule 作为一条规则,照例; as a result 结果; as a whole 就整体来看,总之; as a matter of fact 事实上; in a hurry 匆忙地; in a word 总而言之; in a way 在某种程度上; a few (a little) 一些; a bit 一点; a great (good) many 大量的; many a 许多; come to an end 结束; come to a stop 停下来; come to (或 reach) an agreement 达成一致协议; come to (或 draw) a conclusion 得出结论; take an active part in 积极参加; live a happy (miserable, hard) life 过着幸福(悲惨的、艰苦的)生活; have a cold 感冒; have a try 试一试; have a good time 玩得快乐; take a walk/have a walk 散散步; take (或 have) a break 休息一下; take a bath 洗澡; take a seat 就座; take a nap 午睡; make a living 谋生; make a fire 生火; make a fool of 愚弄...; make a study of 对...进行研究; keep an eye on 注视、注意; lend a hand 帮忙; do sb. a favor 帮某人的忙; turn a blind eye to 对...视而不见; turn a deaf ear to 对...充耳不闻

第四节 常用定冠词 the 的情况

15-23 定冠词 the 用于各类名词前,表示特指,具有“这”、“那”的意思。

[例] 改错 As you know, I'm still buried in books at school you are so familiar with.

[山东高考题]

答案是在 at 后加 the。“正如你所知,我仍然呆在你所熟悉的学校埋头读书。”

books 后有定语从句,应用 the 表特指。

[例] For a long time they walked without saying _____ word. Jim was the first to break _____ silence. (湖南高考题)

A. the; a B. a; the C. a; / D. the; /

答案是 B。“他们走了很长时间没说话,吉姆首先打破了这沉默。”前空“说话”表示数量“一”;而 silence 在此特指因不说话而造成的“沉默”,应用定冠词 the。

15-24 表“方位”的名词前要用 the。

[例] Summers in _____ south of France are for _____ most part dry and sunny.

A. 不填; a B. the; 不填 C. 不填; 不填 D. the; the (北京高考题)

答案是 D。“法国南部的夏天通常干燥晴朗。”方位名词 south 等前一般要加定冠词 the。“for the most part”表“通常”,为固定表达,most 前要加定冠词 the。

15-25 在特指两者中“较…的那个人或物”时,要在比较级前加 the。[参见 11-24③]

温馨提示

若不是作定语去修饰名词而是形容词作表语,则其前不能加 the。

[例] Which is larger, Canada or Australia? “加拿大和美国哪个国家大?”(不用冠词)

15-26 在表“独一无二”的事物的名词前用 the。

这些词一般有 the moon, the earth, the sun, the sky, the world, the universe 等。

[例] The earth moves round the sun. “地球围着太阳转。”

温馨提示

若其前有形容词修饰时,有时可用 a。如:

[例] Wouldn't it be a wonderful world if all nations lived in peace with one another? “要是所有的国家都能和平共处,我们的世界不就会变得很美好吗?”

15-27 the 用于表示“越…越…”的句型中。[参见 11-27]

298 [例] It is believed that _____ you work, _____ result you'll get.

- A. the harder; the better B. the more hard; the most better
C. the harder; a better D. more hard; more better

答案是 A。“人们相信,工作越努力就越会有好结果。”

15-28 表“某一家人”或“某夫妇”的复数姓氏名词前要用 the。

[例] —Who did you spend last weekend with?

- A. Palmer's B. The Palmers'
C. The Palmers D. The Palmer's

答案是 C。“上周末你和谁在一起度过的?”

“帕尔默一家(夫妇)。”表示某某一家人或某某夫妇,用“the + 姓氏的复数”。又如:the

Browns 布朗一家人, the Whites 怀特一家人, the Turners 特纳一家人。

15-29 江河、海洋、山脉、群岛、沙漠等专有名词前要加 the。

例如:the Huanghe River(黄河), the Pacific Ocean(太平洋), the Himalayas(喜马拉雅山), the Sahara Desert(撒哈拉大沙漠), the English Channel(英吉利海峡)等。

[例] On Monday nearly a kilometer of the city was burning along the River Thames. “在星期一,该城市泰晤士河沿岸几乎达一公里长的地段都在燃烧。”

温馨提示

海岛、山峰、湖泊等名称前一般不用 the。如: Taiwan island(台湾岛), Mount Jolmo Lungma(珠穆朗玛峰), Lake Michigan(密执安湖)。

15-30 the 与某些名词连用,表示一个民族、阶级或阶层。

这类名词有: the Christians(基督教徒), the Americans(美国人), the Chinese(中国人), the Japanese(日本人), the British(英国人), the Germans(德国人), the working class(工人阶级), the aristocracy(贵族阶级)。

15-31 表示计量单位的名词前用 the。

[例] As a rule, the workers are paid _____.

[上海高考题]

- A. by the hour B. by hour C. by an hour D. by hours

答案是 A。“作为惯例,工人工资按小时支付”,“按小时付”用 by the hour。

温馨提示

在 by weight(按重量)中不用 the。

15-32 表示文娱、艺术活动的名词以及一些建筑物,如旅馆、剧场、电影院、博物馆等词前多用 the。并不指具体地点,而表示抽象含义。

[例] All the students went to the concert except Alice. “除了艾丽斯,所有学生都去听音乐会了。”

concert 并不指具体地点,而表示抽象含义。

[例] For him _____ stage is just _____ means of making a living.

A. a; a B. the; a C. the; the D. a; the

答案是 B。“对于他来说,戏剧只是一种谋生的手段”。stage 意为“舞台”,the stage 则表示“戏剧”。means(单复数同)在此指一种手段,应用不定冠词 a。

[例] When you come here for your holiday next time, don't go to _____ hotel; I can find you _____ bed in my flat.

A. the; a B. the; 不填 C. a; the D. a; 不填

答案是 A。“下次你来度假时,别去旅馆;我能在我的公寓为你找一张床”。前一空表示住宾馆这一概念,填定冠词。后一空只能填不定冠词,表泛指指的“一张床”(家中可能不止一张床)。

15-33 由普通名词(和另外一些词)构成的专有名词前要加 the。

[例] According to _____ World Health Organization, health care plans are needed in all big cities to prevent _____ spread of AIDS.

A. the; 不填 B. the; the C. a; a D. 不填; the

答案是 B。“据世界卫生组织所说,所有的大城市都需要卫生保健计划来预防艾滋病的传播。”the World Health Organization 是由普通名词构成的专有名词,要用定冠词 the。spread 后有定语 of AIDS 修饰,是特指“艾滋病的传播”,也要用 the。

帮你归纳

此类名词常用的有:the People's Republic of China(中华人民共和国),the World Health Organization(世界卫生组织),the White House(白宫),the British Museum(大英博物馆),the Chinese Communist Party(中国共产党),the State Education Commission(国家教委)等等。

15-34 在句型“动词+人+介词+the+人体部位”中要用 the(而不用物主代词)。

[例] A bullet hit the soldier and he was wounded in _____ leg.

A. a B. one C. the D. his

答案是C。“一颗子弹击中了那个士兵,他的腿受伤了。”表示人体部位的名词前用the。

[例] The stone struck him in the eye. (= The stone struck his eye.)“石头打着了他的眼睛。”

[例] I looked her in the face. “我正面看着他。”

15-35 某些固定短语中必须用“the”。

常见的有:by the way“顺便说一句”,in the end“最后”,in the way“挡道”,on the left“在左边”,to the right“向右转”,for the time being“暂时”,at the moment“此刻”,out of the question“不可能”等等。

第五节 常不用冠词的情况

高中英语语法

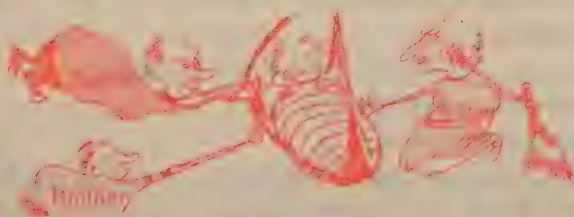
15-36 名词前有形容词性物主代词或名词所有格、指示代词、no 等作修饰时,不用冠词。

[例] He's my fourth child. “他是我的第4个孩子。”

[例] Named after China's most famous mathematician, Hua Luogeng, the contest started in 1986, one year after his death. “这种竞赛是以中国最著名的数学家华罗庚的名字命名的,始于1986年,即他去世一年之后。”

[例] I've got no reply from him yet. “我还没从他那里得到任何答复。”

15-37 表示家庭成员或亲属的名词或指家庭雇佣的人员的名词前常可不用冠词。man 泛指人类时,常不用冠词。



[例] I think Father would like to know what I've been up to so far.

“我想父亲会想知道目前为止我做了什么。”

[例] Ask Nurse to put the child to bed. “叫阿姨安顿孩子睡觉。”

[例] Man should help and love each other. “人类应互助互爱。”

温馨提示

表家庭成员或亲属的名词在这种情况下要大写单词第一个字母。

15-38 表示职位,尤指一人担任的职位的名词做表语、补足语或同位语时不用冠词。

[例] They elected her mayor. “她们选举她为市长。”

[例] We chose him Chairman of the meeting. “我们选他任会议主席。”

15-39 表示体育活动(尤指球类运动)和游戏的名词前不用冠词。

[例] Tom is fond of playing bridge. “汤姆喜欢打桥牌。”

[例] Would you please join us in playing football? “和我们一起踢足球好吗?”

[例] He likes playing tennis while I like playing chess. “他喜欢打网球而我喜欢下棋。”

15-40 在 a kind / species / sort of; a form / type of 表示“种类或类型”的结构后的名词常不用冠词。

[例] What sort of tool is a hammer? “锤子是什么种类的工具?”

[例] That is a curious species of rose. “那是一种奇特的玫瑰花。”

[例] These kinds of film are worth seeing. “这些类型的电影值得看。”
也可用 films,但不用与 the 或 a 连用。

15-41 在某些结构中,冠词常常省略。

① 在独立结构中。

[例] He went away, gun in hand. “他走开了,手拿着枪。”

句中的 gun 和 hand 前分别省略了冠词 a 和 the。

② 在平行、对比结构中。

[例] He can't be buyer and seller too. “他不能做买方又做卖方。”

句中的 buyer 和 seller 前都省略了 a。

③ 在 as 或 though 引起的倒装结构中。

[例] Child as he is, he is very brave. “尽管他只是一个小孩子,但他非常勇敢。”

句中的 Child 前省略了 a。全句等于 Although he is a (此时 a 不省略) child, he is very brave.



即学即用

I. 单项选择

1. The sign reads “In case of _____ fire, break the glass and push _____ red button.”

- A. 不填; a B. 不填; the C. the; the D. a; a [全国高考题]
2. I don't like talking on _____ telephone; I prefer writing _____ letters. [全国高考题]
A. a; the B. the; 不填 C. the; the D. a; 不填
3. On May 5, 2005, at _____ World Table Tennis Championship, Kong Linghui and Wang Hao won the gold medal in men's doubles with _____ score of 4: 1. [全国高考题]
A. a; a B. 不填; the C. a; 不填 D. the; a
4. If you buy more than ten, they knock 20 pence off _____. [全国高考题]
A. a price B. price C. the price D. prices
5. _____ Cave that George has discovered in his lifetime is ALPS. [全国高考题]
A. Hundredth B. The hundred C. The hundredth D. A hundredth
6. There was _____ time _____ I hated to go to school. [湖北高考题]
A. a; that B. a; when C. the; that D. the; when
7. She is _____ newcomer to _____ chemistry but she has already made some important discoveries. [全国高考题]
A. the; the B. the; / C. a; / D. a; the
8. When you finish reading the book, you will have _____ better understanding of _____ life. [辽宁高考题]
A. a; the B. the; a C. 不填; the D. a; 不填
9. Most animals have little connection with _____ animals of _____ different kind unless they kill them for food. [全国高考题]
A. the; a B. 不填; a C. the; the D. 不填; the
10. He did it _____ it took me. [北京高考题]
A. one third a time B. one third time C. the one third time D. one third the time
11. The warmth of _____ sweater will of course be determined by the sort of _____ wool used. [全国高考题]
A. the; the B. the; / C. /; the D. /; /
12. It is often said that _____ teachers have _____ very easy life. [北京高考题]
A. 不填; 不填 B. 不填; a C. the; 不填 D. the; a
13. There's _____ dictionary on _____ desk by your side. [北京高考题]
A. a; the B. a; a C. the; a D. the; the
14. _____ on-going division between English-speaking Canadians and French-speaking Canadians is _____ major concern of the country. [北京高考题]
A. The; 不填 B. The; a C. An; the D. An; 不填
15. While he was investigating ways to improve the telescope, Newton made _____ discovery which completely changed _____ man's understanding of color. [广东高考题]
A. a; 不填 B. a; the C. 不填; the D. the; a
16. Tom owns _____ larger collection of _____ books than any other student in our

class.

[江苏高考题]

A. the; 不填 B. a; 不填 C. a; the D. 不填; the

17. The most important thing about cotton in history is _____ part that it played in _____ Industrial Revolution. [重庆高考题]

A. 不填; 不填 B. the; 不填 C. the; the D. a; the

18. —John, there is _____ Mr. Wilson on the phone for you.

[全国卷考题]

—I'm in _____ bath.

A. a; the B. the; a C. a; 不填 D. the; 不填

19. _____ recent report stated that the number of Spanish speakers in the U. S. would be higher than the number of English speakers by _____ year 2090. [北京高考题]

A. A; the B. A; 不填 C. The; 不填 D. The; a

20. I knew _____ John Lennon, but not _____ famous one. [山东高考题]

A. 不填; a B. a; the C. 不填; the D. the; a

21. In _____ review of 44 studies, American researchers found that men and women who ate six key foods daily cut the risk of _____ heart disease by 76%. [湖南高考题]

A. a; the B. the; a C. a; 不填 D. 不填; a

22. —Where's _____ nearest bookstore?

—There's one at _____ end of the street.

[上海高考题]

A. the; an B. a; the C. the; the D. a; an

II. 请改正每句中错用的冠词。

- Our new English teacher is the Englishman.
- Which is a heavier of the two, an elephant or a horse?
- The Professor Wood is waiting for you.
- Excuse me, do you happen to have the pink shirt? I like to have one very much.
- Why not try the second time?
- She searched a shop after shop for a ring.
- The house which was on the fire last night belonged to Jim.
- Mathematics is an science of numbers.
- He was a last to leave the building.
- Are you fond of playing the golf?
- June 1 is the International Children's Day.
- Have you noticed an "u" is missing in the word?
- She looked me in an eye and told me her secret.
- Why not go by a taxi? It's too crowded on the bus.
- For centuries, Christopher Columbus was supposed to have been the first European to cross an Atlantic.



点石成金

I. 单项选择

1. **B** 不可数名词 fire 是泛指,不用冠词;后空由 break the glass 可知,应用 the,特指玻璃下的“红色按钮”。
2. **D** 前者 on the telephone 是习语;后者 letters 是复数名词表示泛指,不用冠词。
3. **D** the World Table Championship 为普通名词构成的专有名词,应用定冠词 the;后空 a core of 4:1,首次介绍“得分为4比1”,应用不定冠词 a。
4. **C** 购物时减价是对原来已经定好的价格而言的,为特指,用定冠词 the。
5. **C** “乔治一生中发现的第一个洞穴就是阿尔卑斯。”hundredth 为序数词,前面要用 the。
6. **B** “有一段时间我讨厌上学。”用 a time 指具体“一段时间”;第二空是由 when 引导的定语从句。
7. **C** a new comer 作表语,表身份;chemistry 表示学科,为不可数名词,不用任何冠词。
8. **D** a... understanding of,表示“对…的理解”;life 泛指“生活,人生”时,为不可数名词,不用任何冠词。
9. **B** 第一空后的 animals 是复数名词,不加冠词,表类别。第二空是一种习惯表达法:“of a different kind”表“一种不同类型的”。
10. **B** 有定语从句 it took me,先行词 time 应是特指的,用定冠词,表示“我做此事的时间的三分之一”。
11. **B** sweater 为单数可数名词,其前应有冠词。wool 为材料名词。在 sort of、kind of、type of 后的名词一般不用冠词。
12. **B** teachers 复数泛指某一职业,不需要用冠词。短语 have a very easy life “过着非常简朴的生活”,需要用不定冠词 a。
13. **A** There be 后面的单数可数名词,一般用 a 不用 the。本句中的 desk 后有定语 by your side,所以 desk 具有指特性,用定冠词。故选 A。
14. **D** 从后面的介词短语可看出,前空特指,应填定冠词 the;后空泛指“加拿大全国关心的一件事”,用不定冠词 a。
15. **A** discovery 为动词 discover 的名词形式,与 make 搭配,表示一次行为时,常用不定冠词。man 表示“人类”时,不用任何冠词。故选 A 项。
16. **B** a collection of 表示“对…的收集;…集”。此处被比较级修饰,表示大范围的比较,还是填不定冠词。后一空是泛指的表类别的书,且已用了复数,不填冠词。
17. **C** 后空是由普通名词构成的专有名词,特指 18 世纪后半叶英国工业革命。前一空之后的 part 被宾语从句修饰,是特指,故两空都填定冠词 the。
18. **A** 前空填 a,表示“有个叫 Mr Wilson 的人”。in the bath 为固定短语“在洗澡”。

19. 最近的报道有许多,从句的内容只是其中之一,故前空用 a,表示泛指。2090 年为特指,后空应用 the。

20. F 前空泛指“一位 John Lennon”,后空特指“那位著名的 John Lennon”。
in a review of 表示“对…回顾”。heart disease 泛指“心脏病”,并非用于指某一
种类心脏病,通常用作不可数名词,不用冠词。

at the end of 为其固定惯用法;而在最高级前则必加 the。

II. 请改正每句中错用的冠词。

1. the 改为 an 2. 第一个 a 改为 the 3. The 改为 A 或去掉 4. the 改为 a
5. the 改为 a 6. 去掉第一个 a 7. 去掉第二 the 8. an 改为 the 9. a 改为 the
10. 去掉 the 11. 去掉 the 12. an 改为 a 13. an 改为 the
14. 去掉 a 或把 by 改为 in 15. an 改为 the

第16章

介词

高考热点

介词是高考中的一个常考点,主要出现在单选题和短文改错中,偶尔也会出现在完形填空题中。介词在英语中使用频率高,部分介词的用法多而杂。纵观历年高考题,考点主要涉及常见介词的常见用法以及它们的区别和一些固定短语或习惯搭配中的介词。

我们平时阅读时,要留心介词的运用,要注意比较和归纳一些介词的常见用法;要注意介词与动词、名词、形容词的习惯搭配;要弄清那些易混介词的用法异同。做题时,我们要注意结合具体的语境。

第一节 介词的概念、种类及特点

16-1 介词又叫做前置词,通常位于名词和代词之前,表示它后面的名词(或相当于名词的其他结构)与句子其他成分的关系。

介词是一种虚词,在句子中一般不被重读,而且也不能单独充当句子成分,必须与它后面的名词(或相当于名词的其他结构)结合起来,构成介词短语,才能充当句子成分。介词常接名词、代词、动名词等。

[例]改错:He was looking for a glass the cupboard.

[全国高考题]

答案是在 the cupboard 前加 in。“他正在橱柜里寻找一个杯子。”前一个名词短语 a glass 作 looking for 的宾语,后一个名词短语 the cupboard 其前应加介词 in,



作状语,表示“寻找”动作发生的地点。

16-2 介词可以分为三类(简单介词、二重介词和短语介词)。

- ①简单介词是由一个单词构成的介词,分为普通介词(如:at, by, for, in, over, to, up 等)、合成介词(如:onto, into, within, without, out of 等)和分词介词(如:concerning, considering, including 等)三种。
- ②二重介词是由两个介词搭配而成的。如 from behind, except in, until after, since before 等。

[例] _____ his wife, his daughter also went to see him.

- A. Beside B. Besides C. Except D. Except for

答案是 B。“除了他妻子,他的女儿也去看他了。”其中 D 项“except for”是二重介词。

- ③短语介词是由两个或两个以上的词所组成的短语构成的。一般说来,这个短语的最后一个词是简单介词。如 because of, instead of, in front of 等。

[例] He got to the station early, _____ missing his train.

- A. in case of B. instead of C. for fear of D. in search of

答案是 C。“因担心误火车,他早早地到了车站。”四个选项都是短语介词,但根据句意可首先排除 B“代替”和 D“搜寻、寻找”。in case of“如果、万一”,表示假设性条件(多用于告示语),强调客观可能;而 for fear of“担心,防止,为免于…”,更强调主观的担心。后者更合本题语境。

[例] 改错:Because the help you gave me that summer, my life changed.

答案是在 Because 后加 of。“由于你那个夏天给的帮助,我的人生变了。”the help 为名词短语(you gave me that summer 为定语从句),其前不能用从属连词 because(引导原因状语从句),而要用短语介词 because of。

16-3 “介词+宾语”构成介词短语,常作定语、状语、表语、补足语或插入语(独立成分)。

[例] A friend in need is a friend indeed. “患难朋友才是真朋友。”

介词短语“in need”作 friend 的定语。



[例] The child is like his mother. “这个孩子像他母亲。”

介词短语“like his mother”作表语。

[例]—Can he take charge of the computer company.

—I'm afraid it's _____ his ability.

[四川高考题]

A. beyond B. within C. of D. to

答案是A。“他能掌管那家电脑公司吗?”“我想超出了他的能力。”介词短语 beyond his ability 在 afraid 的从句中作 it's 的表语,符合语境。

[例]I don't think I'll need any money but I'll bring some _____.

A. at last B. in case C. once again D. in time

答案是B。“我想我再不需要钱了,但我还是带些,以防万一。”题中除C外都为介词短语。由“不需要钱”可知“将带些钱”纯属为了“以防万一(in case 用作状语)”,而不用 at last “最后”、once again “再一次”或 in time “及时、过一段时间、迟早”。

[例]I would like a job which pays more, but _____ I enjoy the work I'm doing at the moment.

[浙江高考题]

A. in other words B. on the other hand C. for one thing D. as a matter of fact

答案是B。“我想要一个较高薪酬的工作,但另一方面我又很喜欢目前的工作”。本题说的是事情的两个方面, on the other hand “另一方面”作插入语符合题意。比较: in other words “换句话说”; for one thing “其中的一个原因是,首先”; as a matter of fact “事实上”。

温馨提示

介词短语可以作句子成分,短语介词却不能作句子成分。

for fear of missing his train 怕误了火车

in case 以防万一

in case of fire 万一发生火灾,以防火灾

in case of 如果,万一,以防

for fear of 担心,担心,为免于…

介词短语

短语介词

16-4 介词与某些动词、名词、形容词常常有比较固定的搭配。

如: belong to 属于…(动词+介词); love for 对…的爱(名词+介词); full of 充满…(形容词+介词)。

[例]改错: The answer lies on the population explosion.

[广东高考题]

答案是把 on 改为 in。“问题在于人口爆炸。”lie in 为常见的动词搭配,不可受 depend on 的影响而搭配用错。

[例]改错: They didn't want me to do any work at family.

[全国高考题]

答案是把 family 改为 home。“他们不想让我在家干任何活。”at home 为固定

表达。

[例] We offered him our congratulations _____ his passing the college entrance exams.

A. at B. on C. for D. of [全国高考题]

答案是 B。“我们祝贺他通过高考。”名词 congratulations 后须与介词 on 搭配。

[例] More and more young people are fond _____ playing tennis nowadays.

A. on B. to C. in D. of [上海高考题]

答案是 D。“现在越来越多的年轻人喜欢打网球。”be fond of 是“形容词 + 介词”的固定搭配,表示“喜欢(做某事)”。

帮你归纳

在英语中介词与形容词搭配形成固定短语最为常见。如:be good at 擅长…; be proud of 以…自豪/骄傲; be famous for 以…著名; be afraid of 害怕…; be equal to …与…相等; be content with 对…感到满足/满意; be aware of 明白,了解…; be ready for 为…准备好; be patient with 对…有耐心; be fit for 适合于; be short of 缺少…; be free from/of 免于…

16-5 同一个词与不同的介词搭配,其含义不同。



[例] Look at the blackboard, please. “请看黑板。”

[例] I'm looking for my pen. “我正在找我的钢笔。”

[例] My mother looks after my little sister. “我妈妈照看我的妹妹。”

[例] 改错: After autumn arrives, the city looks as an old man with leaves falling from the trees. [重庆高考题]

答案是把 as 改为 like。“秋天到来以后,随着树叶的飘落,那座城市看起来像一位老人”。look like 意思是“看起来像”。

[例] I'll look into the matter. “我将调查此事。”

[例] I don't _____ rock'n'roll. It's much too noisy for my taste. [北京高考题]

A. go after B. go away with C. go into D. go in for

答案是 D。“我不喜欢摇滚乐,对我来说它太吵了。”四个选项都有动词 go,但只有 go in for “爱好”合句意。比较: go after “追随,追求”, go away with “和…一起

走开”或“带走…”, go into“进入”。

16-6 同根词在表达类似概念时,所配用的介词常常都相同。

如:表示“在…上取得成功”可用其动词、名词或形容词形式与同一个介词搭配。
即:succeed in(或 at), success in(或 at), successful in(或 at)。

16-7 同一动词后有无介词含义上常有变化。

有些动词,既能作及物动词又能作不及物动词,其后加不加介词将会引起含义上的变化,要特别予以注意。

[例] I can believe him. but I cannot believe in him. “我能相信他所说的,但我不能信任他。”

在句中“believe sb.”表示“相信某人说的话”,而“believe in sb.”表示“信任某人”。

[例] 改错:You might have to change for your method a couple of times.

答案是去掉 for。“你也许得改变方法一两次。”change 作及物动词,能“改变方法”。for 不但多余,而且改变句意,因为 change for your method 表示“换成你的方法”。

[例] He did shoot at the bird but he didn't shoot it “他的确向鸟开枪了,但没有射中。”

在句中“shoot at”表示“向…瞄准射击”;而“shoot”表示“射中”或“射死”。

请为本例配图:一男子向树的鸟射击的路线,但鸟已经飞起,而没有被击中。

16-8 在某些情况下,常可省去介词。

① 在表示“一段时间”的短语中,介词常可省略。

[例] I waited (for) an hour. “我等了一个小时。”

温馨提示

但当介词短语放在句首时,介词一般不能省略,(尤其是“for + 名词”短语中的“for”不能省去。)常见的有:for days, for years, for ages 等。

[例] For days I've been waiting. “几天来我一直在等待。”

② 在(at) what time... 词组里,at 一般要省略,特别是在口语中。

[例] What time does the play start? “戏什么时候开演?”

温馨提示

在某些表时间的词组前,通常不能用介词。详见讲解[16-10]

③ 在(in) the same way, (in) this way, (in) another way 等词组里,in 常省略,特别是在口语中。

[例] Do it (in) this way. “请这样做。”

④在 all of, both of 和 half of 等短语中,如果 of 后面还有另外的限定词,of 常省略。
如:all (of) my friends 我所有的朋友。

16-9 同一个词既可用作介词,又可用作副词或连词,其词性要根据具体情况而定。

[例] Must I be home before eight o'clock? “我必须 8 点前回到家吗?”

before 为介词,因为它之后与名词连用,构成介词短语。

[例] The train had started before I got to the station. “在我到达火车站前,火车已经开了。”

before 为连词,因为它之后跟一个从句。

[例] I have never read this book before. “以前我从未读过这本书。”

before 为副词,因为它可单独使用。

16-10 在以 this, that, next, last, yesterday, tomorrow, one, every, each, some, any 和 all 等开始的表示时间的词组前,一般不用介词。

[例] When I was on the stage the next day, I felt so nervous that I shook like a leaf.

“第二天当我上台演出时,我感到非常紧张,我抖得就像一片树叶一样。”

“(the) next + 名词 day/week, month 等”,其前介词 in/on 等要省略。

[例] 改错:For instance, on one night he played strong and loudly music till four o'clock in the morning.

答案是把 on 去掉。“例如,有一晚他弹奏又强又吵的音乐一直到早晨四点。”因为 night 被 one 所修饰,所以要去掉 on。

[例] 改错:I was so tired that I fell asleep at the moment my head touched the pillow.

答案是把 at 去掉。“我是如此累以致我的头一落到枕头上就睡着了。”the moment 此处引导状语从句,表示“一…就…”,不能再介词 at。

第二节 表时间的介词

16-11 表示时间和年、月、日的介词:at, on, in, by。

①表示具体时刻(时间点)等,用 at,即“at + 时间点”。

[例] The house was quiet at 5 am. “屋子五点时很安静。”

[例] At noon all the people and their bikes will be taken back to Beijing. “中午所有的人及他们的自行车都将被带回北京。”

②表示一天的一段时间(如:上午、下午、晚上)、月份、季节、年份、世纪、人生的某个时期等,用 in。

[例] We have four classes in the morning. “上午我们上4节课。”

[例] A small watchmaker in Switzerland in 1922 designed the first automatic watch to show the day, month, and date. [江苏高考题]

“1922年在瑞士有一手表制造商设计了第一块能自动显示星期、月份、日期的手表。”

[例] In the 19th century English people liked to go to the seaside. “在19世纪英国人喜欢去海滨。”

16-12 表具体“日子”时,用 on。

①表示具体的“几月几号”、“星期几”用 on。



[例] The accident is reported to have occurred _____ the first Sunday in February.

A. at B. on C. in D. to [上海高考题]

答案是 B。“据报道事故发生在二月的第一个星期天。”二月的第一个星期天为具体的一天,故用 on。

[例] A bike tour and race will be held on August 26 and 27 (Sat. and Sun.). “一场自行车旅行赛将在8月26日和27日(星期六和星期日)举行”。

[例] We have a PE lesson on Thursday. “我们星期四有一节体育课。”

②早、午、晚前一般用 in;但表示某一具体日子的上午、下午、晚上,则要用 on。

[例] It happened to be very cold _____ the morning of our sports meet.

A. at B. of C. on D. with

答案是 C。“我们开运动会的那天早上碰巧天非常冷。”因有“of our sports meet”来限定 morning,说明是“具体那日”的早晨,故用 on 而不用 in。

温馨提示

无论早、午、晚等词带有的定语是否是明确的“几号”、“星期几”,只要是“具体的日子”,就要用 on。

[例] 改错: In a particular afternoon my mother brought the drink in.

答案是把 In 改为 On。“在一个特别的下午我的母亲拿着饮料进来。”具体到某一天下午时应用介词 on。

[例] He decided to visit the family _____ Friday night.

A. at B. in C. on D. over

答案是 C。“他决定星期五晚上拜访那家人。”Friday 是明确表示日子的词,当然要用 on。

③表示假日时,如果指的是具体的“日子”,要用 on;如果指的是“时节”(含整个之际),则要用 at。试比较:

[例] On New Year's Day, many people went to the park. “在元旦那天,许多人去了公园。”

[例] At New Year it is very cold in north China. “在元旦时节,中国北方气候很冷。”

帮你归纳

表示节日的常用词组还有:at the weekend(在周末),at Christmas(在圣诞节期间),at Midsummer(在仲夏),at Easter(在复活节期间)等。

16-13 表示到某一时刻、日期、期间之前用 by;表示在一时间期间用 during;表示“在…期间”或“一面…一面…”用 over;表示“直到…为止”用 till 或 until。

[例] —When do we need to pay the balance?

—_____ September 30. _____

[北京高考题]

A. In B. By C. During D. Within

答案是 B。“我们什么时候需要还清余额?”“9月30日之前。”介词 by 在此意为“到…为止,不迟于”。具体某天不能和 in 连用;during 和合成介词 within 后面都要接表示一段时间的名词。

[例] My grandchildren will stay over Christmas. “我的孙儿孙女们圣诞节期间将呆在这儿。”

over 相当于 during/at。

[例] They chatted over a cup of coffee. “他们一边喝咖啡一边聊天。”

强调同时进行,相当于 while they were drinking。

[例] They danced till midnight. “他们跳舞跳到半夜。”

肯定句中,dance 为延续性动词。

[例] He didn't leave the office till 8 o'clock. “他直到八点才离开办公室。”

用于否定句,leave 为非延续性动词,表示“离开”的动作“直到8点”才开始。

16-14 since 和 for 构成的介词短语都可以表示“(持续的)一段时间”,但宾语不同。

“for”后的宾语要跟表示“一段”时间的词,而“since”后的宾语则用表示“起点”时间的词。

[例] —How long have you been employed at this job? —Since 1990.

“你被雇做此工作有多长时间了?”“自从1990年”。

since + 1990 (本身为具体的时间一点),而且从那一点一直持续到现在为止一段时间。

[例] The crazy fans had been waiting patiently for two hours.

“那些疯狂的影迷已经耐心地等了两个小时。”

for two hours (本身为一段时间),从过去某时开始持续一段时间。

[例] My aunt has worked in a clinic 1949.

[全国高考题]

A. after B. before C. till D. since

答案是D。“我阿姨自从1949年以来就一直在医务所工作。”现在完成时的可延续性动词 has worked 表示的是从过去某时开始一直到现在都在工作,需配用延续至今的表示一段时间的状语,只能用 since。

16-15 “in + 时间段”常与将来时连用;“after + 时间段”与过去时(瞬间动词)连用;“after + 时间点”可与一般现在时或将来时连用。

① in 与表示将来(过去将来)时的肯定式连用。

[例] —The doctor will be free .

[全国高考题]

A. 10 minutes later B. after 10 minutes C. in 10 minutes D. 10 minutes after

答案是C。“大夫10分钟后有空。”in 与动词将来时 will be 连用,表示“之后”。

[例] He said he would be back in a few days. “他说他过几天就回来。”

in 和动词过去将来时 would be 连用。

② after 后接“某点”时间时,谓语动词可用一般现在时或将来时;而后接“一段”时间时,谓语动词多用一般过去时。

[例] After two hours, he came back. “两小时后他回来了。”

“两个小时”表“一段时间”,谓语动词为一般过去时。

[例] He'll come (或: He came) back after two o'clock. “两点钟后他将回来。”(或:“他两点钟后回来的。”)

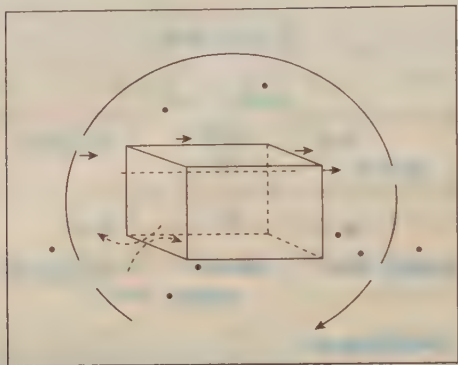
“两点钟”表“点时间”,谓语动词可为一般将来时,也可为一般过去时。

[例] 改错: It was very nice to hear from you for such a long time.

答案是把 for 改为 after。“这么长时间后收到你的来信真高兴。”for 表示动作的发生时间延续,与非延续性动词 hear from 冲突,应用 after,表示“过了一段时间后”。

第三节 表方位的介词

16-16 容易混淆的方位介词示意图



16-17 表地点时,at 表示的位置是个“点”,on 表示的位置是个“面”,in 表示的位置是个“体”。

[例] My room is _____ the third floor.

A. at B. on C. in D. to

答案是 B。“我的房间在三层楼上。”floor 表示“地板”、“楼层”,是个“面”,要用 on。

[例] The teacher stood at the door. There was a picture on the door. And there was a small hole in the door. “老师站在门口。门上有张画。而且门上有个小洞。”

句中“at the door”表示“一点”；“on the door”则表示在门的“平面上”；而“in the door”是指小洞穿过“门体”。

温馨提示

“at the corner (of...)”在(…的)拐角处(指建筑物的外面)；“in the corner (of...)”在(…的)拐角里(指建筑物的里面)；“on the corner (of...)”在(…的)拐角上(构成拐角本身),可用 at the corner 代替。

[例] He is standing at the street corner. “他站在街道拐角处。”

[例] I found the pen in the corner of the room. “我在房间的角落里找到了那支钢笔。”

[例] The bookshop is on (或 at) the street corner. “书店在街道拐角。”

16-18 in 和 at 在表地点时,大地方多用 in,小地方多用 at。有时同一地方由于所处情况不同,可能使用不同的介词,其强调的侧重点有所不同。



[例] The woman biologist stayed in Africa studying wild animals for 13 years before she returned.

江苏高考试题

“那位女生物学家回来前呆在非洲研究了13年野生动物。”非洲是大地方,用 in。

[例] I ended up staying at Rachel's place. “我最终呆在雷切尔的地方。”

“雷切尔的地方(或家)”是小地方,用 at。

[例] My father has lived in Nanjing for twenty years. “我父亲在南京住了20年了。”

[例] The train for Shanghai will stop at Nanjing. “去上海的火车在南京停。”

温馨提示

以上两例中都使用了 Nanjing 一词,但前面所用介词不同。第一句用 in 强调南京是个大城市;而第二句用 at,表明南京只是火车沿途停靠的一个站,为一个“点”。

16-19 表示“在某街道”时,其前有门牌号时,介词用 at;不标明门牌号时,英国用 in,美国用 on。

[例] My uncle lives _____ 105 Beijing Street.

全国高考试题

A. on B. at C. to D. of

答案是 B。“我叔叔住在北京街 105 号。”

[例] She lives in(或 on) Wuyi Street. “她住在五一路。”

16-20 表示“穿过”时,“across + 表面”,“through + 空间”。

① across 指从物体表面或从某一空间内的一端到另一端或呈十字交叉穿过。

[例] The Great Wall winds its way from west to east, across deserts, through valleys. “长城从西到东,跨过沙漠,穿过深谷,蜿蜒而行。”

② through 指从人群或物体中间穿过,也可用于抽象意义上的通过。

[例] There were a lot of people standing at the door and the small girl couldn't get _____.

A. between B. through C. across D. beyond

答案是B。“有许多人站在门口,那个小女孩不能(从门)过去”。用 **through** 表示“(从…中间)穿过”。另外,本题中 **through** 后省略 **the door**,也可把 **through** 看成副词。

温馨提示

across a street“横过街道”指从一边到另一边横跨路面;**through the street**在街面上穿行”多指顺着街走。

16-21 方位词 **north**、**east**、**south**、**west** 前,用 **in** 指“在内部”;用 **to** 指“在外部”;用 **on** 指“接壤”。

[例] Japan is to the east of China. “日本在中国以东。”

日本在中国领土范围之外,且不与中国接壤,用 **to**。

[例] The Pacific is on the east of China. “太平洋在中国的东面。”

太平洋在中国以外,但与中国相接,用 **on**。

[例] Shanghai is in the east of China. “上海在中国的东部。”

上海在中国领土范围以内,用 **in**。



16-22 表“上、下”时,**on** 和 **beneath** 表示与表面接触;**over** 和 **under** 表示不与表面接触,但垂直向上或向下;**above** 和 **below** 表示不与表面接触,且不一定垂直向上、向下。

①表示位置时,**on** 一般表示“在…上面”,通常指与物体的表面有接触。当一物体贴在另一物体下表面时,常用 **beneath**。

[例] You have been sitting on my hat and now it is badly out of shape.

“你一直坐在我的帽子上,它现在已严重变形了。”

这里“**on**”表示“在…上面”,含接触。

[例] Put some straw beneath the carpet. “在地毯下垫些草。”

②**over** 一般表示“在…的正上方”“在…垂直上方”,其反义词是 **under**; **over** 还可表示在被覆盖物体的上面。**above** 一般表示“在…的上方”,强调大致的相对位置(即不一定垂直的上面)。另外,**above** 还可指在数量、重量、价格、费用等方面超过或高于规定的数量或一般标准。

[例] At this time tomorrow we'll be flying over the Atlantic.

“明天的这个时候,我们将飞过大西洋。”

[例] You can't wear a blue jacket over that shirt — it'll look terrible.

A. on B. above C. up D. over

答案是D。“你不能穿着蓝夹克罩着衬衫——它将会很难看。”**over** 表示“罩…”

之上”之意,符合此处语境“蓝夹克罩着衬衫”。

[例] It weights above ten tons. 这东西重过十吨。

③ below 同 under 它们都可表示“在…下面”。区别是:below 表示与物体之间互不接触,不一定存在垂直的位置关系,其反义词是 above。under 表示与物体的关系一定是垂直的,物体间可以不接触,也可接触,其反义词是 over。

[例] The Dead Sea is below the sea level. 死海低于海平面。

[例] Put your shoes under the bed. 把你的鞋放在床下面。

温馨提示

表示等级、数量、产量、年龄等的“在…以下”、“低于…”时,可用 below。

[例] Both Tom and Jack are officers in this army, but Jack is under Tom. “汤姆和杰克都是这支部队的军官。但是,杰克职位低于汤姆。”

16-23 onto 和 into 常与动态动词连用; on 和 in 常与静态动词连用。

[例] He also passed “Hello” to the cats when they came into the room. “当猫进屋时他也向猫们送去问候。”

“came”是动态动词,用 into。

[例] He was in his office. “他在办公室里。”

“was”是静态动词,只能用 in。



温馨提示

当谓语是个静态动词时,只能用 in; 当谓语是个动态动词时,有时也能用 in, 但多用 into。

[例] If she did not want to get into the sea, the attendant pulled her in “如果她不想下到海里去,服务员会把她拉下去。”

“下到海里”表示的是动态,所以用介词 into; 而“pulled her in”中的 in 却是副词,不能用 into。

16-24 “上、下小汽车(出租车、小船、救生艇等)”用 get in (或 into)/out of...; 而“上、下公共汽车、火车、飞机、轮船、马等”用 get on (或 onto)/off...。

[例] We chatted on the way into the city, and when I got out of the car, the husband gave me his business card.

“我们在途中聊着进了城,当我从小汽车是里出来时,那位丈夫给了我他的名片。”

[例] The bus stopped, and he got on (it). “公共汽车停了,他上了车。”

16-25 拍打人的身体某个部位时, on 多用于硬的部位; in 多用于软的部位。
by 一般用于 arm, hand 等前, 且前面的动词往往是 lead, catch, seize, take 等。



[例] Suddenly, I felt a hand on my shoulder!

[湖南高考题]

“突然, 我感到有只手在我的肩膀上!”

[例] I hit him on the nose/jaw/ear/shoulder/head/neck/chest. “我打了他的鼻子/下巴/耳朵/肩膀/头/脖子/胸部。”

[例] I hit him in the eye/mouth/stomach/face. “我打了他的眼睛/嘴巴/肚子/脸。”

[例] The woman took me by the sleeve. “那个女人抓住了我的衣袖。”

温馨提示

表示打在某人脸上, 用 in; 但在说面部表情时, 一般用 on; 在谈到创伤和身体“内部”的部位时, 一般用 in。

[例] He just stood still, a helpless look on his face. “他只是站着不动, 脸上一副无助的表情。”

[例] He was wounded in the leg. “他的腿受了伤。”

[例] I've got a pain in my head. “我的头有点儿疼。”

第四节 介词的其他用法

16-26 among 用于三者之间; between 用于两者之间或三者以上的“两两之间”。

[例] The distance between Beijing and Taiyuan is about 500 kilometres. “北京和太原之间的距离大约五百公里。”

between 表示两者之间。

[例] I found them among the crowd. “我从人群中发现了他们。”

among 表示在一群人中间。

[例] —It's a top secret.

—Yes, I see. I will keep the secret _____ you and me.



A. with B. around C. among D. between

答案是 D。“这是绝密。”“是的,我明白,我会在你我之间保守秘密。”从答句的 you and me 可知,秘密是保守在你我之间,两者之间用 between。比较:among 多表示“在(一群人或物)的中间”。

温馨提示

众多事物或人,如强调两两之间,可用 between。

[例] Between the trees, there's something shining. “树丛中间,有什么东西在闪闪发亮。”

用 between 强调每两棵树之间。

16-27 表行动的方向和目标时, to 用于 go 等表示“来往行动”的词后; for 用于 start 等表示“启程、离开”的词后。go 等表示“来往行动”的动词或短语有: go, come, walk, run, dash, move, return, fly, ride, drive, march, make one's way 等。start 等表示“离开、启程”的动词或短语有: start, leave, sail, set out。

[例] Li Ping went to Guangzhou. “李平去广州了。”

[例] Li Ping left for Guangzhou. “李平(启程)去广州了。”

16-28 throw, shout, laugh 等词后,用 at 暗示攻击性,表示“对准…的目标”,用 to 单纯表示动作的方向。

[例] He shouted at me, “Get out!” 他冲我嚷道:“滚开!”

[例] He shouted to me, “Come and join us in the game.” “他朝我喊道:‘来参加我们的游戏吧!’”

[例] 改错: I'm sure they will laugh to me and see me as a fool.

答案是把 to 改为 at。“我相信他们会嘲笑我的,把我当成傻瓜。”laugh at 表示“(含攻击性的)嘲笑,讥笑”,比单纯方向更适合。

帮你归纳

at 还可和 growl“怒吼”、roar“咆哮”、bellow“怒号”、mutter“咕哝”等动词连用,表示“对准…的目标”。to 与其连用强调动作的方向。

16-29 表“使用”时, with 与表示工具的词连用, in 与表示材料、语言、噪音等的词连用。

[例] 改错 They would not have to ask their parents for money or for permission to do things by the money.

[全国高考题]

答案是把 by 改为 with。“他们不用向父母要钱或求得允许来用钱做事。”with 在此意为“使用”。

[例] Please write it with a pen. “请用钢笔写。”(指用工具)

[例] Please write it in ink. “请用墨水写。”(指用材料)

[例] When I first learned to write in English, I ran into many difficulties.

“当我首次学习用英语写作,我遇到了很多问题。”(用语言)

[例] He said it in a loud/quiet/high/low voice. “他大声/小声/高声/低声地说了这事。”

16-30 表“价格”时常用 at,但表“具体款项”时,用 for。

[例] I bought this pen for two yuan. “我花了两元钱买了这支钢笔。”(具体款项,for 表示等价)

[例] I cannot buy it at such a price. “这样(贵)的价格我不能买。”(指“价格”用 at)

16-31 表“用…(制成)”时,用“from + (说不出的)原料”;“of + (看得出的)原料”、“into + 成品”等结构;表“由…部分来构成”时,用“up of + 组成部分”结构。

[例] Paper is made from wood. “纸是由木材制成的。”

从成品“纸”上已看不出原材料“木材”,因此前面用 from。



[例] The box is made of wood. “箱子是由木材制成的。”

从成品“箱子”上能看出材料“木材”,因此前面用 of。

be made of wood

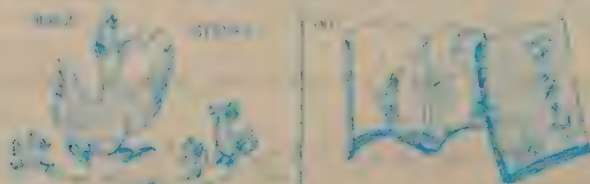
[例] Wood is made into paper/boxes. “木材被制成了纸(箱子)。”

这里 paper/boxes 是由 wood 制成的成品,因此前面用 into。

[例] The box is mainly made up of the bottom and the lid “箱子主要是由箱底和箱盖组成的。”

be made up of 是固定短语,后面是表示某物的各个“组成部分”;前面的主语为某物的“整体部分”。

16-32 表“关于”时,常用“about”,但表对某个较大问题进行深入研讨时,则用 on。



about 和 on 都可以表示“关于”。on 一般用于政治、理论、国际形势等比较大的或涉及比较深广的问题;about 一般用于个人事迹、故事内容等比较小或涉及比较浅窄的问题。

[例] Mary wrote an article on why the team had failed to win the game. “玛丽写了一篇有关这个队为什么未能赢得这场比赛的文章”。

[例] I'll tell Mary about her new job tomorrow. “我明天将告诉玛丽她的新工作。”

[福建高考题]

[例] 改错: I never knew about a ride down a river could be exciting.

答案是把 about 去掉。“以前我从来不知道(有关)乘轮船顺流游玩会是令人如此兴奋的(事情)。”know 是及物动词,可直接加宾语从句,不能再介词 about。

16-33 besides 和 except, except for 和 except that 用法比较。

① except 表示“除了…之外(没有)…”,相当于“减去”;而 besides 表示“除了…之外(还有)…”,相当于“加上”。

[例] Does John know any other foreign language _____ French?

A. except B. but C. besides D. beside

答案是 C。“他除了懂法语外,还懂什么别的外语吗?”懂法语之外,“加上”别的一门外语,动作是“同向”的。

温馨提示

besides 常可用作副词,可单独使用,作插入语。

[例] Besides, I have few friends.

“除此之外,我几乎没有什么朋友。”

besides 作插入语,用逗号与其他部分隔开。

② except for 表示“除了”、“只有”,接名词短语表示引述一个相反细节或意为“要不是由于,只是”,其后的宾语一般与句子所涉及的东西不属同类,except that 后面要接名词性从句。

[例] Your composition is excellent except for some spelling mistakes. “你的作文很好,只是有几处拼写错误。”

在说明“作文”的基本情况后,再对“拼写”这个细节加以补充说明。“作文”和“拼写错误”不是“相称的同类语”。

[例] The suit fitted him well _____ the colour was a little brighter.

A. except for B. except that C. except when D. besides

答案: B。“这套衣服除了颜色有点鲜艳了,很合他的身。”the colour was a little brighter 为宾语从句,且含义已完整,因此应用 except that (无义连词 that)。

[例] It will do except that it is too long. “这行啊,只是太长了些。”

16-34 but 用作介词时,有时可与 except 互换。其后可跟动词不定式。当其前由“do”字样时,其后用不带 to 的不定式。

① but 强调其意义的接近完整性,常在 no, all, nobody, where, who, everywhere 等词后出现;而 except 则强调其后边的例外。

[例] I have written all my letters but one. “我只差一封信就都写完了”。(从整体角度看)

[例] I have written all my letters except one. “我剩一封信没写完”。(从剩余部分来看)

[例] All of them but me had been there before. “除我外,他们以前都到过那里。”

②but 或 except 后跟不定式作宾语时,如果其前有动词“do”,无论该 do 是谓语动词还是非谓语动词,其后的不定式均要省略 to;否则,不定式常保留 to。

[例] My grandmother didn't do anything but keep house and serve everybody. “我奶奶除了打理房间以及为大家服务外,什么事也不做。”

[例] There was clearly nothing left to do but drop her onto the bed and weep. “显然没有别的办法,她只好倒在床上哭泣。”

[例] Then it doesn't have any choice but to lie down and sleep. “它没有办法,只好躺下睡觉。”

此句中没有动词“do”的字样,所以 but 之后的不定式前的“to”要保留,不能省略。

③but 后接形容词时,或是以固定词组的形式出现时,都不宜用 except 去代替 but。常见的有:nothing but(=only)“只不过是”;anything but(=never)“绝不是”;all but(=almost)“几乎跟…一样”、“简直是”;first but, next but, last but 等。

[例] What I said is nothing but a joke. “我所说的只不过是笑话。”

[例] She is anything but happy. “她绝不幸福。”

[例] The picture is all but perfect. “这幅画近乎完美。”

[例] I was the first but two in the race yesterday. “昨天赛跑我得了第三名。”

[例] My brother lives next door but one. “我兄弟的住处和我隔一扇门。”

16-35 before 表示“位置”时,其反义词是 behind;表示“时间”和“顺序”时,其反义词是 after。

[例] Before my classmates, it seems always difficult for me to do things as well as them.
“对我来说,在同学们面前把事情做得同他们一样好总是困难。”

[例] A car pulled up behind me. “一辆小汽车在我身后停下”。(指位置)

[全国高考题]

[例] It doesn't taste like anything I have ever had before. “它不像我之前尝过的任何东西。”

[全国高考题]

[例] They will return after 3 o'clock. “他们将3点后回来”。(指时间)

[例] Your name comes after me in the list. “名单上,你的名字列于我之后”。(指顺序)

16-36 by 和 near 都有“靠近”的意思,但 by 比 near 更近。

如果说“靠海的一个村子”,用 a village by the sea 表达时,意思是:村子就在海边,从村子可以看到海;用 a village near the sea 表达时,意思是:从村子就不一定能看到海了,也许距海还有一段距离。

温馨提示

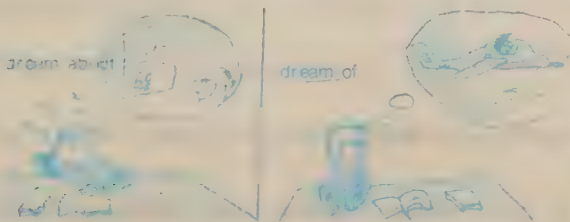
by 还常可表示数量、幅度上的相差或大小。

[例] The number of the employees has grown from 1,000 to 1,200. This means it has risen _____ 20 percent.

A. by B. at C. to D. with

答案是 A。“雇员的数量已经从 1,000 变成了 1,200。这就意味着已经上升了 20%。”该空表示增长幅度,应填 by。

16-37 dream about 多表示“(睡着时)梦见”;dream of 多表示“梦想”。



[例] What does it mean if you dream about a fire? “做梦梦见火意味着什么?”

[例] I often dream of being a teacher, I dream of standing on the platform in classroom and giving lessons to lovely boys and girls. “我经常梦想成为教师,我梦想站在教室的讲台上给可爱的男孩女孩们讲课。” [湖北高考题]

16-38 表示“向某人借(入)某物”,用 borrow sth. from sb.;表示“将某物借(出)给某人”,用 lend sth. to sb./lend sb. sth.;表“借(用)…”(一段时间)”时,要用 keep,常可与表示一段时间的状态语连用。

[例] He was hoping to go abroad but his parents have decided that they won't support him unless he can borrow money from the bank. “他想出国但是父母决定不支持他除非他能从银行借到钱。” [湖北高考题]

[例] I lent my new pen to Wang Wei. “我把新钢笔借给了王伟。”

[例] —How long can I keep your book? “你的这本书我可以借用多长时间?”

—For two weeks. “两周。”

温馨提示

“how long”和“for two weeks”都是延续一段时间,不能与“borrow”连用。

16-39 表示“离某处(远)”用“(far/far away) from + 某处”;表示“离某处(近)”用“(near) to + 某处”。

[例] The sun is far from the earth but the moon is near to us. “太阳离地球远,而月亮离我们近。”

温馨提示

当 away 前有数字单位时,不用 far。

[例] 改错:It is about 200 miles far away from London.

答案是把 far 去掉。“离伦敦大约有 200 英里。”away 前 200 英里具体数字,不再用 far。

16-40 by 常与交通工具等连用表示方式,其后的名词常不加冠词。

[例] To enjoy the scenery, Irene would rather spend long hours on the train than travel by air.

“为了享受风景,Irene 宁愿花长时间坐火车而不愿乘飞机。”“by air”相当于 by plane。

[例] If you go by _____ train, you can have quite a comfortable journey, but make sure you get _____ fast one.

A. the, the B. 不填, a C. the, a D. 不填, 不填

答案是 B。“如果你坐火车出行,你能拥有一个相当舒服的旅行,但要确定你做的是快车。”a fast one 意为“一辆快车”,其中 one 是代词,代替 train。

帮你归纳

by bike 短语在句中作方式状语。类似的短语还有:by bus, by train, by air/ plane, by sea/ ship/ spaceship 等。

by 短语还可用于表示其他方式或手段。如:by post, by telephone, by radio, by television, by hand, by machine 等。

[例] 改错:He should make the class very active for joking with the students.

答案是把 for 改为 by。“他应通过与学生开玩笑来活跃课堂气氛。”by 表示通过做某事的手段,常用 by doing sth.。

16-41 “with 或 without + 宾语 + 宾补”结构可作伴随状语或定语。

①作伴随状语时,常可转换为一个独立主格结构

[例] He slept well _____ all the windows open.

[全国高考题]

A. when B. while C. with D. because

答案是C。“窗户全开着,他睡得很好”with介词短语在此表示伴随状况,相当于He slept well, all the windows(being) open.

[例] It was a pity that the great writer died _____ his works unfinished.

A. for B. with C. from D. of

答案是B。“那位伟大的作家作品没有完成就去世了是一件憾事。”unfinished在此处并不是表示死亡的原因,这里用的是with复合结构作状语,表示died的伴随状况,即:作品没有完成就死了。unfinished与宾语为动宾关系,表示被动含义,意题没有被写完。

②作定语时,总是位于被修饰词之后。

[例] She saw a brook with red flowers and green grass on both sides. “她看见一条小溪,两边长满了红花绿草。”

16-42 某些常见的含有介词的固定搭配。

[例] The speech by the mayor of Shanghai before the final voting for EXPO 2011 is strongly impressed _____ my memory.

[上海高考题]

A. to B. over C. by D. on

答案是D。“上海市长在申办2011年世博会最终投票前所做的演讲在我记忆中留下了深刻的印象。”impress sth. on/upon sb. 是固定搭配,表示“给…留下印象”。故选D。

[例] —Does Lisa have a new hair style?

—Yes. In fact, it is quite similar _____ yours.

[上海高考题]

A. as B. like C. to D. with

答案是C。“莉莎有一个新发型吗?”“是的,事实上和你的很相似。”similar常与介词to连用,表示“与…相似”,符合此处语境

[例] 改错:David and I wanted to go off to find help but Bill insisted in staying near the car.

[全国高考题]

答案是把in改作on。“我和大卫想去求援,但比尔坚持说要呆在汽车附近。”“insist on(坚持…意见)”是固定搭配。

[例] 改错:When they came down, the police were angry to them.

答案是把to改为with。“当他们下来时,警察很生他们的气。”常见搭配是“be angry with sb. at sth.”(为某事而生了某人的气)。

【例】改错: We must keep in mind that we play for the team instead ourselves.

全国高考题

答案是在 *instead* 后加 *of*。“我们必须牢记的是我们要为全队踢球,而不是为我们个人。”*instead* 是副词,当其后有被代替的对象时,必须加介词 *of*。“*instead of...*”表示“代替...”、“而不是...”。

温馨提示

在英语中,某些“介词 + 名词”构成固定结构,表示处于某种状态或正在进行某项活动。如: *at work*“在上班”, *at table*“在吃饭”, *at war*“在战争中”, *at school*“在上学”, *in use*“在使用中”, *in love*“在恋爱中”, *in danger*“在危险中”, *on holiday*“在度假”, *on sale*“在出售、削价”, *on show*“在展出”, *on duty*“值日”等。

16-43 “*of* + 抽象名词”相当于形容词,可作表语,也可作定语。

常见的有:“*of* (great) interest/importance/value/help/ability”意为“(very) interesting/important/valuable/helpful/able”。

【例】You will find this map of great _____ in helping you to get around the city.

A. source B. sense C. favor D. value

上海高考题

答案是 D。“你将会发现这幅地图帮你在城里走动十分有用。”*of* 加名词 = 相当于对应的形容词。此处应用 *of great value*, 相当于 *very valuable*, 表示“十分有价值的”。

【例】Having the answers ready will be of great help.

“把答案准备好将很有帮助。”

第五节 英汉差异造成的介词错用

16-44 由于英汉语言文化差异而导致的易错的介词举例。

① *against* 的意思是“反对”, *for* 意思为“赞成”, 它们在汉语中用动词表示, 而在英语中可用介词表示。

【例】—Express your opinion to them, I'll stick up _____ you.

A. for B. against C. on D. at

答案是 A。“向他们说出你的意见, 我会支持你。”介词 *for* 此处意思为“赞成, 支持”。

【例】We are against war. “我们反对战争。”

② *marry* 意思是“结婚”, 在汉语中说“和...结婚”, 用作不及物动词; 而在英语中却用作及物动词, 之后接宾语; 在表达“*get/be + married*”(与...结婚)这个意义时介词要用 *to*, 不用 *with*。

【例】She married a rich man. (或: She was married to a rich man.) “她和一个富人结婚了。”

③表示“受伤”时,汉语习惯说“…上伤了”,而英语则用介词“in”表示。

[例] He has a knife wound in the leg. “他腿上有刀伤。”

④表示“某事登在报纸上”,汉语习惯说“报上…”,而英语则用介词“in”表示。

[例] I read the important news in a newspaper. “我是在一张报纸上看到这条重要消息的。”

温馨提示

若“眼镜”、“笔”等物搁在报纸上,则用“on”表示。

⑤表示“为…服务”时,汉语中用作不及物动词;而英语“serve”用作及物动词,故不能加 for。如:“为人民服务”译作“serve the people” 同样,汉语说“进行有关某事的讨论”,英语中用“discuss sth.”,可不能在 discuss 之后加 about。

⑥表示“撞到…上”,英语用 into,而不用 onto。

[例] Granny drove into a tree again yesterday. “昨天奶奶开车又撞到树上了。”

帮你归纳

类似的用语还有:run into, bump into, crash into 等。

⑦表示“…和…相同”时,英语不用 with,而用 as;表示“…和…不同”时,用 from。

[例] A is different from B. “A 和 B 不同。”

[例] A is the same as B. “A 和 B 相同。”

⑧表示“在…帮助下”,英语用 with,不用 under。

[例] With the help of the teacher, I have made rapid progress in English. “在老师的帮助下,我在英语方面取得了迅速的进步。”

温馨提示

但表示“在…的领导下”时,用 under。

⑨表示“在收音机/电视/电话里”时,英语用 on the radio/on TV/on the telephone 等。

[例] I heard his speech on the radio. “我在收音机里听到了他的演说。”

⑩表示“(孔、洞、窗户)在墙上”时,英语用“in”表示。但表示“(图画等)在墙上”时,用 on 表示。

[例] Crusoe made holes in the wall. “克鲁索在墙上上凿了些洞。”

即学即用

I. 单项填空

- It's quite _____ me why such things have been allowed to happen.
A. for B. behind C. against D. beyond
- _____ achievement, last week's ministerial meeting of the WTO here earned a low, though not failing, grade.

[湖南高考题]

- A. In terms of B. In case of C. As a result of D. In face of
3. My sister was against my suggestion while my brother was _____ it.
- A. in favour of B. in memory of C. in honour of D. in search of
4. _____ two exams to worry about, I have to work really hard this weekend.
- A. With B. Besides C. As for D. Because of
5. I feel that one of my main duties _____ a teacher is to help the students to become better learners. [广东高考题]
- A. for B. by C. as D. with
6. No one helped me. I did it all _____ myself. [上海高考题]
- A. for B. by C. from D. to
7. —You know, Bob is a little slow _____ understanding, so...
—So I have to be patient _____ him. [重庆高考题]
- A. in; with B. on; with C. in; to D. at; for
8. Sorry, Madam. You'd better come tomorrow because it's _____ the visiting hours.
- A. during B. at C. beyond D. before [福建高考题]
9. John became a football coach in Sealion Middle School _____ the beginning of March.
- A. on B. for C. with D. at [上海高考题]
10. _____ production up by 60%, the company has had another excellent year.
- A. As B. for C. With D. Through
11. The home improvements have taken what little there is _____ my spare time.
- A. from B. in C. of D. at
12. —You are so lucky.
—What do you mean _____ that?
- A. for B. in C. of D. by
13. —What do you want _____ those old boxes?
—To put things in when I move to the new flat.
- A. by B. for C. of D. with
14. Luckily, the bullet narrowly missed the captain _____ an inch.
- A. by B. at C. to D. from
15. They had a pleasant chat _____ a cup of coffee. [北京高考题]
- A. for B. with C. during D. over
16. A clean environment can help the city bid for the Olympics, which _____ will promote its economic development. [山东高考题]
- A. in nature B. in return C. in turn D. in fact
17. The conference has been held to discuss the effects of tourism _____ the wildlife in the area. [上海高考题]
- A. in B. on C. at D. with
18. I know nothing about the young lady _____ she is from Beijing. [上海高考题]
- A. except B. except for C. except that D. besides

19. The classroom is big enough _____, but we'll have to move if we have more students.
 A. for the moment B. on the moment
 C. in a moment D. for a moment
20. He suddenly saw Sue _____ the room. He pushed his way _____ the crowd of people to get to her.
 A. across; across B. over; through C. over; into D. across; through
21. We hadn't planned to meet. We met _____ chance.
 A. of B. in C. for D. by
22. My friend Martin was very sick with a strange fever; _____, he could neither eat nor sleep.
 A. as a result B. after all C. any way D. otherwise
23. _____ and no way to reduce her pain and suffering from the terrible disease, the patient sought her doctor's help to end her life.
 A. Having given up hope of cure B. With no hope for cure
 C. There being hope for cure D. In the hope of cure

II. 形容词与介词搭配练习

1. The Swede was not good _____ learning languages.
2. Doing morning exercises is good _____ health.
3. Mother whales are good _____ their babies.
4. The teacher is strict _____ his pupils.
5. We should be strict _____ all our work.
6. It is known _____ us all that the earth is round.
7. He is known _____ a successful lawyer.
8. There is something wrong _____ the machine.
9. He is wrong _____ doing this.
10. I am not familiar _____ that word.
11. That word is not familiar _____ me.
12. The doctor was busy _____ operating on the patient.
13. She is always busy _____ her needle and thread.
14. John was very quick _____ Chinese.
15. The old man was quick _____ playing chess.
16. Lincoln's mother was kind _____ him.
17. We should be polite _____ others.
18. The boss was cruel _____ his workers.
19. Our school is next _____ the post office.
20. He was very angry _____ her for saying so.
21. What are you angry _____?
22. The emperor was pleased _____ the magic cloth.
23. We are not afraid _____ darkness.

24. Don't be too hard _____ the girl.
25. The little boy is often late _____ school.
26. This kind of diamond necklace is quite different _____ that glass one.
27. I am fond _____ playing the violin
28. Japan is equal _____ France in size.
29. Our future is full _____ hope.
30. She was tired _____ seeing such films.
31. Are you scared _____ dogs?
32. He was successful _____ everything he did.
33. Our country is rich _____ minerals.

III. 改错

1. Don't worry for such problems.
2. There is a door on the wall.
3. Write it with ink.
4. ... and some books, for example, books for history, science, cooking and gardening are all so popular. [全国高考题]
5. There is no need of anyone to know.
6. Do you take me as a fool?
7. It is up for you to decide when we will start.
8. Einstein once refused to speak to the radio.
9. The theory does not have a leg to stand with.
10. He is reading under the sun.
11. We're proud for being students of New China.
12. We went to the Summer Palace in a winter morning.
13. His father will be back from London after a few days.
14. He could not come for illness.
15. The answer of this question is quite simple.



点石成金

I. 单项选择

1. beyond sb. 可表示“超出某人的能力或理解力”,符合句意。
2. in terms of 意为“就…而言;在…方面”,符合句意。比较:in case of“以防万一,如果”;as a result“结果”;in face of“面对,在…面前”。
3. while 表示对比,“我妹妹反对我的建议”而“我弟弟赞成我的建议”,应用 in favour of。
4. 从结构看,two exams 为宾语,不定式 to worry about 为补足语,即 with + 宾语 + 宾语补足语。
5. C。a teacher 表示一职业,应用介词 as。

6. (all) by oneself 意思为“alone”单独、靠自己”,与前句“没有人帮助我”意义一致。

be a little slow in(表示“Bob 在理解上有点慢”)和 be patient with(表示“所以我不得不对他有耐心”)都有其固定搭配。

由语境“对不起,你最好明天来。”可知现在已经“超过了”参观的时间。

9. D “在三月初”应用 at the beginning of March。

只有介词 with 才能带复合宾语,即:宾语 production + 补足语“up by 60%”。

“家庭改进花费了我非常少的业余时间。”应把 of my spare time 看做是 what little 的后置定语。

“What do you mean by + ?”是一个较固定句式,即“你那样…是什么意思?”。

with 有“用”的含义,即“你想用这些旧箱子做什么?”。

“子弹差一英寸就击中了上尉”。应用 by 表示幅度的大小相差。

over 表示“在(做)…期间;边…边…”符合“边喝咖啡边聊天”(to chat over a cup of coffee)。比较:for 和 during 后常接时间段;with“随着,用”。

in turn 表示“此事反过来将促进城市的经济发展”。比较:in nature 事实上;in return 作为回报/报答;in fact 事实上。

effect 意为影响,与其对象之间用介词 on。在本题中,effect 的对象就是 the wildlife,因此要用介词 on。

she is from Beijing 是一个句子,只有 except that 才能引导从句。

“但如果我们的学生多了,我们将不得不搬迁”暗示未来的变数,应用 for the moment 表示“教室暂时够大了”。

across 和 through 分别表示从表面上和内部穿过,符合句意。比较:over 表示从上面越过;into 表示进入…(内部)。

短语 by chance“偶然”,与前“我们并没有计划见面”意义一致。

“不能吃睡”,应是“生病发一种奇怪烧”的结果,应用 as a result 作此处的插入语。

with 引导的介词短语,表示原因,符合句意。C、D 的句意和下文不符,A 项 having given up 与 and 后 no way 搭配不当。

II. 形容词与介词搭配练习

1. at 2. for 3. to 4. with 5. in 6. to 7. as 8. with 9. in 10. with 11. to
12. (in) 13. with 14. at 15. in 16. to 17. to 18. to 19. to 20. with
21. at/about 22. with 23. of 24. on 25. for 26. from 27. of 28. to 29. of
30. of 31. of 32. in 33. in

III. 改错

1. for→about 2. on→in 3. with→in 4. 第二个 for→on 5. of →for 6. as→for
7. for→to 8. 第二个 to→on 9. with→on 10. under→in 11. for→of 12. in→on
13. after→in 14. for→because of 15. of→to

第17章

连词

高考热点

近年高考中对连词的考查还是不少的,但单独考查连词的情况不多。对并列连词的考查主要出现在短文改错、完形填空及少量的单选题中。考查的重点是根据上下文的语境,选择和使用符合逻辑关系的并列连词。一些特定的句型(如:祈使句 + and/or + 陈述句等)也是高考的热点。对从属连词的考查主要出现在单选和完形填空中,通常和状语从句一起考查。考查的重点是从属连词的选择。

此外,正确掌握连词的意义及用法对提高写作能力和阅读能力都有很大的帮助。

第一节 连词的概念及分类

17-1 连词是用来连接单词、短语、从句或句子的词。连词不在句中充当成分。

连词是一种虚词,它不能独立担任句子成分,只能在单词、短语、从句或句子之间起连接作用。

[例] You should do it slowly and carefully.

“你应该慢慢地仔细地做。” [全国高考试题]
and 是连词,连接两个副词 slowly 和 carefully。

[例] Should the wallet, found in the street, be put into a pocket _____ turned over to the policeman?

[全国高考试题]

A. and

B. or

C. then

D. but

答案是B。“在街上捡到的这个钱包是应该装进口袋呢,还是交给警察呢?”句中or为连词,连接两个作谓语的动词短语。

[例] Hand up get out!

A. or D. and C. but D. to

全国高考题

答案是B。“举起手来滚出去!”and为连词,连接两个并列的分句。

17-2 连词分为两类:并列连词和从属连词。

①连接等同成分的词是并列连词。等同成分可以是单词、短语、分句或句子。连接两个句子时,则构成并列句。[详见第24章并列句]

[例] I grew up in Africa, _____ at least I should say that I spent much of the first ten years of my life there.

A. and B. or C. so D. but

[辽宁高考题]

答案是B。“我在非洲长大,或者至少我应该说我一生中的头十年是在那儿度过的。”or连接两个分句,后句是对I grew up in Africa的进一步说明。

[例] The worker is old but strong. “那位工人年龄大,但很强壮。”but连接两个形容词。

②把从句和主句连接起来的词叫做从属连词。从属连词可分为两类:一类引导名词性从句;另一类引导副词性从句。

[例] Danby left word with my secretary _____ he would call again in the afternoon.

A. who B. that C. as D. which

[浙江高考题]

答案是B。“丹比给我的秘书留下消息说他会再打电话。”句中that引导同位语从句,只起连接的作用,在句子中不充当成分,也没有词义。

[例] I want to know _____ the thief was caught on the spot.

A. which B. that C. what D. whether

答案是D。“我想知道小偷是否是当场被捉着的。”whether引导宾语从句,作“是否”解,在从句中不担任任何成分,只起连接作用;而其他引导名词性从句的连接词(如what/who/when等)在从句中要担任一定的成分。

[例] _____ makes this shop different is that it offers more personal services.

A. What B. Who C. Whatever D. Whoever

[辽宁高考题]

答案是A。“让这家商店与众不同的是它提供更人性化的服务”,is前为主语部分,what引导主语从句,在从句中作主语,相当于the thing/things that...(…的+名词)。

[例] If by any chance someone comes to see me, ask them to leave a message.

“如果碰巧有人找我,请他们留个信。”

连词if在句中引导副词性从句——条件状语从句。

第二节 并列连词

17-3 从语义上看,并列连词有四种:表示平行关系、转折关系、选择关系和因果关系。

常见并列连词分类表:

	简单连词	短语连词	关联连词
平行关系			▲ both... and, ...和... * not only... but also... 不但, ...而且... * nether... nor... ,既不...也不...
转折关系	° but 但是, yet 还、仍		
选择关系	然, however 然而, nevertheless 然而, while 而, only [口] 可是	rather than 与其...不如	* either... or... 或者...或者...
因果关系	for 因为, so 于是, therefore 所以, hence 所以		

温馨提示

(1) 当这些并列连词连接两个主语(如: A...B)时,标“*”者,谓语动词要与后一主语(B)一致;标“▲”者,要与两个主语(A+B)的“和”一致,用复数动词;标“。”者,一律与前一主语(A)一致。[参见“第1章主谓一致”]。

(2) however, nevertheless, hence, therefore, otherwise 多用作副词,起到连接作用。但它们有时也直接跟一个分句,也有语法家把它们分为并列连词。

[例] He was down with the flu, and therefore couldn't come to the party. “他患了流行性感冒,因此未能前来参加宴会。”

句中的 therefore 为副词。

[例] It rained therefore the football match was put off. “天
下雨,所以足球比赛延期了。”

句中的 therefore 也可视为连词。但如果其前加 and, 则常被视为副词。

17-4 表示平行或对等关系的并列连词使用中要注意连词前后的成分一般是对等的,而且是同向的。

【例】One learns a language by making mistakes and _____ them.

- A. correct B. correcting C. corrects D. to correct

答案是 B。“人是通过出错和修正错误来学习语言的。”介词 by 的宾语有两个，中间用 and 并列，因此第二个应与第一个 making 在结构上对等，也要用 -ing 形式，故选“correcting”。

【例】改错：I came into the living room and saw one of them just go through the kitchen door but turn on the light.

答案：应将 but 改为 and。“我来到了客厅，看见有一个人刚刚穿过厨房的门并开了灯。”两个不定式短语 go through the kitchen door 和 turn on the light 是并列的关系，而不是转折的关系。

温馨提示

当几项成分用 and 表示并列关系时，一般只在最后两项之间用 and，其前的各成分间用逗号；但若是强调各个成分时，也有各成分间都用 and 连接的。

【例】Special courses in English for business, travel, banking, hotel management and office skills are taught in Modern English school.

“现代英语学校教授英语特别课程：商业、旅游、银行业、旅馆管理和办公技巧。”

【例】Here for four very difficult years they worked every moment that they could spare, weighing and boiling and measuring and calculating and thinking. “就在这里，他们非常艰难地工作了四年，把他们能抽出的每一分钟都用上了，称呀，煮呀，量呀，计算呀，思考呀。”

本句中几个分词间都用 and 连接，既强调动作的连续性，又意味着动作循环往复，没完没了。

【例】Neither he nor I am wrong. (或：Neither I nor he is wrong.) “他和我都没错。”[参见 1—10]。

17-5 表示转折关系的并列连词在使用中要注意连词前后的成分是对等的，但意义是相反的。

【例】改错：She always made sure that our homework was finished on time, but she marked strictly on student's actual performance. [辽宁高考题]

答案是把 but 改为 and。“她总是确保我们的作业按时完成，并且严格按学生所完成的实际情况来评定。”前后两句的意义不是相反的，而是同向的，因此不能用 but。

【例】—Somebody wants you on the telephone.

[北京高考题]

— _____ no one knows I'm here.

- A. For B. And C. But D. So

答案是 C。“有人打电话找你”“可没有人知道我在这里呀。”此处应用 but 来表示转折,突出惊讶的语气。for 表示原因;so 表示结果;and 表示并列或递进。三者都与上下文的语气不符。

[例] He was tired, yet he kept on working. “他累了,然而他仍继续工作。”

[例] We thought there were 35 students in the dining hall, _____, in fact, there were 40.

- A. while B. whether C. what D. which

答案是 A。“我们原来认为餐厅有 35 个学生,而实际上却有 40 个学生。”in fact 为插入语,可先将其去掉,即可看出前后意思不一致,形成对比。故应选 while 表示转折。

温馨提示

but 有时可以和表示歉意之类的词(句)连用,引导后文。

[例] I'm sorry, but I don't think I know you. “对不起,但我想我不认识你。”

[例] Excuse me for breaking in, _____ I have some news for you.

- A. so B. and C. but D. yet

答案是 C。“对不起,插句话。我有消息要告诉你。”在表达“Excuse me,”或“I'm sorry,...”时,常用 but 引起一个具有解释性的句子。

[例] I hope you don't mind me asking, _____ where did you buy those shoes?

- A. so B. and C. yet D. but

答案是 D。“我希望你不介意我问一问,你是在哪儿买的鞋?”空前表示的意义具有一定歉意,应用连词 but 引导后文的问题。

17-6 表示选择关系的并列连词在使用中要注意连词前后的成分是对等的,但是意思是有所取舍的。

[例] You may either stay here or go with me. “你可以呆在这儿,也可以跟我去”。

[例] _____ is often the main requirement in speaking.

- A. Clearness rather than loudness B. Loudness rather than clearness
C. Either clearness or loudness D. Neither loudness nor clearness

答案是 A。“在讲话中,最主要的要求是清晰,而不是大声。”

[例] Would you like a cup of coffee, _____ shall we get down to business right away?

- A. and B. then C. or D. otherwise

答案是 C。“你是先喝一杯咖啡呢,还是我们立刻就开始办正事?”

温馨提示

当要同时否定两个成分时,若共用一个否定词,则要用 or 连接两个成分;若用 and,则必须重复使用否定词。

[例] A clock hasn't legs or a mouth, but it can walk and tell the time. “钟没有腿,也没有嘴,但它能走,并能告诉时间。”

A clock has no legs and no mouth, but it can walk and tell the time.

17-7 表示因果关系的并列连词在使用中要注意连词前后的成分是对等的,但前后两分句一个表示原因,一个表示结果。

[例] Unlike watching TV, reading is a highly active process, _____ it requires attention as well as memory and imagination.

A. until B. but C. unless D. for

答案是 D。“不像看电视,阅读是个高度活跃的过程,因为它需要注意,也需要记忆和想象”。几个连词只有 for 可以表示因果关系,解释、说明前面的分句。

[例] It must be morning now, for birds are singing. “一定已是早晨了,因为鸟儿在歌唱了。”鸟儿歌唱只是补充性说明,并不是鸟儿一唱天就必须亮,这里没有强烈的因果关系。

温馨提示

并列连词 for 表示“因为”、“由于”时,for 引出的分句一般置于句尾,其前常有逗号。它所表达的原因只是一种补充性的说明或辅助性的理由(而不像 because 那样表达强烈的因果)。

[例] 改错: My hometown is a pretty city, so people there are kind and polite.

答案是把 so 改为 and。“我的家乡是个美丽的城市,那儿的人们善良且有礼貌。”

本句连词前后两部分没有因果关系,故不能用 so 连接。

[例] Helen had left her keys in the office so she had to wait until her husband came back.

“海伦把钥匙落在了办公室里,因此她只好等到她丈夫回来。”

温馨提示

because 和 so 只能选用其一,而不可同时用于一个句中。

[例] He missed the early bus, so he was late. “他没赶上早班车,所以迟到了。”

相当于 Because he missed the early bus, he was late. 但不能说: Because he missed the early bus, so he was late. [参见 24-8]。

第三节 从属连词

17-8 从属连词的作用:引导大多数副词性从句(状语从句)和少数名词性从句。

从属连词		功 能	
英义	汉义	副词性从句	名词性从句
		状语从句	(主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句、同位语从句)
that	(无)	目的、结果	主语、宾语、表语、同位语
whether	是否	主语、宾语、表语	
whether...or	无论...还是...	让步	
if	是否		宾语
	如果	条件	
when	当...时	时间	
while	当...时	时间	
	当,随着	时间	
	由于	原因	
as	像...那样,正如	比较	
	尽管	让步(表语或谓 语必须在 as 前)	
	和...一样	比较	
since	自从	时间	
	由于,既然	原因	
before	在...之前	时间	
after	在...之后	时间	
once	一旦	时间	
as soon as	...就...	时间	
until/till	直到	时间	
because	因为	原因	
now that	既然	原因	

从属连词

功 能

seeing that	由于	原因
in that	因为	原因
although/though	虽然,尽管	让步
even if/even though	即使	让步
no matter how	无论如何	让步
however	无论如何	让步
no matter what	无论什么	让步
whatever	无论什么	让步
unless	除非	条件
supposing (that)	假如	条件
provided (that)	如果	条件
so/as long as	如果,只要	条件
on condition (that)	只要	条件
(so) that	目的是,为了,以便	目的
in order that	目的是,为了,以便	目的
so... that	如此...以致	结果
such... that	如此...以致	结果
than	比	比较
where	在...地方	地点
wherever	无论何处	地点

温馨提示

when 和 which 等引导名词性从句时,分别称为连接副词和连接代词;引导形容词性从句时,分别称为关系副词和关系代词,都在从句中作成分,不叫“连词”。

17-9 连词 that 引导名词性从句时,没有词义;引导状语从句时表示“为了”、“以致于”。

[例] Some researchers believe that there is no doubt _____ a cure for AIDS will be 341

found.

广东高考题

A. which B. that C. what D. whether

答案是 B。“有些研究者相信医治艾滋病的方法将被发现是毫无疑问的。”that 引导同位语从句,解释 doubt 的具体内容,that 本身没有词义。



[例] It so happened that I know the man. “碰巧我认得那人。”

that 在句中引导主语从句,没有词义。

[例] Let's move a bit farther so that we may arrive earlier. “咱们快点走吧,好早点到达。”

(so)that 引导目的状语从句,意思是“为了”或“以便”。

[例] His plan was such a good one _____ we all agreed to accept it.

A. so B. and C. that D. as

答案是 C。“他的计划非常好,我们都同意接受。”“such + 名词 + that...”结构意思是“如此...以至于...”,引导结果状语从句。

17-10 既能引导状语从句,又能引导名词性从句的 if 和 whether。

①在表示“是否”的意思时,whether 和 if 都能引导宾语从句。但在正式文体中,句中有 or not 或 whether...or... 时或作介词的宾语时,则多用 whether。[参见 20-7]

[例] I want to know whether (或 if) you still work there.

“我想知道你是否还在那儿工作。”

[例] Elephants have their own way to tell the shape of an

object and _____ it is rough or smooth. [天津高考题]

A. 不填 B. whether C. how D. what

答案是 B。“大象有自己的方法来辨别一个物体的形状,并识别它(的表面)是粗糙的还是光滑的。”此处是 whether...or... 结构,故选 B。



[例] I haven't settled the question of whether I'll go back home. “我还没决定是否要回家去。”

whether 引导的从句作介词 of 的宾语。

②表示“假如”的意思,引导条件状语从句时,只能用 if,不用 whether。

[例] In time of serious accidents, _____ we know some basic things about first aid, we can save lives.

A. whether B. until C. if D. unless

[重庆高考题]

答案是 C。“在出严重事故时,如果知道一些基本的急救方法,我们就可以救人命。”if 引导条件状语从句,意为“如果”。而 whether 引导状语从句时,意为“无

论”，与句意不符。

③表示“不管”、“无论”的意思，引导让步状语从句，用 **whether**。

[例] **Whether** you can see the moon or not, it is always round. “不管你看见看不见月亮，它总是圆的。”

17-11 **when** 和 **while** 可以作从属连词，也可以作并列连词。

when 和 **while** 作从属连词时，引导时间状语从句 [参见 23-6]

when 作并列连词时，意思是“就在这时突然…”，而 **while** 作并列连词时，意思是“然而”。

[例] He was about halfway through his meal _____ a familiar voice came to his ears.

A. why B. where C. when D. while [辽宁高考题]

答案为 C。“他的饭正要吃到一半，这时一个熟悉的声音传进了他的耳朵里。”此处“be + 介词短语”相当于进行时态，符合“进行时 + **when**…”结构。**while** 不能和短暂动词 **came** 连用。**where** 引导地点状语从句，意思不符。

[例] I do every single bit of housework _____ my husband Bob just does the dishes now and then. [全国高考题]

A. since B. while C. when D. as

答案是 B。“每项家务都由我来做，而我丈夫鲍布只偶尔洗洗碗。”**while** 表示对比、对照，作“然而、但、却”解。

[例] I like playing basketball, while my sister likes playing tennis. “我喜欢打篮球，然而我妹妹喜欢打网球。”

17-12 **when** 作连词时，引导状语从句；作连接副词时，引导名词性从句；作关系副词时，引导定语从句；作疑问副词时，引出特殊疑问句。

[例] —Did Jack come back early last night?

—Yes. It was not yet eight o'clock _____ he arrived home.

A. before B. when C. that D. until

答案是 B。“杰克昨晚回来得早吗?”“是的,他到家时还没到 8 点。”eight o'clock 是时间点, it 指时间, 应用 when 引导时间状语从句, 符合句意及结构。

[例] Please remind me _____ he said he was going. I may be in time to see him off.

A. where B. when C. how D. what [全国高考题]

答案是 B。“请提醒我说说他什么时候走, 我也许来得及为他送行。”when“什么时候”在此为连接副词, 引导宾语从句, 并在从句中作状语。

[例] I shall never forget those years _____ I lived in the country with the farmers.

A. that B. when C. which D. who

答案是 B。“我将永远忘不了我在农村和农民们生活的那些岁月。”when 引导定语从句, 并在从句中作时间状语。

[例] When will you go to Beijing? “你什么时候去北京?”

when 在句中是疑问副词, 引出特殊疑问句。



即学即用

单项选择

1. —I think George doesn't really care for TV plays.

—Right, _____ he still watches the program.

A. and B. but C. or D. so [重庆高考题]

2. The changes in the city will cost quite a lot, _____ they will save us money in the long run.

A. or B. since C. for D. but [北京高考题]

3. —Would you like to come to the dinner party here on Saturday?

—Thank you. I'd love to, _____ I'll be out of town at the weekend.

A. because B. and C. so D. but

4. You must keep on working in the evening, _____ you are sure you can finish the task in time.

A. as B. if C. when D. unless [安徽高考题]

5. It was evening _____ we reached the little town of Winchester.

A. that B. until C. since D. before

6. _____ he has limited technical knowledge, the old worker has a lot of experience.

A. Since B. Unless C. As D. Although [全国高考题]

7. The cost of living in Glasgow is among the lowest in Britain, _____ the quality of life is probably one of the highest.

A. since B. when C. as D. while [天津高考题]

8. He was about to tell me the secret _____ someone patted him on the shoulder.

A. as B. until C. while D. when [上海高考题]

9. The famous scientist grew up _____ he was born and in 1930 he came to Shanghai.

A. when B. whenever C. where D. wherever

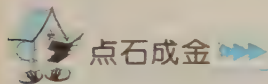
10. John shut everybody out of the kitchen _____ he could prepare his grand surprise for the party.

A. which B. when C. so that D. as if

II 用所给连词填空

(unless, although, or, as, but, because, if, while, and, until)

1. My father is very thin _____ he is in good health.
2. Li Ming failed in this English test _____ he didn't work hard at it.
3. They still didn't stop cutting the rice _____ it was raining hard.
4. You'll hurt yourself _____ you are always riding on a bike so fast.
5. The students didn't leave the classroom _____ the teacher asked them to.
6. Hurry up _____ you'll miss the early train.
7. He will be unable to work out the maths problem _____ I help him.
8. The children were listening carefully to him _____ the old man was telling a moving story.
9. Knock at the door, _____ it will be opened.
10. Great _____ Einstein was, he was never proud.



I 单项选择题

从“是的,不过他还在看这个节目”看,前后情况相反,是转折。

“城市的改变会花费相当多的钱”与“从长远的观点来看这将会给我们节省下钱”之间应为转折关系。

空前“愿意去”,与空后“届时又要出城不能赴宴”具有转折意味,故选 but。

unless 引导条件状语从句,表示“如果不能确信你会按时完成工作的话”。

before 引导时间状语从句,即“在我们到达 Winchester 小镇之前,天就黑了(已经是晚上了)”。句中 it 有实义,指时间。

“这位老工人技术知识有限”与“他有丰富的经验”是转折关系,应 although“虽然…;尽管…”引导让步状语从句。

7. D. the cost of living 和 the quality of life 对比,应用 while。

be about to do sth. when... 其中的 when 为并列连词“正在此时”。

刚出生就长大,情理不通,故排除 A 和 B; 又因主语出生只能是一个地方 (where), 而不是任何地方 (wherever), 故排除 D 而选 C。

后一句话是前一句话的目的“给大伙做一顿令他们吃惊的美餐”,应用 so that (以便)。

1. but 2. because 3. although 4. if 5. until 6. or 7. unless 8. while 9. and

10. as

第18章

构词法

高考热点

近年来高考直接考查构词法的并不多,但常在阅读理解和完形填空中考查学生对构词法的理解和运用(部分不考听力的省份在试卷中仍然保留单词拼写,其中有些也涉及构词法)。词汇是学习语言的基础,构词法的知识在英语学习中相当重要。理解和掌握构词法,有助于我们扩大词汇量,提高英语水平和成绩。掌握了一定的构词知识,记忆单词就不是一个一个的记,而是一串一串的记,这样,就可以极大地提高记忆单词的效率。背单词也就不再是一件枯燥乏味的苦差事了。

第一节 构词法的重要性及分类

18-1 掌握英语单词的构成方法对学好英语至关重要。

[例] The story is written by an _____ (澳大利亚) engineer.

“这个故事是一位澳大利亚工程师写的。”

答案是形容词 Australian。不是名词 Australia。

[例] Please give my _____ (祝贺) when you see her.

“你看到她时,请代我向她祝贺。”

答案是名词 congratulations,而不能用动词 congratulate。

英语中的词汇有一半以上是人们依据构词法造出来的:其中五分之二属“派生”,五分之三属“合成”。可见,英语构词法的学习对掌握英语词汇、学好英语具有至关重要的作用。

18-2 英语构词法主要有:合成法、转化法、派生法、混成法、截短法和词首字母缩略法,其中前三种最重要。

- ①合成法:将一个词加到另一个词上,前一个词修饰或限定后一个词。

[例] And finally, accept that friendships change as our needs and lifestyles change. “最后,要相信友谊会随着我们的需要和生活方式的改变而改变。”
[全国高考题]
life(生活) + style(方式) → lifestyle
“生活方式”



- ②转化法:一个词由一种词类转化成另一种词类而词形不变。

[例] And the result can be what you don't want — an end to the relationship. “结果会是你不想要的东西,即关系的结束。”
动词 end“结束” → 名词 end“结束,结尾,尽头”。

- [例] Four British ships fired on the Bismarck. “四艘英国军舰向俾斯麦号开火。”

名词 fire“火” → 动词 fire“开火”

[全国高考题]

- ③派生法:在词根前面加前缀或在词根后面加后缀,前缀一般改变词义而不改变词性,后缀一般改变词性而不改变词义。

[例] John and Jim are not unusual people. “约翰和吉姆并不是非凡的人。”
前缀 un(不) + 词根 usual(平凡的) → unusual“非凡的”

- [例] I was deeply upset about it. “我对此深感焦虑。”

词根 deep(深的) + 后缀 -ly(附在形容词或分词后构成副词) → deeply“深深地”

- ④混成法:将两个词混合或紧缩而成为一个复合词;后半部分表示主体,前半部分表示属性。

[例] I think we can say it's a “plike”. “我想我们可以说它是一种‘飞行车’。”

plane(飞机) + bike(自行车) → plike“飞行车(虚构的词,表示一种既像飞机,又像自行车的机器)”

- ⑤截短法:将词缩写,词义和词类保持不变。

[例] A friend gave me a photo. “一个朋友给我一张照片。”

Photograph“照片” → photo

- ⑥词首字母缩略法:用词首字母组成一个新词,有两种形式:a. 各字母分别读音;b. 作为一个词读音。

[例] If you want to become a “do-it-yourselfer”, you can go to DIY classes. “如果你想成为一位‘自己动手者’,你可以去上DIY班。”

Do-it-yourselfer“自己动手者” → DIY(各字母分别读音)

- [例] We also have a six-week TOEFL preparation class during winter and summer holi-

days. “我们在寒暑假期间还举办有为期六周的托福培训班。”

Testing of English as a Foreign Language “作为外语的英语测试” → TOEFL (作为一个词读: [ˈtəʊfl])

第二节 主要构词法之一:合成法

18-3 合成名词的构成方法主要是:名词
(或:形容词/动词) + 名词, 名词 + 介词短
语, 动词 + 副词。

① 名词 + 名词 → 合成名词

[例] They could melt dangerous icebergs in the ocean.

“它们能融化海洋中的冰山。”

名词 ice(冰) + 名词 berg(山) → iceberg “冰山”

触类旁通

classmate “同班同学”, bedroom “卧室”, pencilbox “铅笔盒”, ballpen “圆珠笔”,
housewife “家庭主妇”, firefighter “消防队员”, workforce “劳动力”, postman “邮递
员”, X-ray “X光”, mailbox “邮筒”, landowner “地主”, farmland “农田”, handstand
“倒立”, handshake “握手”, coastline “海岸线”, gunfire “炮火”等。

② 形容词 + 名词 → 合成名词

[例] Mixing in more noise with the help of loudspeakers can reduce the unwanted noise.

“在高音喇叭的帮助下混入更多的响声能减少不需要的噪声。”

形容词 loud(高声的) + 名词 speaker(喇叭) → loudspeaker “高音喇叭”

触类旁通

blackboard “黑板”, short-wave “短波”, gentleman “绅士”, newcomer “新来者”,
tightrope “绷索”, best-seller “畅销书”, mainland “大陆”, freeway “高速公路”, red-neck
“乡下佬”, second-hand “二手货”, midday “中午”, front-runner “领先的人”等。

③ 动词 + 名词 → 合成名词

[例] Soon the _____ (高峰时间) crowds began to notice.

答案是 rush-hour. “很快高峰时间行走的人群开始有了察觉。”空格处应该填
一个作定语的合成名词。

触类旁通

pickpocket “扒手”, breakwater “防波堤”, rubstone “磨刀石”, runway “跑道”, sit-
downer “静坐罢工者”等。

④名词 + 介词短语 → 合成名词

【例】A big dance was planned by the _____ (最高统帅) of all the armed forces on the island.

| 全国高考题

答案是 commander-in-chief (介词短语 in chief 意为“最高的”)。“舞会是由岛上所有武装力量的最高统帅计划安排的。”

触类旁通

comrade-in-arms“战友”, father-in-law“岳父”, daughter-in-law“儿媳”等

⑤动词 + 副词 → 合成名词

【例】We shall have to make a _____ (决定) about the _____ (聚会).

答案是 decision; get-together。“关于聚会我们得做出决定了。”

触类旁通

breakthrough“突破”, runaround“借口”, runaway“逃亡者”, sell-out“售完”, hand-out“传单”, walkaway“轻易获得的胜利”, breakdown“衰落”等。

18-4 合成形容词的构成方法主要是:名词 + 形容词, 名词(或:形容词/副词) + 分词, 形容词 + 名词(或 + 名词 + ed)。

①名词 + 形容词 → 合成形容词

【例】He was one of 80 middle school students from China attending a _____ (历时月余) ‘youth Summit’.

| 全国高考题

答案是 month-long。“他是从中国来参加为期一个月的‘青年高峰’会议的80个中学生中的一员。”

触类旁通

age-old“古老的”, worldwide“世界范围的”, nationwide“全国性的”, duty-free“免税的”, snow-white“雪白的”, world-famous“世界闻名的”, lifelong“终生的”等。

②名词 + 分词 → 合成形容词

【例】Dieting simply makes an _____ (苹果形的) person into a smaller apple and a _____ (梨形的) person into a smaller pear.

| 全国高考题

答案是 apple-shaped; pear-shaped。“节食只能让一个苹果形的人变成一个更小的苹果, 让一个梨形的人变成一个更小的梨。”

触类旁通

man-made“人造的”, war-torn“饱受战火蹂躏的”, sunburnt“晒黑的”, English-speaking“讲英语的”, noise-killing“消音的”, hand-made“手工制作的”, peace-loving“热爱和平的”, horse-drawn“用马拉的”, fun-loving“爱开玩笑的”等。

③形容词 + 分词 → 合成形容词

[例] In the streets, _____ (醉眼朦胧的) people were moving quickly, heading towards their jobs. [全国高考题]

答案是 sleepy-eyed。“大街上醉眼朦胧的人们正在急促行进, 向他们工作单位走去。”

触类旁通

ready-made“现成的”, good-looking“好看的”, easy-going“随和的”等。

④副词 + 分词 → 合成形容词

[例] Operas are shown in a _____ (部分合顶的), _____ (露天的) theatre daily for people from all over the world. [全国高考题]

答案是 partly-roofed; open-air。“在部分合顶或露天剧场, 每天都为来自世界各地的人们上演歌剧。”

触类旁通

low-lying“地势低洼的”, well-known“出名的”, hard-working“勤劳的”, well-informed“消息灵通的”, widespread“分布广的”, ill-formed“不规范的”, clean-cut“美观清晰的”等。

⑤形容词 + 名词 → 合成形容词

[例] That is, if you want to make money by selling _____ (低价) goods, you have to buy them in large quantities directly from the factories.

答案是 low-price。“也就是说, 如果你想通过低价出售商品赚钱, 你就必须直接从工厂大量购货。”形容词 low (低的) + 名词 price (价格) → 合成形容词 low-price“低价的”。

触类旁通

first-rate“第一流的”, second-hand“旧的”, worthwhile“值得的”, everyday“日常的”, deadend“行不通的”等。

⑥形容词 + 名词 + ed → 合成形容词

[例] It is a _____ (中等个头) dog, 16 or 17 inches high from the shoulder.

[全国高考题]

答案是 middle-sized。“它是条中等个头的狗,从肩部起高度为16或17英寸。”

触类旁通

white-haired“白头发的”, middle-aged“中年的”, warm-blooded“热血的”, cold-blooded“冷血的”, good-tempered“好脾气的”, bare-footed“赤脚的”等。

18-5 合成代词的构成方法主要是:代词宾格(物主代词) + self(selves), some(或 any/every/no) + body(one/thing)

①代词宾格(物主代词) + self(selves) → 合成代词

[例] It washes _____ (它自己) all over like a cat.

答案是 itself。“它像猫似的清洗自己。”

触类旁通

myself“我自己”, yourself“你自己”, himself“他自己”, herself“她自己”, ourselves“我们自己”, yourselves“你们自己”, themselves“他们自己”, oneself“自己”。

温馨提示

第三人称用代词宾格 + self(单数)/selves(复数), 第一、第二人称用物主代词 + self(单数)/selves(复数)。

② some(any/every/no) + body(one/thing) → 合成代词

[例] In an English village _____ (每个人) knows _____ (每个人) else. 全国高考

答案是 everybody; everybody。“在英国村子里每个人都相互认识。”

触类旁通

everyone“每人”, everything“一切, 每件事”, nobody“没有人”, nothing“没有东西”, someone“某人”, something“某事”, anyone“任何人”, anything“任何事(物)”等。

18-6 合成动词的构成方法主要是:副词(或名词/形容词) + 动词。

① 副词 + 动词 → 合成动词

[例] Does Radio Beijing _____ (播送) the news every hour on the hour?

答案是 broadcast。“北京广播电台播送整点新闻吗?”

触类旁通

overthrow“推翻”, output“输出”, input“输入”, uphold“高举”, uplift“举起”, downgrade“降级”等。

②名词 + 动词 → 合成动词

[例] I don't think it's good to _____ (填鸭式灌输) the students.

答案是 spoonfeed。“我认为对学生进行填鸭式教育不好。”

触类旁通

sun-bathe“行日光浴”, sleep-walk“梦游”, typewrite“用打字机书写”, brainwash“对(人)实行洗脑”, handpick“精选”, daydream“做白日梦”等。

③形容词 + 动词 → 合成动词

[例] They had the walls _____ (粉刷). 答案是 whitewashed。“他们把墙粉刷了。”

触类旁通

dry-salt“干腌”, blueprint“为…制蓝图”, deep-freeze“冷藏”, deadlock“使僵持”等。

18-7 合成副词的构成方法主要是:形容词(或介词) + 名词, 名词 + 副词。

①形容词 + 名词 → 合成副词

[例] Allan goes _____ (到处) with Birgitta Anderson.

答案是 everywhere。“阿伦和伯格塔·安德逊一起无论哪里都去。”

触类旁通

meanwhile“同时”, midway“在中途地”, everywhere“到处”, somewhere“在某处”, nowhere“任何地方都不”, anyhow“不管怎样”, anyway“不管怎样”, otherwise“要不然”, sometime“某时”。

②介词 + 名词 → 合成副词

[例] If we go _____ (下坡), we might find a stream.

答案是 downhill。“如果走下坡去,我们就可能找到一条小溪。”

触类旁通

beforehand“事先”, onshore“向海岸地”, onside“(足球)在正规位置上”, inside“在(向)里面”, offhand“即席地”等。

③名词 + 副词 → 合成副词

[例] He was studying for the exam _____ (通宵).

答案是 nightlong。“他通宵都在为入学考试而用功。”

触类旁通

headfirst“头朝下”, daylong“整天”。

第三节 主要构词法之二:转化法

18-8 转化动词的构成方法主要有:名词(或:形容词/副词)→动词。



① 名词→动词

【例】When the papers were _____ she discovered that twelve boys had made exactly the same mistakes throughout the test.

A. examined B. completed C. marked D. answered

答案是 C。“阅卷时发现 12 个男孩在整个测试中错误完全相同。”名词 mark (分数)→动词 mark (评分)

触类旁通

radio→(to) radio(由“收音机”转化为“以无线电联络”), stage→(to) stage(由“舞台”转化为“上演”), well→(to) well(由“水井”转化为“溢出”), house→(to) house(由“房子”转化为“容纳”), honour→(to) honour(由“荣誉”转化为“尊敬”)等

② 形容词→动词

【例】Trying to _____ (使慢下来) the Bismarck so that their ships could catch up with her, the British fired(开火) at her from the air.

答案是 slow(由“慢的”转化为“使慢下来”)。“为了让俾斯麦号放慢速度以便他们的战舰能够赶上她,英国人从空中向她开了火。”

触类旁通

clear→(to) clear(由“清澈的”转化为“收拾”), right→(to) right(由“正确的”转化为“改正”), warm→(to) warm(由“暖和的”转化为“使暖和”)等。

③ 副词→动词

【例】The government easily _____ (打倒) riot.

答案是 downed(由“向下”转化为“打倒”)。“政府很容易地就平息了暴乱。”

触类旁通

up → (to) up(由“向上”转化为“抬起”), out → (to) out(由“在外”、“向外”转化为“赶出”), further → (to) further(由“更进一步地”转化为“促进”)等

18-9 转化名词的构成方法主要有:动词(或形容词) → 名词。

① 动词 → 名词

[例] Many people agree that a knowledge of English is a _____ (必备东西) in international trade today. [全国高考题]

答案是 must(由“必须”转化为“必备的东西”)。“许多人同意,在今天从事国际贸易英语知识是必备的(素质)。”

触类旁通

(to) feed → feed(由“喂”转化为“一餐”), (to) cause → cause(由“引起”转化为“起因”), (to) use → use(由“使用”转化为“用处”), (to) fly → fly(由“飞”转化为“苍蝇”)等。

② 形容词 → 名词

[例] Their young stay in the holes for about seven weeks.

“他们的崽在洞中呆上七周。”

形容词 young“年轻的” → 名词 young“崽仔”。

触类旁通

native → native(由“本地的”转化为“本地人”), blue → blue(由“蓝色的”转化为“蓝色”), fat → fat(由“肥胖的”转化为“脂肪”), major → major(由“主要的”转化为“主修科目”)等。

第四节 主要构词法之三:派生法

18-10 帮助构成反义词的前缀主要有:un-, in-, im-, il-, ir-, dis-, non-, de-。

① un-(用于形容词、副词、名词、动词之前)表“不, 非, 无”之意

[例] Most of us tell much the same white lies, _____ (无害的) _____ (谎话).

[全国高考题]

答案是 harmful(n. → adj.); untruths。“我们多数人说些大致相同的无害的谎话。”

触类旁通

unpleasant“不愉快的”, unusual“不寻常的”, unwanted“不需要的”, unwell“不好的”; unhappy“不幸福的”, uncomfortable“不舒适的”, unimportant“不重要的”, unsold“未销售的”, undivided“没分开的、专一的”, unreserved“没有被预订的”, unfold“展开”等。

② in-(用于除 l, b, m, p, r 起首的词之前)表“不、非、无”之意

[例] Change these sentences from Direct Speech into _____ (间接引语). [全国高考题]

答案是 Indirect Speech。“把这些句子由直接引语变为间接引语。”

触类旁通

informal“非正式的”, incorrect“不正确的”, incomplete“不完全的”, inconvenient“不方便的”, inability“无能力的”, independent“独立的”等。

③ im-(用于以 b, m, p 起首的词之前)表“不、非、无”之意

[例] He was very _____ (不礼貌) to young people.

答案是 impolite。“他对年轻人很不礼貌。”

触类旁通

impossible“不可能的”, impatient“不耐心的”, improper“不恰当的”, immoral“不道德的”, imperfect“不完美的”, immodest“不谦虚的”等。

④ il-(用于以 l 起首的词之前)表“不、非、无”之意

[例] What computers can do for us human beings is _____ (无限的).

答案是 illimitable。“计算机能为我们人类所做的是无限的。”

触类旁通

illogical“不合逻辑的”, illegal“不合法的”。

⑤ ir-(用于以 r 起首的词之前)表示“不、非、无”之意

[例] He is _____ (不规律) in his attendance at school.

答案是 irregular。“他上学情况不规律。”

触类旁通

irrelevant“无关的”, irreparable“不可弥补的”, irresponsible“不承担责任的”, irreplaceable“不可替代的”等。

⑥ dis-表“否定”、“取消”、“除去”、“分离”之意

[例] They watched the train until it _____ (消失) in the distance. [全国高考题]

答案是 disappeared。“他们看着火车直到它消失在远方。”

触类旁通

dishonest“不诚实的”, dishonesty“不诚实”, dislike“不喜欢”, disagree“不同意”, discover“发现”, dissatisfied“不满的”, disadvantage“不利条件”, disabled“残废的”等。

⑦ non-表“不, 非, 无”之意

[例] South Africa passed further laws designed to make life difficult for _____ (非白种人).

答案是 non-whites。“南非通过了旨在使非白种人生活困难的进一步法规。”

触类旁通

non-stop“不停的(地)”, non-violent“非暴力的”, nonsmoker“不吸烟者”, non-member“非成员”, non-book“无真实价值的书”, non-human“非人类的”, non-payment“未付款”, non-profit“非营利的”等。

⑧ de-表示“离开, 向下, 相反”等意

[例] Any codes invented by human beings can be _____ (解码).

答案是 decoded (n. → v.)。“人类发明的任何密码都可以被解码。”

触类旁通

detrain“下火车”, deactivate“使…失去活力”, devalue“减少…价值”, deemphasize“不强调”, debone“剔骨头”, decrease“下降”等。

18-11 可以构成动词的前缀主要有: en-, be-。

① en-(用于名词或形容词之前)表“使成…”之意; (用于名词之前)表“放进, 赋予…”之意

[例] You can _____ (扩大) your knowledge and learn some English at the time.

答案是 enlarge (adj. → v.)。“你可以同时扩大知识面并学到英语。”

触类旁通

enrich“使丰富”, enable“使能够”, encourage“鼓励”, endanger“危害、使遭危险”, enchain“束缚”, enslave“使…被奴役”, enforce“强制执行”, enjoy“享受”等。

② be-表示“完全地, 使成为, 覆以…”之意

[例] Don't _____ (轻视) yourself.

答案是 belittle (adj. → v.)。“不要轻视自己。”

触类旁通

befall“降临”, becalm“使平静”, befriend“对待…如朋友”, beset“为…所困扰”, befool“欺骗”等。

18-12 十七种常见前缀: re-, mis-, counter-, anti-, pro-, mono-, semi-, bi-, tri-, ultra-, over-, under-, super-, ex-, sub-, inter-, co-。

1 re- (附加在动词、名词之前) 表“再(做)…”、“重新(做)…”、“反(…)”之意

[例] The army government was _____ (取代) by a civilian government in 1967.

答案是 replaced。“军人政府在1967年被非军人政府取代了。”

触类旁通

retell“复述”, reprint“重印”, redesign“重新设计”, rebuild“重建”, reuse“重新使用”, review“复习”, repay“偿还”, rewrite“重写”, redirect“转移呼叫”。

② mis- 表“坏的”、“错误的”、“不利的”等意

[例] Today there are only twenty-six of these _____ (误印) stamps left.

答案是 mis-printed。“今天,这些误印的邮票仅留存二十六枚。”

触类旁通

misunderstand“误解”, misinform“告诉…错误的消息”, mis-spell“拼错”, mis-place“放错”, misname“误称”, mislead“误导”, misremember“记错”等。

③ counter- 表“反对,逆,对付”之意

[例] We are ready to _____ (反攻) the enemy.

答案是 counter-attack。“我们已准备好向敌人发起反攻。”

触类旁通

counterculture“反主流文化”, counter-revolutionary“反革命的”, counterpart“对应物(人)”, countermeasure“对抗手段”, countermarch“向后转行进”等。

④ anti- (与 pro- 相对应) (用于元音或以大写字母开头的词之前,通常加连字符) 表“反对,抵抗,排斥”之意

[例] A person bitten by one of these snakes would need at least 80 ml of an _____ (抗毒) medicine to be saved.

答案是 anti-poison。“一个人若被其中一种毒蛇咬伤至少需要80毫升的抗毒药才能获救。”

触类旁通

anti-fascist“反法西斯者”, anti-American“反美分子”, antigas“防毒气的”, antisocial“孤僻的”, antislavery“反对蓄奴制”, antiaircraft“防空炮火”等。

高中英语语法全解与训练

(5) pro-(与 anti-相对应) 表“赞成…的”、“亲…的”之意;表“代替”之意

[例] He is very _____ (亲美国的).

答案是 pro-American。“他是非常亲美的。”

触类旁通

pro-Chinese“亲中国人的”, pro-Communist“亲共产主义的”等

⑥ mono-表示“单一, 单独”之意

[例] There are not any _____ (单轨电车) in Taiyuan.

答案是 monorails。“太原没有单轨电车。”

触类旁通

monoplane“单翼飞机”, monologue“独白”, monotone“单调”。

[例] Then it turned in a _____ (半个圈), ran straight again and turned in another _____ (半个圈)。

答案是 semicircle; semicircle。“然后它转半个圈, 再沿直线跑, 又转半个圈。”

⑦ semi-表“一半的, 半…”之意

触类旁通

semi-skilled“半熟练的”, semicolon“分号”, semifinal“半决赛”, semimonthly“每半月一次的(地)”, semiconductor“半导体”, semidarkness“半明半暗”。



⑧ bi-表示“两个的, …的两倍的, …双重的”之意

[例] English Language Learning is not a _____ (双月) magazine.

答案是 bimonthly。“《英语学习》不是双月刊。”

触类旁通

bicycle“双轮车(自行车)”, biweekly“隔周的”, biyearly“两年一次的(或一年两次的)”, bilingual“双语的”, biplane“双翼飞机”等。

⑨ tri-表“三, 3倍, 3重”之意

[例] They go to school on a _____ (三轮车).

答案是 tricycle。“他们坐三轮车上学。”

触类旁通

triplane“三翼飞机”, triangle“三角形”, trisyllable“三音节”, tricolour“三色旗”等。

⑩ultra-表“极端的,超...,过于的”等意

[例] A _____ (超现代化的) building is being built in Japan.

答案是 ultramodern。“一座超现代化的大楼正在日本建造。”

触类旁通

ultra-left 极“左”的, ultra-democracy“极端民主”, ultrashort“超短的”, ultrasound“超声”。

⑪over-表示“过度的,太多的,在...上面,全面地,超越,翻倒”等意

[例] He was _____ (狂喜) when he opened it and read the letter _____ (里面).

答案是 overjoyed; inside。“他将它打开并读了里面的信,他太高兴了。”

触类旁通

overact“演得过火”, overblow“吹过”, overbold“过于胆大的”, overcareful“过分小心的”, overcrowd“挤满”, overlook“眺望”, overwork“劳累过度”, overcoat“大衣”等。

⑫under-表“不足的,劣于,...之下的”之意

[例] They became experienced at finding _____ (地下) springs.

答案是 underground。“他们变得善于寻找地下泉水。”

触类旁通

undersea(s)“在海底”, undersell“廉价出售”, undershirt“内衣”, underworld“地狱”, underwrite“写在...下面”, underline“在下面划线”等

⑬super-表“(以)上,超越,越级,过度”之意。

[例] I'll buy some frozen peas at the _____ (超市) on my way home.

答案是 supermarket。“回家途中我会在超市买些冻豌豆。”

触类旁通

superhero“超级英雄”, superhighway“超级公路”, supernatural“超自然的”, superman“超人”, superheat“使过热”, superstructure“上层建筑”等。

⑭ex-表“到外面,向外的,以前的”之意。

[例] Then they can _____ (表达) their _____ (满意) with the product.

答案是 express(动词 press 的原意为“按”、“压”); satisfaction。“然后他们便能表达他们对这种产品的满意之情。”

触类旁通

ex-wife“前妻”, exclude“除外”, ex-president“前总统”, exchange“交换”等。

⑮sub-表“下, 低位, 副”之意

[例] I met a friend in the crowded _____ (地铁)。

答案是 subway。“我在拥挤的地铁中遇见一个朋友。”

触类旁通

subhead“副标题”, subdivide“再区分”, subconscious“下意识”, subcontinent“次大陆”, subtopic“副主题”, subtitle“小标题”等。

⑯inter-表“…间”、“相互的”之意

[例] A well-known old man was being _____ (采访)。

答案是 interviewed(动词 view 意为“调查”)。“一位著名的老人正在接受采访。”

触类旁通

international“国际的”, intercontinental“洲际的”, interchange“交换”, intercommunicate“互联互通”, interact“相互作用”, interphone“对讲电话”, intermarry“通婚”, interlock“(使)连锁”等。

⑰co-表示“共同, 共通, 相互”之意

[例] To answer the question, Von Frisch and his _____ (合作者们) set up a feeding place close to the hive.

答案是 co-workers。“为了回答这个问题, 冯·弗里施和他的合作者在紧靠蜂房的地方安置了一个进食站。”

触类旁通

co-exist“共存”, co-author“合著者之一”, coeducation“男女合校”, coequal“相等的”, cooperate“共同操作”等。

18-13 用来构成名词的后缀主要是: -er, -or, -ist, -ism, -ness, -ing, -tion, -sion, -ment, -ship, -hood, -dom, -ity, -ence, -ance, -ure, -ness, -th, -al, -ant, -ee, -eer, -ful, -ese。

①-er(附于动词之后)表“做…的人”、“供做…的物”之意,(附于名词之后)表“从事…的人”、“住在…的人”之意

[例] And thousands of terrified _____ (观察者) stared with their hearts beating fast.

答案是 watchers(v. → n.)。“成千上万的人心跳加快,惊恐万分地看着。”

触类旁通

villager“村民”,islander“岛民”,silencer“消音器”,car maker“汽车制造商”,bottle opener“开瓶器”,thinker“思想家”,writer“作家”,learner“学习者”,passenger“乘客”,designer“设计者”,drier“吹风机”,photocopier“影印机”等。

②-or(加在动词后面)表示“行为者”之意

[例] I had an _____ (意料之外的) _____ (客人).

答案是 unexpected; visitor(v. → n.)。“我有位不速之客。”

触类旁通

actor“演员”,sailor“水手”,inventor“发明家”,competitor“竞赛者”,editor“编辑”,monitor“班长”等。

③-ist表示“做…的人”、“…家”、“…主义者”之意

[例] She wanted to become an _____ (艺术家).

答案是 artist。“她想成为艺术家。”

触类旁通

artist“艺术家;画家”,terrorist“恐怖主义者”,communist“共产主义者”,Marxist“马克思主义者”,socialist“社会主义者”,pianist“钢琴家”,typist“打字员”,journalist“记者”,cyclist“骑自行车的人”等。

④-ism表示“…主义”、“…学说”、“…行为”、“…状态”、“…式”、“…的特征”之意

[例] Kerekou also announced that Benin would be a People's Republic based on _____ (马列主义).

答案是 Marxism-Leninism。“克拉科还宣布贝宁将成为一个建立在马列主义基础上的人民共和国。”

触类旁通

socialism“社会主义”,Marxism“马克思主义”,Americanism“美式用法”,tourism“旅游业”等。

⑤-ness(附在形容词、分词之后)表示“性质”、“状态”之意

[例] Reduce the amount if you suffer from _____ (不安) or _____ (失眠) after taking the medicine.

[全国高考题]

答案是 restlessness (adj. → n.) ; sleeplessness (adj. → n.) 。“服药后如果出现不安或失眠就减少药量”

触类旁通

darkness“黑暗”, carelessness“粗心”, gentleness“温和”, kindness“亲切”, narrowmindedness“心胸狭窄”, business“买卖”, sadness“悲哀”, nothingness“无”等。

⑥-ing(附在动词原形之后) 表示“…的动作”、“…动作的结果”、“…职业”之意

[例] It was a _____ (相逢) that the German commander Luetjens did not want to see.

答案是 meeting (v. → n.) 。“那是德国海军中校路田斯不愿看见的一次相逢”

触类旁通

sightseeing“观光”, feeling“感觉”, painting“画”, finding(s)“发现”, saving(s)“存款”, earning“收益”, meaning“意思”, training“训练”, belongings“所有物”, greeting“问候”, misunderstanding“误解”, wedding“婚礼”, farming“农事”, lightening“闪电”, being“人(物)”等。

⑦-tion(接在动词后) 表示“动作”、“状态”、“结果”之意

[例] Several new railways are under _____ (建设) in China.

答案是 construction (v. → n.) 。“在中国几条新的铁路线正在建设中。”

触类旁通

operation“手术”, invitation“邀请”, invention“发明”, dictation“听写”, pronunciation“发音”, composition“作文”, contribution“贡献”, collection“收藏品”, situation“形势”, attention“关心”, satisfaction“满意”等。

⑧-sion 表示“行为”、“状态”、“性质”、“结果”之意

[例] Luetjers' _____ (决定) to run for France is the immediate cause of the sinking of the Bismarck. [全国高考题]

答案是 decision (v. → n.) 。“卢提斯作出的逃往法国的决定是导致俾斯麦号沉没的直接原因。”

触类旁通

revision“复习”, expression“表达”, impression“印象”, procession“行列”, possession“所有”, permission“允许”。

⑨-ment(加在动词后) 表示行为的“结果”、“手段”、“工具”、“过程”、“状态”、“程度”之意。

[例] Here are some _____ (广告) about English Language training from newspapers.

[全国高考题]

答案是 advertisements (v. → n.) (动词 advertise 意为“登广告”)。“这里有些报纸上登的关于英语培训的广告。”

触类旁通

government“政府”, movement“运动”, judgment“判断”, development“发展”, equipment“装备”, announcement“通告”, punishment“惩罚”, treatment“治疗”等。

⑩ -ship (加在名词、形容词后面) 表示“…的状态”; (加在名词后) 表示“…的技能”、“…术”等意思

[例] Young people of our countries should help this _____ (关系) grow.

答案是 relationship。“我们两国的年轻人应该有助于这种关系的发展。”

触类旁通

friendship“友谊”, partnership“伙伴关系”, professorship“教授职务”, seamanship“航海术”, hardship“困苦”, readership“读者群”, membership“会员身份”, scholarship“奖学金”, ownership“所有制”等。

⑪ -hood 表示“状态”、“性质”、“集体”之意

[例] I often remember my happy _____ (童年时代) .

答案是 childhood。“我常忆起我快乐的童年。”

触类旁通

brotherhood“兄弟般的关系”, falsehood“谎言”, womanhood“女人气质”, likelihood“可能性”, sisterhood“妇女团体”, neighbourhood“邻里”, childhood“童年时代”等。

⑫ -dom 表示“…的地位”、“…的领域”、“…的状态”之意。

[例] In November 1975 Kerekou changed the name of the nation from Dahomey to Benin, Benin being the name of a 17th century _____ (王国) covering the same place.

[全国高考题]

答案是 kingdom。“1975 年 11 月克拉科将国名由达荷美改成贝宁, 贝宁是当地 17 世纪的一个王国的国名。”

触类旁通

freedom“自由”, officialdom“官僚”, wisdom“智慧”等。

⑬ -ity (接在形容词之后) 表“…的状态”、“…的性质”之意

[例] We aim at _____ (质量) rather than quantity.

答案是 quality (adj. → n.)。“我们目标在于质量而不是数量。”空格处的词与 quantity 属同格词, 所以应该填入一个名词。

触类旁通

reality“现实”, ability“能力”, activity“活动”, possibility“可能性”, regularity“正规”, stupidity“愚蠢”, nationality“国籍”, disability“残疾”, minority“少数”等。

⑭-ence(与构成形容词的后缀-ent相对应)表“性质、状态、动作”之意

[例] The city remained under Spanish rule until Mexico won its _____ (独立) in 1821.

答案是 independence。“在 1821 年墨西哥赢得独立前该城一直处于西班牙的统治之下。”

触类旁通

preference“爱好”, “喜爱”, difference“区别”, existence“存在”, silence“沉寂”, occurrence“事件”, reference“提及”, conference“会议”等。

⑮-ance 表示“性质”、“状况”、“行为”、“过程”之意

[例] 改错: Also, the sport teaches us the important of obedience. “而且, 这项运动还教给我们服从的重要性。” [全国高考题]

定冠词 the 后面接的应该是名词, 所以句子错在 important, 应该将它改为名词 importance(“重要性”)。

触类旁通

perseverance“坚持”, appearance“出现”, performance“表演”, acceptance“接受”, assistance“帮助”, distance“距离”等。

⑯-ure 表示“动作”、“过程”、“结果”之意

[例] Some people work better under _____ (压力). [全国高考题]

答案是 pressure (v. → n.)。“有些人在压力下工作会做得更好。”

触类旁通

pleasure“快乐”, failure“失败”, exposure“暴露”, closure“关闭”, mixture“混合”, gesture“姿势”等。

⑰-ess(用于名词后)表示阴性;(用于形容词后)使…成为抽象名词

[例] What do you do as an _____ (女演员)?

答案是 actress(名词 act 意为“行为”)。“作为女演员你做些什么?”

触类旁通

hostess“女主人”, mistress“主妇”, lioness“雌狮子”, waitress“女服务员”, largeness“大度”等。

18-th(加在形容词、动词后面构成抽象名词)表示“性质、状态、动作”之意

【例】But a drawing of a man lying on the ground with a spear in him meant _____.

A. “die” B. “death” C. “sleep” D. “down”

答案是 B。(v. → n.) “一幅身上插着一支矛躺在地上的男人图画意味着死亡。”

C、D 因与图意不符，被排除。从词意判断空格处应该填抽象名词，所以 A 错。

触类旁通

truth“真理”，warmth“温暖”，strength“力量”，length“长度”，growth“成长”，depth“深度”等。

19-al(接于动词之后)表“做…”之意

【例】On his _____ (到达) he went straight to the counter and spoke to the clerk in uniform behind it.

答案是 arrival (v. → n.)。“到达后他径直向柜台走去，跟柜台后着制服的职员说话。”

触类旁通

removal“除去”，survival“幸存”，proposal“建议”，trial“试验”，approval“承认”等。

20-ant 表示“做…事的人”、“做…事的物”之意

【例】It cost 2 pence to hire a machine and an _____ (侍者)。

答案是 attendant (v. → n.) (动词 attend 意为“服侍”)。“租一台机器和雇一个侍者要花两个便士。”

触类旁通

accountant“会计”，occupant“占有者”，applicant“申请者”，consultant“请教者”，servant“仆人、服务员”，assistant“助手”，expectant“期待者”等。

21-ee(接在动词之后)表“受…者”、“…行为者”之意

【例】She is a _____ (实习) reporter.

答案是 trainee (v. → n.) (动词 train 意为“训练”)。“她是名实习记者”。

触类旁通

employee“受雇者”，payee“收款人”，referee“受委托者”，appointee“被任命者”等。

温馨提示

注意动词后加 er 和 ee 所表达的意义上的区别：er 表示动作的执行者，ee 表示动作的承受者。

employer“雇主”, employee“雇员”, interviewer“采访者、主持面试者”, interviewee“接受采访者、接受面试者”, trainer“教练、教员”, trainee“接受训练者、实习生”等

②-eer(有时含有贬义)表示“与…有关者”、“从事…者”之意

[例] Shortly afterwards the _____(工程师) turned up with two policemen.

答案是 engineer。“很快工程师便同两位警官一起来了。”

触类旁通

volunteer“自愿者”, profiteer“不当得利者”, racketeer“诈骗者”等

③-ful(发/f(u)l/的音)表示“满…(的量)”之意

[例] Chaplin sits down at the table and eats the shoe with a knife and fork, enjoying every _____.(一口).

答案是 mouthful。“卓别林坐在桌旁用刀和叉吃着鞋子,每一口都吃得那样香甜。”

触类旁通

cupful“茶杯一杯(的量)”, busful“公共汽车一车(的量)”, basketful“篮子一篮(的量)”, handful“一把”, houseful“满屋子”等。

④-ese(附于地名之前)表示“…的人”、“…语”; (附在“作家”人名之前)表示“…风格”、“…文体”之意

[例] Besides the _____(埃及人) the _____(中国人) and the American(印第安人) also developed ways of writing in pictures.

答案是 Egyptian; Chinese; Indians。“除了埃及人,中国人和美洲印第安人也发展了象形书写方法。”

触类旁通

Japanese“日本人”, Cantonese“广东人”, Portuguese“葡萄牙人”, Vietnamese“越南人”, Viennese“维也纳人”等。

18-14 用来构成形容词的后缀主要有: -ful, -less, -able, -ic, -ical, -ive, -ous, -y, -ly, -ant, -ent, -en, -ern, -al, -ish, -like, -ary, -ed, -some, -an。

①-ful(发音为[fəl]/[fʊl])表示“充满…的”、“有…性质的”之意

[例] I'm sure we'll have a wonderfully time together. “我相信我们在一起会过得很快乐。”(改错)

后缀-ly 接于名词之后构成形容词, 如



[全国高考题]

motherly(像母亲的),接于形容词和分词之后构成副词。因此句中 wonderfully 是副词,应改成形容词 wonderful(n. → adj.)

触类旁通

careful“仔细的”,useful“有用的”,helpful“有益的”,hopeful“有希望的”,powerful“强大的”,painful“使痛苦的”,merciful“仁慈的”等。

②-less(接在名词后)表“无”之意;(接在动词后)表“不做”、“不能”之意

[例] He feels _____ (无助的) without Rupert.

答案是 helpless(n. → adj.)。“没有了鲁珀特他感到孤弱无助。”

触类旁通

careless“粗心的”,hopeless“无望的”,fatherless“丧父的”,harmless“无害的”,rainless“无雨的”,countless“无数的”,speechless“哑口无言的”等。

③-able(具有被动的意味)(接在物动词之后)表示“能够…”、“适于…”、“值得…”之意

[例] His opinion sounds _____. (reason)

[全国高考题]

答案是 reasonable(v. → adj.)(动词 reason 意为“推理”)。“他的想法听上去挺合理的。”句中 sounds 为半系动词,所以空格处应该填一个作表语的形容词。

触类旁通

changeable“可改变的”,reliable“可靠的”,agreeable“宜人的”,eatable“可食的”,acceptable“可接受的”,laughable“可笑的”,washable“可洗的”,comfortable“舒服的”等。

④-ible 表示“可(被)…的”、“能…的”的意思

[例] He was a very _____ (可怕的) man — he had got rid of all his enemies.

答案是 terrible(n. → adj.)(名词 terror 意为“恐怖”)。“他是个非常可怕的人——他除掉了他所有的敌人。”

触类旁通

responsible“有责任的”,permissible“可允许的”,divisible“可分的”,possible“可能的”等。

⑤-ic 表示“与…有关的”、“像…的”、“由…产生的”之意

[例] It was an _____ (怪僻的) _____ (农夫).

[全国高考题]

答案是 eccentric(n. → adj.)(ec“出自”+构词成分 centr-“中心”+ -ic); farmer。“那是位怪僻的农夫。”

触类旁通

heroic“英雄的”, poetic“诗的”, historic“有历史意义的”, atomic“原子的”, Byronic“拜伦式的”, energetic“精力旺盛的”, electric“电的”等

⑥-ive 表示“拥有…的性质”、“有…的倾向”之意

[例] “Act your age” means people should be _____ (活泼的) when they are old.

答案是 active (n. → adj.) “‘举止要与年龄相称’意思是说人到老年要活泼些”

触类旁通

instructive“有教育意义的”, inventive“发明的”, imaginative“富有想象力的”, sensitive“敏感的”, effective“有效的”, expressive“表情丰富的”等

⑦-ous 表示“具有…的”、“多…的”、“有…特性”之意

[例] Children are _____ (好奇) about everything around them.

答案是 curious (n. → adj.) (名词 curiosity) 意为“好奇心”。“孩子们对他们周围的一切都感到好奇。”

触类旁通

various“不同的”, nervous“紧张的”, continuous“连续的”, poisonous“有毒的”, anxious“焦虑的”, mountainous“多山的”, dangerous“危险的”, courageous“英勇的”等。

⑧-y (加于名词后) 表示“有…的”、“由…构成的”、“似…的”、“有点…的”之意

[例] Because of its _____ (阳光充足的) weather, rich history and surrounding mountains it is a good place for holiday makers.

答案是 sunny (n. → adj.), 从句法判断, 空格处该填一个形容词。“此地阳光充足, 历史丰厚, 群山环绕, 是个度假者的好去处。”

触类旁通

healthy“健康的”, wealthy“富裕的”, rainy“多雨的”, windy“多风的”, silky“如丝的”, greedy“贪婪的”, smelly“有臭味的”等。

⑨-ly (附在名词后) 表示“像…的”、“有…性质的”、“反复发生的”、“每一特定时期发生一次的”之意

[例] Everyone is expected to lead an _____ (有秩序的) life according to rules laid down by the government.

答案是 orderly (n. → adj.)。“希望大家都能依照政府制订的规则过一种有秩序的生活。”

[全国高考题]

触类旁通

friendly“友好的”, motherly“母亲似的”, manly“有男子气的”, monthly“每月的”等。



⑩-ant 表示“有…的性质的”意思

【例】Americans like basenjis because they are _____.

A. quiet B. pretty C. clean D. pleasant

答案是 D (n. → adj.)。“美国人喜欢贝新基斯,因为它们特别讨人喜欢。”若没有上下文限制, A、B、C 也正确。

触类旁通

important“重要的”, ignorant“无知的”, resistant“有抵抗力的”, distant“远的”等。

⑪-ent(加在动词后)表示“物质,状态等”意义

【例】We have _____ (方便的) class hours: 9:00 - 12:00 am and 2:00 - 5:00 pm.

答案是 convenient (v. → adj.) (动词 convene 意为“集合”)。“我们课时便利:上午 9:00 - 12:00, 下午 2:00 - 5:00。”

触类旁通

different“不同的”, independent“独立的”, existent“存在的”, impatient“急躁的”, frequent“经常的”, excellent“优越的”等。

⑫-en(附在物质名词后)表示“由…制的”意思

【例】All the _____ (木头) houses in the city were destroyed.

答案是 wooden (n. → adj.)。“城里所有的木头房子都被毁坏。”

触类旁通

woolen“羊毛的”, golden“金的”, earthen“现世的”等。

⑬-ern 表示“方向”之意

【例】This plant is found in the _____ (南部) parts of the country.

答案是 southern。“(n. → adj.)”这种植物在该国南部可找到。作定语表示“方位”时,要用形容词,而不用名词。

[例] Every August on the Island of Heimagy, off the _____ (南部的) coast of Iceland, young people often take a _____ (散步) along the streets _____ (整个…期间) the night.

答案是 southern(n. → adj.); walk; throughout。“每年八月在离冰岛南部海岸不远的哈曼西岛上,年轻人都要彻夜在大街上散步。”

触类旁通

northern“北部的”, eastern“东部的”, western“西部的”等。

⑭-al(接于名词后)表示“像…的”、“与…有关的”之意

[例] A _____ (医学的) school teacher wrote the story.

答案是 medical(n. → adj.) (名词 medic 意为“医生”)。“一个医学院的老师写下了这则故事。”

触类旁通

personal“个人的”, electrical“电的”, cultural“文化的”, natural“自然的”, national“国家的”, agricultural“农业的”等。

⑮-ish(接在名词后)表“似”、“的”之意;(接在国名、地名后)表“…的”之意;(接在数词后)表“大约…”之意;(接在形容词之后)表“略带…的”之意

[例] Don't be _____ (自私).

答案是 selfish(n. → adj.) (名词 self 意为“自我”)。“别自私。”

触类旁通

brownish“略带褐色的”, fiftyish“大约五十”, Swedish“瑞典的”, childish“似孩童的”, foolish“愚蠢的”等。

⑯-like(附在名词后)表示“像…的”之意

[例] She sewed that dress with a _____ (头发似的) thread.

答案是 hairlike(n. → adj.)。“她用一种头发似的线缝制那件衣裳。”

触类旁通

childlike“孩子般天真的”, womanlike“女人似的”, godlike“上帝般的”, lifelike“栩栩如生”等。

⑰-ary 表示“与…有关的”、“…的”之意

[例] This was the beginning of another _____ day in New York city.

A. working B. hot C. same D. ordinary

全国高考题

答案是 D。“这是纽约的另一个平凡的日子开始。”若无上下文限制, A、B 也对。

触类旁通

revolutionary“革命的”, imaginary“虚构的”, momentary“瞬间的”, primary“首要的”, ordinary“普通的”等

⑬-ed(加在名词后)表示“有…的”、“特有…的”之意。

[例] _____ (有经验的) college English teachers are wanted.

答案是 Experienced(n. → adj.)。“招聘有经验的大学英语教师。”

触类旁通

moneyed“有钱的”, skilled“有技术的”, talented“有天赋的”, wooded“林木茂密的”, conceited“骄傲自满的”等。

⑲-some(附在名词、形容词或动词后)表示“易于…的”、“有…倾向的”、“产生…的”之意

[例] This is a most _____ (恼人的) case.

[全国高考题]

答案是 troublesome(n. → adj.)。“这是一件令人非常烦恼的案子。”

触类旁通

lonesome“寂寞的”, burdensome“沉重的”, awesome“可怕的”, handsome“英俊的”, tiresome“讨厌的”, fearsome“可怕的”等。

②-an(接在名词后)表示“…的”、“与…有关的”、“…风格的”之意

[例] Benin is one of the smallest _____ (非洲) states.

答案是 African(n. → adj.)。“贝宁是非洲国家中最小的国家之一。”空格处应该填形容词。

触类旁通

Canadian“加拿大的”, Australian“澳大利亚的”, Mexican“墨西哥的”, American“美国的”, European“欧洲(风格)的”, republican“共和国的”等。

18-15 可以用来构成动词的后缀主要是: -ize, -ify, -en, -ate。

①-ize(英亦拼作 -ise)表示“使成为”、“使…能”、“作…处理”之意

[例] We _____ (专攻) in _____ (卓有成效的) teaching at all levels.

答案是 specialise(adj. → v.); effective。“我们专攻所有层次上的卓有成效的教学。”

触类旁通

realize“实现”, industrialize“使工业化”, mechanize“使机械化”, nationalize“使国有化”, revolutionize“使革命化”, modernize“使现代化”, apologize“道歉”等。

②-ify(= -fy)表示“使成为的”,“使…化”之意

[例] Try to _____ (简化) your explanation for the pupils.

答案是 simplify(adj. → v.)。“给学生讲解要尽量简单明了。”

触类旁通

beautify“美化”, terrify“使惊吓”, electrify“电气化”, magnify“放大”等。

③-en(附在形容词或名词后)表示“使”、“使有”、“变得”、“变得有”之意

[例] I sat still, for I did not want to _____ my sick sister.

A. hurt B. frighten C. lose D. trouble

答案是 B(n. → v.)。“我坐着一动不动, 我不想惊吓了我病中的妹妹。”若无上下文限制, A、C、D 也对。

触类旁通

strengthen“加强”, deepen“加深”, darken“使变暗”, shorten“使变短”, fasten“扎牢”等。

④-ate 表示“使…”、“作为…”之意

[例] It was only when I _____ (重读) his poems _____ (最近) that I began to _____ (欣赏) their beauty.

答案是 reread; recently; appreciate。“只是在最近当我重读他的诗篇时, 我才开始欣赏它们的美妙之处。”

触类旁通

activate“使活动”, motivate“激发”, liberate“解放”, separate“分开”, animate“使有活力”, hibernate“冬眠”等。

18-16 可以用来构成副词的后缀主要是-ly 和-ward(s)。

①-ly(附在形容词或分词后)表示“方式”、“状态”、“时间”、“地点”、“程序”、“程度”、“方向”之意

[例] The students were listening to the teacher _____ (专心).

答案是 attentively(adj. → adv.)。“同学们正在专心地听老师讲课。”

句法和句意皆要求在空格处填一个作状语的副词。

[例] I can't tell one from the other because they are only _____ (细微) different.

答案是 slightly。“我区分不开这两片，因为它们仅有细微的差异。”修饰形容词“different”要用副词。形容词“slight”后加“ly”构成副词。

触类旁通

在: really“真正地”, simply“简单地”, happily“幸福地”, publicly“公开地”, lastly“最后”, lately“最近”, excitedly“兴奋地”等。



②-ward(英通常用-wards)表示“向…方向”之意

[例] Soon _____ (后来), Woolworth opened his own store.

答案是 afterwards。“后来不久，伍尔沃斯开创了自己的商店。”

触类旁通

upwards“向上”, inward“向里”, westward“向西”, homeward“向家”, backward(s)“向后”, forward“向前”等。

18-17 可以用来构成数词的后缀是: -teen, -ty, 和 -th。[见 12—3, 4, 14, 15, 16]

①-teen(基数词 13—19 的后缀)表示“十几”之意

[例] For children _____ (十三) to _____ (十五) years old, give half the amount.

答案是 thirteen; fifteen。“13 至 15 岁的孩子, 用量减半。”



触类旁通

其他的含-teen的基数词是: fourteen 十四, sixteen 十六, seventeen 十七, eighteen 十八, nineteen 十九。

②-ty(附于从 2—9 的数词之后)表示“几十”之意

[例] The news continued _____ (二十) minutes late.

答案是 twenty。“20 分钟后新闻继续播音。”

触类旁通

其他带后缀 -ty 的十位数的整数是: thirty 三十, forty 四十, fifty 五十, sixty 六十, seventy 七十, eighty 八十, ninety 九十。

③ -th (加在 4 以上的基数词后) 构成序数词

[例] September is the ninth month of the year. (改错)。

句中序数词“第九”的拼法有误, ninth 应改为 ninth “9 月是一年的第九个月。”

触类旁通

拼法特殊的基本序数词是: first, second, third, fifth (fif + th), eighth (后只加 h), ninth (nin + -th) 和 twelfth (twelf + -th)。



即学即用

给出下列各词的反义词

lucky, correct, proper, usual, bearable, regular, fortunate, active, suitable, formal, wise, polite, important, please, real, true, complete, dependent, experienced, likely, legal, order, continue, honour, direct, fortunately, possible, agreement, convenient, dress, able, ability, accuracy, advantage

运用构词法知识判断下列各词的含义

Subway, superstructure, ultra-democracy, semi-conductor, hemisphere, monologue, interdependent, rearrange, misfortune, counterclockwise, pre-historical, post-graduate, forecast, transplant, vice-president, self-educated, autobiography, neo-classicism, polygamy, centimetre, milligram

给出下列各词的同源名词

lead, die, know, hard, construct, manage, shoot, jump, drive, decide, conscious, long, serve, imprison, various, possess, rob, safe, strike, explode, open, investigate, survive, hot, pursue, stop, build, believe, transmit, recommend, inform, advise, reflect, arrange, express, give, patient, lose, produce, prepare, fly, equip, perform, communicate, receive, frequent

给出下列各词的同源形容词

criticize, die, instantly, profession, vary, end, enlarge, help, use, explode, near, danger, hero, surround, day, nation, rely, life, profit, communism, Britain, Europe, suit, sympathy, China, machine, Mexico, ability, industry, advantage, accuracy, noise, cost, electricity, extend, colour, Ireland, Africa, comfort, thought, think response, act, apply

V. 推测下列合成词的含义

absent-minded, aftereffect, afterlife, behind-the-scenes, bygone, chickenhearted, dirt-cheap, earshot, face-saving, green-eyed, hang-on, leftover, life-size, make-up, name-dropping, outcome, overhear, payday, sidestep, surefooted, talking-to, up-to-the-minute, wash-cloth, weather-beaten, yes-man



点石成金



I. 给出下列各词的反义词

unlucky, incorrect, improper, unusual, unbearable, irregular, unfortunate, inactive, unsuitable, informal, unwise, impolite, unimportant, displease, unreal, untrue, incomplete, independent, inexperienced, unlikely, illegal, disorder, discontinue, dishonour, indirect, unfortunately, impossible, disagreement, inconvenient, undress, unable, inability, inaccuracy, disadvantage

II. 运用构词法知识判断下列各词的含义

地下铁道, 上层建筑, 极端民主, 半导体, 半球, 独白, 互相依靠, 重新安排, 不幸, 逆时针方向, 史前, 毕业后的(或: 研究生), 预报, 移植, 副主席, 自学的, 自传, 新古典主义, 多婚制, 厘米, 毫克

III. 给出下列各词的同源名词

leader (ship), death, knowledge, hardship, construction, management, shot, jump, drive, decision, consciousness, length, service, imprisonment / prison, variety, possession, robbery, safety, strike, explosion, opening, investigation, survival, heat, pursuit, stop, building, belief, transmission, recommendation, information, advice, reflection, arrangement, expression, gift, patience, loss, production, preparation, flight, equipment, performance, communication, reception, frequency

IV. 给出下列各词的同源形容词

critical, dead, instant, professional, various, endless, large, helpful, useful, explosive, nearby, dangerous, heroic, surrounding, daily, national, reliable, alive, profitable, communist, British, European, suitable, sympathetic, Chinese, mechanical, Mexican, able, industrial, advantageous, accurate, noisy, costly, electrical, extensive, colourful, Irish, African, comfortable, thoughtful, thinkable, responsible, active, applicable

V. 推测下列合成词的含义

心不在焉的, 副作用(或: 后果/后效/余波), 来世, 幕后的, 已往的, 怯懦的, 贱如粪土的, 听力所及的范围, 保全面子的, 嫉妒心重的, 趋炎附势者, 剩饭, 与实物一般大的, 化妆(品), 提及著名人士(作品)的名字(以便炫耀自己), 结果, 无意中听到(或: 偷听), 发薪日, 躲闪, 踏实的, 责骂, 最新潮的, 毛巾, 饱经风霜的, 应声虫(唯唯诺诺的人)

第19章

单词、词组辨析 的常考热点



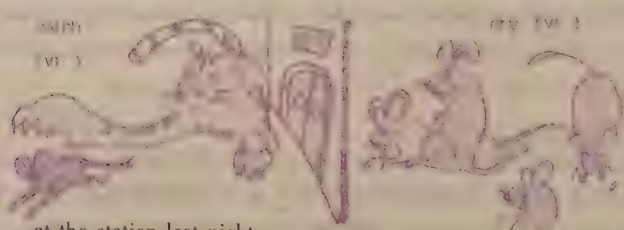
高考热点

单词和词组的辨析是历年来高考考查的热点之一,在单项填空、短文改错、完形填空中均可考查,但以单选题的形式居多。考查的词性包括名词、动词、形容词、副词、介词、连词、代词等,重点主要集中在动词和动词词组。近年来,对名词辨析的题目有所增加。考查的内容主要有:1. 词形相近的词语辨析。2. 词义相近的词语辨析。3. 搭配相近的短语辨析等。

另外,掌握和了解相似单词和词语的用法对于提高阅读能力和写作能力都有很大帮助,因此应引起同学们的高度重视。

第一节 动词的辨析

19-1 针对动词有及物与不及物之分而进行的辨析。



[例] I _____ at the station last night.

A. got

B. arrives

C. arrived

D. reach

全国高考题

答案是C。“昨天夜里我到了火车站。”reach、get、arrive 都有“到达”的意思。其

中 reach 是及物动词,后面直接跟宾语,而 arrive 和 get 都是不及物动词。但 arrive 后常跟介词 at 或 in,而 get 后则常与介词 to 连用。

【例】改错: I asked him more than ten questions, but he did not reply a single one.

[全国高考题]

答案是把 reply 改成 answer 或在 reply 后加 to。“我问了他十多个问题,但他一个也没回答。”answer 为及物动词,而 reply 为不及物动词,常接“介词 to + 名词或代词”。

温馨提示

有些动词既可用作及物动词,也可用作不及物动词,有时在意义上没有差别或差别不大,但有时会引起意义上的不同或出现不常见的意思。

【例】If you are feeling so tired, perhaps a little sleep would _____. [浙江高考题]

A. act B. help C. serve D. last

答案是 B。“如果你感到很累,也许小睡一会儿会好些”。help 既可又作及物动词,也用作不及物动词,作“使人好受、使情况好转、减轻(痛苦等)”,符合句意。

【例】—Will \$ 200 _____?

—I'm afraid not. We need at least 50 more dollars.

[湖南高考题]

A. count B. satisfy C. fit D. do

答案是 D。“200 美元可以了吗?”“恐怕不行。我们至少还需要 50 美元。”do 一般为及物动词,但也可用作不及物动词,表示“可以、行”,相当于 be all right, be OK. 而 count(数数)、satisfy(使满足)、fit(合身)三者在意义和词性上不合要求。

高中
英语
语法

19-2 针对动词的相近词形而进行辨析。



【例】The manager had fallen asleep where he _____, without undressing.

A. was laying B. was lying C. had laid D. had lied [安徽高考题]

答案是 B。“那个经理在他躺的地方没有脱衣服就睡着了。”应用 lie 的过去进行时 was lying; 比较: lie“躺、卧”—lay, lain, lying; lie“说谎”—lied, lied, lying; 另外 lay“放、置; 产、下(蛋)”—laid, laid, laying。

[例] Sean's strong love for his country is _____ in his recently published poems.

A. relieved B. reflected C. responded D. recovered [上海高考题]

答案是 B。“肖恩对他祖国的强烈的爱在他最近出版的诗歌中反映了出来。”A 表示“解脱,减轻”;B 表示“反映”;C 表示“回应”;D 表示“恢复,收回”;根据句意选择 B。

19-3 针对动词的相近词义而进行辨析。

[例] Mike didn't play football yesterday because he had _____ his leg. [全国高考题]

A. damaged B. hurt C. hit D. struck

答案是 B。“麦克昨天没踢足球,因为他的腿受伤了。”hurt 意为“伤害,使…受伤”,常指肉体上或精神上受到的伤害,符合句意。damage“损坏,损害”、hit 和 strike“击、打、碰撞、敲打”都不合题意。

[例] We _____ the last bus and didn't have any money for taxi, so we had to walk home.

A. reached B. lost C. missed D. caught [全国高考题]

答案是 C。“我们没赶上末班车,又没有钱打的,所以不得不走回家。”miss 意为“错过,没赶上(车)”等,符合句意。lose“丢失”、reach“到达”、catch“赶上”三者不合语境或前后矛盾。

[例] Hospital staff burst into cheers after doctors completed a 20-hours operation to have _____ one-year-old twins at the head. [上海高考题]

A. isolated B. separated C. divided D. removed

答案是 B。“大夫完成了一个 20 多小时的手术,把一岁的连体双胞胎婴儿头部分开之后,医院的全体人员欢呼起来了。”separate 强调把原来在一起的东西分开。比较:isolate“使…孤立、使…隔绝”;divide“划分(成若干份)”;remove“除掉,拿去”。

[例] —Julia said she sent you a birthday card yesterday. Have you got it?

—Oh, really! I haven't _____ my mailbox yet. [天津高考题]

A. examined B. reviewed C. tested D. checked

答案是 D。“朱莉娅说她昨天发给你一张生日卡,你收到了吗?”“真的!我还没有查看我的邮箱呢。”examine 表示“(为找到更多信息的或医生的)检查”;review 意为“复习,检查”;test 表示“验血”或“检验;实验”。check 表示“查看,检查(看是否与原来一样)”,符合句意。

[例] The evening news comes on at Seven o' clock and _____ only thirty minutes.

A. keeps B. continues C. finishes D. lasts [全国高考题]

答案是 D。“晚间新闻 7 点开始,只持续 30 分钟”。四个选项中只有 last 可和段时间状语连用。故选 D 项。

[例] John was late for the business meeting because his flight had been _____ by a heavy storm.

[辽宁高考题]

A. kept B. stopped C. slowed D. delayed

答案是D。“约翰开会迟到了,因为他的航班被暴风雨延误。”delay指“推迟,延迟”,符合句意。故选D项。

【例】Happy birthday, Alice! So you have _____ twenty-one already! [天津高考题]

A. become B. turned C. grown D. passed

答案是B。“艾丽斯,祝你生日快乐!你已经二十一岁了!”become多接形容词或表示职业、身份的名词作表语;grow用作系动词时多接形容词作表语;pass表示“超过,路过(某地)”。三者均不合语境。turn表示“达到/超过(一定时间、年龄)”,符合题意。

19-4 针对动词与介词或副词的固定搭配而进行辨析。

英语中动词词组的差异主要是由于动词后面搭配有不同的介词、副词而造成的,它们大都属于习语或固定搭配。它们的辨析主要有以下几种情况:

①相同的动词与不同的介词或副词搭配。

【例】As I grew up in a small town at the foot of a mountain, the visit to the village _____ scenes of my childhood. [湖北高考题]

A. called up B. called for C. called on D. called in

答案是A。“因为我是在山脚下的一个小镇长大的,参观这个村庄使我想起了童年的场景。”call up有“使想起”之意。比较:call for“要求,提倡”;call on“号召,拜访”;call in“召集”。

【例】Please tell me how the accident _____. I am still in the dark. [江西高考题]

A. came by B. came upon C. came to D. came about

答案是D。“请告诉我事故是怎么发生的。我至今不清楚。”come about“发生,出现”,符合句意。比较:come by“经过,走过”;come upon“偶遇,发生于”;come to“到达,突然想起”。

【例】I was just talking to Margaret when Jackson _____. [湖南高考题]

A. cut in B. cut down C. cut out D. cut up

答案是A。“我正在和玛格丽特交谈,这时杰克逊插嘴了。”cut in意为“插嘴,插话”,正合句意。比较:cut down“砍倒,削减”;cut out“切掉,停止”;cut up“切碎;抨击”。

下面是几组最常用的动词词组的搭配、意义及用法实例:

I. break

动词词组	词性	汉译
break away from	$v. + adv. + prep. = vt.$	打破(陈套);脱离;放弃(习惯)
break down	$v. + adv. = vi.$	打破,毁掉,破除

动词词组	词性	汉译
break in	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u> 或 <u>vi.</u>	闯入, 打断
break into	<u>v.</u> + <u>prep.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	闯进, 破门而入
break out	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vi.</u>	(战争, 火灾) 爆发; 突发疾病
break through	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> / <u>prep.</u> = <u>vi.</u> 或 <u>vt.</u>	突围, 突破, 冲垮
break up	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vi.</u> 或 <u>vt.</u>	打碎, 破碎, 分解

[例] The computer system _____ suddenly while he was searching for information on the Internet. [辽宁高考题]

A. broke down B. broke out C. broke up D. broke in

答案是 A。“他正在因特网上搜寻信息时, 电脑系统突然出故障了。”break down 意为“出故障, 坏掉”, 符合句意。比较: break out“(战争、火灾等)爆发”; break up“破碎, 结束, 解散”; break in“强行闯入, 进入”。故选 A。



II. get

动词词组	词性	汉译
get along	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vi.</u>	过活, 生活; 相处融洽; 进展
get away	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vi.</u>	逃脱; 离开
get down to	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> + <u>prep.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	开始认真干某事
get in	<u>v.</u> + <u>prep.</u> / <u>adv.</u> = <u>vi.</u> 或 <u>vt.</u>	进入; 收获
get into	<u>v.</u> + <u>prep.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	进入; 陷入
get off	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u> 或 <u>vi.</u>	下(车、船); 离开
get on (with)	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> + (<u>prep.</u>) = <u>vi.</u> (或 <u>vt.</u>)	进展; 生活得; 与...相处
Get out of	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> + <u>prep.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	逃脱, 避免; 下(出租车、小汽车)
get over	<u>v.</u> + <u>prep.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	克服, 摆脱, 恢复

动词词组	词性	汉译
get rid of	<u>v.</u> + <u>p. p.</u> + <u>prep.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	除掉,摆脱,处理掉
get up	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vi.</u>	起床;站起来
get through	<u>v.</u> + <u>prep.</u> 或 <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	完成;通过考试;穿过

【例】The final examination is coming up soon. It's time for us to _____ our studies.

A. get down to B. get out C. get back for D. get over [辽宁高考题]

答案是A。“期末考试马上就要到了。我们该开始学习了。”get down to (to为介词)意为“着手,开始”,符合句意。比较: get out表示“出去,离开”; get back for意为“回来取”; get over表示“爬过,克服(困难)”。只有A项符合句意。

【例】It was not a serious illness, and she soon _____ it. [天津高考题]

A. got over B. got on with C. got around D. got out of

答案是A。“那不是严重的病,她不久就康复了。”get over可表示“(自惊讶、疾病等)恢复,复元”,符合句意。get on with表示“与…相处”或“某事进展如何”; get back for意为“回来取”; get out of意为“逃避;从…出来”,三者都不符合句意。

【例】We have to _____ the wheat as soon as possible because a storm is on the way.

A. get away B. get across C. get through D. get in [湖北高考题]

答案是D。“我们不得不尽快收割麦子,因为暴雨就要来了。”get in“收割”,符合句意。比较: get away“逃跑”; get across“使…明白”; get through“完成,通过”。

III. give

动词词组	词性	汉译
give away	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u> 或 <u>vi.</u>	泄露(秘密等)
give in	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u> 或 <u>vi.</u>	上交;屈服;让步
give off	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	发出(蒸气、光等);放出(气味等)
give out	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u> 或 <u>vi.</u>	分发;发出(气味、热等)
give up	<u>v.</u> + <u>a dv.</u> = <u>vt.</u> 或 <u>vi.</u>	放弃;停止

【例】Don't mention that at the beginning of the story, or it may _____ the shocking ending.

A. give away B. give out C. give up D. give off [北京高考题]

答案是A。“在故事的开头不要提那件事,否则会泄漏那个令人震惊的结尾。”give away的意思为“泄漏,暴露”,符合句意。

IV. look

动词词组	词性	汉译
look after	<u>v.</u> + <u>prep.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	照料,照顾

动词词组	词性	汉译
look at	<u>v.</u> + <u>prep.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	看,瞧,注意看
look back	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vi.</u>	回顾,回想
look down upon	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> + <u>prep.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	蔑视,看不起
look for	<u>v.</u> + <u>prep.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	寻找
look forward to	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> + <u>prep.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	盼望,期待
look into	<u>v.</u> + <u>prep.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	调查,检查
look on	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vi.</u>	旁观
look on sb. as	<u>v.</u> + <u>prep.</u> + <u>n.</u> / <u>pron.</u> + <u>prep.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	把...看作(当作)
look out	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vi.</u>	当心,注意
look over	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	快速地查看
look through	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	浏览;仔细查看
look up	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vi.</u> 或 <u>vt.</u>	查寻;向上看
look up to	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> + <u>prep.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	尊敬,尊重

[例] _____! There's a train coming.

[全国高考题]

A. Look out B. Look around C. Look forward D. Look on

答案是 A。“当心! 火车来了。”

[例] If you don't know the word, why don't you _____ in the dictionary?

A. look at it B. look after it C. look up it D. look it up [全国高考题]

答案是 D。“如果你不认识这个单词,为啥不到字典里去查一查?”这里只有 look up 有“(在书本中)查寻”的意思,但值得注意的是,up 此处是副词,后面的代词 it 应放在 up 前。

V. put

动词词组	词性	汉译
put away	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	把...收起来,放好
put down	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	平定,镇压,击败
put off	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	推迟,拖延,延期
put on	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	穿上,戴上
put out	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	熄灭;出版;生产
put up with	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> + <u>prep.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	忍耐,容忍

动词词组	词性	汉译
put up	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	建造;张贴;提高价格; 为…提供住宿

【例】You can take anything from the shelf and read, but please _____ the books when you've finished with them. [全国高考题]

A. put on B. put down C. put back D. put off

答案是C。“你可以从书架上拿任何书看,但看完后请把书放回去。”

【例】The forest guards often find campfires that have not been _____ completely.

A. turned down B. put out C. put away D. turned over [全国高考题]

答案是B。“森林卫士常常发现还没有完全扑灭的篝火。”turn down意为“拒绝(请求、建议)”或“调低(收音机、电视机的音量)”;turn over意思是“把…翻转过来”或“把…移交给…”;put away意为“把…收起来放好”。只有put out可作“扑灭”解,符合语境。

VI. take

动词词组	词性	汉译
take after	<u>v.</u> + <u>prep.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	(面貌、言行等)像
take (sth.) apart	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	拆开(小型机器等)
take away	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	拿走,夺去;使离去
take back	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	收回所说的话;带回
take down	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	拆卸;记录下;拿下,取下
take for	<u>v.</u> + <u>prep.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	认为,以为;误以为
take in	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	吸收,听懂;欺骗
take off	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	脱掉;起飞
take on	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	呈现(面貌),具有…特征
take out	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	取出;带出
take over	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	接管,接收,接替
take up	<u>v.</u> + <u>adv.</u> = <u>vt.</u>	着手处理;占时间或空间

【例】As soon as he entered the room, he took _____ his cap and sat down.

A. off B. out C. away D. down [全国高考题]

答案是A。“他刚一进屋就脱了帽子,坐了下来。”

VII. turn

动词词组	词性	汉译
turn down	<i>v. + adv. = vt.</i>	拒绝; 调小, 关小
turn off	<i>v. + adv. = vt.</i>	关掉(灯、煤气等)
turn on	<i>v. + adv. = vt.</i>	接通; 旋开(灯、收音机等)
turn out	<i>v. + adv. = vt. 或 vi.</i>	生产; 原来是(证明是)
turn to	<i>v. + prep. = vt.</i>	变成; 求助于
turn up	<i>v. + adv. = vt. 或 vi.</i>	开大, 调大; 出现

[例] With no one to _____ in such a frightening situation, she felt very helpless.

A. turn to B. turn on C. turn off D. turn over [陕西高考题]

答案是 A。“在如此令人恐惧的情况下没有人可以求助, 她感到很无助。”turn to sb. 意为“求助于某人”。而 turn on “打开”、turn off “关上”、turn over “翻过来, 移交”都不合语意。

[例] I can hardly hear the radio. Would you please _____ ?

A. turn it on B. turn it down C. turn it up D. turn it off

答案是 C。“我几乎听不见收音机的广播。请您把声音开大点好吗?”

②不同的动词与相同的介词或副词搭配。

[例] After he retired from office, Rogers _____ painting for a while, but soon lost interest. [山东高考题]

A. took up B. saved up C. kept up D. drew up

答案是 A。“退休后, 罗杰斯从事绘画一段时间, 但很快就失去了趣。”take up 意为“开始从事某事”, 符合句意。比较: save up “储蓄”; keep up “维持, 使不落”; draw up “草拟, 制定”。

[例] For all these years I have been working for others. I'm hoping I'll _____ my own business someday. [江西高考题]

A. turn up B. fix up C. set up D. make up

答案是 C。“这些年来, 我一直在为别人工作, 我希望有一天自己能立业。”set up 意为“建立; 成立”, 符合句意。比较: turn up “出现, 开大”; fix up “修理, 解决”; make up “组成, 构成, 弥补”。

[例] Once a decision has been made, all of us should _____ it. [湖北高考题]

A. direct to B. stick to C. lead to D. refer to

答案是 B。“一旦决定做出, 我们都必须坚持它。”stick to 作“坚持”解。而 direct to 多表示“把…指向…”, lead to 作“通向, 导致”解; refer to 意为“参考, 提及”, 三者均不合句意。

③ 动词与副词或介词有部分相同。

[例] In some western countries, demand for graduates from MBA courses has _____.

[全国高考题]

A. turned down B. turned over C. fallen down D. fallen over

答案是C。“在一些西方国家,对MBA毕业生的需求已经下降了。”fall down 可作“下降”解。而turn down“拒绝(请求),调低(音量)”,turn over“翻转,递交”,fall over“跌倒”均不合句意。

[例] —The boss said we had only three days to finish the work.

—Don't worry. We have already _____ two thirds of it. [四川高考题]

A. got down B. got through C. given in D. given away

答案是B。“老板说我们要完成工作只有三天了。”“不要着急,我们已经完成了(工作的)三分之二了。”get through 意为“完成,做完”。比较:get down“取下来”,give in“屈服,让步”;give away“分发,出卖”。

[例] —Four dollars a pair? I think it's a bit too much.

—If you buy three pairs, the price for each will _____ to three fifty.

A. come down B. take down C. turn over D. go over [安徽高考题]

答案是A。“每双四美元?太贵了一点。”“如果你买三双,每双三美元五十美分。”由四美元到三美元五十美分,说明价格降低了,故选come down“下降”。比较:take down“写下,记下”;turn over 意为“翻过来,移交”。go over“仔细检查,复习”。

[例] She _____ Japanese when she was in Japan. Now she can speak it freely.

A. picked out B. made out C. make up D. picked up [福建高考题]

答案是D。“在日本的时候,她学会了日语。她现在可以流畅地讲日语。”pick up 意为“学到,学会”,与语意相符。比较:pick out“挑选,选出”;make out“理解,领悟,看出”;make up“编造,弥补”。

④ 动词与介词或副词都不同

[例] To keep healthy, Professor Johnson _____ cycling as a regular form of exercise after he retired. [上海高考题]

A. took up B. caught on C. carried out D. made for

答案是A。“为了保持健康,约翰逊教授退休后开始骑自行车,作为固定的锻炼形式。”catch on 意为“理解”;carry out 表示“执行,实施”;make for 可作“走向,有利于”。只有take up sth. 有“开始花时间从事(某项活动等)”符合句意。

[例] John is leaving for London tomorrow and I will _____ him _____ at the airport.

A. send; away B. leave; off C. see; off D. show; around [广东高考题]

答案是C。“约翰明天将去伦敦,我将到机场送行。”see... off 意为“为某人送行”,符合句意。比较:send away“发送,派遣,赶走”;leave... off“漏掉”;show sb. around“带某人参观”。

- [例] His idea of having weekly family meals together, which seemed difficult at first, has _____ many good changes in their lives. [重庆高考题]

A. got through B. resulted from C. turned into D. brought about

答案是 D。“他每周进行一次聚餐的主意,开始时好像很难,现在已经引起了他们生活许多好的变化。”bring about 指“导致,引起”,符合句意。比较: get through“完成,通过”; turn into“变成,成为”; result from“原因是,由…引起”。

19-5 针对动词与充当其宾语的名词之间的固定搭配而进行辨析。

- [例] They started off late and got to the airport with minutes to _____. [湖北高考题]

A. spare B. catch C. leave D. make

答案是 A。“他们动身得晚,到达机场时连几分钟的时间都抽不出来了” spare 与时间名词 minutes 搭配,意为“抽出(时间)”,符合句意。

- [例] Someone who lacks staying power and perseverance is unlikely to _____ a good researcher. [山东高考题]

A. make B. turn C. get D. grow

答案是 A。“缺乏持久力和坚忍不拔精神的人不大可能成为一个好的研究人员。”make 可表示“成长为,适合”,后接表示职业的名词,强调“具有…的品质”,符合句意。比较: turn“变成,成为”,后接职业名词时不用冠词; grow“长成”; get“得到”。

- [例] One of the best ways for people to keep fit is to _____ healthy eating habits.

A. grow B. develop C. increase D. raise [湖北高考题]

答案是 B。“人们保持健康的最佳办法之一是养成健康的饮食习惯。”develop 可表示“逐渐养成”,符合句意。比较: grow“生长,成长”; increase“增加,加大”; raise“提高,饲养”。

- [例] The president spoke at the business meeting for nearly an hour without _____ his notes. [浙江高考题]

A. bringing up B. referring to C. looking for D. trying on

答案是 B。“总裁在那次商务会议上脱稿讲了将近一个小时。”refer to 意为“查看(笔记、字典等)”。bring up“养育,提出,谈到,拿出”、look for“寻找”、try on“试穿/戴”均不合句意。

19-6 针对动词与充当其宾语或宾补的单词之间的固定搭配而进行辨析。

- [例] It is said that dogs will keep you _____ for as long as you want when you are feeling lonely. [江西高考题]

A. safety B. company C. house D. friend

答案是 B。“据说,当你感到孤独时,你想要狗陪伴你多长时间它们就会陪伴你”。

多久。”固定搭配 keep someone company 意为“陪伴某人,与某人做伴”。

[例] In our childhood, we were often _____ by Grandma to pay attention to our table manners.

[江苏高考题]

A. demanded B. reminded C. allowed D. hoped

答案是 B。“儿童时期,我们经常被奶奶提醒要注意餐桌礼节。”demand 和 hope 不接不定式作宾语补足语。应用 remind sb. to do sth. 的被动结构,才符合句子的结构和句意。故选 B。

[例] —How about eight o'clock outside the cinema?

—That _____ me fine.

[全国高考题]

A. fits B. meets C. satisfies D. suits

答案是 D。“8点钟在电影院外(见面)如何?”“那适合我。”fit 多指衣服等合身,强调大小尺寸。meet 多指满足需求。satisfy 后接人时表示“使满足、使满意”。suit 指适合某人或某情况,可接 suit sb. fine。

19-7 针对动词其他形式的固定搭配而进行辨析。

[例] Fred, who had expected how it would go with his daughter, had a great worry _____ his mind.

[湖南高考题]

A. on B. in C. with D. at

答案是 A。“弗雷德已经预料到他女儿会怎么样,心中非常焦虑。”have... on one's mind 意为“把...挂在心上,惦记...”。

19-8 英、汉文化上的思维差异。

[例] —What should I do first?

—The instructions _____ that you should mix flour with water carefully first.

A. go B. tell C. write D. say [浙江高考题]

答案是 D。“我第一步该做什么?”“说明写着:首先,你应该仔细地把水与面和在了一起。”say 可表示“说明,表达”,可翻译为“写着”,而不是 write。故选 D。

第二节 其他词类单词的辨析

19-9 其它词类的单词、词组辨析举例。

[例] —Why didn't you buy the camera you had longed for?

—I had planned to. But I was £ 50 _____.

[全国高考题]

A. fewer B. less C. cheap D. short

答案是 D。“你为什么没有买你渴望已久的相机?”“我本来计划买,但我短缺 50 美元。”short 可表示“不足,缺少”,常用于“be... short”结构。

[例] Studies show that many diseases such as SARS and AIDS are _____ from wildlife.

A. specially B. originally C. magically D. visibly [上海高考题]

答案是 B。“研究表明像非典和艾滋病等许多疾病都源自野生动物。”根据句意,应用 originally 表示“最先,起初”。比较:specially“专门地,特地”(表示强调);magically“如魔法般地,不可思议地”;visibly“明显地,看得见地”。

[例] I must be getting fat — I can _____ do my trousers up. [全国高考题]

A. fairly B. hardly C. nearly D. seldom

答案是 B。“我准是越来越胖了,裤子几乎穿不上了。”前句表示非常肯定的推测,破折号引出对前句解释说明,举出例证。hardly 可表示“几乎不”,正合题意。

[例] My _____ of this weekend's activity is going out with some good friends.

A. idea B. opinion C. mind D. thought [安徽高考题]

答案是 A。“对于本周末的活动,我的想法是和一些朋友出去。”idea 为“想法、意见、主意”等,侧重于计划与建议成分,符合句意。比较:opinion“意见、看法、主张”,指“对事物或问题初步认识与评价或不十分肯定的意见”;mind“头脑、智力、精神”;thought“思考”,表示经过沉思、推理而在头脑中形成的意念或思想。

[例] The winter of 1990 was extremely bad. _____ most people say it was the worst winter of their lives. [浙江高考题]

A. At last B. In fact C. In a word D. As a result

答案是 B。“1990 年的冬天极冷,实际上大多数人说那是他们一生中最寒冷的冬季。”后句是对前句进一步阐述,应用 in fact(事实上,实际上)来强调已经陈述的内容。此处并非对前句总结,也不是在列举事项,不宜用 in a word(总之,总而言之)或 at last(最终);两者没有内在的因果关系,也不宜用 as a result(结果)。

[例] Maggie has been fortunate to find a job she loves and, _____, she gets well paid for it. [浙江高考题]

A. sooner or later B. what's more C. as a result D. more or less

答案是 B。“Maggie 很幸运,能找到一份她喜爱的工作,更何况她的工资待遇也不错”。what's more 表示一个附加说明的情况,意为“况且,此外”,符合句意。故选 B。比较:sooner or later 意为“迟早”;as a result 意为“结果”;more or less 意为“大致,或多或少”。

[例] —I'm afraid Mr. Wood can't see you until 4 o'clock.

—Oh, _____ I won't wait. [浙江高考题]

A. no doubt B. after all C. in that case D. in this way

答案是 C。“恐怕伍德先生要到 4 点钟才能见你。”“如果那样的话,我就不等了。”in that case 意为“那样的话”,表示条件,符合句意。比较:no doubt“毫无疑问的”;after all“毕竟,到底”;in this way“以这种方法”。

即学即用

单项选择题

- How are you managing to do your work without an assistant?
—Well, I _____ somehow. [重庆高考题]
A. get along B. come on C. watch out D. set off
- We're trying to ring you back, Bryan, but we think we _____ your number incorrectly.
A. looked up B. took down C. worked out D. brought about [浙江高考题]
- Although the wind has _____, the rain remains steady, so you still need a raincoat.
A. turned up B. gone back C. died down D. blown out [重庆高考题]
- I couldn't _____. The line was busy. [浙江高考题]
A. go by B. go around C. get in D. get through
- What shall we use for power when all the oil in the world has _____? [山东高考题]
A. given out B. put out C. held up D. used up
- Before building a house, you will have to _____ the government's permission.
A. get from B. follow C. receive D. ask for [全国高考题]
- Mary wanted to travel around the world all by herself, but her parents did not _____ her to do so. [全国高考题]
A. forbid B. allow C. follow D. ask
- We want to rent a bus which can _____ 40 people for our trip to Beijing. [天津高考题]
A. load B. hold C. fill D. support
- Don't respond to any e-mails _____ personal information, no matter how official they look. [天津高考题]
A. searching B. asking C. requesting D. questioning
- It is certain that he will _____ his business to his son when he gets old.
A. take over B. think over C. hand over D. go over [福建高考题]
- Before the war broke out, many people _____ in safe places possessions they could not take with them. [重庆高考题]
A. threw away B. put away C. gave away D. carried away
- My parents will move back into town in a year or _____. [全国高考题]
A. later B. after C. so D. about
- It's ten years since the scientist _____ on his life's work of discovering the valuable chemical. [江苏高考题]
A. made for B. set out C. took off D. turned up
- My mother always gets a bit _____ if we don't arrive when we say we will. [浙江高考题]
A. anxious B. ashamed C. weak D. patient
- That his only son was killed in the air crash was a _____ blow to the old man.

A. heavy B. broad C. plain D. main

[湖南高考题]

16. He accidentally _____ he had quarreled with his wife and that he hadn't been home for a couple of weeks. [湖南高考题]

A. let out B. took care C. made sure D. made out

17. I don't mind picking up your things from the store. _____, the walk will do me good. [全国高考题]

A. Sooner or later B. Still C. In time D. Besides

18. I'd like to buy a house-modern, comfortable, and _____ in a quiet neighborhood.

A. in all B. above all C. after all D. at all [福建高考题]

19. Modern plastics can _____ very high and very low temperatures. [山东高考题]

A. stand B. hold C. carry D. support

20. Everybody in the village likes Jack because he is good at telling and _____ jokes.

A. turning up B. putting up C. making up D. showing up [江苏高考题]

21. Could you please tell me where you bought the shoes you _____ yesterday?

A. tried on B. put on C. had on D. pulled on [辽宁高考题]

22. It's the present situation in poor areas that _____ much higher spending on education and training. [北京高考题]

A. answers for B. provides for C. calls for D. plans for

23. The dictionary is being printed and it will soon _____.

A. turn out B. come out C. start out D. go out [福建高考题]

24. Kathy _____ a lot of Spanish by playing with the native boys and girls.

A. picked up B. took up C. made up D. turned up [安徽高考题]

25. This picture was taken a long time ago. I wonder if you can _____ my father.

A. find out B. pick out C. look out D. speak out [湖北高考题]

26. I was still sleeping when the fire _____, and then it spread quickly. [广东高考题]

A. broke out B. put out C. came out D. got out

27. — _____ for the glass!

—It's OK. I'm wearing shoes.

A. Look out B. Walk out C. Go out D. Set out [湖南高考题]

28. You can see the stars on a clear night, but in the daytime they are _____.

A. unavoidable B. invisible C. inaccessible D. unavailable [上海高考题]



点石成金

单项选择

1. A. get along 可作“勉强对付, 还能应付”解, 符合此处“没有助手干工作的困境”和 somehow 表达的口气。比较: come on “出现”; watch out “小心, 当心”; set off “开始, 出发”。

3. B take down 可表示“写下,记下”,“你的电话号码抄错了”。比较:look up“向上看,查阅”;work out“算出”;bring about“带来,发生”。
4. D “雨还在下”,although 说明前后意思相反,即“风”是 died down“逐渐消失,变弱”,而不是 turned up“开大,出现”、gone back“回去”或 blown out“爆炸”。
5. D get through 可表示“接通电话”,符合“我打不通,线路忙”的语境。比较:go by“过去”。
6. A give out 作“用完,用光”解时,可作不及物短语。比较:put out“熄灭,发表”;hold up“举起,阻止”;use up“用完,用光”(为及物动词,应用被动结构)。
7. D ask for 符合句意“在建房前,你不得不征求政府的许可”。故选 D。
8. B but 表示转折,即“她父母不允许她这么做”,应用 allow sb. to do sth. 而 didn't forbid, ask, follow, 分别表示“不禁止,不叫,不跟随”,不合语境。
9. B hold 意为“容纳(40人)”,而 load“装载(货物等),把…装入”、fill“装满,填满”、support“支持,支撑,援助”三者均与语境不符。
10. C request 表示“(有礼貌的、正式的)要求,请求”,符合句意“不要回复任何要求个人信息邮件”。比较:search“搜查”;question“审问,询问”;ask“问,请”。
11. C “当他年老的时候,一定会把生意移交给他的儿子的。”只有 hand over 可表示“移交,传给”。take over 意为“接管”、think over 意为“仔细考虑”、go over 多表示“复习,过一遍”均不合题意。
12. B “战争爆发前,许多人把带不走的财产放在安全的地方。”put away 可作“把…收起来放好”解,符合句意。throw away“扔掉,放弃”、gave away“放弃,泄漏”、carry away“带走”均不合语境。
13. C 短语“时间+or so=about+时间”,表示“…左右,大约”,符合句意“我父母亲一年左右就要搬回城里”。
14. B set out to do sth. 或 set out on sth. 表示“开始或着手某事”,符合句意。make for 意为“有利于,促成,向…移动”、take off“脱下(衣物),从…取下,(飞机)起飞”、turn up 意为“出席,露面”均不合题意。
15. A 说到而不到,我的母亲应“担心”,而不是 ashamed(羞愧),也不是 weak(虚弱),更不是 patient(有耐心的)。故选 A。
16. A heavy 可形容“(力量、数量或程度上)异常大的”,符合语境“唯一儿子在坠机中身亡对这个老人来说是惨重的打击”。
17. A 无意中应是“透露了”他与妻子吵架的秘密。比较:take care“注意,当心”;make sure“确保,一定要”;make out“填写,说明,弄清”。
18. D 两个句子为递进关系,后者作补充说明:我不在乎去…走路还有好处呢!只有 Besides 可以表示递进、补充。
19. B 购买的房子要具备的条件是:现代化、舒适及地处安静,应用 above all(更重要的是)来强调安静的重要性。in all(总共)、at all(表示否定意义)、after all(毕竟)都不太适合。

19. A stand 可用作及物动词,表示“忍受,经受”,符合句意“现代塑料能耐高低的温度”。
20. 人人喜欢他的原因是他擅长“编笑话”,讲笑话,应用 making up。而 turn up “开大(音量等)”,put up “建造”,show up “让(人)看清楚”均不合语境。
21. have on 意为“穿着(指状态)”,相当于 wear;符合句意。而 put on “穿上(指动作)”,try on “试穿”,pull on “(匆匆地)穿/戴”都不合语境。
22. call for 作“要求,需要”解,符合句意“是贫困地区的目前的形势要求对教育和培训上多花费。”。故选 C。
23. “字典正在印刷,很快就会出版”应用 come out 表示“出版,发行”。比较:turn out “证明是…,制造,生产”;start out “开始,出发”;go out “出去,(灯、火等)熄灭”。
24. “凯西通过和外国小朋友玩,学会了许多西班牙语。”pick up 除了作“拾起,拣起,接收,用车来接”解外,还有“获得,(无意中)学会”。比较:take up “拿起”;make up “弥补,虚构,化妆”;turn up “开大,出现”。
25. “从旧照片上辨认出我的父亲”应用 pick out “辨别出,挑选”。比较:find out “弄清,查明”;look out “注意,当心”;speak out (不及物)“(公开)抗议”。
26. A break out 符合语境“突然起火,然后迅速蔓延开了”。比较:put out “扑灭”;come out “出来”;get out “离开,逃脱”。
27. A look out for 可作“当心,提防”解,符合语境“要当心玻璃”!比较:walk out “走出去”;go out “滚出去”;set out “动身,开始”。
28. B invisible 意为“看不见的”,符合句意“在晴天的晚上可以看到很多星星,但在白天却看不见”。比较:unavoidable “不可避免的”;inaccessible “无法达到的”;unavailable “无法得到的”。

第20章

名词性从句



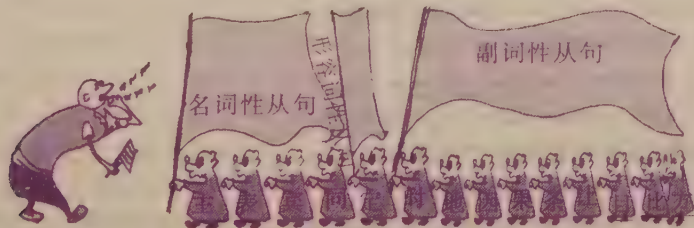
高考热点

名词性从句是高考考查的热点之一,其中以考查宾语从句和主语从句居多。名词性从句的考点主要集中在:1.引导名词性从句的连接词的判定,即根据其意义及在句中的作用选择正确的引导词。2.名词性从句的语序。3.主句从句时态的呼应,尤其是宾语从句。4.一些特殊的句式等。近年的一个考查重点是把名词性从句与it句型结合起来考查。对名词性从句的考查主要集中在单选题上,但不是孤立地单纯地考查语法知识,而是通过设置具体的语境,让学生根据上下文做出判断。

高中英语语法

第一节 英语从句的分类及特点

20-1 从句分三类:名词性从句、形容词性从句和副词性从句。



在英语中,一个可以独立存在的句子称为主句,而只用作该句子的一个成分、不能独立存在的句子就称为从句。

从句通常由关联词引导,其结构一般为:

“关联词 + 从句的主语 + 从句的谓语动词(+其他)”。

从句在主句中起名词作用的,叫“名词性从句”。从句在主句中修饰某一名词或代词,起形容词作用的叫“形容词性从句”。从句在主句中修饰动词、形容词或副词等,表示时间、原因、目的、条件等的从句叫做“副词性从句”。

[例] We cannot figure out _____ quite a number of insects, birds, and animals are dying out. [北京高考题]

A. that B. as C. why D. when

答案是 C。“我们不明白为什么大量的昆虫、鸟类和兽类正在灭绝。”根据句意应用 why“为什么”引导一个名词性从句,作 figure out 的宾语,即:宾语从句。

[例] The place _____ the bridge is supposed to be built should be _____ the cross-river traffic is the heaviest. [江苏高考题]

A. which; where B. at which; which C. at which; where D. which; in which

答案是 C。“要建桥的地点应该是在过河交通最繁忙的地方。”前空用 at which (= where) 引导定语从句,修饰名词 the place, 同时在从句中充当地点状语; should be 后用 where 引导名词性从句作表语,意义相当于 the place where 引导定语从句。

[例] It was some time _____ we realized the truth. [山东高考题]

A. when B. until C. since D. before

答案是 D。“过了一段时间我明白了事情的真相。”before 意为“在…之前”,引导状语从句,表示时间。符合“It is/was + 一段时间 + before + 时间状语从句”的结构及句意。

20-2. 从句须用陈述语序。

英语中疑问句用倒装语序,例如:Where does he live? (他住在哪儿?),但从句虽然仍用 where, what, when 等词引导,却要用陈述语序。

[例] “你能告诉我他住在哪儿吗?”(宾语从句)

正:Could you tell me where he lives?

误:Could you tell me where does he live?

[例] “我不知道他住的地方。”(定语从句)

正:I don't know the place where he lives.

误:I don't know the place where does he live.

[例] “他回来了我就告诉他。”(状语从句)

正:I'll tell him when he comes back.

误:I'll tell him when will/does he come back.

[例] These shoes look very good. I wonder _____.

[上海高考题]

A. how much cost they are

B. how much do they cost

C. how much they cost

D. how much are they cost

答案是 C。“这些鞋看上去很不错,我想知道它们多少钱。”I wonder 后接宾语从句,从句要用陈述语序,可排除 B 和 D。cost 表示价格,为不及物动词,应用主动语态。

第二节 名词性从句的分类及特点

20-3 名词性从句共有四种:主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句和同位语从句。

①在主句中做主语从句叫主语从句。

【例】What made the school proud was that more than 90% of the students had been admitted to key universities. [上海高考题]

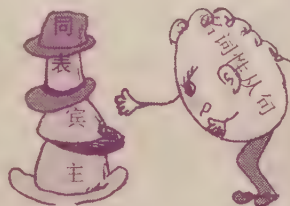
A. What; because

B. What; that

C. That; what

D. That; because

答案是 B。“使学校感到自豪的是有百分之九十的学生被录取到了重点大学。”was 之前为主语从句,从句里缺乏主语,故选 what。was 之后为表语从句,从句里不缺成分,应用 that 引导。故选 B。



②在主句中作表语的从句叫表语从句。

【例】See the flags on top of the building? That was what we did this morning.

A. when

B. which

C. where

D. what

[全国高考题]

答案是 D。“看楼顶上的旗子,那是我们今天早晨干的事。”was 后是表语从句,what 在从句中作 did 的宾语,相当于“the thing/ things that”。

③在主句中作宾语的从句叫宾语从句。

【例】Parents are taught to understand how important education is to their children's future. [广东高考题]

A. that

B. how

C. such

D. so

答案是 B。“要教父母懂得教育对孩子的未来是多么的重要。”understand 后为宾语从句,应用连接副词 how“多么”,才符合句意。故选 B。

④与主句中的名词处于同位关系的从句叫同位语从句。

【例】A warm thought suddenly came to me that I might use the pocket money to buy some flowers for my mother's birthday. [安徽高考题]

A. if

B. when

C. that

D. which

答案是 C。“我脑海里突然出现了一个温情的念头,我可用零花钱为妈妈买生日礼物”。that 在从句中不担任任何成分,引导同位语从句,说明 thought 的具体内容。它被谓语部分隔开了。

20-4 引导名词性从句的关联词:连词三个、连接代词五对和连接副词四个。

	词形	词义	在从句中所作的成分
连词	that	——	——
	if/whether	是否	——
连接代词	who(ever)	(无论)谁(主格)	主语、表语
	whom(ever)	(无论)谁(宾格)	宾语
	whose(ever)	(无论)谁(所有格)	定语
	what(ever)	(无论)什么	主语、宾语、表语、定语
连接副词	which(ever)	(无论)哪个	主语、宾语、定语
	when	什么时候	状语
	where	在哪里	状语
	how	怎样、怎么、多么	状语
	why	为什么	状语

温馨提示

because, as, as if 和 as though 也可引导表语从句。[见 20-17]

20-5 连词 that 没有词义,在从句中不担任任何成分,有时省略。

that 引导名词性从句,本身无词义。that 在引导主语从句、表语从句、同位语从句时,一般不省略;而在引导宾语从句时,常常可以省略。

[例] Nobody believed his reason for being absent from the class _____ he had to meet his uncle at the air port. [重庆高考题]

A. why B. that C. where D. because

答案是 B。“没有人相信他缺席的理由是他不得不到机场去接他叔叔。”that 引导同位语从句,说明 reason 的具体内容。that 无词义,在句中也不做任何成分,但不宜省略。

[例] It worried her a bit _____ her hair was turning grey. [全国高考题]

A. while B. that C. if D. for

答案是 B。“她的头发在渐渐变白,这使她有点担心。”it 在句中是形式主语,真正主语是“her hair was turning grey”(为主语从句),意义虽很完整,其前应用“that”引导。

[例] I don't think _____ Mary can come home this weekend. [全国高考题]

A. what B. why C. that D. when

答案是C。“我认为这个周末玛丽不会回家。”Mary can come home this weekend 是个完整的句子,该宾语从句不缺少任何成分,因此用 that 引导,that 也可以省略。

温馨提示

that 在下列情形时不宜省略:

① and 连接两个宾语从句时,第二个宾语从句中的 that 不能省略。

[例] Everybody could see what happened and that Tom was frightened. “人人都可以看到发生了什么事,看得到汤姆很害怕。”

如省去 that,则变为并列句,即表示“大家都看见所发生的事,而可怜的 Tom (大家中的一员)被吓坏。”

② 当主、从句之间有时间等状语时,that 不宜省略,否则会产生歧义。试比较:

[例] She said last night that she did some reading. “她昨晚说她看了点书。”

[例] She said last night she did some reading. “她说昨晚她看了点书。”或“她昨晚说她看了点书。”

③ 主、从句之间有插入语时同样不宜省去 that。

[例] I don't doubt, in any case, that we will win the match. “无论如何,我都不怀疑我们会赢那场比赛。”

④ 如果宾语从句中含有主从复合句,that 一般不宜省略。

[例] They promised me that if I worked hard from then on, they would buy me a new computer. “他们答应我,如果我从那时起努力学习,他们就会给我买一台新电脑。”

⑤ 宾语从句提前时,that 一般不省略。

[例] That Bob was really frightened, I can't believe. “鲍勃真的感到害怕,我不能相信。”

⑥ 简短回答中的宾语从句,that 不宜省略。

[例] —What do you assume from his attitude? “你从他的态度中猜测到什么?”

—That he was frightened. “他很害怕。”

⑦ 当 it 作形式宾语代替 that 引导的宾语从句时,一般保留 that 为好。

[例] I found it quite a surprise that everybody in that city has a car. “我发现这太令人吃惊了,在那个城市里人人都有小汽车。”

20-6 连词 whether 和 if 有词义(表“是否”),在句中不担任任何成分,不能省略。

whether 作“是否”解,在句中不担任任何成分,不能省略;引导主语从句、表语从句和同位语从句时一般不能用 if 替换;但引导宾语从句时,常可互换。

[例] Whether he will come here isn't clear. “他是否会来这里还不清楚。”whether 引导 397

主语从句,作“是否”解,不作句子成分,不可用 if 代替

[例] The question is whether they will be able to help us. “问题是他们是否能帮助我们。” whether 引导表语从句,不作句子成分,不可用 if 代替。

[例] Can you tell me whether/if you will go to Beijing for your holiday? “你能告诉我你是否要去北京度假吗?” whether 引导宾语从句,可用 if 代替

温馨提示

if 引导宾语从句时,从句中可用将来时态。若 if 引导条件状语从句,作“如果”解,要用现在时态代替将来时态。[参见 3—3 或 23—3]

[例] If it rains tomorrow, I won't go. “如果明天下雨,我就不去。”[参见副词性从句]



20-7 常用 whether 而不用 if 的几种情况。

if 和 whether 常可通用,但在下面几种情况下不宜用 if:

① 引导主语从句,置于句首。

[例] _____ the 2000 Olympic Games will be held in Beijing is not known yet.

A. Whenever

B. If

C. Whether

D. That

[全国高考题]

答案是 C。“2000 年奥林匹克运动会是否在北京举行还不知道。”

温馨提示

如果用了形式主语 it,则 if 和 whether 都可以引导主语从句。

[例] It is unknown whether/if she is ill. “他是否生病了还不知道。”

② 引导表语从句。

[例] The problem is whether we need it. “问题是我们是否需要它。”

③ 作介词宾语。

[例] He was worried about whether he passed the English examination. “他担心英语考试他是否及格了。”

④ whether 接 or not 时。

[例] It doesn't matter whether or not she will come. “她来与不来都没关系。”

温馨提示

在口语中,“if...or not”也可被接受,但连写时总是用“whether or not”。

⑤ 动词不定式前。

[例] I don't know whether to go (or not). “我不知道是否该去。”

⑥ 引导同位语从句。

[例] The problem whether we'll build another school hasn't been settled. “我们是否再建一所学校的问题还没有定下来。”

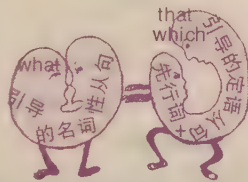
⑦ 在 discuss, consider, decide 等动词后引导宾语从句。

[例] We discussed whether we should close the shop. “我们讨论了是否该关闭那个商店。”

20-8 what 引导的名词性从句表示“所…事/人”和“什么”、“什么样的”，并在从句中充当主语、宾语或定语，相当于由“先行词 + that 或 which”引导的定语从句。

[例] He spoke proudly of his part in the game, without mentioning his teammates had done. [上海高考题]
A. what B. which C. why D. while

答案是 A。“他自豪地谈起了他在比赛中的作用，并没有提到他的队友所做的事情。”此处几个选项中都引导从句，但只有 what 能做 do 的宾语，表示“所…事”，相当于“the thing that”。故选 A。



[例] he said at the meeting astonished everybody present. [全国高考题]
A. What B. That C. The fact D. The matter

答案是 A。“他在会上发的言使到会的每一个人都感到惊讶。”what 引导主语从句，作 said 的宾语，表示“所说的话”，相当于 The words (that + /which) he said at the meeting. ...

[例] My brother isn't what he used to be. “我哥哥和以前不同了。”

what 引导表语从句，作 be 的表语。此处指人，可理解为：... the man that he used to be.

[例] The problem is what we should do next. “问题是我们下一步该干什么。” what 在这里指事，表示“什么”，引导表语从句，作 do 的宾语。

20-9 whoever 引导的名词性从句相当于“anyone + who”等引导的名词性从句。

复合疑问连接代词 whoever, whatever, whichever 等引导的主语、表语或宾语从句相当于“先行词 + 关系代词”结构。

whoever = anyone who whomever = anyone whom

whosever = anyone whose whatever = anything that

whichever = anyone who 或 anything that 或 either one/thing that

[例] team wins on Saturday will go through to the national championships.

A. No matter what B. No matter which C. Whatever D. Whichever [山东高考题]
答案是 D。“不管哪支球队星期六赢了都会一直走到全国冠军”will 前为主语从句，不能用 no matter... 类（只引导让步状语从句），可排除 A 和 B；whatever team 指的是“无论什么队”没有范围的限制。星期六比赛暗示从已知的范围内选择。故选 D。

[例] It is generally considered unwise to give a child _____ he or she wants.

A. however B. whatever C. whichever D. whenever [全国高考题]
答案是 B。“一般认为小孩子要什么就给他（或她）什么是不明智的。”从句中 want 是及物动词，须有宾语（名词或代词），而 A、D 皆为连接副词，故排除。C 中 whichever 意为“无论哪一个”，需有一定的选择范围，也不对，whatever 引导宾语从句，可理解为 anything that...（引导定语从句）。

[例] _____ leaves the room last ought to turn off the light.

A. Anyone B. The person C. Whoever D. Who

答案为 C。“谁最后离开房间应关灯。”whoever 意为“无论谁”，引导主语从句，并在从句中做主语。若选 A 或 B，anyone 或 the person 后应加 who，使其成为由 who 引导的定语从句，修饰 anyone 或 the person。

帮你归纳

这些词既作主句中的一个句子成分（上述三例分别作修饰主语的定语、直接宾语、主语），又同时作从句的一个句子成分（修饰主语的定语、宾语、主语）。其他连词无此现象。

温馨提示

这些词还可引导副词性从句。[详见 23—21]

20-10 选 what 还是选 that 要根据关联词在从句中是否担任成分而定。

what 有词义，在从句中充当主语、宾语或表语；而 that 无词义，在从句中不担任任何成分，只起连接作用。[参见 20-8][参见 20-5]

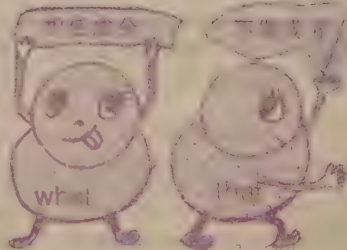
[例] _____ he has become a rich man is known to all in our town.

A. Because B. That C. / D. What

答案是 B。“他变成了富翁，这是我们镇上人人皆知的事。”根据句意，须用 that 引导的主语从句。而 that 在从句中不担任任何成分，只起连接作用。

[例] —It's thirty years since we last met.

—But I still remember the story, believe it or not, _____ we got lost on a rainy night.



[四川高考题]

A. which B. that C. what D. when

答案是B。“我们有三十年没有见面了。”“但我仍然记得在一个雨夜我们迷路的事情。”后面的从句不缺少句子成分,应是that引导同位语从句(被插入语believe or not“信不信由你”隔开),说明story的具体内容。而that在从句中不担任任何成分,无词义,只起连接作用。故选B。

[例] I think Father would like to know _____ I've been up to so far, so I decide to send him a quick note. [湖南高考题]

A. which B. why C. what D. how

答案是C。“我想父亲想知道我到目前为止一直在干什么,我决定给他发个快信。”句中短语be up to意为“从事;忙于”,介词to后面缺少宾语,故用what引导宾语从句。

20-11 由连接副词引导的名词性从句。

连接副词 when, where, why, how 可引导名词性从句,在从句中作状语,表示时间、地点、原因和方式。

[例] The old lady's hand shook frequently. She explained to her doctor _____ this shaking had begun half a year before, and _____, only because of this, she had been forced to give up her job. [重庆高考题]

A. when; how B. how; when C. how; how D. why; why

答案是C。“那位老妇人的手不停地颤抖,她向医生解释了半年前是怎么开始颤抖的,以及仅是因为这一点她是怎么被迫放弃她的工作的。”句中的时间是明确的,可排除含有when的A、B;此外,放弃工作的原因也是清楚的,可排除D。根据句意应选how引导宾语从句,并在从句中作状语,表示方式。

[例] The road is covered with snow, I can't understand _____ they insist on going by motorbike. [全国高考题]

A. why B. whether C. when D. how

答案是A。“大雪封路,我不明白他们为什么坚持要骑摩托去。”根据句意,“不能理解的”是此举的原因,故要用why引导宾语从句。

[例] The question is where we can get so much money. “问题是我们从哪儿能弄到这么多钱。”

where 引导表语从句,并在从句中作状语,表示地点。

第三节 主语从句的用法

20-12 主语从句后置而其前使用形式主语it的4个常见句型。

主语从句在句中做主语,它的位置一般在句首;但主语从句较长时,为了使句子前后平衡,常把主语从句移至句子后部,而用it作形式主语,但what, whatever, whoever

引导的主语从句除外。

常见的使用 it 作形式主语的句型有 4 种：

① It + be + 形容词 + that 从句

能用于这种句型中常见的形容词有：
strange, natural, obvious, true, possible, clear,
likely, impossible, surprising 等。

[例] It is surprising that she did not come yesterday. “令人惊讶的是她昨天没有来。”

[例] It's likely that he told her everything. “很可能他把一切都告诉她了。”

[例] It's strange that we've never met before. “真奇怪，我们以前从没有遇见过。”

② It + be + 名词词组 + that 从句

常用于这种句型的名词词组有：a pity, a shame, a fact, an honour, good news 等。

[例] It's a pity that we can't go. “遗憾的是我们不能去。”

温馨提示

necessary, important, essential, strange 形容词等或 a pity, a shame 等名词短语的名词性从句可用虚拟语气(动词形式为：(should +) 动词原形)。[参见 5—11②]

③ It doesn't matter + how/whether 从句

[例] It doesn't matter whether she will come or not. “她是否来这无关要紧。”

④ It + be + 过去分词 + that 从句

常用的过去分词有：said, reported, hoped, believed, expected, decided 等。

[例] It is reported that our Chinese Team has won the game. “据报道我们中国队赢了这场比赛。”

[例] _____ in the regulations that you should not tell other people the password of your e-mail account.

[上海高考题]

A. What is required B. What requires C. It is required D. It requires

答案是 C。“规章里要求你不该把自己电子邮箱的账号密码告诉别人。”that 引导主语从句，it 作形式主语，并用 require 的被动式体现两者关系。故选 C。

温馨提示

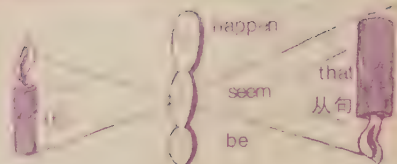
若过去分词为表示“建议”、“命令”、“愿望”，如 suggested, ordered, requested 等词时，从句需用虚拟语气。动词形式：(should +) 动词原形。[参见 5—11①]

⑤ It + seem(s)/happen(s)/occurs + that 从句

[例] It happened that I wasn't there that day. “那天恰好我不在那里。”

[例] Our club is open to adults only. _____ your children have entered without permission.

[上海春季高考题]



A. There seems that B. It seems to be C. There seems to be D. It seems that

答案是D。“我们的俱乐部只对成人开放。你的孩子好像没有得到允许就进来了。”

应用“it seems + that 从句”结构,相当于 Your children seem to have entered...

温馨提示

在上述的④、⑤中的,多用 it 作形式主语,主语从句一般不提前。

[例] That I wasn't there that day happened (×)

[例] That our Chinese Team has won the game is reported. (×)

20-13 由 wh-类的词引导的主语从句若放在句尾时,用 it 作形式主语。

由连接代词、连接副词或连词 whether 引导的主语从句,可以直接用在句首做主语,也可以放到句子后部去,前面用 it 作其形式上的主语。这两种结构基本上可以换用。

[例] “他们什么时候来还没宣布。”

a. When they will come hasn't been made public.

b. It hasn't been made public when they will come.

[例] “他是否要加入我们不会有多大的影响。”

a. Whether he will join us won't make too much difference.

b. It won't make too much difference whether he will join us.

20-14 主语从句在疑问句中或感叹句中,多用 it 作形式主语。

[例] 下周那位科学家将给我们做报告是真的吗?

Is it true that the scientist will give us a talk next week? (✓)

Is that the scientist will give us a talk next week true? (×)

[例] 他们明天来不来很要紧吗?

Does it matter much whether they will come tomorrow? (✓)

Does whether they will come tomorrow matter? (×)

[例] 孩子们这么安静真奇怪!

How strange it is that the children are so quiet! (✓)

How strange is that the children are so quiet! (×)

20-15 whatever, whoever 等引出的主语从句前一般不用形式主语 it。

whatever 作 anything that 解(或 what 表示此含义时); whoever 作 anyone who 解时,若引导主语从句,一般不用形式主语 it。

[例] Whoever breaks the law should be punished. “任何人触犯法律,都应受到惩罚。”(不能说:It should



be punished whoever breaks the law.)

第四节 表语从句的用法

20-16 表语从句的位置。

表语从句用在连系动词之后。带表语从句的主从复合句句型为：

主语 + 连系动词 + 表语从句

[例] The question is whether it is worth doing. “问题在于这事值不值得干。”

[例] One advantage of playing the guitar is _____ it can give you a great deal of pleasure. [上海高考题]

A. how

B. why

C. that

D. when

答案是C。“弹吉他的一个优点是它能给你许多快乐”。在is后的表语从句里，句子的成分完整，故用that引导。

20-17 除“20-4”中所列的关联词外，表语从句还可由because, as, as if 和 as though 等引出。

[例] That is because they are too careful in their studies. “这是因为他们学习特别细心的缘故。”

[例] Things were not as they seemed to be. “情况并不是表面上看起来的那个样子。”

[例] He looked just as he had looked ten years before. 他看起来还与十年前一样。

[例] All this was over twenty years ago, but it is as if (as though) it was/were only yesterday. “这都是二十多年前的事了，但就好像昨天一样。”

温馨提示

as if 引导的表语从句可用陈述语气(从句若表示有明显迹象，的确要发生某事时，或可能被设想为真实的时候，可用陈述语气)，也可用虚拟语气。

[例] Dark clouds are gathering. It looks as if it is going to rain. “乌云在聚集，好像要下雨了”。

说话人从心理上认为事实上会下雨的，故用陈述句语气。

[例] It's already summer, but it's becoming so cold that it seems as if it were going to snow. “已经是夏天了，但天气变得如此冷，好像就要下雪似的。”

夏天再冷也不可能下雪，故 seems as if(表语)从句的谓语动词用虚拟语气。

20-18 reason 做主语时，后面的表语从句表示原因时多用 that 引导，口语中也可用 because，但一般不用 why；而用 it, this, that 做主语时，后面的表语从句可用 because 或 why 引导。



① The + reason + 连系动词 + that 引导的表语从句

本句型意为：“原因是…”。

例] He didn't come to school yesterday. The reason was that he fell ill. “他昨天没来上学，原因是他病倒了。”

② It (或 This/That) + 连系动词 + because 引导的表语从句

本句型意为：“这是因为…”或“这是由于…的缘故。”

例] He didn't come to school yesterday. That was because he fell ill. “他昨天没来上学，那是因为他病倒了。”

③ It (或 This/That) + 连系动词 + why 引导的表语从句

本句型意为：“这就是…的原因。”相当于“It (或 This/That) + 连系动词 + the reason + why 引导的定语从句”。

例] He fell ill. That's why he didn't come to school yesterday. “他病倒了，那就是他昨天没来上学的原因。”

例] —I drove to Zhuhai for the air show last week.

—Is that _____ you had a few days off? [高考真题]

A. why B. when C. what D. where

答案是 A。“上星期我开车到珠海去看空中表演了。”“这就是你休假几天的原因吗？”

温馨提示

注意 That's because... 和 That's why... 两结构的区别。because 引导表语从句时说明产生上述结果的原因，即：前面是结果，后面说明原因；why 引导表语从句时说明由上述原因而导致某种结果，即：前面说明原因，后面是结果。

式比较 [例] I was late for school this morning. That's because I stayed up too late last night. “我今天早晨上学迟到了，那是因为我昨晚熬夜了。”（前面是结果，后面是原因。）

例] I stayed up too late last night. That's why I was very late for school this morning. “我昨晚熬夜了，那就是我今天早晨上学迟到的原因。”（前面是原因，后面是结果。）

20-19 表语从句中连接副词 how, where, why 等的活译。

- [例] The question is how we can overcome the difficulties. “问题是我们怎样才能克服困难。”
- [例] This is how we overcame the difficulties. “这就是我们克服困难的方法。”(how 不译为“怎样”或“如何”)
- [例] You are saying that everyone should be equal, and this is _____ I disagree.
A. why B. where C. what D. how [全国高考题]
- 答案是 B。“你说人人都应该平等,这正是我不同意之处。”表语从句的谓动词 disagree 是不及物动词,从句不缺宾语,不能填连接代词 what; 根据句意应用连接副词 where 作状语表示地点。
- [例] That is where Mao once lived. “那就是毛曾经居住过的地方。”(where 不译为“在那儿”)
- [例] This is why he fell ill. “这就是他病倒的原因。”(why 不译为“为什么”)

第五节 宾语从句的用法

20-20 宾语从句置于及物动词之后。当及物动词带双宾语时,宾语从句用作直接宾语。

- [例] The poor young man is ready to accept _____ help he can get. [全国高考题(Ⅲ)]
A. whichever B. however C. whatever D. whenever
- 答案是 C。“这个穷年轻人准备接受他能得到一切帮助。”名词 help 为 get 的宾语,可排除 however(修饰形容词或副词,不修饰名词)和 whenever; whichever 表示“(已知中的)无论哪一种/个”,不合语境。因此要用 whatever 来修饰 help,并引导宾语从句。
- [例] These photographs will show you _____. [全国高考题]
A. what does our village look like B. what our village looks like
C. how does our village look like D. how our village looks like
- 答案是 B。“这些照片会使你了解我们村的面貌。”like 是介词,只有 what 可作 like 的宾语,故排除 C 和 D。宾语从句要用陈述句语序,故排除 A。what 从句作及物动词 show 的直接宾语。

20-21 如果宾语从句后面还有宾语补足语,则要用 it 作形式宾语,而将宾语从句放在宾补之后。

- [例] He thought it a pity that he missed the film. “他认为误了那场电影是个遗憾。”
- [例] —Don't you think it necessary that he not be sent to Miami but to New York?
—I agree, but the problem is that he has refused to.

[江苏高考题]

“难道你不认为有必要不送他去迈阿密而送他去纽约吗?”“我同意,但问题是他已经拒绝了。”用 *it* 作形式宾语代替宾语 *he not be sent to Miami but to New York*。

20-22 由 *wh*-类的词引导的宾语从句可作介词的宾语。

[例] She walked up to where I stood. “他走到我站的地方来。”

[例] The way he did it was different we were used to.

[江西高考题]

A. in which B. in what C. from what D. from which

答案是 C。“照于事的方法与我们所习惯的不同。”*be different* 接 *from* (合句意, 接 *in* 表示“在某方面不同”, 不合句意), 后面宾语从句并不表示特定范围选择, 应用 *what* 引导, 相当于 *the way which* 引导定语从句,

[例] Mary wrote an article on the team had failed to win the game.

A. why B. what C. who D. that [全国高考题]

答案是 A。“玛丽就为什么该队没有赢得比赛写了一篇文章。”介词 *on* 后面带宾语从句, *why* 在宾语从句中充当状语, 符合句意。

[例] —Could you do me a favour?

—It depends on it is. [北京高考题]

A. which B. whichever C. what D. whatever

答案是 C。“你能帮我个忙吗?”“那要看是什么忙。”介词 *on* 后接宾语从句, *what* 作“什么”解, 作从句中 *is* 的表语, 符合句意。故选 C。

温馨提示

介词后的宾语从句不可用 *if* 来引导, 而要用 *whether*。

[例] Everything depends on whether we have enough experience. “一切取决于我们是否有足够的经验。”

whether 不能用 *if* 来替代。

20-23 *that* 从句一般不作介词的宾语, 但 *in* 和 *except* 等表示“除外”的介词除外。

由连词 *that* 引导的名词性从句很少作介词的宾语, 只在 *in* 和表示“除…外”的 *except*, *but*, *besides* 等介词后偶尔能见到。

[例] The bigger problem lies in that they have lost their value. “那个较大问题在于它们已经失去了自己的价值。”

[例] I know nothing about the young lady she is from Beijing. [上海高考题]

A. except B. except for C. except that D. besides

答案是 C。“除了她是北京人,我对该女士一无所知。”空后 she is from Beijing 是主系表齐全,只有 except that 才能引导此种从句。故选 C。

温馨提示

当然并非 except 后的从句都用 that 引导,根据词义也可用 what, when 等引导。

[例] I like her except when she's angry. “我喜欢她,但她生气时除外。”

[例] I know nothing about the accident _____ I read in the newspaper. [陕西高考题]

- A. except B. except for C. except that D. except what

答案是 D。“除了在报上所读内容之外我对那个事故一无所知。”except 表示“除了…之外(宾语不包括在内)”,含有否定之意。本题介词后的宾语从句(相当于名词)的谓语 read 缺少宾语,所以用 what 作 read 的宾语。

20-24 某些作表语的形容词后可跟宾语从句。

[例] With his work completed, the businessman stepped back to his seat, feeling pleased _____ he was a man of action. [湖南高考题]

- A. which B. that C. what D. whether

答案是 B。“工作干完了,这个商人后退到自己的座位,对自己是个干实事的人感到高兴。”feeling pleased(为形容词)后接 that 引导的宾语从句;此时 that 无词义,不作句子成分。故选 B。

[例] No one can be sure _____ in a million years. [全国高考题]

- A. what man will look like B. what will man look like
C. man will look like what D. what look will man like

答案是 A。“谁也不清楚 100 万年后人类会是什么样子。”be sure 后是宾语从句,须用陈述语序,故排除 B 和 D。从句引导词应放在前面,故排除 C。

触类旁通

这类可跟宾语从句的形容词常见的有 sure, certain, glad, pleased, happy, surprised 等。

温馨提示

有些语法书上把这种从句称为修饰形容词的状语从句。

20-25 “疑问词 + do you think/ believe/ suppose(+ 从句主语) + 从句谓语动词(+ 其他)?”的句型。

[例] _____ be sent to work there?

- A. Who do you suggest

- B. Who do you suggest that should

[上海高考题]

C. Do you suggest who should

D. Do you suggest whom should

答案是A。“你建议派谁去那儿工作?”由do you think (suppose, suggest...)所引起的宾语从句,如果其连接词是疑问词,要放在句首,且不能再有其他连接词。故选A。who既是疑问词,又是引导宾语从句的连接代词,并在从句中做主语。

[例] What do you think _____?

[全国高考题]

A. your father bought there

B. did your father buy there

C. your father buy there

D. bought your father there

答案是A。“你认为你父亲在那儿买了什么东西了?”what既是疑问词,又是引导宾语从句的连接代词,并在从句中作动词bought的宾语。

20-26 宾语从句的时态呼应。

如果主句谓语动词是一般现在时或一般将来时,则从句谓语动词要根据上下文来选用所需要的时态。若主句谓语动词是一般过去时,则从句谓语动词一般只能用表示过去时态的某个形式。

[例] I hear “我听说”

- he will be back in a week. 他一周以后回来。”
- he has been back for two days. 他已经回来两天了。”
- he was back last night. 他昨天晚上回来了。”
- he is on his way home. 他在回家的路上。”

[例] She said “她说”

- she would be back in a week. 她一周以后回来。”
- she had been back for two days. 她已经回来两天了。”
- she was busy. 她很忙。”
- she was writing a letter. 她在写一封信。”

温馨提示

当宾语从句表示“科学真理”或“客观事实”时,尽管主句谓语动词为过去时,从句谓语动词也仍用一般现在时。[参见21—3]

[例] The teacher said light travels much faster than sound. “老师说光比声音传播快得多。”

20-27 在表示“要求”、“建议”、“命令”、“意见”、“看法”等动词后跟的宾语从句中,要用虚拟语气,动词形式为:“(should) + 动词原形”。

[例] He insisted that John (should) do the job. “他坚持要约翰做这个工作”。



帮你归纳

这类动词有: suggest, request, insist, order 等 [参见 5--8] 但这类动词表其他意义时, 后面的从句不用虚拟语气形式。

[例] Her pale face suggested that she was ill, and her mother suggested that she (should) go to the doctor. “她脸色苍白, 表明她生病了, 她的妈妈建议她去看医生。”

第一个 suggest 意为“表明”, 从句应用陈述语气, 第二个 suggest 意为“建议”, 从句应用虚拟语气。

第六节 同位语从句的用法

20-28 某些名词(如 news 等)常带同位语从句。

同位语从句一般跟在某些名词之后, 用以说明或解释前面的名词的具体内容。引导同位语从句的名词多为抽象名词, 如: news, fact, idea, hope, promise, problem, possibility, chance, thought, order 等。连接词常用 that, 也可用其他表示疑问意义的连接代词。[参见 20-4][参见 20-5]

[例] There is much chance _____ Bill will recover from his injury in time for the race.

A. that B. which C. until D. if [天津高考题]

答案是 A。“Bill 极有可能会从伤病中恢复而去赛跑。”there is much chance 意为“很可能”, 后接 that 引导同位语从句(不作任何成分), 进一步说明 chance 的具体内容, 故选 A。

[例] Doris' success lies in the fact _____ she is co-operative and eager to learn from others.

A. which B. that C. when D. why [上海高考题]

答案是 B。“多丽丝的成功在于她同心协力并且急切向别人学习。”that 引导同位语从句, 说明 fact 的具体内容。

[例] Do you have any idea _____ is actually going on in the classroom?

A. that B. what C. as D. which [辽宁高考题]

答案是 B。“你知道教室里实际上正在发生什么事吗?”本句为 have no idea 的疑问句, idea 后的同位语从句中缺少主语, 应用 what 作从句的主语, 表示未知信息。故选 B。

温馨提示

①同位语从句有时被别的词把它和名词隔开, 以保持句子平衡。

[例] A story goes _____ Elizabeth I of England liked nothing more than being surrounded by her subjects.

ded by clever and qualified noblemen at court.

A. when B. where C. what D. that

答案是D。“传说英国的伊丽莎白一世只喜欢在宫廷里被一些聪明、优秀贵族围着。”that引导同位语从句,说明a story的具体内容。因a story的同位语较长,放在句子谓语goes之后。故选D项。

②同位语从句有时又可用连接副词how, when, where等

[例] I have no idea when he will be back. “我不知道他什么时候回来。”

20-29 同位语从句与定语从句的区别。

①从语法角度上看,引导同位语从句的that是连词,只起连接作用,在从句中不作任何句子成分,不可省略;而引导定语从句的是关系代词,除了起连接作用外,还在从句中作句子成分,如主语、宾语等,作宾语时可以省略。

[例] The news that we'll go on a picnic this Sunday isn't true. “这个星期天我们要去野餐的消息不是真的。”

that引导的是同位语从句,进一步说明the news的具体内容,that在从句中不担任成分。

[例] The news(that) you've heard isn't true. “你听到的消息不是真的。”

that引导的是定语从句,that在从句中作宾语。

②从语义角度上看,同位语从句与先行词是等同关系,一个具体,一个抽象,两者常可以转换为主表关系,如上例可改写为:The news is that we'll go on a picnic this Sunday. 定语从句与它前面的名词是所属关系,表示“…的”,如上例我们不能改写为:The news is that you've heard.

③同位语从句的先行词极为有限,[详见20—28],而定语从句的先行词则俯拾即是。

20-30 同位语从句中的虚拟语气。

在表示命令、请求、建议的名词后所跟的同位语从句也必须用虚拟语气,动词形式为:“(should) + 动词原形”。[参见5—11③]

[例] They received orders that the work be done at once. “他们接到了立即干那项工作的命令。”

[例] This is our only request that this (should) be settled as soon as possible. “这就是我们唯一的请求:尽快解决这个问题。”

[例] My suggestion that we (should) send more workers to help them is well received. “我提出的我们应派更多的工人去帮助他们的建议很受欢迎。”

即学即用

I. 单项选择

1. _____ fashion differs from country to country may reflect the cultural differences from one aspect. [上海高考题]
A. What B. That C. This D. Which
2. I read about it in some book or other, does it matter _____ it was? [北京高考题]
A. where B. what C. how D. which
3. _____ made the school proud was _____ more than 90% of the students had been admitted to key universities. [上海高考题]
A. What; because B. What; that C. That; what D. That; because
4. —Are you still thinking about yesterday's game?
—Oh, that's _____. [北京高考题]
A. what makes me feel excited B. whatever I feel excited about
C. how I feel about it D. when I feel excited
5. Perseverance is a kind of quality—and that's _____ it takes to do anything well. [上海高考题]
A. what B. that C. which D. why
6. A computer can only do _____ you have instructed it to do. [全国高考题]
A. how B. after C. what D. when
7. A modern city has been set up in _____ was a wasteland ten years ago. [天津高考题]
A. what B. which C. that D. where
8. I was surprised by her words, which made me recognize _____ silly mistakes I had made. [湖南高考题]
A. what B. that C. how D. which
9. The shopkeeper did not want to sell for _____ he thought was not enough. [山东高考题]
A. where B. how C. what D. which
10. It is pretty well understood _____ controls the flow of carbon dioxide in and out the atmosphere today. [上海高考题]
A. that B. when C. what D. how
11. —What did your parents think about your decision?
—They always let me do _____ I think I should. _____ [全国高考题]
A. when B. that C. how D. what
12. There is a new problem involved in the popularity of private cars _____ road conditions need _____. [上海高考题]
A. that; to be improved B. which; to be improved
C. where; improving D. when; improving
13. —I think it's going to be a big problem.

—Yes, it could be.

—I wonder _____ we can do about it.

- A. if B. how C. what D. that

[北京高考题]

14. When you answer questions in a job interview, please remember the golden rule: Always give the monkey exactly _____ he wants.

- A. what B. which C. when D. that

[上海高考题]

15. There's a feeling in me _____ we'll never know what a UFO is—not ever.

- A. that B. which C. of which D. what

[上海高考题]

16. These wild flowers are so special I would do _____ I can to save them.

- A. whatever B. that C. which D. whichever

[北京高考题]

17. We can assign the work to _____ is reliable.

- A. who B. whoever C. whom D. whomever

18. It will do except _____ it is too long.

- A. that B. which C. what D. whether

19. I wonder if she _____ us, but I think if she _____ us, we will be able to complete the task a head of time.

- A. helps; helps B. will help; has helped C. helps; will help D. will help; helps

20. _____ came to see me?

- A. Who you think B. Do you think who
C. Who do you think D. Whom do you think

高中英语语法

II. 改正下列句中的错误, 每句一处错

1. The American Civil War broke out in 1861 is known to many of us.
2. That he saw there impressed him deeply.
3. This is all what I know.
4. Could you tell me where do you live?
5. The old Minister came back with a message which the cloth was really magnificent.
6. It is unknown if he will come.
7. As is known to all that paper was first made in China.
8. Anyone breaks the law should be punished.
9. How we can get more reading materials have been discussed at the meeting.
10. The professor was very satisfied with that his students had done in the experiment.



点石成金

I. 单项选择

may reflect 之前是主语从句, 故排除 C; 又因从句中不缺乏主语或宾语, 故排除 A 和 D。答案为 B。

后部分问“究竟是哪一本有关系吗(重要吗)?”“哪一本”要用 which, 引导主语

从句,并在从句中作表语,也符合此处在一定范围内选择具体的“哪一个”的语境。

was 之前为主语从句,从句里缺乏主语,故选 What。was 之后为表语从句,从句里不缺成分,故选 that。故选 B。

what 指一个事物,在表语从句中做主语,符合句意。whatever 指“任何东西”,而昨天的比赛只是一个事物,故排除 B。C、D 意思与语境不符。故选 A。

that's 后面是表语从句,从句中的及物动词 takes 缺乏宾语,故空格处应选择充当宾语的 what。that 和 why 不充当宾语,which 在意思上不恰当,故选择 A。

及物动词 do 需有宾语。从句里的 to do 的宾语应该在空格处,所以选 what,相当于 the thing that。其他三个选项不能作宾语,故应排除。

介词 in 后应为宾语从句。从句还缺少主语,故选 what,相当于 the place that。that 引导名词性从句时,不作成分。where 作所引导的名词性从句的状语,也不可选。

宾语从句是感叹句,中心词为名词,应用 what 引导宾语从句。故选 A。

he thought 为插入成分,空缺处为宾语从句的主语,只有 what 和 which 可充当,而 which 在名词性从句中意为“哪一个”,不符合句意。故选 C。

10. C it 为形式主语,在主语从句中缺少主语,空选 what,意为“什么”。

11. D 宾语从句 should 后省略 do,从句缺少宾语,应用 what 作 do 的宾语,what 相当于 the thing that + 定语从句。故选 D。

12. A ears 后面的部分应是 a new problem 的同位语从句,由 that 引起。need doing 和 need to be done 均可表达被动含义。故选 A。

13. C wonder 后的宾语从句中 do 缺乏宾语,故用连接代词 what 作宾语,故选 C。

14. A give 后可跟间接宾语和直接宾语。本句中的间宾为 the monkey,直宾是宾语从句,从句缺少主语,故用 what 引导。

15. A 本句 that 引导的句子其实是名词 feeling 的同位语从句,说明 feeling 的内容,故选 A。

16. A do 后是宾语从句,“I can”中的 do 被省略了,所以从句缺少宾语,故选 whatever,在从句中作宾语,相当于 anything that。

17. B 介词 to 后接宾语从句,从句中缺少主语,而 whoever 相当于 anyone who,符合句意和结构,故选 B。

18. A except 后的宾语从句中不缺少成分,故用 that 引导。

19. D 第一个 if 引导的是宾语从句,应用将来时表示“她会不会帮我们忙”。第二个 if 引导的是条件状语从句,应用一般现在时表示将来。

20. C 本句是复杂疑问句,可将 do you think 看作插入语,who 既是疑问词,又是引导宾语从句的连接代词,并在从句中做主语。故选 C。

II. 改正下列句中的错误,每句一处错

1. 在句首加 that。
2. That 改为 What。
3. 去掉 all 或去掉 what;或把 all 后的 what 改为 that。
4. 去掉 do。
5. which 改为 that。
6. if 改为 whether。
7. As 改为 It。
8. Anyone 改为 Whoever 或在 Anyone 后加 who。
9. have 改成 has。
10. 把 that 改为 what。

第21章

直接引语和
间接引语

高中英语语法

高考热点

直接引语和间接引语在近几年高考中不直接考查,主要出现在短文改错、阅读理解和完形填空等中,并且多是结合语篇进行综合考查;在单选题中,大都是以宾语从句的形式出现。考查的主要内容有:不同句式的间接引语中引导词的选择、间接引语中的语序、祈使句的间接引语的形式等。熟练掌握直接引语和间接引语对提高英语阅读理解能力和口语交际能力都有很大帮助。

第一节 间接引语的概念和变化规律

21-1 间接引语是用自己的话去转述别人的话。



引用或转述别人说的话时,采用两种形式:一是一字不改地将别人的话加以引用,这叫直接引语;二是用自己的话加以转述,这叫做间接引语。一般地讲,直接引语须放在引号内,间接引语不必用引号,而且多用宾语从句的形式表达。

[例] She said, "I was ill yesterday." "她说:‘昨天我病了。’"

引号内的话语为直接引语。

→She said that she had been ill the day before. “她说她前一天病了。”

that 引导的宾语从句不用引号,为间接引语。

由例句中可以看出,直接引语变为间接引语时,不仅把直接引语变为宾语从句,增加连词 that,而且还需相应地改变代词、动词和状语。如:I 变成了 she, was 变成 had been, yesterday 变成 the day before。

21-2 直接引语变为间接引语时,人称代词要根据转述人的立场作相应的变动。

人称代词的变动情况要根据语境及转述人的不同作相应变化,一般情况下,与汉语中的变化相同。

[例] He said, “I am glad to see you.” “他说:‘见到你我很高兴。’”

→He said that he was glad to see me. “他说见到我我很高兴。”

[例] He said to me, “I have left my book in your room.” “他对我说:‘我把我的书忘在你的房间里了。’”

→He told me that he had left his book in my room. “他对我说他把他的书忘在我的房间里了。”

[例] “Do you know the man over there?” Mary said to Tom. “玛丽对汤姆说:‘你认识那边那个人吗?’”

→Mary asked Tom if he knew the man over there. “玛丽问汤姆是否认识那边那个人。”

温馨提示

对于人称代词的变化情况,同学们可以记住一个口诀:“一主、二宾、三不变”。即:第一人称按照主句中的主语变化,第二人称按照主句中的宾语变化,第三人称一般不需要变化。(请注意以上三个例句中人称的变化。)

试比较 [例] Tom said to Kate, “Are you going there with me?” “汤姆对凯特说:‘你们要和我一起去吗?’”

→Tom asked Kate if she was going with him. “汤姆问凯特是否和他一起去。”

第一人称 me 随主语 Tom 变化为 him(用宾格 him 在从句中作宾语),第二人称 you 随宾语 Kate 变化为 she(用主格 she 在从句中做主语)。

[例] Kate said to Tom, “Are you going there with me?” “凯特对汤姆说:‘你们和我一起去吗?’”

→Kate asked Tom if he was going with her. “凯特问汤姆是否和她一起去。”

第一人称 me 随主语 Kate 变化为 her(用宾格在从句中作宾语),第二人称 you 随宾语 Tom 变化为 he(用主格在从句中做主语)。

[例] I said to Tom, “Are you going there with me?” “我对汤姆说:‘你要和我一起去吗?’”

→I asked Tom if he was going with me. “我问汤姆是否和我一起去。”

第一人称 me 随主语 I 变化(还是用宾格 me, 在从句中作宾语), 第二人称 you 随宾语 Tom 变化为 he (用主格 he 在从句中做主语)。

【例】Tom said to us, “Are you going there with me?” “汤姆对我们说: ‘你们要和我一起去吗?’”

→Tom asked us if we were going there with him. “汤姆问我们是否和他一起去。”

第一人称 me 随主语 Tom 变化为 him (用宾格 him 在从句中作宾语), 第二人称 you 随宾语 us 变化为 we (用主格 we 在从句中做主语)。

21-3 间接引语中动词时态的变化。

①当引述的动词为现在时形式, 间接引语中的动词时态不变。

【例】Tom says, “Our teacher is kind to us.” “汤姆说: ‘我们老师对我们很好。’”

→Tom says that their teacher is kind to them. “汤姆说他们的老师对他们很好。”

②当引述的动词为过去时形式时, 间接引语中的动词作如下变更:

一般现在时→一般过去时	现在进行时→过去进行时
现在完成时→过去完成时	一般过去时→过去完成时
过去完成时→不变	一般将来时→过去将来时
将来进行时→过去将来进行时	现在完成进行时→过去完成进行时

【例】He said, “I will leave for Beijing tomorrow.” “他说: ‘我明天去北京。’”

→He said that he would leave for Beijing the next day. “他说他第二天去北京。”

温馨提示

如果所转述的内容表示客观真理或有表示某一绝对具体的过去时间作状语, 间接引语中动词的时态不变。

【例】The teacher said, “The earth is round.” “老师说: ‘地球是圆的。’”

→The teacher said that the earth is round. “老师说地球是圆的。”

【例】He said, “I was born in 1980.” “他说: ‘我出生于1980年。’”

→He said that he was born in 1980. “他说他出生于1980年。”

21-4 直接引语变为间接引语时, 指示代词、时间状语、地点状语和表示“方向”动词的变化。

引 语	直接引语	间接引语
用 词		
指示代词	this 这个 these 这些	that 那个 those 那些

引 语 用 词	直接引语	间接引语
时 间 状 语	now 现在	then 那时
	today 今天	that day 那天
	tomorrow 明天	the next (following) day 第二天
	next week 下周	the next week 第二周
	yesterday 昨天	the day before 前一天
	last night 昨天夜里	the night before 前一天夜里
	ago (至今) 以前	before (那时) 以前
地点状语	here 这里	there 那里
动词	come 来	go 去

温馨提示

如果在当地转述, here 不必改为 there, 动词 come 不必改为 go; 如果在当天转述, yesterday, tomorrow 等时间状语也不必改变。

[例] Kate said, “I will come here tomorrow to help these children with their English.”

“凯特说: ‘我明天来这儿帮这些孩子学英语。’”

→ Kate said that she would go there the next day to help those children with their English. “凯特说她第二天要去那儿帮那些孩子学英语。”(不是在当天当地转述)

→ Kate said that she will come here tomorrow to help these children with their English. “凯特说她明天来这儿帮这些孩子学英语。”(在当天当地转述)

第二节 当直接引语是陈述句时

21-5 直接引语是陈述句时, 间接引语用 that 引导为宾语从句。

直接引语是陈述句时, 间接引语用 that 引导, 但在口语中 that 可以省去。从句中的人称、时态、指示代词、时间状语和状语等要作相应的变化。[参见 21-4]

[例] She said to me, “I came back an hour ago.” “她对我说: ‘我一小时以前回来的。’”

→ She told me (She said to me) that she had come back an hour before. “她告诉我(她对我说)她一小时以前回来的。”

温馨提示

直接引语是陈述句时, 主句动词 “said to sb.” 常改为 “told sb.”, 也可不变。

第三节 当直接引语是一般疑问句、

选择疑问句、反意疑问句时

21-6 直接引语是一般疑问句、选择疑问句或反意疑问句时,间接引语中用 whether (... or ... / ... or not) 或 if 引导。

- ① 原句若为一般疑问句时,则用 whether 或 if 转述;原句若为选择疑问句时,用 whether ... or ... / ... or not;原句若为反意疑问句,则常用 whether 或 if 转述。
- ② 疑问句语序变为陈述句语序。
- ③ 主句中的谓语动词为 said 时,要改变为 asked;没有间接宾语时,可以加一个间接宾语(如 me, him 等)。
- ④ 句末用句号。
- ⑤ 从句中的人称、动词时态和状语等也要做相应的变化。

[例] He said, "Are you interested in English?" "他说: '你对英语感兴趣吗?'"

→ He asked (me) if whether I was interested in English. "他问(我)我是否对英语感兴趣。"

[例] I asked him, "Will you stay at home or go to a film tonight?" "我问他: '今天晚上你是呆在家里,还是去看电影?'"

→ I asked him whether he would stay at home or go to a film that night. "我问他那天晚上你是呆在家里,还是去看电影。"

[例] "You've already got well, haven't you?" she asked. "她问: '你已经痊愈了,是不是?'"

→ She asked whether/if he (I) had already got well. "她问他(我)是不是已经痊愈了。"

第四节 当直接引语是特殊疑问句时

21-7 直接引语为特殊疑问句时,间接引语用原句中的 wh-类 的词引导。

如果直接引语是特殊疑问句,改为间接引语时,仍用原句中的 wh-类 的词引导,其余的变化同直接引语为一般疑问句中的情况②—⑤条一样。[见 21-6]

[例] "What is your name?" he asked me. "他问我: '你叫什么名字?'"

→ He asked me what my name was. "他问我叫什么名字。"

[例] He asked, "Where are you to get off, Peter?" "他问: '彼得,你在什么地方下车?'"

→ He asked Peter where he was to get off. "他问彼得在什么地方下车。"

温馨提示

如果在直接引语的特殊疑问句中,疑问词作主语或主语的修饰语,则语序不需要变化。

[例] “Who can answer my question?” the teacher said to us. “老师对我们说:‘谁会回答这个问题?’”

→The teacher asked us who could answer her question. “老师问我们谁会回答她的问题。”

[例] “Whose picture is the most beautiful in your class?” asked the boy's father. “那个男孩的爸爸问:‘你们班谁的画最漂亮?’”

→The boy's father asked him whose picture was the most beautiful in his class. “那个男孩的爸爸问他班里谁的画最漂亮。”

第五节 当直接引语是祈使句时

21-8 直接引语是祈使句时,在间接引语中用宾语补足语。

- ①需将原祈使句中谓语动词变成不定式;如果祈使句为否定句,则用不定式的否定形式,即在不定式前面加 not。
- ②原主句谓语动词 said 须改为 asked, told, ordered, warned 或 advised 等含有祈使意义的能带宾补的及物动词。
- ③原句有“please”时,主句谓语多用 asked(请求),并去掉 please。

帮你归纳

直接引语为祈使句,变为间接引语可用如下结构:“主语 + asked/ + told/advised sb. (not) to do sth.”

[例] He said to me, “Shut the window, please.” “他对我说:‘请关上窗户。’”

→He asked me to shut the window. “他要我关上窗户”。

[例] He said, “Don't make so much noise.” “他说:‘别大声喧哗。’”

→He told us not to make so much noise. “他要求我们不要大声喧哗”。



温馨提示

如果以 let 开头的祈使句表示劝告或建议,可用“suggest + that 从句”或“suggest doing”来转述。

[例] “Let’s go to the cinema.” Tom said. “汤姆说:‘咱们去看电影吧。’”

→Tom suggested that they (should) go to the cinema. “汤姆建议他们去看电影。”

→Tom suggested going to the cinema. “汤姆建议去看电影。”

第六节 当直接引语是感叹句时

21-9 直接引语是感叹句时,间接引语可用 what 或 that 为引导词。

直接引语是感叹句变间接引语时可仍用 what 或 how 引导,词序不变,也可用 that 引导,将句子变成相应的名词性从句。

[例] She said, “What a lovely day it is!” “她说:‘多么好的天气啊!’”

→She said what a lovely day it was. “她说天气多好啊。”

→She said that it was a lovely day. “她说那天天气很好。”

[例] He said, “How interesting the story is!” “他说:‘这个故事多么有趣啊!’”

→He said how interesting the story was. “他说那个故事多么有趣啊。”

→He said that the story was interesting. “他说那个故事真有趣。”

高中英语语法

即学即用

I. 根据所给的直接引语句子完成下列句子,每空一词

1. He said, “I like it very much.” He said that _____ it very much.

2. She said, “I am cooking supper now.”

She said that _____ cooking supper _____.

3. He said to me, “I had finished my homework before supper.”

He _____ that _____ homework before supper.

4. The teacher said, “Light travels much faster than sound.”

The teacher said that light _____ much faster than sound.

5. The teacher said, “Columbus discovered America in 1492.”

The teacher said that Columbus _____ America in 1492.

6. He asked me, “What do you want?” He asked me _____.

7. He asked, “Did you see him last night?”

He asked (me) _____ him _____.

8. He said to me, “Please read the text.” He _____ read the text.

9. The doctor said to him, "Don't drink too much."

The doctor _____ him _____ too much.

10. He said, "How happy I am!" He said _____ happy _____.

II. 将下列句中的间接引语改为直接引语

1. I ordered my boy to go home.

2. The doctor advised her not to eat too much fat.

3. He asked me whether I had any difficulty.

4. He asked me if she was coming.

5. He asked me where I had been.

6. I asked her why she hadn't told me earlier.

7. He asked me how long it would take to go there by plane.

8. He told me that Abraham Lincoln was born on February 12, 1809.

9. He asked me whether I studied English or French.

10. The doctor asked him how he felt.



点石成金

1. he; liked 2. she; was; then 3. told; me; he; had; finished; his 4. travels
5. discovered 6. what; I; wanted 7. whether; it; I; had; seen; the; night; before
8. asked; me; to 9. told/ advised; not; to; drink 10. how; he; was

II. 将下列句中的间接引语改为直接引语

1. I said to/ordered my boy, "Go home."

2. The doctor said to her, "Don't eat too much fat."

3. "Have you an difficulty?" he asked me.

4. He said/asked, "Is she coming?"

5. He said/asked, "Where have you been?"

6. "Why didn't you tell me earlier?" I asked her.

7. He asked me, "How long will it take to go there by plane?"

8. He told/said to me, "Abraham Lincoln was born on February 12, 1809."

9. He asked me, "Do you study English or French?"

10. The doctor asked him, "How do you feel?"

第22章

形容词性从句

高考热点

定语从句是近年来高考重点,出现的频率相当高。主要考查的要点有: 1. 关系词的选择; 2. 介词的选择,即“介词+关系代词”引导的定语从句; 3. 定语从句与强调结构的区别和判定(因为强调句型与定语从句极易混淆,故将强调句型放于前语,句末再在后面进行对比讲解); 4. 定语从句与同位语从句的区别; 5. 定语从句中关系词的定语从句等。有时,也会涉及关系代词作定语从句的主语时,如何确定其数,即考查主谓一致。

第一节 定语从句的概念和基本用法

22-1 定语从句及其先行词。

在复合句中修饰某一名词或代词的从句,称为定语从句,也叫形容词性从句。被定语从句所修饰的词叫先行词。定语从句一般放在先行词之后。

[例] All _____ is needed is a supply of oil.

[全国高考题]

A. the thing B. that C. what D. which

答案是B。“(我们)所需要的是油的供给。”“that is needed”是定语从句,修饰先行词all。all是不定代词,后面一般不用关系代词which修饰,排除D。what不引导定语从句,排除C;若去掉all,“What is needed”可成立,是主语从句, the thing 为先行词,后面仍须用关系代词that,故排除A。

22-2 关系代词作定语从句的主语时,从句谓语动词的形式要与先行词一致。

关系代词作定语从句的主语时,从句谓语动词的人称和数要与先行词一致。关系代词是代替先行词含义的词,当先行词(名词或代词)为复数时,从句谓语动词用复数形式,当先行词为单数时,从句谓语动词用单数形式。

[例] Those who want to go to the English party must be at the school gate by 7:30 p. m.
“要参加英语晚会的人晚上 7:30 在校门口集合。”

先行词 those 为代词的复数形式,从句谓语动词用复数形式 want。

[例] He who doesn't reach the Great Wall is not a true man. “不到长城非好汉。”

先行词 he 为代词的单数形式,从句谓语动词用单数形式 doesn't reach。

温馨提示

(1) 当先行词为 those, he, she, anyone 等代词表“人”时,关系代词用 who, 一般不用 that。[参见上面两例]

[例] Anyone who comes to our public library will be welcome. “任何人到我们公共图书馆来都受欢迎。”

(2) 在句型“one of the + 复数名词 + who/that/which 引导的定语从句”的结构中,从句动词用复数形式;但在“the (only) one of the + 复数名词 + who/that/which 引导定语从句”的结构中,先行词为 one,从句中的动词要用单数形式。[参见 1-23]

22-3 分隔定语从句。

定语从句一般直接放在先行词之后,但有时也被一个较短的定语或谓语动词将它与先行词分隔开来,这时被称为分隔定语从句。

[例] There are altogether eleven books on the shelf, _____ five are mine. [全国高考题]

A. on which B. in which C. of which D. from which

答案是 C。“书架上共有十一本书,其中五本是我的。”非限制性定语从句中的关系代词 which 指代的是主句中的 (the) eleven books, 而非 shelf。表示“这些…中的”,应用介词 of。句中 on the shelf 把定语从句 of which five are mine 与先行词 books 分隔开。

22-4 定语从句有两种:限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句。

① 限制性定语从句对先行词起修饰、限制与确定的作用,若去掉它,先行词便不能明确表示其所指对象,所以限制性定语从句和它的先行词所指意义有着不可分割的联系。另外限制性定语从句不能用逗号与先行词分开。

[例] If a shop has chairs _____ women can park their men, women will spend more time in the shop. [上海高考题]

A. that B. which C. when D. where

答案是 D。“如果商店里有女人能让他们男人坐下的椅子,那么女人就会在

商店花更多的时间了。”chairs 是先行词,后接限制性定语从句,更明确表示“什么样的椅子”;又因句意及从句中缺少的是状语,应用关系副词 where 表示地点。

- ②非限制性定语从句对先行词或整个主句加以补充说明,即使省去,也不影响主句的意思,它和先行词或主句间常用逗号分开。

[例] The famous basketball star, _____ tried to make a comeback, attracted a lot of attention. [北京高考题]

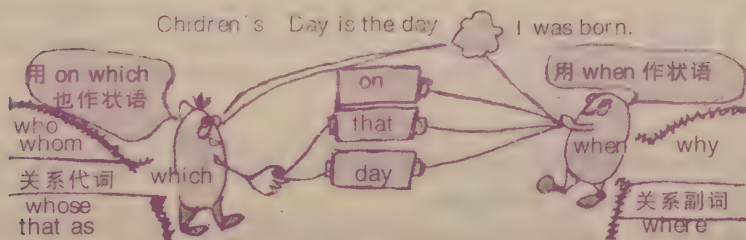
A. where B. when C. which D. who

答案是 D。“这位足球明星因想重整旗鼓而引起了大量的关注。”从形式上看,从句与主句之间有逗号分开;从语义上讲,从句起解释说明(原因)作用。因此,star 后面应是一个非限制性定语从句,且从句中缺少主语,而 football star 又指人,故选 who。

- ③限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句的区别:

	限制性定语从句	非限制性定语从句
意义	起限制作用;若被省去,原句意义不完整	起补充说明作用;若被省去,原句意义受影响不大。
翻译	译在先行词前(即:从句译作先行词的定语)	可译成与主句并列的一个分句或其他从句
功能	修饰先行词	既可修饰先行词,也可修饰整个主句
关系代词和关系副词	可用 that 代替人或物,作宾语时可省略	不可用 that 引导,作宾语时也不能省略。
形式	其前无逗号	其前有逗号

22-5 引导定语从句的关系词有两种:关系代词和关系副词。



引导定语从句的关系词有个重要的特点,就是它们都要做从句中的一个成分。关系代词起名词或代词的作用,而关系副词起副词或介词短语的作用。

①引导定语从句的关系代词: who, whom, whose, that, which 和 as 关系代词可作从句的主语、宾语、表语或定语。

关系代词的功能:

关系代词 替代功能 作用	代替人	代替物	代替人或物	注
在从句中做主语	who	which	that	①同时既代替人,又代替物时,只用 that。
在从句中作宾语	whom	which	that	②作动词宾语的关系代词可省略。
在从句中作定语	whose = (of whom)	whose = (of which)		③作介宾的关系代词,只有当介词在从句之尾时才能被省略。

[例] In fact the Swede didn't understand the three questions _____ were asked in French. [全国高考题]

A. where B. who C. in which D. which

答案是 D。“事实上这瑞典人不懂用法语问他的三个问题。”先行词 questions 指物,故用关系代词 which,在从句中做主语。

②引导定语从句的关系副词有: when, where, why 关系副词在从句中作状语。

关系副词功能

关系副词	被代替的先行词	在从句中的作用	注
when(= at/in/on which)	表示时间的名词	时间状语	有时关系副词可省略。
where(= in/at + which)	表示地点的名词	地点状语	[见 22-6]
why(= for which)	reason	原因状语	

[例] I walked in our garden, _____ Tom and Jim were tying a big sign onto one of the trees. [辽宁高考题]

A. which B. when C. where D. that

答案是 C。“我走到园子里,汤姆和吉姆正在那里把一块大标志牌往一棵树上绑。”有逗号隔开,可以判定是非限定性定语从句(一般不能用 that 引导)。该从句修饰的是主句中的地点 our garden,应用关系副词 where 在从句作状语。

22-6 关系词的省略。

某些引导限制性定语从句的关系词,有时可以省略。但 as 一般不能省略;引导非限制性定语从句的关系词不能省略。

在限制性定语从句中,能够省略关系代词的情况主要有:

①如果关系代词作宾语,且前边没有介词时。

[例] When you want to see if a library has the book you want, you can use the catalogue

(目录) in the library.

[全国高考题]

“当你想看看图书馆是否有你想要的书时,你可以查阅图书馆的目录。”

此句中 the book 后省略了 that 或 which,因为它在定语从句(you want)中作宾语。

[例]—Why does she always ask you for help?

—There is no one else _____, is there?

[北京高考题]

A. who to turn to B. she can turn to C. for whom to turn D. for her to turn

答案是 B。“她为什么总是请你帮忙?”“她没有其他可以求助的人,是吗?”turn to sb. (for help) 意为“求助于某人”,关系代词 that/whom 作 turn to 的宾语,因此可以省略。A 为不定式作定语,多了 who(与 no one else 重复);D 缺介词 to。故选 B。

温馨提示

如果把介词提到关系代词前,则关系代词不能省略。

[例] Alec asked the policeman _____ he worked to contact him whenever there was an accident.

[上海高考题]

A. with him B. who C. with whom D. whom

答案是 C。“艾利克请和他一起工作的警察无论何时出事故都要和他联系。”he worked 应是 the policeman 的定语从句;由 to contact 引起的不定式短语是 the policeman 的宾补。又因 worked 为不及物动词,需搭配介词 with,构成“介词 + 关系代词 whom(不能省略)”。故选 C。

②在“there + be...”结构的从句中作主语的关系代词。

[例] There is the only bus (that) there is to that park. “这是开往那个公园的唯一的一路公共汽车。”

句中的关系代词 that 本应在 there is 后,也可省略不用。

③在某些表示时间名词后的关系副词可省略,如 the time, every time, each time, the moment 等。

[例] By the time he was fourteen years old, he had learned advanced mathematics all by himself. “到十四岁时,他已经自学了高等数学。”

句中 the time 后省略了关系副词 when 或 that。

④在某些句中表示地点名词后的关系副词有时也可以省略,如 the place。

[例] That's the place he stayed when he was in Paris. “这就是他在巴黎时所住的地



方。”

⑤先行词 the reason 后面的关系副词可省略。

[例] That's the reason I asked you to come. “这就是我叫你来的原因。”

⑥先行词 the way 后面的关系副词可省略,可理解为省略了关系副词 that 或 in which。

[例] What surprised me was not what he said but he said it. [北京高考题]

A. the way B. in the way that C. in the way D. the way which

答案是 A。“让我感到惊讶的不是他说的话,而是他说话的方式。”从全句结构看,he said it 用作定语从句修饰 the way,可以省略 that 或 in which,但不能用 which,因此可排除 D;又因本空与名词性从句 what he said 并列等同(于 not... but... 结构中),应选用名词,而不能用介词短语 B 项或 C 项。故选 A。

第二节 关系代词引出的定语从句

22-7 先行词指“人”时的定语从句。

先行词指“人”时,定语从句中用 who 作主语,用 whom 在从句中作宾语(非正式文体中,也用 who 作宾语)。有时也可用 that 在从句中作主语、宾语或表语。

[例] Women drink more than two cups of coffee a day have a greater chance of having heart disease than those don't. [北京高考题]

A. who; 不填 B. 不填; who C. who; who D. 不填; 不填

答案是 C。“每天喝两杯以上咖啡的女性比那些不喝咖啡的女士得心脏病的可能性更大”。两个 who 都用来引导定语从句,指代人,都在从句中作主语,都不能省略。

[例] Do you know the woman whom we met at the gate? “你认识我们在大门口遇到的那位妇女吗?”

whom 指人,在从句中作动词 met 的宾语。whom 可省略,也可用 that 或 who 替代。

22-8 先行词为“物”时,多用 that 而不用 which 有几种情况。

that 和 which 都可指物,但下列情况下一般要用 that:

①先行词是不定代词 all, none, one, any, few, little, much, everything, nothing, anything 等或被 all, any, every, each, few, little, any, no 等词修饰时。

[例] Is there anything (that) I can do for you in town? “有什么事我可以代你在城里办吗?”

[例] I have read all the books (that) you gave me. “我已经读完了你给我的所有的书。”

温馨提示

something 后用 that 或 which 均可。

【例】There is something that/which keeps worrying me. “有一件事老是使我不安。”

②先行词被形容词最高级所修饰时。

【例】This is the best film that I've ever seen. “这是我看过的最好的一部电影。”

③先行词被序数词或 the last, the only, the very 修饰时

【例】This is the first place that I visited last time. “这是我上次首先参观的地方。”

④先行词包含了指人和物两方面的含义时。

【例】They talked about the things and persons that they remembered in the school. “他们谈到了他们所记得的在学校时的人或事。”

先行词 the things and persons 包含了人或物两方面。

22-9 先行词指物时,用 which 而不用 that 的两种情况。

①引导非限制性定语从句时。先行项可以是一个词、词组或整个主句。

【例】Helen was much kinder to her youngest son than to the others, _____, of course, made the others envy him. [天津高考题]

A. who B. that C. what D. which

答案是 D。“海伦对她最小的儿子要比对其他孩子偏爱得多,这件事当然使其他孩子嫉妒他。”of course 为插入语,可以先去掉,即可看到后面为非限制性定语从句。先行项是前面整个主句。非限制性定语从句不能用 that。故选 D。

②当关系代词作介词的宾语时,用“介词+which”结构。

【例】The schools themselves admit that not all children will be successful in the jobs _____ they are being trained. [江西高考题]

A. in that B. for that C. in which D. for which

答案是 D。“学校自己也承认并非所有的孩子都会在正接受培训的工作中取得成功。”jobs 后为定语从句,有介词的出现,不用关系代词 that; be trained for the jobs 表示“为了工作接受培训”,比“在工作进行培训”更符合语境。故选 D。

22-10 关系代词 that 或 which 用作表语。

①关系代词 that 可指代人或物,用作表语(仅用于限制性定语从句中)。

【例】He is no longer a small boy that he was five years ago. “他已经不再是 5 年前那个小男孩了。”

句中的 that 作 he was 的表语,指人。

【例】It is not a profound book that you think it to be. “这不是一本你认为那么深奥的书。”

that 指物“书”，作 to be 的表语。

2 which 可用作表语，既可指人，又可指物；既可引导限制性定语从句，也可引导非限制性定语从句。指人时，一般指从事某种职业或是有某种特性、品质或才能的人。

[例] The modern car is no longer the car which it was in the 1930s. “现代汽车不再是 20 世纪 30 年代的汽车了。”

that 指物，并引导限制性定语从句。

[例] Her sister has become a lawyer, _____ she wanted to be. [湖北高考题]

A. who B. that C. what D. which

答案是 D。句意为“她的妹妹已经成为一个律师，这是她过去想成为的”。先行词 lawyer 尽管是人，但这儿表示职业；而又在一个非限定定语从句中，应用关系代词 which 作表语，不能用 that 或 who，而 what 不能引导定语从句，也应排除。

22-11 whose 表所属“人”，又可指“物”。

whose 一般置于名词之前，在从句中作定语。whose 既可用以指人，也可用以指物。

[例] George Orwell, _____ was Eric Arthur, wrote many political novels and essays.

A. the real name B. what his real name [北京高考题]
C. his real name D. whose real name

答案是 D。“乔治·奥威尔，真名叫埃里克·阿瑟，写了许多政治性小说和论文。”从结构及意义看，此处为非限制性定语从句，whose 在从句中作 real name 的定语，故选 D。whose 指人。

[例] Look out! Don't get too close to the house _____ roof is under repair.

A. whose B. which C. of which D. that [福建高考题]

答案是 A。“注意！不要太靠近屋顶正在维修的房子了。”the house 后面接的是定语从句，且 roof 与 the house 之间是所属关系，应用 whose 作定语修饰名词 roof，whose 此处指“物”。如用 of which，须在 roof 前加 the。

温馨提示

(1) 当定语表示非所属关系，而是指代所提到的或一部分，用 which。

[例] I told him to go to a doctor, which advice he took. “我叫他去看医生，他听取了这个建议。”

which 指“看医生一件事”（从句可换成 and he took this / my advice）。

[例] Mark was a student at this university from 1999 to 2003, _____ he studied very hard and was made chairman of the Students' Union.

A. during which time B. for which time
C. during whose time D. by that time

答案是 A。“从 1999 年到 2003 年马克是这所大学的学生,在此期间他学习努力,被选为学生会主席。” during which time 引导非限制性定语从句,表示“在此期间”, which 指代 from 1999 to 2003 (为同位关系),与 time 非所属关系。故选 A 而不选 C。

(2) “whose + 名词”相当于“of which (或 of whom) + the + 名词”,也可写出“the + 名词 + of which (或 of whom)”。

[例] Recently I bought an ancient Chinese vase, _____ was very reasonable.

A. which price

B. the price of which

C. its price

D. the price of whose [上海高考题]

答案是 B。“最近我买了一个中国古代花瓶,其价格非常合理。”空前没有 and,非并列句。后部分是一个非限制性定语从句, the price of which = of which the price = whose price。故选 B。

22-12 关系代词 as 常用于“such... as”, “the same... as”, “as / so... as”等结构中。

[例] This is not such a book as I expected. “这不是我想要的那类书。”

as 在从句中作宾语。

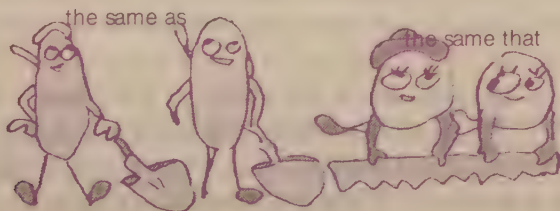
[例] In the city, I saw so grand a National Day celebration as I never dreamt of. “在城里,我看到了连自己做梦都想不到的如此盛大的国庆节庆祝典礼。”

as 在定语从句(I never dreamt of)中作 of 的宾语。

[例] He is as great a painter as ever lived. “他可堪比上任何伟大的画家。”

第一个 as 是副词,相当于 so; 第二个 as 在定语从句中做主语。全句等于 He is one of the greatest painters。

22-13 “the same as”和“the same that”的异同。



当先行词是 the same 或被 the same 修饰时,从句用关系代词 as 或 that 引导,但表示的意义不同。

试比较 [例] This is the same tool as I used last time. “这和我上次用的是同一种工具。”

the same... as, 意为“和…是同一类”

[例] This is the same tool that I used last time. “这和我上次用的是同一把工具。”
the same... that, 意为“和…是同一个”。

22-14 引导非限制性定语从句时 as 与 which 的异同。

as 和 which 的相同点:

①都引导非限制性定语从句。②先行词都可指整个主句。③都可在从句中作主语、宾语或表语。

as 和 which 的不同点:

①as 引导的从句可位于句首或句末, 并有逗号和主句隔开; 而 which 引导的从句, 只可放在主句后面。

[例] _____ is often the case, we have worked out the production plan.

A. Which B. When C. What D. As [江苏高考题]

答案是 D。“我们已经制定了生产计划, 这是常有的情况。”which 和 as 都能引导非限制性定语从句, 先行词指代整个主句, 但 which 引导的定语从句不能放在句子开头, 故选 D, 排除 A。

[例] Jim passed the driving test, _____ surprised everybody in the office.

A. which B. that C. this D. it [浙江高考题]

答案是 A。“Jim 通过了驾驶考试, 这件事让办公室里人人感到吃惊。”which 引导非限制性定语从句, 指上文整个句子的意思, 一般可译作“这一点”、“这件事”, 或者不译。

[例] The Beatles, _____ many of you are old enough to remember, came from Liverpool.

A. what B. that C. how D. as [天津高考题]

答案是 D。“甲壳虫乐队来自利物浦, 这一点你们很多人已经够大了, 是能够记得的。”as 引导非限制性定语从句, 在从句中作 remember 的宾语, 意为“这一点”, 故选 D。

②as 还有“正如…”、“正像…”之意, 而 which 没有。

[例] _____ is reported in the newspapers, talks between the two countries are making progress.

A. It B. As C. That D. What [北京高考题]

答案是 B。“正如报纸上所报道的那样, 两国间的会谈正在取得进展。”句中有逗号分割, 说明整个句子并非 it is ... that(引导主语从句); 前部分应为定语从句。as 引导前置定语从句, 代替整个后面的主句, 意为“正如…”。故选 B 项。

温馨提示

如把本句的逗号去掉, 则应选 that, 引导主语从句, it 作形式主语。[参见 20-12]

22-15 由“介词 + 关系代词”所引出的定语从句需注意的4个问题。

- ① 关系代词 which(指物)和 whom(指人)在定语从句中作介词的宾语时,这个介词可以放在关系代词之前,也可以放在定语从句之尾。当介词置于从句之尾时,which 可用 that 代替,whom 可用 who 或 that 代替;并常可省去关系代词。

[例] We saw several natives advancing towards our party, and one of them came up to us, _____ we gave some bells and glasses. [湖南高考题]

A. to which B. to whom C. with whom D. with which

答案是 B。“我们看到几个本地人靠近我们的聚会处,其中一个人走向我们,而我们给了他一些铃和玻璃杯。”根据句意可知先行词指人,而定语从句为 give sth. to sb. 结构的变形。故选 to whom。本从句也可改写成 who/whom we gave some bells and glasses to。

[例] Is this the dictionary _____ you paid five dollars?

A. to which B. for which C. on which D. that

答案是 B。“这就是你花了五美元买的那本词典吗?”pay...for...是固定搭配,意为“付钱买物”。此句可改写为: Is this the dictionary that/which you paid five dollars for? 句中可用 that 或 which,也可省略不用。

- ② 关系代词 that 在定语从句中作介词的宾语时,介词只能放在从句尾部有关动词后面,不可放在 that 前面,关系代词 that 可省略。

[例] “我们住的房子是不大的。”可以译为:

The house that we live in is not large.

The house we live in is not large.

The house in which we live is not large. (或 The house where we live is not large.)

The house which we live in is not large.

- ③ 介词的选用要根据从句中动词、形容词等与介词的习惯搭配而定,即把关系词所代表的先行词放在从句谓语动词后,并且看动词与先行词之间用什么介词合适。

[例] I saw a woman running toward me in the dark. Before I could recognize who she was, she had run back in the direction _____ she had come. [重庆高考题]

A. of which B. by which C. in which D. from which

答案是 D。“黑暗中我看见一位妇女朝我跑过来,我还没有来得及认出她来,她就按她来的方向跑回去了。”把先行词放在定语从句里应是 She had come from the direction. 短语 come from 中的 from 提到关系代词前。故选 D。

[例] American women usually identify their best friend as someone _____ they can talk frequently. [上海高考题]

A. who B. as C. about which D. with whom

答案是 D。“美国女性通常把她们最要好的朋友当作她们经常能与之交谈的人。”后部分为定语从句,先行词为 someone,关系代词 whom 在从句中做 talk with

的宾语,介词 with 放在关系代词之前。故选 D。

4. 在由“代词/名词 + of + 关系代词”结构引导的定语从句中,先行词指人用 whom,指物用 which。[参见 22-11]

[例] I have many friends, _____ some are businessmen. 全国高考题 1,2

A. of them B. from which C. who of D. of whom

答案是 D。“我有许多朋友,他们中有些人是商人。”逗号后缺 and,该句不是并列句(不能用 of them),而是定语从句。先行词指人,应用 of whom 引导定语从句(也可用 some of whom)。故选 D。

[例] I was given three books on cooking, the first _____ I really enjoyed.

A. of that B. of which C. that D. which [浙江高考题]

答案是 B。“有人给了我三本烹调方面的书,其中的第一本我真喜欢。”先行词指物, the first 与 three books 构成从属关系,应用 of which 来引导非限制性定语从句。故选 B。

[例] Here are players from Japan, some of _____ are our old friends.

A. them B. which C. whom D. who

答案是 C。“这是来自日本的运动员,其中一些人是我们的老朋友了。”句中先行词 players 指人, of 后用 whom。

温馨提示

在这种从句中,逗号起了很重要的作用;若把逗号换成连词 and, [上例] 就成为并列句,答案就应选 A, 因为改为并列句后, and some of them 是分句中的主语。

第三节 关系副词引出的定语从句

22-16 关系副词引导的定语从句。

when 表示时间, where 表示地点, why 表示原因, 他们在从句中分别作时间状语、地点状语和原因状语。

[例] —Is that the small town you often refer to?

—Right, just the one _____ you know I used to work for years. 福建高考题

A. that B. which C. where D. what

答案是 C。“那就是你常常提到的那个小镇吗?”“对,正是你知道我过去曾经工作多年的那个小镇。”先行词 the one 代替上句中的地点 the small town; 而从句中缺少的是修饰不及物动词 work 的状语, 故选关系副词 where。

[例] There was _____ time _____ I hated to go to school.

A. a; that B. a; when C. the; that D. the; when [湖北高考题]

答案是 B。“有一段时间,我讨厌上学。”在 there be 句型中主语之前通常使用 a/an 非特指限定词。第二空后为定语从句,先行词是表示时间的名词 time, 从

句中不缺主语或宾语,应用关系副词 when 作状语。

温馨提示

(1) case, point, condition, business, position, situation 等名词后也常接 where 从句。

[例] We're just trying to reach a point _____ both sides will sit down together and talk.

[山东高考题]

A. where B. that C. when D. which

答案是 A。“我们正在寻求达成一个双方都能坐下来谈的共识(基础)”,先行词为 point,定语从句中缺少状语,应用关系副词 where 引导。

(2) 当先行词虽然表示时间、地点或原因,而关系词在从句中作主语、宾语而不是状语时,不可用 when, where 或 why,而应用 that 或 which。

[例] —Do you have anything to say for yourselves?

—Yes, there's one point _____ we must insist on.

[江西高考题]

A. why B. where C. how D. /

答案是 D。“你有什么要为自己说的吗?”“是的,有一点我们必须要坚持。”虽然先行词也是 point,但定语从句里 insist on 缺少宾语,此处是省略了关系代词 that 或 which(也可不省略),但不能用关系副词 why, where, how。

[例] Is this the reason _____ at the meeting for his carelessness in his work?

A. he explained B. what he explained

C. how he explained D. why he explained

答案是 A。“这是他在会上为自己工作上的粗心所做出的解释的原因吗?”the reason 后面的句子应是它的定语从句,故排除 B 和 C。D 项为同位语从句但句意不通顺,故也排除。A 项中的 that / which 因作 explained 的宾语而省略,故选 A。

试比较

[例] The reason why he didn't come to school yesterday is that he was ill. “他昨天没到校的原因是他病了。”

从句中缺状语,表原因,用关系副词 why。

I'll never forget the day when I first came to Beijing.

“我永远也忘不了第一次到北京的那一天。”

定语从句中的动词为不及物动词,when 在从句中作状语。

I'll never forget the days that/which we spent together.

“我永远也忘不了我们在一起度过的那些日子。”

定语从句中的 spent 为及物动词,从句中须有宾语,

因此只能用 that/which,不能用 when。

Hangzhou is a city _____ there is a beautiful lake.

从句中缺状语,应用关系副词 where。

Hangzhou is a city _____ has a beautiful lake.

从句中缺主语,应用关系代词 that 或 which。

“杭州是有个美丽的湖的城市。”

22-17 关系副词多可变为“介词 + which”。

由关系副词引导的定语从句,常可以改为由“介词 + which”结构引导的定语从句。该用什么介词,要根据先行词的具体情况而定。

[例] I'll never forget the day when I first came to Beijing.

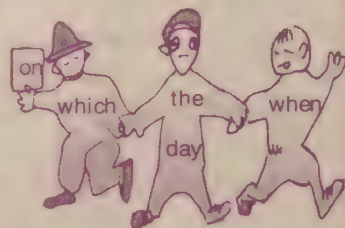
= I'll never forget the day on which I first came to Beijing.

[例] Hangzhou is a city where there is a beautiful lake.

= Hangzhou is a city in which there is a beautiful lake.

[例] That is the reason why I told the lie. “这就是我撒谎的原因。”

= That is the reason for which I told the lie. “这就是我撒谎的原因。”



第四节 强调句型

22-18 强调句型。

强调句型的结构为:“It is/was + 被强调部分 + that(或 who)从句”。即使被强调的主语是复数,主句中仍用“It is/was... that/who...”形式。

[例] It was because of bad weather _____ the football match had to be put off.

A. so B. so that C. why D. that

[上海高考题]

答案是 D。“是因为天气不好,足球赛才不得不延期的。”此句是一个应用“It is... that...”的强调句型结构,强调的是 because of bad weather,故用 that。

[例] It was Tom and Mike who helped us. “是汤姆和麦克帮助我们的。”

强调是汤姆和麦克(而不是别人)帮助了我们。

[例] It was only when I reread this poems recently _____ I began to appreciate their beauty.

A. until B. that C. then D. so

[全国高考题]

答案是 B。“只有当最近我重读这些诗的时候我才开始欣赏到它们的美妙。”这是强调句型,只能用 that。

① 强调句型的一般疑问句形式是“Is / Was it... that...”

【例】Was it during the Second World War _____ he died?

A. that B. while C. in which D. then

答案是A。“他是在第二次世界大战期间逝世吗？”本句为强调句型的一般疑问句，只可能用 that。

② 强调特殊疑问词时，疑问词应放在句首，后面用疑问句语序，构成“疑问词 + is / was it that (指人或 who) + ...”。

【例】— _____ that he managed to get the information?

— Oh, a friend of his helped him.

[山东高考题]

A. Where was it B. What was it C. How was it D. Why was it

答案是C。“他是怎样设法得到这个消息的？”“噢，他的一位朋友帮助他的。”根据答语可知该句问的是他得到消息的方式，故应用 How was it that... 来强调 how。正常特殊疑问句语序是 How did he manage to get the information?

【例】Why! I have nothing to confess. _____ you want me to say?

[上海高考题]

A. What is it that B. What it is that C. How is it that D. How it is that

答案是A。“怎么啦！我没有什么要坦白的。你到底想叫我说什么呀？”强调结构 It is... that... 的特殊问句为：特殊疑问词 + is it that...，因此可排除 B 和 D。特殊疑问词充当 say 的宾语，必须使用代词 what。

温馨提示

有时候强调句型中的 be 动词可以有其他形式如 can be, must be, will be, may have been 等。

【例】Can it have been on the sports ground _____ you lost your watch yesterday?

A. that B. on which C. where D. in that

答案是A。“你昨天会是在操场上丢的表吗？”此处 be 动词用的是 can have been 的形式，但仍然是强调句型，故选 A。

【例】It must be Tom who will go to the meeting tomorrow. “明天一定是汤姆去参加会议。”

22-20 强调句的两个使用特点。

① 强调句可以强调句子的主语、宾语或状语，被强调的可以是名词、代词，也可以是短语或句子。

【例】It was with great joy _____ he received the news that his lost daughter had been found.

[福建高考题]

A. because B. which C. since D. that

答案是D。“他们真是极为快乐地得到了消息：他们丢失的女儿已经找到了。”强调的是状语短语 with great joy，应用 that 连接，符合强调句式“It is (was) + 强

调部分 + that... ”

【例】It is what you do rather than what you say _____ matters.

[天津高考题]

A. that B. what C. which D. this

答案是 A。“重要的是你所做的事,而不是你所说的话。”本句强调主语从句 what you do rather than what you say, matters 是谓语动词,缺少 that, 故选 A。

温馨提示

在强调时间、地点、原因或方式状语时,一律用 that,而不用 when, why 或 how。千万不要同定语从句混淆。

【例】It was after he got what he had desired _____ he realized it was not so important.

A. that B. when C. since D. as

答案是 A。“就是在他得到自己所渴望的东西后他才意识到那并不是那么重要。”本句不是定语从句,而是强调时间状语从句 after he got what he had desired, 要用 it was ... that... 构成强调句型,而不用 when, 故选 A。

- ②that/who 强调主语时,从句中动词的人称和数要与被强调的主语一致。(这一点与定语从句类似:关系代词做主语时,从句动词要与先行词一致。)[参见 22—2]

【例】It is I who am wrong. “是我错了。”

who 代替被强调的主语 I,是一般现在时,平时要说 I am,故而要用 who am。



【例】It was Lucy and Lily who were late for school this morning. “是露茜和莉莉今天早晨迟到了。”

强调的是主语 Lucy and Lily, 为复数概念, 句子是一般过去时, 故动词用 were。

22-21 如何强调“not...until”句型?

强调 not...until 的结构时, not 要放在 until 之前。即: It is/was not until... that...

【例】It was not until she got home _____ Jennifer realized she had lost her keys.

A. when B. that C. where D. before

[全国高考题]

答案是 B。“直到回到家, 珍妮弗才意识到自己把钥匙弄丢了。”本句是对 not until she got home 进行强调, 应用强调结构 (“It is / was + 被强调部分 + that + 其它部分”) 正常的句式应为 Jennifer didn't realize she had lost her keys until she got home.

【例】It was _____ back home after the experiment.

[湖北高考题]

A. not until midnight did he go B. until midnight that he didn't go
C. not until midnight that he went D. until midnight when he didn't go

答案是C。“直到半夜,他才做完实验回到家里。”本处是not...until句型的强调结构,not要放在until之前,后面不需要倒装,也不再用否定句。故选C。

温馨提示

若不是强调结构,而直接将not until提至句首表示强调,则应用倒装语序。

一般句型:He did not go back home until midnight after the experiment.

倒装句型:Not until midnight did he go back home after the experiment.

强调句型:It was not until midnight that he went back home after the experiment.

22-22 区别强调句型和定语从句的诀窍。

判定方法:若将“It is/was”和“that/who”去掉而句中不缺成分,结构完整,说明原句是强调句型;若结构不完整,则说明原句为定语从句。

[例] It was after the invention of printing _____ to publish large numbers of books and pictures.

[上海高考题]

A. were people able

B. that people were able

C. when were people able

D. people were able

答案是B。“就是在印刷术发明之后,人们才能出版大量的书籍和图片。”本句强调时间状语after the invention of printing,应用that(不宜省略)引导,且that后用陈述语序(不能与倒装结构混淆)。若去掉“It was... that...”,原句可变成“After the invention of printing, people were able to publish large numbers of books and pictures.”。结构完整,不缺成分,说明是强调句型。

高中英语语法

即学即用

I. 单项选择

1. The factory produces half a million pairs of shoes every year, 80% _____ are sold abroad. [辽宁高考题]

A. of which

B. which of

C. of them

D. of that

2. The journey around the world took the old sailor nine months, _____ the sailing time was 226 days. [全国高考题]

A. of which

B. during which

C. from which

D. for which

3. I work in a business _____ almost everyone is waiting for a great chance.

A. how

B. which

C. where

D. that

[湖南高考题]

4. Many people who had seen the film were afraid to go the forest when they remembered the scenes _____ people were eaten by the tiger. [广东高考题]

A. in which

B. by which

C. which

D. that

5. Last month, part of Southeast Asia was struck by floods, from _____ effects the people

are still suffering.

[天津高考题]

- A. that B. whose C. those D. what

6. Anyway, that evening, _____ I'll tell you more about later, I ended up staying at Rachel's place.

[浙江高考题]

- A. when B. where C. what D. which

7. _____ is known to everybody, the moon travels round the earth once every month.

- A. It B. As C. That D. What [全国高考题]

8. _____ I explained on the phone, your request will be considered at the next meeting.

- A. When B. After C. As D. Since [浙江高考题]

9. I can think of many cases _____ students obviously knew a lot of English words and expressions but couldn't write a good essay.

[上海高考题]

- A. why B. which C. as D. where

10. She was educated at Beijing University, _____ she went on to have her advanced study abroad.

[陕西高考题]

- A. after which B. from which C. from that D. after that

11. You can find whatever you need at the shopping centre, _____ is always busy at the weekend.

[上海高考题]

- A. that B. where C. what D. which

12. John said he'd been working in the office for an hour, _____ was true.

- A. he B. this C. which D. who [北京高考题]

13. I was told that there were about 50 foreign students _____ Chinese in the school, most _____ were from Germany.

[辽宁高考题]

- A. study; of whom B. study; of them
C. studying; of them D. studying; of whom

14. The result of the experiment was very good, _____ we hadn't expected.

- A. when B. that C. which D. what

15. It was an exciting moment for these football fans this year, _____ for the first time in years their team won the World Cup.

- A. that B. while C. which D. when

16. Dorothy was always speaking highly of her role in the play, _____, of course, made the others unhappy.

[全国高考题]

- A. who B. which C. this D. what

17. It is the ability to do the job _____ matters not where you come from or what you are.

- A. one B. that C. what D. it [全国高考题]

18. The film brought the hours back to me _____ I was taken good care of in that far-away village.

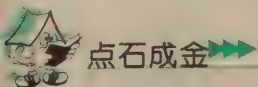
[全国高考题]

- A. until B. that C. when D. where

19. We will be shown around the city: schools, museums, and some other places, _____ other visitors seldom go. [北京高考题]
A. what B. which C. where D. when
20. We are living in an age _____ many things are done on computer. [北京高考题]
A. which B. that C. whose D. when
21. _____ has been announced, we shall have our final exams next month. [上海高考题]
A. That B. As C. It D. What
22. York, _____ last year, is a nice old city. [北京高考题]
A. that I visited B. which I visited C. where I visited D. in which I visited
23. The English play _____ my students acted at the New Year's party was a great success. [全国高考题]
A. for which B. at which C. in which D. on which
24. It wasn't until nearly a month later _____ I received the manager's reply. [全国高考题]
A. since B. when C. as D. that
25. There are two buildings, _____ stands nearly a hundred feet high. [湖北高考题]
A. the larger B. the larger of them C. the larger one that D. the larger of which
26. In an hour, we can travel to places _____ would have taken our ancestor days to reach. [上海高考题]
A. where B. when C. which D. what

II. 改错(每句中一处错误)

- I also enjoyed the evenings when we spent together.
- In other places you are limited to a certain number, of that some may be novels.
- I live in Beijing, where is the capital of China.
- This is one of the best books that has been published so far.
- She is the only one of the students who were praised.
- I will give your sister a model ship which she will like to play.
- It is the most exciting football match which I've seen.
- Which we know now, heavy objects and light objects fall at the same speed unless air holds them back.
- He doesn't have such a mind that is necessary to a scientist.
- Anyone fails to see this will make a big mistake.



I. 单项选择

1. A 逗号说明后面不是并列句,应用“数量词 + of + which / whom 引导非限制性定语从句”,表示“其中 80% 销往国外”。

关系代词 which 指代 nine months。应用介词 of + which, 表示“这九个月中的 226 天”。

先行词为“公司、企业、行业”等抽象概念地点名词, 从句中不缺主语或宾语, 应用关系副词 where 引导定语从句, 作从句的状语, 相当于 in which。

根据句子的意思, 应用介词 in + which, 指 in the scenes, 在从句中做状语。故选 A。

11. B 非限制性定语从句的引导词, 不能用 those 或 what, 应用 whose 修饰 effects, 表示所属关系, 故选 B。

16. D 从非限制性定语从句中 tell A about B 看, 从句缺少介词宾语, 故用 which, 不能用 when 或 where(两者在从句作状语)或 what(引导名词性从句)。

7. B 句中有逗号, 全句不含有主语从句, 应用 as 引起非限制性定语从句, 代表主句的整句话内容, 且在从句中作主语。

8. C 表示“正如我在电话上所解释的一样”, 应用 as 引导非限定定语从句(提前)。

9. D case“情况; 场合”, 应属于地点名词, 其后的定语从句可使用 where(= in which) 作从句中的地点状语。

10. A “她先在北大学习”和“后到国外继续深造”之间存在时间关系, 应用介词 after + which 引导非限制性定语从句。而逗号后没有并列连接词, 不用 after that。

11. D 逗号后为非限定性定语从句, 只能用 as 或者 which 引导。故选 D。

12. C 逗号后为非限制性定语从句, 需用关系词 which(作从句的主语), 代替 he'd been working in the office for an hour(表示“此事是真实的”)。

13. D 前面已有主动词 there be, 后只能用动词-ing 形式作 students 的定语, 后面是一个非限制性定语从句, 要用 of whom。如把逗号改为 and, 就成了并列关系, 应选 C。

14. C 此处为非限制性定语从句, 应用关系代词在从句中作动词(expected)的宾语。

15. D 逗号后为非限制性定语从句, 且主谓宾齐全, 要用关系副词 when 在从句中作时间状语。

16. B 略去插入成分 of course 可看出, 此处是个非限制性定语从句, 又因先行词是事情“always speaking highly of her role in the play”, 用 which(而不用 who)。

17. B 此句强调的是“the ability to do the job”, 即“重要的是你做事的能力而不是你是什么地方的人或你是干什么的。”应用 that 于此强调结构中。

18. C 时间名词 hours 的定语从句中缺乏时间状语, 故选 C。

19. C places 后应是修饰其的非限制性定语从句, 可排除 A、D 两项; 又因从句中的 go 为不及物动词, 故用 where 引导。

20. D age(时代)为时间名词, 且其后的定语从句, 从句中缺乏状语, 故选 when。

21. B announced 后逗号说明此处表明此处不能用 It 作形式主语, 而用 as 可引起非限制性定语从句, 表示“正如所宣布的”。

22. B. York 后有逗号, 其后应是一个非限制性定语从句, 且从句的谓语动词 visit 是一个及物动词, 缺少宾语, 不用 where 和 in which, 故选 B。

介词 + which 所引导的定语从句修饰,而“在剧中(扮演角色)”应用 act in the play 表达。

本句为强调结构应用 that。原句为 I didn't receive the manager's reply until a month later。

“有两幢楼房,其中(两个中)较大的那个将近 100 英尺高”选 D 引导非限制性定语从句。

“我们用一个小时就能到达我们祖先要用数天才能到达的地方”。定语从句缺少主语,应用 which 而不用 where 引导。

II. 改错(每句中一处错误)

1. when 改为 that
2. that 改为 which
3. where 改为 which
4. has 改为 have
5. were 改为 was
6. 在 which 前或 play 后加 with
7. which 改为 that 或去掉 which
8. Which 改为 As
9. that 改为 as
10. Anyone 后加 who, 或 Anyone 改为 Whoever

第23章

副词性从句

(或称状语从句)



高考热点

状语从句是每年高考的必考内容。近几年高考对状语从句的考查主要集中在:1. 各类状语从句引导词的选用,尤其是引导时间、条件、原因、目的等状语从句的从属连词,如:when, while, as 的区别、It is... since... 与 It is... before... 的区别、because, as, since 的区别等。2. 时间和条件状语从句中的时态:用一般现在时表示将来。3. 状语从句的省略。考查的形式以单选题为主,但在完形填空和短文改错中也时常出现,且主要是通过语境的设置来反映上下文之间的逻辑关系。

第一节 状语从句的概念和基本用法

23-1 状语从句和从属连词。

- ① 状语从句修饰主句中的动词、形容词、副词等,在复合句中作状语。引导状语从句的关联词是从属连词。状语从句用陈述句语序,一般位于复合句的句首或句末。当从句在句首时,从句后常用逗号和主句相隔。状语从句根据其在句中的不同作用分别表示时间、地点、原因、目的、结果、条件、比较、让步、行为方式等,共有九种。



[例] It was 1994, but I can remember my mother's words as

if it were yesterday. "Kerrel, I don't want you to take food from your father, because he has AIDS. Be very careful when you are around him." "那是1994年,但我能记

得我妈妈的话犹如在昨天一样。‘凯瑞尔,我不想要你吃父亲的食物,因为他得了艾滋病。当你在他周围时,要非常小心。’”

第一个句子后部分复合句中,从属连词 as if 引导一个方式状语从句;第二句中从属连词 because 引导一个原因状语从句。第三个句中的从属连词 when 时间状语从句。

②各种状语从句常用从属连词一览表:

状语类别	从属连词
时间	when, whenever, as, while, before, after, till / until, since, ever since, once, as soon as, soon after, the moment, the minute, each time, every time, by the time
地点	where, wherever
原因	because, as, since, considering that, now that
目的	so that, in order that, for fear that, in case
结果/程度	so that, so... that, such... that, that, with the result that
条件	if, unless, as / so long as, as / so far as, in case, suppose that, on condition that
比较	as... as, not as / so... as, than
让步	though, although, even if, even though, as, however, whatever, whenever, wherever, whoever, whether... or, no matter who / what / which / where / when / whether / how
行为方式	as, as if, as though

23-2 时间、条件状语从句中谓语动词的时态

在时间和条件状语从句中,其谓语动词一般不用将来时,而用一般现在时代替一般将来时,一般过去时代替过去将来时,现在完成时代替将来完成时等。[参见3—3]

【例】—Can I join your club, Dad?

—You can when you _____ a bit older.

[全国高考题]

A. get B. will get C. are getting D. will have got

答案是A。“爸爸,我可以参加你的俱乐部吗?”“再长大点就可以了。”主句 You can 表示了将来的含义,所以在 when 引导的时间状语从句中用 get 代替 will get。

C 表示“正逐渐变得”，不合题意。

[例]—When will you come to see me, Dad?

—I will go to see you when you _____ the training course.

A. will have finished B. will finish C. are finishing D. finish

答案是 D。“你将什么时候来看我，爸爸？”“当你完成训练课程时我去看你。”因答句是个主从复合句，而且主句用了一般将来时，时间状语从句应用一般现在时，故选 D。

23-3 引导条件状语从句的 if 与引导宾语从句的 if 的鉴别。

if 可以引导条件状语从句和宾语从句。当 if 引导条件状语从句时，它的意思是“如果”、“假使”；if 引导宾语从句时意思和 whether 相同，是“是否”的意思，此时 if 所引导的宾语从句往往在及物动词之后，或在形式宾语 it 之后。

[例] I think it is necessary for my 19-year-old son to have his own mobile phone, for I sometimes want to make sure if he _____ home for dinner.

A. come B. comes C. has come D. will come

答案是 D。“我认为我十九岁的儿子拥有自己的手机很有必要，因为有时候我想弄清楚他是否会回家吃饭。”根据句意可知 if 引导的是宾语从句，而不是状语从句，“是否回家吃饭”发生在将来，所以要用一般将来时 will come。

[例]—What would you do if it _____ tomorrow?

—We have to carry it on, since we've got everything ready.

A. rain B. rains C. will rain D. is raining

答案是 B。“如果明天下雨你们会怎么办？”“既然我们一切都准备好了，只得继续干下去了。”if 作“如果”解，引导条件状语从句，用一般现在时表示将来。故选 B。

温馨提示

注意 if 引导条件状语从句和宾语从句时从句时态的区别。[参见 17-10]。

23-4 时间、条件、让步、方式等状语从句常可用省略形式或转换成简单句成分。

①当 when, while, as, if, though, as if, once 等引导时间、条件、让步、方式等状语从句时，若从句的主语和主句的主语一致，且有 be 动词，则可连同后面的 be 动词一道省去。[参见 9-5]

[例] As (she was) a child, she began to learn French. “当她还是孩子时，就开始学习法语了。”

as 引导时间状语从句，主句的主语和从句的主语一致，从句可省略主语 she 和

was。

[例] When first _____ to the market, these products enjoyed great success.

A. introducing B. introduced C. introduce D. being introduced 全国高考题

答案是B。“这些产品刚投放市场时就很成功。”主语 products 与非谓语动词逻辑上是被动关系应用过去分词,相当于状语从句 when these products were first introduced to the market. 省略了主语 these products 和 be 动词 were。故选B。

[例] Although (he was) told to stop, he kept on working. “虽然他被告知停下来,但还是继续干活。”

[例] The boy looked as if (he were) afraid of nothing. “那男孩看起来好像什么都不怕。”

② since, before, after 引导的状语从句有时可变为介词短语或分词短语。

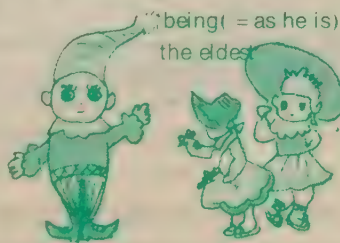
[例] They had not met any more since leaving (= since they left) school. “自从离开学校后,他们再也没有见面。”

since 引导时间状语从句,主句主语和从句主语一致,可将从属连词 since 变为介词接动名词 leaving 构成的介词短语,在简单句中充当时间状语。

③ 原因状语从句若主从句主语一致,也可将从句省略为分词短语、介词短语或独立结构。

[例] Being (= As he is) the eldest, Bill looks after his little sisters. “由于比尔是老大,他照料着自己的小妹妹们。”

[例] Because of smoking (= Because she smokes) too much, Linda doesn't look healthy. “因为烟吸得太多,琳达看上去身体不大好。”



④ 由 so that 和 in order that 引导的目的状语从句,如主句主语和从句主语一致,可用动词不定式短语 so as to 或 in order to 代替。

[例] I left early so as to (= so that I could) catch the first bus. “我早早动身以便赶上头班车。”

动词不定式短语 so as to catch the first bus 作目的状语,可替代 so that 引导的目的状语从句。

⑤ 由 so that, so... that 等引导的结果或程度状语从句如果主句主语与从句主语一致,可用“enough + 不定式”或“too... to”结构替代。

[例] Tom studied hard enough to pass (= Tom studied so hard that he passed) the examination. “汤姆努力学习,考试及格了。”

句中不定式短语 hard enough to pass 替代了状语从句 so hard that he passed, 表示结果。

[例] She was too tired to (= so tired that she couldn't) go any further. “她太累了,一步都走不动了。”

句中不定式短语 too tired to go 替代了状语从句 so tired that she couldn't go, 表示结果。

⑥ if 引导的条件状语从句, 常可省去从句中的主语和系动词, 转换为独立结构、介词短语、不定式短语或分词短语。

[例] If (it is) necessary, ring me up. “如果需要的话, 打电话给我。”

[例] If (he was) alive, he must be at least ninety years old. “如果他还活着, 准有 90 岁了。”

[例] With her help (= If I had help from her), I could do the experiment better. “如果有她的帮助, 我的试验能做得更好。”

With her help 是个介词短语, 内含一个虚拟条件句, 即 if I had help from her, 换句话说, if 引导的条件句可转换为介词短语。

⑦ 在 as 和 than 引导的比较状语从句中, 从句中和主句中相同部分可以省略。

[例] He is a head taller than I (am tall). “他比我高一头。”

比较状语从句中的系表结构与主句中的系表结构相同, 可省去。

第二节 时间状语从句

23-5 引导时间状语从句的从属连词。

引导时间状语从句的从属连词主要有 when, while, as, before, after, since, once, until/ till, as soon as 等。

[例] Even after they had learned how to plant grains, they still needed help from nature to ensure good harvests.

[重庆高考题]

“甚至在他们学会了怎样种植谷物后, 他们仍然需要有自然的帮助来确保有个好收成。”

句中 after 引导时间状语从句。

[例] A dozen ideas were considered _____ the chief architect decided on the design of the building.

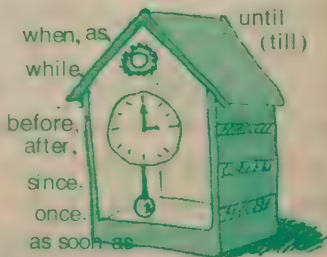
A. because

B. before

C. whether

D. unless

答案是 B。“在总设计师对这幢建筑物的设计做出决策之前, 他考虑过了十几个意见。”空处的前后表示“前后”的时间关系, 应用 before, 引导时间状语从句。



[上海高考题]

温馨提示

before 引导的时间状语从句翻译为“不等…就”, “不多久…就”, “(在…之后)才”, “还未来得及(此时常和 can / could / have time 等词连用)”等。

【例】Several weeks had gone by _____ I realized the painting was missing.

- A. as B. before C. since D. when [全国高考题]

答案是 B。“过了几个星期我才知道那幅画丢失了。”根据句意应用 before 引导时间状语从句。此处翻译为“过了…才”。

【例】—Why didn't you tell him about the meeting?

—He rushed out of the room _____ I could say a word.

- A. before B. until C. when D. after

答案是 A。“你为什么没有告诉他有关会议的情况?”“我还没有来得及说话,他就冲出了房间。”根据句意应用 before 引导时间状语从句,表示 but 连接的并列分句中的主句动作发生在从句动作之前。此处可翻译为“还没来得及就…”。

【例】—How long do you think it will be _____ China sends a manned spaceship to the moon?

—Perhaps two or three years. _____ [福建高考题]

- A. when B. until C. that D. before

答案是 D。“你认为中国向月球发射载人人造卫星要多长时间?”“也许两、三年。”根据句意应用 before,构成“it will be + 一段时间 before…”结构的特殊疑问句。故选 D。

23-6 when, while, as 引导时间状语从句的异同。

when, while 和 as 引导时间状语从句,都有“当…的时候”的意思。when 引导的时间状语从句中的谓语动词既可以是延续性动词,也可以是非延续性动词;从句的动作可以和主句的动作同时发生,也可以先于主句的动作发生。while 引导的从句谓语动词一般是一段较长的时间或过程,故动词必须是延续性动词,强调主句谓语动词和从句谓语动词所表示的动作或状态是同时发生或存在的。as 常可和 when, while 通用,但它较强调主句和从句中的动作同时发生,也用来说明两种正在发展和变化的情况。

【例】_____ he left school at fourteen, he began to train as an engineer. [全国高考题]

- A. Since B. When C. Then D. But

答案是 B。“他 14 岁离开学校后,开始接受工程师的培训。”when 作为从属连词引导时间状语从句,从句中谓语动词为非延续性动词,动作发生在主句动作之前。C、D 项不能引导状语从句,可排除。A 项 since 虽可引导时间状语从句,但因其表示从某一点时间开始而往后的延续,主句一般要用完成时态。

【例】_____ the day went on, the weather got worse. [全国高考题]

- A. With B. Since C. While D. As

答案是 D。“随着时间的推移,气候变得更糟了。”A 项是介词,不能引导状语从句;B、C、D 项虽然都可以引导时间状语从句,但只有 as 用来说明两种正在发展

和变化的情况。

温馨提示

when 有时连接两个并列的分句,起并列连词作用,意思是“and then”、“just at that time”,表示某一动作正在进行或即将发生或刚已完成而突然出现另外一种情况;用于句型 be about to do sth. when... (表示“正要干某事”);be doing sth. (be + 介词或副词短语) when... (表示“正在干某事或处于状态”);had just done sth. when... (表示“已经干了...或干了...(多长时间)了”)。when 常翻译为“就在这时/这时突然”,此时 when 不可用 while 或 as 替换。

[例] I had just stepped out of the bathroom and was busily drying myself with a towel _____ I heard the steps. [湖南高考题]

A. while B. when C. since D. after

答案是 B。“我刚从浴室出来,正忙着用毛巾擦头发,这时突然听得了脚步声。”空前既用过过去完成时又用过去进行时,应用 when 作并列连词,符合句意。

[例] He was about to tell me the secret _____ someone patted him on the shoulder.

A. as B. until C. while D. when [上海高考题]

答案是 D。“他正要告诉我那个秘密,这时有人拍了他的肩膀。”前面 was about to 暗示用 when,充当并列连词,符合语境。

23-7 由 as soon as 等引导的表示“一...就...”的时间状语从句。

① as soon as 引导时间状语从句,表示主句和从句的动作相继发生,汉语常译作“一...就...”。

[例] As soon as she heard the news, she began crying “她一听到这个消息,就开始哭了起来。”

② no sooner... than... 和 hardly (barely, scarcely)... when... 也表示和 as soon as 一样的意思,但主句谓语动词一般要用过去完成时,从句谓语动词用一般过去时;如果 no sooner 或 hardly 放在句首时,句子要用倒装语序。

[例] - Did Linda see the traffic accident?

- No, no sooner _____ than it happened.

[天津高考题]

A. had she gone B. she had gone C. has she gone D. she has gone

答案是 A。“Linda 看到交通事故了吗?”“没有,事故一发生她就离开了。”no sooner... than... 意为“一...就...”,主句常用过去完成时;以 no sooner 开头的句子要部分倒装。故选 A。

[例] She had hardly sat down when the telephone rang. (= Hardly had she sat down when the telephone rang.) “她刚坐下,电话铃就响了。”

hardly 没有位于句首时,谓语动词不需要部分倒装,但仍然用过去完成时。

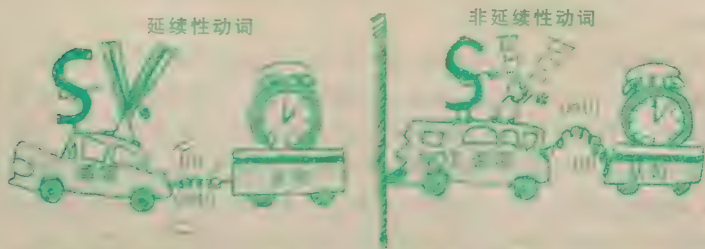
③ immediately, directly, instantly 等表示时间概念的词,也可用作连词,引导时间状语从句,表示主从句动作相继发生,意思相当于 as soon as。

[例] I went to see him immediately I heard from him. “我一接到他的信就去看他。”

④ once 引导的时间状语从句,也像 as soon as 一样,表示主句的动作紧接着从句的动作之后发生,但 as soon as 更强调时间衔接的紧密,而 once 则含有条件的意味,意思是“一旦”。

[例] Once you begin, you must go on. “一旦开了头,你就必须继续下去。”

23-8 until / till 引导时间状语从句时,用于肯定句和否定句的差异。



until 和 till 用法一样,表达的意义也相同,只是用于句首时要用 until。其次,until / till 所表示的时间,在肯定句中,主句谓语动词所表示的动作一直延续到 until / till 所表示的时间才终止,主句谓语动词要用延续性动词,表示“直到…为止”。在否定句中,主句的谓语动词所表示的动作往往要到 until / till 所表示的时间才开始,主句谓语动词一般要用非延续性动词,表示“直到…才;不到…就不”的意思。

[例] We were told that we should follow the main road _____ we reached the central railway station. [辽宁高考题]

A. whenever B. until C. while D. wherever

答案是 B。“我们被告知应该沿着主干道走,一直走到中心火车站为止。”应用 until 引导时间状语从句,符合“follow”的动作持续到“到达车站”时结束。故选 B。

[例] “You can't have this football back _____ you promise not to kick it at my cat again,” the old man said firmly. [广东高考题]

A. because B. since C. when D. until

答案是 D。“直到你答应不对着我的猫踢球,你才可以把足球拿回去。”主句是否定句,until 引导时间状语从句,表示主句的动作到 until 所表示的时间才开始,符合语境。

温馨提示

not...until 结构若在强调句中成为被强调部分,须将 not 和 until 连在一起并前移。[参见 22-21]

23 -9 since 引导的时间状语从句。[参见 3—21]

在 since 引导的时间状语从句中,若谓语动词是延续性动词或状态动词,则其过去时表示动作的完成或状态的结束。若谓语动词为终止性动词,则表示动作的开始。

[例] It is almost five years _____ we saw each other last time.

- A. before B. since C. after D. when

答案是 B。“自从我们上次见面到现在差不多有 5 年了。”此处用 since“自从…”引导时间状语从句。“It is 时(段) + since 从句”表示“自从过去某时到现在已经有多久了”,符合句意。

[例] That was really a splendid evening. It's years _____ I enjoyed myself so much.

- A. when B. that C. before D. since [安徽高考题]

答案是 D。“那真的是一个美好的夜晚,我已经数年都没有如此尽兴了。”enjoy 为延续性动词,即表示从上次 enjoy 结束算起数年。前后的时态是不一致的,应排除 when, before(强调动作,才开始 enjoy,也不符合语境)和 that(it 非形式主语)。

23 -10 each time 等表示时间的名词词组也可以引导时间状语从句。

这些引导时间状语从句的名词短语主要有三类:

- ①“形容词 + time”(≈when)表“当…时”。常见的有:each time, every time, any time 及 the last time, next time, the first time, all the time 和 the whole time 等。

[例] They shake hands with each other each time they meet. “他们每次见面都互相握手。”

[例] I thought her nice and honest _____ I met her.

- A. first time B. for the first time C. the first time D. by the first time

答案是 C。“第一次和她见面时,我就认为她极为诚实。”the first time I met her 相当于 when I first met her / met her for the first time (介词短语作状语,不能引导此处的从句)。

- ②“the + 瞬时名词”(≈as soon as)表“…就”。常见的有:the moment, the instant, the minute, the second 等。

[例] She let out a cry the instant (≈as soon as) she saw the snake. “她一看到那条蛇就叫了起来。”

[例] —Did you remember to give Mary the money you owed her?

—Yes. I gave it to her _____ I saw her.

- A. while B. the moment C. suddenly D. once

答案是 B。“你记住把你欠玛丽的钱给她了吗?”“是的,我一看到就给她了。”the moment (that) 引出一个时间状语从句,相当于“as soon as I saw her.”比较:while 要求从句动词可延续(而 saw 为瞬间动词);D 项 once 含有条件意味。副词 sud-

denly 不能引导状语从句。

③“the + 段时名词”(≈*prep.* + *n.* + *when*)表“在…的那……”。常见的有;*the day, the night, the year*等。

【例】He came back the day (≈*on the day when*) I was born. “他在我出生的那天回来了。”

第三节 地点状语从句

23-11 由 *where* 等引导的地点状语从句。

引导地点状语从句的从属连词有 *where* 和 *wherever*。

【例】In peace, too, the Red Cross is expected to send help _____ there is human suffering. [江西高考题]

A. whoever B. however C. whatever D. wherever

答案是 D。“在和平年代,无论哪里有人受苦受难,也都期望红十字会把援助送到那里。”空后的从句缺少状语,不能用代词 *whoever* 或 *whatever* 引导;*however* 意为“无论如何”,不合题意。故选 D。

【例】There were dirty marks on her trousers _____ she had wiped her hands.

A. where B. which C. when D. that [全国高考题 II]

答案是 A。“她的裤子上在她擦过手的地方有脏痕。”题干 *there be* 句型提示:名词 *marks* 后一般是接时间或地点状语。此处用 *where* 引导地点状语从句,表示主句 *There were dirty marks* 的地点。其他项均不合句意。

温馨提示

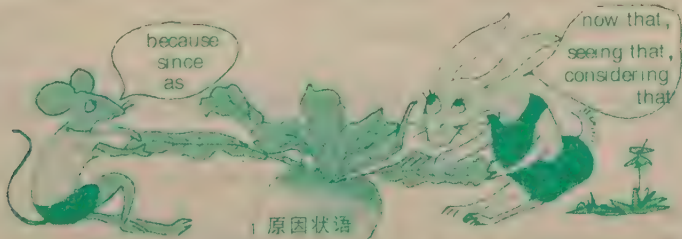
有时地点状语从句兼有抽象条件的含义,这时地点状语从句要放在主句之前。

【例】Where there is a will, there is a way. “有志者,事竟成。”

where 引导的地点状语从句兼有抽象条件的含义,从句须置于主句之前。

第四节 原因状语从句

23-12 从属连词 *because, since, as* 等引导原因状语从句的异同。



1 引导原因状语从句的从属连词有 because, since, as 等。because 所表示的原因含有很强的因果关系,专门回答用 why 提出的问题,其从句在强调原因时可以置于主句之前。它可以用于强调结构 “It is because... that...”,还可以在 because 前边加 only, just 来加强语气。这种从句常常可以简化成介词短语 because of...

[例]—Why didn't he come yesterday? “为什么他昨天没来?”

—Because he had something important to do. “因为他有重要的事情要做。”

在这个对话里, because 引导原因状语从句,回答 why 所提出的问题,因和前句意思重复, because 从句前省略了主句。

[例] Parents should take seriously their children's requests for sunglasses. _____ eye protection is necessary in sunny weather. [上海高考题]

A. because B. though C. unless D. if

答案是 A。“父母应该认真地对待孩子们戴墨镜的要求,因为在阳光强的天气中眼保护是必要的。”前后两部分有明显的因果关系,故选 A。

温馨提示

“not... because...”结构通常表示“…并非是…的缘故”。

[例] I do not like apples because they are sweet. “我喜欢苹果并不是因为苹果甜”。

此句容易误解为“我不喜欢苹果是因为苹果甜”。

若要表示“不……是因为……”的意义,则否定式的主句与句末 because 分句之间应用逗号隔开。

[例] I didn't buy the cellphone, because it was too expensive. “我没有买那个手机,因为它太贵了。”

汉语中常说“因为…所以”,而英语中的 because 和 so 不能搭配使用。要表示这一意思,或用 because 引导原因状语从句使其成为主从复合句的从句,或用 so 连接并列句。[见 24-8]。

② as 和 since 往往表示比较明显或已知的原因,它们分别可译作“由于”和“既然”。since 比 as 更正式一些。as 和 since 引导的原因状语从句通常位于主句之前,但有时也可置于主句之后。

[例] Jenny was very sad over the loss of the photos she had shot at Canada, _____ this was a memory she especially treasured. [广东高考题]

A. as B. if C. when D. where

答案是 A。“珍妮对她在加拿大拍的照片的丢失很伤心,因为这是她特别珍惜的一段记忆。”两部分之间存在着因果关系,应用 as 引导原因状语从句。

[例] _____ everybody knows about it, I don't want to talk any more. [上海高考题]

A. For B. Even C. Since D. However

答案是 C。“既然大家都知道这件事,我就不想再多谈了。”由句意可知句中存

在因果关系,可排除 B 和 D,而 for 为并列连词不提前于句首。故选 C。

23-13 now (that), seeing (that), considering (that) 等也可以引导原因状语从句。

now (that), seeing (that), considering (that) 等也可以用来引导原因状语从句,有时可以表示先说明的一种情况,再加以推论。它们引导的时间状语从句和主句的因果关系不强,在口语中 that 可以省去。

[例] _____ you've got a chance, you might as well make full use of it. 全国高考题

A. Now that B. After C. Although D. As soon as

答案为 A。“既然你有个机会,你还是充分利用为好。”now that 表示明显原因,符合句子内在的逻辑关系。

温馨提示

口语中,now 后的 that 可以省略;从句常在主句之前,要用逗号与主句隔开。

[例] Now (that) you have finished your homework, you may go home now. “既然你们完成了作业,现在可以回家了。”

高中英语语法

23-14 for 也可以表示原因,但连接的是并列句。[参见 17-7]

[例] A man cannot smile like a child, _____ a child smiles with his eyes, while a man smiles with his lips alone. [湖南高考题]

A. so B. but C. and D. for

答案是 D。“成年人不能像小孩一样笑,因为小孩用眼睛笑,而成年人只用嘴唇笑。”应用 for 表示附加的理由。而 so, but, and 分别表示结果、转折、并列/递进,逻辑关系不对。

23-15 sorry, glad 等形容词后由 that 引导的从句也可以表示原因。

在 sorry, glad, sure, proud, anxious, ashamed, surprised, afraid, pleased, satisfied 等表示“感情”的形容词(或分词)后由 that 引导的从句也可表示原因。在口语或非正式语体中,that 可以省略。

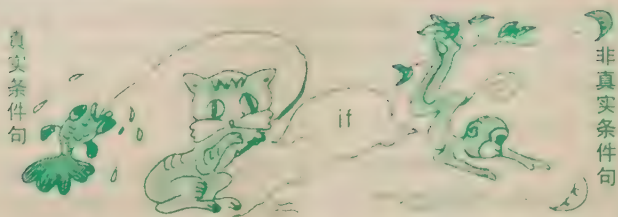
[例] I'm glad that you're better. “你身体好些了,我很高兴。”

温馨提示

也有人认为这种 that 从句归为宾语从句更好。

第五节 条件状语从句

23-16 if 和 unless 引导的条件状语从句。



条件状语从句可分为两类:真实条件句和非真实条件句。真实条件句符合客观事实的情况,用陈述语气。非真实条件句表示说话人提出的与事实相违或与本人的预想、愿望相反的某种假设,其谓语动词要用虚拟语气。if 和 unless 是常用的引导条件状语从句的从属连词,if 可用于真实或非真实条件,unless 只用于真实条件句。

[例] The WTO cannot live up to its name _____ it does not include a country that is home to one fifth of mankind. [全国高考题]

A. as long as B. while C. if D. even though

答案是 C。“如果不把占人类五分之一人口的这个国家包括在内,那么世界贸易组织和其称谓是不相符的。”if 引导条件状语从句。B、D 项只能引导时间或让步状语从句,A 项虽可以引导条件状语从句,强调是唯一条件,故和句意逻辑不符。

[例] We won't keep winning games _____ we keep playing well. [浙江高考题]

A. because B. unless C. when D. while

答案是 B。“如果我们不持续地打好,我们就不会持续地赢得比赛。”前后意思不一致,应用 unless“除非,如果不”引导此否定的条件。

温馨提示

unless 的词义是“除非”、“若不”,相当于 if... not。unless 用于书面语,而 if... not 用于口语之中。unless 所引导的条件状语从句中的谓语动词只能用肯定式。

23-17 so long as, suppose that 等可引导条件状语从句。

除了 if 和 unless 外,so / as long as, suppose (that), supposing (that), in case, provided (that), providing (that) 等也可以引导条件状语从句。

[例] _____ I know the money is safe, I shall not worry about it. [北京高考题]

A. Even though B. Unless C. As long as D. While

答案是 C。“只要我知道这笔钱是安全的,我就不会担忧它。”even though 意为“即使”,unless 意为“除非”,as long as 意为“只要”,while 意为“正当...的时候”。根据句意,C 项为最佳选项。

[例] So long as you study hard, you will make great progress. “只要你努力学习,就会取得很大进步。”

[例] In case she comes, let me know. “如果她来了,告诉我一声。”

第六节 让步状语从句

23-18 although, though, even though, even if, as 等引导让步状语从句。



引导让步状语从句的从属连词主要有 although, though, even if, even though, as 等。其中 even if 和 even though 语气最强, though 的语气最弱。让步状语从句的谓语动词可根据具体情况而使用陈述语气或虚拟语气。although 和 though 意思相同,但它更正式,且多用于句首。

[例] _____ most of the earth's surface is covered by water, fresh water is very rare and precious.

[上海高考题]

A. As B. Once C. If D. Although

答案是 D。“虽然地球表面的大部分被水覆盖,但淡水很少,非常宝贵。”句子内部前后意思矛盾,故选 although“虽然”,表示转折关系。

[例] There was never any time for Kate to feel lonely, _____ she was an only child.

A. ever since B. now that C. even though D. even as

[辽宁高考题]

答案是 C。“凯特从未感到孤独,即使她是个独生子女。”even though 意为“即使”,符合句意。比较:ever since“自从”;now that“由于;既然”;even as“甚至因为”。

[例] Allow children the space to voice their opinions, _____ they are different from your own.

[湖南高考题]

A. until B. even if C. unless D. as though

答案是 B。“让孩子们有发表意见的空间,即使他们的意见与你自己的不同”。从句与主句为让步关系,应由 even if 引导。其它选项与句意不符。

温馨提示

while“尽管;既然”(从句只能放在句首)和 when“既然”(语气较弱)也可引导让步状语从句。

[例] _____ modeling business is by no means easy to get into, the good model will

always be in demand.

[浙江高考题]

A. While B. Since C. As D. If

答案是 A。“尽管模特业是很难进的,但优秀的模特还是急需的。”此处应用 while 表示让步,相当于 though; although。

[例] Why do you want a new job _____ you've got such a good one already?

A. that B. where C. which D. when [全国高考题]

答案是 D。“既然你已经有了这么好的个工作,为什么还想要一个新的?”全句带有反问语气,前后有意识上转折,应用这个含时间的连词 when,表示让步,语气上比 though 弱。

23-19 as 引导让步状语从句用倒装语序。

as 引导让步状语从句时,作为从句表语的形容词或名词位于从句主语之前,构成倒装语序。而 although 引导的让步状语从句不能倒装,though 引导让步状语从句时可倒装也可不倒装,通常不倒装。

[例] _____, he talks a lot about his favorite singers after class.

A. A quiet student as he may be B. Quiet student as he may be
C. Be a quiet student as he may D. Quiet as he may be a student

答案是 B。“尽管他是一个文静的学生,但课后他谈了许多关于他最喜爱的歌手的情况。”as 引导让步状语从句,表语置 as 之前,构成倒装语序。其前的弱读不定冠词 a/an 常要省略,而从句的主、谓不用倒装结构。故选 B。

23-20 用 although 等引导让步状语从句时,不能和 but 连用。

汉语中说“虽然…但是”,可英语中只用 although 等从属连词即可表达这一概念,不再用并列连词 but,但 although 或 though 可与表示转折意义的副词 yet, till, nevertheless 等连用以增强语气。

[例] Although it was dark, we still went on. “虽然天黑了,但我们还在继续前进。”

although 引导让步状语从句,主句有副词 still 用来加强语气。

23-21 however, whatever, whoever, whenever, wherever, whether... or 等引导让步状语从句。

在引导让步状语从句的从属连词中,还有 however, whatever, whoever, whenever, wherever, no matter how/what/who/when/where, whether... or 等。whether... or 表示一正一反的概念,常译作“也好…也好”,或“不管…反正”,从句常用省略形式。

[例] You should try to get a good night's sleep _____ much work you have to do.

A. however B. no matter C. although D. whatever [湖北高考题]

答案是A。“无论你有多么多的工作得做,你都应该设法好好睡一夜觉。”“how-ever + 形/副 + 主语 + 谓语”构成让步状语从句,相当于 no matter how much work you have to do。

[例] The old tower must be saved, _____ the cost. (浙江高考题)

A. however B. whatever C. whichever D. wherever

答案是B。“无论代价有多大,这座旧塔都必须救下来。”the cost 后省略了 is, 应用 whatever 作表语引导让步状语从句,表示“无论代价是什么”

[例] —Dad, I've finished my assignment.

—Good, and _____ you play or watch TV, you mustn't disturb me.

A. whenever B. whether C. whatever D. no matter

答案是B。“爸爸,我已经完成了作业。”“好的,不管你是玩还是看电视,都不准打扰我。”应用 whether 和 or 搭配,表示让步,符合语境。

温馨提示

no matter who/ what/ when 等引导一个让步状语从句时,可与 whoever, whatever 等换用。引导名词性时,只能用 no matter who/ what/ how/ when/ where 等。

[例] No matter who knocks, don't open the door. “不管谁敲门,都不要开门。”

可用 Whoever knocks, don't open the door.

[例] No matter what problem you have, turn to me. “不管你有什么问题,来找我帮忙好了。”

也可说成: Whatever problem you have, turn to me.

[例] No matter how hard you try, you'll never lose your American accent. “不管你多么努力,你也决不会失掉美国口音。”

也可说成: However hard you try, you'll never lose your American accent.

[例] He will give the money to whoever needs it. “他会把这钱给任何需要它的人。”

不能说: He will give the money to no matter who needs it. 但可把它改为让步状语从句: No matter who (= Whoever) needs the money, he will give it to him / her.

第七节 方式状语从句

23-22 as 引导方式状语从句。



方式状语从句由从属连词 *as, as if, as though* 等引导。*as* 引导方式状语从句时意为“像…一样”，*as if* 和 *as though* 意义和用法一样，其从句谓语动词常用虚拟语气。[参见 5—6②]

[例] The students did as their teacher told them. “学生们按照老师说的做了。”

[例] She stood at the door as though she were waiting for someone. “她站在门那儿，好像在等什么人。”

as though (可通 *as if*) 引导方式状语从句，从句谓语动词 *were waiting* 为虚拟语气形式。

[例] Two is to four as four is to eight. “2 比 4 就好像 4 比 8。”

温馨提示

这种结构表示“A 对 B 而言正如 C 对 D 一样”含有比喻含义，多用来加强修辞效果。除常用“A is to B as C is to D”，更常用“A is to B what C is to D.”结构，尤其在书面语中。

[例] Engines are to machines what hearts are to animals.

“发动机对于机器来说就像心脏对于动物。”

第八节 目的状语从句

23-23 *so that* 和 *in order that* 都可引导目的状语从句，且从句谓语中多含情态动词 *can / could* 和 *may / might, will / would* 等。

引导目的状语从句的从属连词主要有 *so that, in order that, that* 等，以 *so that* 用得最多。此外，还有 *lest* “免得，以防”、*in case* “以免，以防”、*for fear that* “以防，以免，担心”等也可以引导目的状语从句。

[例] Roses need special care _____ they can live through winter.

全国高考题

A. because B. so that C. even if D. as

答案是 B。“为了安全越冬，玫瑰花需要特殊照顾。”*so that* 引导目的状语从句。其他选项与句意不符。

温馨提示

so that 和 *in order that* 引导的目的状语从句时，可将从句转换成 *so as to* 和 *in order to*，构成动词不定式短语作目的状语，原复合句转换成简单句。[参见 23—45]

试比较 He got up early in order that he could get there in time. “他早早起床以便能及时赶到那里。”(*in order that* 引导目的状语从句)

He got up early in order to get there in time. “他早早起床以便能及时赶到那里。”(*in order to* 后接不定式，构成不定式短语作目的状语)

[例] You'd better take something to read when you go to see the doctor _____ you have to

wait.

[广东高考题]

- A. even if B. as if C. in case D. in order that

答案是C。“当你去看病的时候,最好带上一些读的东西,以防需要等待。”根据句意,应用 in case 引导目的状语从句。

第九节 结果状语从句

23-24 so that, so...that 可引导结果状语从句。

结果状语从句常由 so that, so...that, that 等引导。结果状语从句一般位于主句之后,在口语中 that 可以省略。

[例] This is so great a meeting-room that it can seat about 50 people. “这个会议室很大,能容纳 50 人。”

[例] He didn't plan his time well, so that he didn't finish the work in time. “他没有把时间计划好,结果没有按时完成这项工作。”

[例] He didn't study hard, so that he failed in the exam. “他学习不努力,结果考试没及格。”

23-25 such...that 等引导结果状语从句。



除 so...that 等之外, such...that, with the result that 等也能引导结果状语从句。不同之处在于 so 在主句中用来修饰形容词或副词, such 在主句中修饰名词。

[例] She told us story that we all forgot the time.

- A. such an interesting B. such interesting a
C. so an interesting D. a so interesting

答案是A。“她给我们讲了一个如此有趣的故事,以致我们都忘了时间了。”由于所修饰的词是名词 story, 故排除 C、D 选项。若被修饰名词有形容词修饰, 又是单数可数名词的话, 应按“such + 不定冠词 + 形容词 + 名词”的语序, 故又排除 B。

温馨提示

若表示强调, 可将 so 或 such 移至句首, 主句采用部分倒装的形式。[参见 30—14]

23-26 so that 和 such that 引导结果状语从句。

[例] The bus broke down, so that we had to walk home. “公共汽车坏了, 结果我们只得步行回家。”

[例] His progress was such that surprised all the teachers. “他的进步这么大, 因此所有的老师都感到吃惊。”

温馨提示

so 单独使用时也可表示结果, 但 so 是并列连词, 只能连接并列句。

[例] She was ill, so she didn't come. “她生病了, 所以没来。”

23 - 27 so... that 和 such... that 引导结果状语从句在一定条件下可以互换。

当 such 修饰的是带有形容词的单数可数名词时, 可用 so... that 来代替 such... that, 这时不定冠词的位置是在形容词之后。当 such 修饰的是不可数名词和复数名词时, 不能用 so... that 来代替 such... that, 但可用 so many, so much, so few, so little 等短语。

[例] It's such a good film that I've seen it twice. = It's so good a film that I've seen it twice. “这是部很好的电影, 我都看过两次了。”

[例] I've so few chances that I can enjoy myself. “我几乎没有什么机会痛快地玩一玩。”

23 - 28 判别 so that 引导的从句表目的还是表结果的方法。

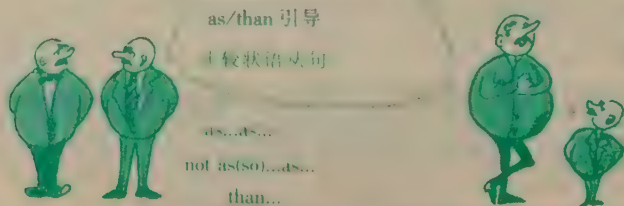
so that 既可引导目的状语从句, 又可引导结果状语从句, 判别它们的方法是: 目的状语从句中常含有情态动词 can, could, may, might, will, would 等, 而结果状语从句中一般没有; 目的状语从句放在主句之后, 和主句之间无逗号相隔, 而结果状语从句和主句之间多有逗号相隔。

试比较 [例] We arrived early so that we could get good seats. “我们到得很早, 以便能得到好座位。”

[例] We arrived early, so that we got good seats. “我们来得很早, 因此我们得到了好座位。”

第十节 比较状语从句

23 - 29 as 或 than 引导的比较状语从句。



比较状语从句常用 *as* 或 *than* 来引导。由于从句中常有一些成分被省略,句中只剩下比较对象,这类句子多数看上去不完整。

[例] It rains more often in Shanghai than in Beijing. “上海下的雨比北京的多。”

than 引导比较状语从句,从句中 *in Beijing* 前省略了 *it rains* 这一谓语部分。

[例] John plays football _____, if not better than, David.

A. as well B. as well as C. so well D. so well as

答案是 B。“约翰足球踢得如果不比大卫强也和他一样好。”*if not better than* 是插入部分,David 后省略了 *plays football well*。

23-30 比较结果中必须使比较对象一致,以避免不合理的比较。

[例] The weather of Nanjing in summer is as hot as that of Wuhan. “夏天南京的天气和武汉一样热。”

为了不和主句主语 *weather* 重复,从句用代词 *that* 来代替 *weather*。此句的比较项是将南京的“气候”和武汉的“气候”加以比较,若没有“*that of*”,就会产生南京的“气候”和“武汉”这个城市进行比较这样一个荒唐的错误。

[例] Shanghai is larger than any other city in China. “上海比中国任何其他的城市都大。”

than 引导比较状语从句,若从句中少了 *other* 一词,则会出现不合理的比较,因为 *any city* 意为包括上海在内的任何城市。

23-31 *as...as* 和 *not as(so)...so* 用来表示同级比较。

as...as 引导的比较状语从句用在同级比较中,若是否定结构,就用 *not as(so)...as*。其中第一个 *as*(或 *so*)是副词,修饰主句的形容词或副词的原形,后一个 *as* 是从属连词,引导比较状语从句。 [参见 11-22]

23-32 “否定词 + *as* 引导的比较状语从句”表示最高级比较概念。

[例] Nobody is as careless as Tom. “没有人像汤姆一样粗心。”(即:汤姆是最粗心的。)

23-33 表示比较级概念而不能用 *than* 从句的两种情况。

① *elder*, *latter*, *former* 等形容词,虽然词尾是比较级形式,却不能用于带有 *than* 的比较状语从句中。

[例] He is much the elder of the two. “他在两人当中要年长的多。”

② 虽含比较的概念且以 *-or* 结尾的形容词,在该词后不用 *than* 而要用介词 *to*。常见的这类形容词有 *junior*, *senior*, *superior* 等。

[例] She is junior to me. “她比我年纪小。”

23-34 某些 than 从句的句子可表示最高级概念。

含有 than 引导的比较状语从句的句子也可用来表示最高级的概念。[参见 11—24]

- ①把主语所表达的人或事和除此之外所有的人或事进行比较。具体的方法是在 than 的后面加“any other + 单数名词”或加“(all) the other + 复数名词”或加“anybody else”等。

[例] Mary dances better than anybody else in the class. “玛丽比班上任何同学跳舞都跳得好。”

言外之意是玛丽是全班同学中舞跳得最好的。

- ②否定词 + than 引导的比较状语从句也可以表示最高级概念。

[例] Your story is perfect; I've never heard _____ before.

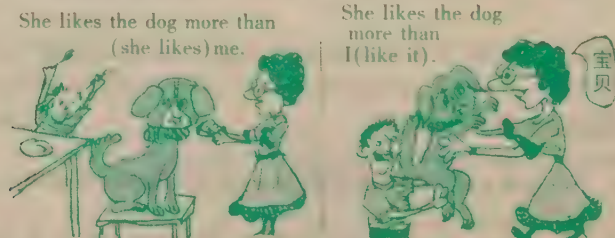
全国高考题

- A. the better one B. the best one C. a better one D. a good one

答案是 C。“你的故事非常好,我以前从未听过更好的故事。”a better one 后省略了 than this one。比较级用于否定句时,表示最高级的意义。即“这是我听过的最好的故事”。

23-35 than 之后用人称代词的主格或宾格,有时意思不同。

than 之后的人称代词,用主格还是用宾格,要根据这个代词所充当的句子成分而定。如果主句的谓语动词为不及物动词且之后也不带介词时,than 后面的人称代词用主格或宾格意思相同,若为及物动词,则意思不同。



[例] She draws better than I / me. “她比我画得好。”

[例] She likes the dog more than I. “她比我更喜欢这条狗。”

[例] She likes the dog more than me. “她喜欢这条狗胜过喜欢我。”

23-36 几种指明客观差异并做出主观抉择的比较句型。

- ① better + (主语) + 形容词(或副词、名词、动词不定式等) ... + than + 被比对象

464 [例] Better to light one candle than to curse the darkness. “与其咒骂黑暗不如点燃一支

明烛。”

② 主语 + would rather + 动词原形... + than + 动词原形

[例] They would rather die as free men than live as slaves. “他们宁可作为自由人而死, 不愿做奴隶而生。”

[例] To enjoy the scenery, Irene would rather spend long hours on the train _____ travel by air. [全国高考题]

A. as B. to C. than D. while

答案是 C。“为欣赏风景, 艾林宁愿花很长的时间坐火车而不乘飞机。”“would rather”表示选择时常用“would rather do... than do...”, 符合句意。故选 C。

③ 主语 + 谓语 + rather than + 动词原形

[例] I decided to write rather than telephone. “我决定写信而不打电话。”

④ 主语 + would sooner + 动词原形... + than + 动词原形

[例] I would sooner die than do such a thing. “我宁死也不愿做这种事。”

⑤ Sooner than + 动词原形..., 主句主语 + would + 动词原形

[例] Sooner than do such work, I would die. “我宁死也不愿做这种事。”

23-37 more than 和 more... than 的不同含义。

有时, more than 和 more... than 并不表示比较, 在不同的句型中有不同的含义。

① “more than + 名词”意为“不止”、“不仅仅是”。

[例] *China Daily* is more than a newspaper. It helps us greatly to improve our English.

“《中国日报》不仅仅是一张报纸, 它对提高我们的英语水平帮助非常大。”

② “more than + 形容词或动词”, 用来加强语气, 意思是“非常...”、“很...”。

[例] I am more than glad to see you. “见到你我非常高兴。”

[例] Lizzie was _____ to see her friend off at the airport. [全国高考题]

A. a little more than sad B. more than a little sad

C. sad more than a little D. a little more sad than

答案是 B。“莉齐在机场送别朋友时非常难受。”more than 可表示“十分、极为”, 后接形容词, 而表示程度的 a little 要放在形容词 sad 前。故选 B。

③ “more than + 数词”, 表示“超出”, 相当于 over。

[例] The tower is more than 100 metres high. “这座塔有 100 多米高。”

④ “more than + that 从句”, 表示“远非”、“超过”等。that 可以省略。

[例] The beauty of the Huangshan mountain is more than (that) I can describe. “黄山之美, 非我所能描述。”

⑤ “more... than”, 意为“与其说...倒不如说”。

[例] He is more hard-working than clever. “与其说他聪明, 不如说他勤奋。”

温馨提示

(1) 此结构中的比较级形式, 只能用“more + 原级”, 即使形容词是单音节词也不例外。如: He is more good than bad. 中的 more good 就不能用 better 代替。

(2) less than 和 less ... than 也可以表示类似的概念, 但表示说话人赞成的部分要放在 than 之后。

[例] I like bananas less than apples. “我对香蕉不如对苹果那样喜欢。”

[例] The little girl was less hurt than frightened. “这个小姑娘的伤倒没什么, 就是受了惊吓。”

23-38 “The + 比较级..., the + 比较级...”表示“越...越...”。

这一句型表示两个变化是一起发生的 the 在此不能省略, 逗号前是表示条件的从句, 后面是主句。 [参见 11-27]

[例] The sooner, the better. “越快越好。”

[例] The harder you work, the greater progress you'll make. “你越用功, 进步就越大。”

23-39 “比较级 + and + 比较级”表示“越来越”, 其后不加 than 引导的比较状语从句。

这一结构表示持续不断的变化, 叫双重比较句。句中一般不加 than 引导的比较状语从句。 [参见 11-26]

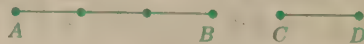
[例] Our country is getting stronger and stronger. “我们国家正变得越来越强大。”

23-40 比较状语从句表示倍数的情况。

比较状语从句可以用 than 或 as...as 来表示倍数, 其结构为“倍数 + 比较级 + than...”或“倍数 + as + 原级 + as”。但用 than 容易产生歧义, 而 as...as 则不然。

[参见 11-21]

[例] Line AB is 3 times as long as Line CD. “AB 线段是 CD 线段的 3 倍。”



[例] Line AB is 3 times longer than Line CD. 在科技英语中要译作: “AB 线段比 CD 线段长 3 倍(即: AB 线段是 CD 线段的 4 倍)。”在日常用语中常译作: “AB 线段是 CD 线段的 3 倍。”若准确表达 AB 线段是 CD 线段的 3 倍, 可以用 as...as 来表达。

即学即用

I. 单项填空

- Someone called me up in the middle of the night, but they hung up _____. I could answer the phone.

[全国高考题]

- A. as B. since C. until D. before

2. Jasmine was holidaying with her family in a wildlife park _____ she was bitten on the leg by a lion. [上海高考题]

- A. when B. while C. since D. once

3. That was really a splendid evening. It's years _____ I enjoyed myself so much.

- A. when B. that C. before D. since [江苏高考题]

4. The American Civil War lasted four years _____ the North won in the end.

- A. after B. before C. when D. then [广东高考题]

5. You can eat food free in my restaurant _____ you like.

- A. whenever B. wherever C. whatever D. however

6. _____ environmental damage is done, it takes many years for the ecosystem (生态系统) to recover. [江苏高考题]

- A. Even if B. If only C. While D. Once

7. _____ you call me to say you're not coming, I'll see you at the theatre.

- A. Though B. Whether C. Until D. Unless [全国高考题]

8. Don't leave the sharp knife _____ our little Jane can get it.

- A. in which B. to which C. that D. where [上海高考题]

9. _____ you have tried it, you can't imagine how pleasant it is.

- A. Unless B. Because C. Although D. When [北京高考题]

10. I always take something to read when I go to the doctor's _____ I have to wait.

- A. in case B. so that C. in order D. as if [全国高考题]

11. I'd like to arrive 20 minutes early _____ I can have time for a cup of tea.

- A. as soon as B. as a result C. in case D. so that [北京高考题]

12. _____ I accept that he is not perfect, I do actually like the person. [江苏高考题]

- A. While B. Since C. Before D. Unless

13. He tried his best to solve the problem, _____ difficult it was.

- A. however B. no matter C. whatever D. although [天津高考题]

14. My parents were quarrelling about me _____ I could not quite tell why.

- A. since B. though C. if D. until [上海高考题]

15. —Was his father very strict with him when he was at school?

—Yes. He had never praised him _____ he became one of the top students in his grade.

- A. after B. unless C. until D. when [北京高考题]

16. I would appreciate it _____ you call back this afternoon for the doctor's appointment.

- A. until B. if C. when D. that [上海高考题]

17. Don't be afraid of asking for help _____ it is needed.

- A. unless B. since C. although D. when [全国高考题]

18. He made a mistake, but then he corrected the situation _____ it got worse.

- A. until B. when C. before D. as [北京高考题]

19. A good storyteller must be able to hold his listeners' curiosity _____ he reaches the end

of the story.

[上海高考题]

A. when B. unless C. after D. until

20. If you are traveling _____ the customs are really foreign to your own, please do as the Romans do. [天津高考题]

A. in which B. what C. when D. where

21. It is known to all that _____ you exercise regularly, you won't keep good health.

A. unless B. whenever C. although D. if [重庆高考题]

22. Send my regards to your lovely wife when you _____ home. [上海高考题]

A. wrote B. will write C. have written D. write

23. Simon thought his computer was broken _____ his little brother pointed out that he had forgotten to turn it on. [北京高考题]

A. until B. unless C. after D. because

24. Scientists say it may be five or six years _____ it is possible to test this medicine on human patients.

A. since B. after C. before D. when

25. So difficult _____ it to work out the problem that I decided to ask Tom for advice.

A. I did find B. did I find C. I have found D. have I found [广东高考题]

II. 辨别正误(若是错句,里面只有一处错误,并改正)

- If your dog runs out on the road and gets hit by a passing car, you, as the owner, have to pay for any damage done to the car, even if your dog has been killed in the accident.
- We walked in such quietly that the nurse at the desk didn't even lift her eyes from the book.
- While I watched mouth open in surprise, Mum took off her hat and coat and gave them to me to hold.
- I didn't watch until she was out of sight.
- Most animals have little connection with animals of a different kind, unless they hunt them for food.
- Bob has sat at the table for a few hours and drank considerably more wine than is good for his health.
- It is certain that when completing, the 460-metre tall TV tower in Shanghai will add colour to the city.
- I don't want to go not because being busy but because I enjoy being alone.
- Dan's brother John offered to go instead though he did not know anything about sailing.
- As he was getting onto the buoy, however, he dropped the wet rope.



点石成金

I. 单项选择

1. D but 连接的并列分句中的主句动作在从句动作之前应用 before 引导时间状语从句,表示“我还没来得及接他们就挂了”。

2. A “was/were doing sth. when did (一般过去时态)”,符合“在野生公园度假时,突然被一个狮子咬到腿上”。
3. D 表示“数年都没有这么高兴了”,应用句型“*It is + 时间 + since...*”后接非延续性动词”。
4. B. *before* 的意思为“在...之前”,符合句意。
5. A 表示:“任何时候,只要你喜欢,你都可以在我的饭店免费吃饭。”
6. D. *once* 意为“一旦”,引导条件状语从句。
7. D *unless* = *except when*; *if not*, 可表条件,符合句意 比较: A“尽管”; B“不管... (还是...)”; C“直到...(才...)”。
8. D *where* 引导地点状语从句,相当于“*in a place where / in which*”。
9. A *unless* 引导条件状语从句,表示“如果你没有试过”。
10. A 去找大夫的目的是看病,所以带点读的是“以防”等待。应用 *in case*。
11. D “能有时间喝杯茶”是“想早 20 分钟到”的目的,应用 *so that* 引导状语从句。
12. A “我承认他这个人不完美”和“我实际上的确喜欢他”,在意义上构成转折关系。应用 *while*,表示让步。
13. A *difficult* 为形容词作表语,其前用 *However(+ adj. / adv.)* 引导让步状语从句,可转化为 *no matter how difficult it was*。
14. B *though*, 相当于 *but*, 用于添加事实或观点,来降低刚才说的确定性、重要性等。
15. C 答句其实是“*not...until...*”的强语式“*never...until...*”,意为“直到...才...”。
16. B. *appreciate it* 常接 *if* 从句,符合句意。
17. D 此题选 *when*, 是因为它能使此句成为一种时效经久的建议,即:“在需要时,别害怕向别人求助。”
18. C 表示“情况恶化之前及时地把它纠正了”,应用 *before*。
19. D 一个讲故事行家必须能把听众的好奇心抓住“直到”他把故事结束为止。故选 *until*。
20. D 由“*please do as the Romans do.*”知前面指的是地点,应用 *where* 引导地点状语从句。
21. A 应用 *unless* 引导条件状语从句,表示否定假设“如果不进行有规律的锻炼”。
22. D 时间状语从句中应用一般现在时表示将来。
23. A *until* 在肯定句中,与延续性动词连用,表示“以为一直持续到小弟指出...”。
24. C “*it will be + 一段时间 + before* 从句”表示“过了多久才会怎么样”,符合句意。
25. B “*so + 形容词或副词*”放在句首,主句要部分倒装。由 *decided* 判断该句应用过去时。

II. 辨别正误

1. ✓ 2. *such* 改为 *so* 3. ✓ 4. *didn't watch* 改为 *watched* 5. ✓
6. *drank* 改为 *drunk* 7. *completing* 应为 *completed* 8. *being* 改成 *I am* 9. ✓ 10. ✓

第24章

并列句



高考热点

近几年高考对并列句的考查主要表现在短文改错、完形填空及单选题中。考查的内容多为根据语境及上下文的逻辑关系改正误用的并列连词(如 and, or, but, so, for 等)或选用正确的并列连词。在单选题中,“祈使句 + and / or + 简单句”是近几年考查的热点。

第一节 并列句的概念及分类

24-1 并列句由两个(或两个以上)等列而又各自独立的分句构成。

并列句的两个分句常由并列连词连在一起。有时不用并列连词,而在第一个分句后用逗号或分号隔开。

[例] Give him an inch and he'll take an ell. “他得寸进尺。”

[例] There are many kinds of sports, _____ my favorite is swimming.

[辽宁高考题]

A. as B. then C. so D. but

答案是 D。“体育运动有许多种,但我最喜爱的是游泳。”前后为转折关系。故应用 but 连接。

[例] Hurry up, it's getting late. “快点,时间不早了。”

温馨提示

只使用逗号时,前后两部分间的关系应该是相当密切的,如果关系不密切,就应当分写成两句或加连词。



24-2 按照分句之间的联系来分类,并列句可分为四类:联合并列句、转折并列句、选择并列句和因果并列句。

第二节 联合并列句

24-3 联合并列句常由并列连词 and“和”、not only... but also...“不但...而且...”等连接。

[例] Use your head, and you'll find a way. “动动脑筋,你就会想出办法来。”

[例] Not only did the students dance, but (also) their teacher sang. “不但学生们跳了舞,而且他们的老师还唱了歌。”

温馨提示

not only 位于句首时,其后的分句要部分倒装,但 but also 后的分句仍用正常语序。有时 also 可以省略。

第三节 转折并列句

24-4 转折并列句常由并列连词 but“但是”、while“而”、yet“可是”、whereas“而”、nevertheless“然而,不过”等连接。

[例] Paul had to write a history paper, _____ he couldn't find time to do it.

A. but B. so C. because D. if [全国高考题]

答案是 A。“保罗得写历史论文,但他找不出时间做这件事。”两者之间为转折关系,应用 but 连接。

[例] Feathers fall to the ground slowly while stones fall much faster. “羽毛落地很慢,而石头落地则快得多。”

[例] He worked hard, yet he failed. “他工作努力,可是他失败了。”

[例] He is ill, whereas I am a little tired. “他生病了,而我只不过稍觉疲倦罢了。”

[例] The news may be unexpected; nevertheless, it is true. “这消息可能是出乎意料的,然而却是真实的。”

第四节 选择并列句

24-5 选择并列句常由并列连词 or“否则,或者”、otherwise“要不然”、either...or...“不是...就是...”等连接。

[例] We're going to the bookstore in John's car. You can come with us you can meet us

there later.

[全国高考题]

A. but B. and C. or D. then

答案是 C。“我们要坐约翰的车到书店去,你可以跟我们一起走,或者以后在那里跟我们汇合。”听话者可以在“一起走”与“后来会面”两者之中选其一,所以选 or。

[例] Either you leave this house or I'll call the police. “要么你离开这座房子,要么我就叫警察。”

第五节 因果并列句

24 -6 因果并列句由并列连词 so “因此,所以”、for “因为”等连接。

[例] It was late, so we went home. “天晚了,所以我们就回家去了。”

[例] It's going to rain, for the sky is dark. “要下雨了,因为天上乌云密布。”

[例] He found it increasingly difficult to read, _____ his eyesight was beginning to fail.

A. and B. for C. but D. or

[北京高考题]

答案是 B。“他发现阅读起来越来越困难,因为他的视力在开始下降。”for 是并列连词,意思是“因为,由于”,用来说明附加的理由,符合语境。

温馨提示

for 分句不能用于句首,且其前面须用逗号隔开。它所引导的分句只是对上文补充说明理由或推断出原因。注意它和 because 的用法区别。[参见 17—7]

第六节 并列句的使用注意

24 -7 在“祈使句 + and/or + 陈述句”结构中。当前后两部分为承接关系时,用 and; 前后意思为相反关系时,用 or。可将前面的祈使句转换成由 if 引导的条件状语从句,但须将 and 或 or 去掉。

[例] Stand over there _____ you'll be able to see it better.

A. or B. while C. but D. and

答案是 D。“站在那里,你就能看得更清楚了。”此句相当于 If you stand over there, you'll be able to see it better.

[例] Start out right away, _____ you'll miss the first train.

A. and B. but C. or D. while

答案是 C。“马上出发,否则你将赶不上第一班火车了。”由句意可知此处为“祈使句 + or + 简单句”句型结构。此句相当于 If you don't start out right away, you'll miss the first train.

温馨提示

在“祈使句 + and / then + 陈述句”结构中,祈使句的意义相当于 if 引导的条件状语从句肯定式;而在“祈使句 + or + 陈述句”结构中,祈使句的意义相当于 if 引导的条件状语从句否定式。

[例] Hurry up, and we'll be there in time. “快点,这样我们就能及时赶到那里。”相等于 If we hurry up, we'll be there in time.

[例] Hurry up, or we'll be late. “快点,否则我们就要迟到了。”相等于 If we don't hurry up, we'll be late. 或 If we hurry up, we'll not be late.

24-8 because 和 so, (al)though 和 but 不能连用,只能用其中的一个。



[例] Because he was ill, he didn't come to school. “因为他病了,所以没来上学。”

[例] He was ill, so he didn't come to school. “他病了所以没来上学。”

温馨提示

在第一例中,because 是从属连词,它引导的是原因状语从句,后面是主句,构成主从复合句;第二例是个并列句,so 是并列连词,引导一个独立的分句,表示结果。

24-9 并列句有两种:简单连词连接的并列句和由关联连词连接的并列句。

①由简单连词连接的并列句句型结构为:“分句 A + 并列连词 + 分句 B”。

[例] They wanted to charge \$ 5,000 for the car, _____ we managed to bring the price down. [全国高考题]

A. but B. so C. when D. since

答案是 A。“他们这辆车要价 5 千美元,但我们设法把价格砍了下来。”前后为转折关系,应用 but 连接两个并列分句。

②由关联连词连接的并列句句型结构为:“关联词的前一部分 + 分句 A + 关联词的后一部分 + 分句 B”。

[例] Either come in or go out. “或进或出请自便。”

这是由关联连词 either... or 连接的两个祈使句。

温馨提示

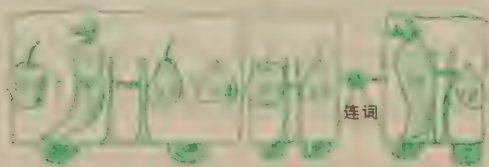
当几个分句并列时,如果它们之间都是联合关系,往往只在最后两个分句之间加并列连词 and,其余分句之间用逗号(即:“A,B,C and D”结构);如果各分句之间的关系各异,则需用不同的并列连词。

[例] Tom is reading a novel, Mary is writing a letter, Jack is doing his homework and John is looking out of the window. “汤姆在看小说,玛丽在写信,杰克在做作业,而约翰在朝窗外看。”

[例] The suit didn't fit, but it was new and I was anxious to have it, so I said shyly... “那套衣服并不合身,但它是新的,我很想把它买下来,于是我不好意思地说...”

24-10 不要把含有并列成分的简单句误认作并列句。

[例] Wei Fang and Li Ying stood up and went out. “魏芳和李英站起来,走了出去。”句中 Wei Fang 和 Li Ying 是并列主语,并列连词 and 连接两个并列动词 stood up 和 went out。这句话只有主语和谓语两部分构成,仍为简单句。但若加上个主语 she,成为“...and she went out”就变成并列句了。



即学即用

I. 单项选择

- “Forgive me, Minister,” said the interviewer, “_____ you haven’t answered my question yet.”
A. but B. and C. so D. or
- What the young man said sounds strange, _____ it is true.
A. but and B. yet and C. and but D. and yet
- Information technology is taught in most schools, _____ we have entered the information society.
A. so B. while C. for D. still
- Lose one hour in the morning _____ you will be looking for it the rest of the day.
A. but B. and C. or D. so

[北京高考题]

『全国高考题』

5. I do every single bit of housework _____ my husband Bob just does the dishes now and then.
A. since B. while C. when D. as
6. _____ does he do his work well, _____ he helps others with their work.
A. Not only; but also B. Neither; nor C. Either; or D. Both; and
7. Make up your mind, _____ you'll miss the chance.
A. but B. and C. however D. or
8. He failed many times _____ he did not lose heart.
A. so B. but C. because D. or
9. The accountant did her work carefully, _____ she never made any mistakes.
A. so B. but C. or D. because
10. This was the beginning of another ordinary day in New York City, _____ this day was to be different.
A. and B. so C. but D. thus

II. 用适当的词填空

1. It rained, _____, the football match was put off.
2. Although he was ill, _____ he managed to look cheerful.
3. Take care of your car, _____ it will take care of you.
4. The sun is not a very big star, _____ it makes our lives possible.
5. He couldn't know the truth about me, _____ he wouldn't treat me like that.



点石成金

I. 单项选择

1. A. 说话者是想转移话题,故用 Forgive me (道歉之类) + but,显得婉转。
2. B. and 充当连词,而 yet 用作副词,表示出转折口气,但比用 but 语气缓和得多。
3. C. 后面“我们已经进入信息社会”是对“大多数学校教信息技术”补充说明理由。故用 for 引导并列分句。
4. B. “早晨丢掉一个小时”与“整天都在找”无意义上的转折,应用 and 连接。
5. B. 空格前后的句意构成对比(家务都由我来做,而丈夫只偶尔洗洗碗)。
6. A. 前一分句使用了倒装语序,只能选 A 才符合要求。
7. D. “拿定主意”和“你会失去机会”是意思相反,故用“祈使句 + or + 陈述句”。
8. B. 前一分句“他失败了许多次”与后面“他没有灰心”应是转折关系。故选 B。
9. C. “工作细心”与“从不出错”是因果关系,故用 so 连接两个分句。
10. C. but 是转折连词,连接两个并列的分句,表示前后意义反向,符合语境。

II. 用适当的词填空

1. therefore 2. yet / still 3. and 4. but 5. so

第25章

简单句

(含:5 种基本句型)

高考热点

近年来高考对简单句的考查主要集中在:1. 反意疑问句的结构及回答。2. 祈使句的特点及判断,尤其是带有主语或呼唤语的祈使句的判断以及祈使句的反意疑问句形式。3. 感叹句的基本结构及感叹词 **how** 和 **what** 的选择等。这些都会后面的章节分别介绍。至于简单句的五种基本结构,虽不会直接出题考查,但它们是相当重要的内容,必须掌握好。

第一节 简单句的概念

25-1 简单句只包含一个主谓结构,而且句子的各个成分都是由单词或短语表示的。

[例] I study English. “我学英语。”

这是一个简单句,由一个主语、一个谓语构成简单主谓结构。

[例] Who knows? “谁知道?”

句中一个主语,一个谓语,是简单句。

[例] Mary and Kate study in the same school. “玛丽和凯特在同一所学校学习。”

句中有并列的两个主语和一个谓语,仍是简单句。

[例] My father is a worker and works in a factory near my home. “我父亲是个工人,在我家附近的一家工厂工作。”

句中有一个主语和并列的两个谓语,仍为简单句。

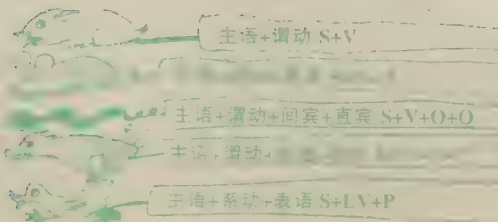
[例] Tom and Mike are good friends and always help each other. “汤姆和迈克是好朋友,并且总是互相帮助。”

句中有并列的两个主语和并列的两个谓语,仍是一个简单句。

My father is a worker and he works in a factory near my home. “我父亲是个工人,他在我家附近的一家工厂工作。”

句中有两个主谓结构(My father is 和 he works),不是简单句,而是并列句。

第二节 简单句的五种基本句型



25-2 基本句型之一:“主语+谓语动词”,这种句型简称为“主谓”结构(S+V),其谓语动词为不及物动词。

例] I see. “我明白了。”

例] He can swim. “他会游泳。”

例] I get up at six every morning. “我每天早晨六点起床。”

例] The children are playing. “孩子们正在玩耍。”

例] It is going to rain. “天要下雨了。”

25-3 基本句型之二:“主语+谓语动词+宾语”,这种结构简称为“主谓宾”结构(S+V+O),其谓语为及物动词或相当于一个及物动词的短语动词。

例] We love our country. “我们热爱祖国。”

例] Granny looks after the boy carefully. “奶奶精心地照顾那个男孩。”

例] They put up a new hospital. (或:They put a new hospital up.) “他们新建了一所医院。”

温馨提示

某些不及物动词后带有其“同源宾语”也属于此句型。

[例] He dreamed a horrible dream last night. “他昨夜做了个噩梦。”

[例] We are living a happy life now. “我们现在过着幸福的生活。”

25-4 基本句型之三:“主语+谓语动词+间接宾语+直接宾语”,这种句型可简称为“主谓宾宾”结构(S+V+O+O)。其谓语为带双宾语(直接宾语和间接宾语)的及物动词。

①双宾语结构中,间接宾语一般指人,放在前面,直接宾语指物或事,放在后面。

[例] I'll tell you a story now. “现在我给大家讲个故事。”

[例] Miss Liu teaches us English. “刘老师教我们英语。”

②此结构也可以把直接宾语放在前面,把间接宾语放在后面,但中间要根据不同的动词,加介词 to 或 for。

[例] He gave a pen to Li Hong yesterday. “昨天他给了李红一支钢笔。”

= He gave Li Hong a pen yesterday.

[例] Father made a kite for me. “爸爸给我做了个风筝。”

= Father made me a kite.

[例] The old man lent a story book to the boy. “那位老人借给了那男孩一本故事书。”

= The old man lent the boy a story book.

[例] My mother bought a new shirt for my brother. “我母亲给弟弟买了件新衬衣。”

= My mother bought my brother a new shirt.

触类旁通

(1) 下列动词后带有间接宾语时,其前面往往用介词“to”表“方向”: give, show, send, bring, pass, lend, hand, tell, return, write, pay, throw, teach, promise, owe, deny, grant 等。

(2) 下列动词后带有间接宾语时,其前面往往可以用介词“for”表“目的”: make, buy, do, fetch, get, paint, play, save, spare, order, look, sing, find, serve 等。

温馨提示

如果直接宾语是人称代词 it 或 them 等,要把直接宾语放在前面,把间接宾语放在介词后面。

[例] That book is really useful. Can you lend it to me? “那本书真有趣,你能把它借给我吗?”

不能说: That book is really useful. Can you lend me it?

25-5 基本句型之四:“主语+谓语动词+宾语+宾补”,这种句型可简称为“主谓宾补”结构(S+V+O+C)。宾语和宾语补语一起构成复合宾语;其谓语动词必须是可带这种复合宾语的及物动词。

[例] I found the book easy. “我发现此书不难。”(形容词 easy 作宾补。)

[例] They made him chairman. “他们选他当主席。”(名词 chairman 作宾补。)

[例] What makes you in such a hurry? “什么事让你这样匆匆忙忙的?”(介词短语 in such a hurry 作宾补。)

[例] The teacher told us to study hard. “老师要我们努力学习。”(不定式 to study 作宾补。)

[例] I'll let him go. “我将让他去。”(不带 to 的动词不定式 go 作宾补。)

[例] I heard him singing. “我听见他在唱歌。”(现在分词 singing 作宾补。)

[例] I saw him taken away by the police just now. “刚才我看见他被警察带走了。”
宾语“他”与宾补“带走”在逻辑上是变动关系。

温馨提示

动词不定式作宾补时应注意下列三种情况:

- (1) 在 ask, tell, invite, force, oblige, get, beg, allow, wish, want, like, hate, prefer, intend, encourage, advise, persuade, permit, remind, request, order, command, warn, cause 等动词后面的宾补,应用带 to 的不定式。
- (2) 在使役动词 have, make, let 等动词后,应该用不带 to 的不定式做宾补。
- (3) 在动词 see, watch, notice, hear, feel, observe 等后面的宾补若与其宾语在逻辑上是主动关系,则可用不带 to 的不定式(表示动作已完成)或现在分词(表示动作在进行)作宾补。若与其宾语在逻辑上是被动关系,则用过去分词作宾补。[参见第八章至第九章]

25-6 基本句型之五:“主语+系动词+表语”,这种句型可简称为“主系表”结构(S+LV+P)。系动词之后的表语多是名词或形容词,也可以是代词、数词、介词短语、不定式、动名词、分词等。

高中英语语法

[例] Trees are green. “树是绿的。”

[例] The milk tastes sour. “牛奶有酸味了。”

[例] She became a lawyer. “她当了律师。”

[例] John is twelve. “约翰十二岁了。”

[例] Oh, it's you. “哦,是你呀。”

[例] He is in Class four. “他在四班。”

[例] Her job is looking after babies. “她的工作是看孩子。”

[例] It seems to rain. “好像要下雨了。”

[例] Is Mary in? “玛丽在家吗?”

帮你归纳

常见的系动词有三类:

- (1) 表示视觉、感觉的动词有: seem, appear, look, taste, smell, sound, feel 等。
- (2) 表示变化过程的动词有: become, get, grow, turn, go, come, fall 等。
- (3) 表示保持某种状态的动词有: be, stay, remain, keep, continue, stand, sit 等。

第三节 简单句可分为四类

25-7 英语句子可分为三种四类。

根据组成结构,英语中的句子可分为简单句、并列句和复合句三种。

根据使用目的,英语中的句子可分为陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句四类。[参见有关各章]



即学即用

I. 单项选择

1. These oranges taste _____.
A. good B. well C. to be good D. to be well
2. —Do you like the material?
— Yes, it _____ very soft.
A. is feeling B. felt C. feels D. is felt
3. As she _____ the newspaper, Granny _____ asleep.
A. read; was falling B. was reading; fell
C. was reading; was falling D. read; fell
4. I can hardly hear the radio. Would you please _____?
A. turn it on B. turn it down C. turn it up D. turn it off
5. The story sounds _____.
A. to be true B. as true C. being true D. true

8. 请判断并在方格内标出下列各句分别属于哪种基本句型(S=主语, V=动词, O=宾语, LV=连系动词, C=宾补, P=表语)

1. John can skate very well now.
2. The mother looked very worried.
3. Bill is learning Chinese from his friend Li Lei.
4. Where did you go last night?
5. They helped us a lot with the work.
6. My mother made my sister a new skirt.
7. Leonov's companion helped him fix the line.
8. I heard her singing an English song.
9. It sounds reasonable.
10. Mr. Green taught us English.



点石成金

I. 单项选择

taste 作系动词,表“尝起来”,后面接形容词作表语。

根据句意,应用系动词,表“摸起来”,一般现在时。

8. 按题意从句应用过去进行时,主句应用一般过去时。fall asleep 表示“睡着”之意。

动词短语作谓语, 相当一个及物动词, 若宾语为人称代词, 则位于这种由“动词 + 副词”构成的动词短语之间。

sound 作系动词, 表“听起来”, 后接形容词作表语。

1. S + V 2. S + LV + P 3. S + V + O 4. S + V 5. S + V + O
6. S + V + O + O 7. S + V + O + C 8. S + V + O + C 9. S + LV + P
10. S + V + O + O

第26章

否定句

高考热点

否定句是高考中的一个考点,但是直接考查用 **not** 表示否定的情况并不多。近年来出现的考点主要有 1. 否定的转移;2. 全部和部分否定;3. 以否定意义的词开头的倒装句;4. 祈使句的否定式;5. 半否定词的使用;6. 一些特殊的否定式形式。了解和掌握否定句的基本形式和特殊句型,对正确理解句子意义和提高写作水平都会有很大的帮助。

第一节 否定句的概念

26-1 否定句一般指的是否定陈述句,通常用否定词来表达否定意义。

[例] I have not finished my homework yet. “我还没做完作业。”

[例] He did not come to school yesterday. “昨天他没来上学。”

第二节 否定谓语动词的两种方式

26-2 否定陈述句中否定谓语动词的方法之一:在动词后直接加“not”。

①如果肯定句的谓语动词是以单一的主动词 be 或 have(作“有”解)为中心词,则在其后直接加“not”。

[例] She is not a nurse. “她不是个护士。”

[例] He hasn't any books. “他没有书本。”

温馨提示

have 作“有”解时,也可以用 don't have 来表示否定。如果用作其他意义的行为动词,则只能和其他行为动词一样,用 do/does/did 的否定式+动词原形。[参见 26-3]

[例] I haven't a new car now. } “我现在没有新车。”
I don't have a new car now. }

[例] Jack didn't have breakfast yesterday. “杰克昨天没有吃早饭。”

不能说:Jack hadn't breakfast yesterday.

温馨提示

have to 表示“不得不”时,常用 do / does / did not + have to 构成否定式;若用 have got to,则常常直接在 have 后面加 not。

[例] You don't have to do it now. } “你现在不必做这件事。”
You haven't got to do it now. }

②如果谓语动词是由复杂动词词组构成,则将否定词“not”置于第一个助动词或情态动词之后。

[例] He will not come. “他将不来。”

[例] Mary can't speak French. “玛丽不会讲法语。”

[例] This work has not been finished yet. “这项工作还没有完成呢。”

26-3 否定谓语动词的方式之二:在谓语动词之前加助动词的否定形式(即 do/does/did 的否定式+动词原形)结构。

此结构用于一般现在时或一般过去时中。此处“动词原形”,是指行为动词或除“be”以外的连系动词。

[例] Li Ping does not like maths. “李平不喜欢数学。”

[例] I did not go to see a film yesterday evening. “昨晚我没有去看电影。”

温馨提示

(1) 当原来的动词是 do/does/did 时, 变成否定句时, 不要忘掉动词原形。

[例] He does not do his homework in the evening. “他晚上不做作业。”

(2) 当“used to do sth.”(过去常常做某事) 变成否定句时, 一般在 used 后加 not, 口语也常在 used 前面加 did not, 并将 used 变成 use。

[例] $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{He used not to come.} \\ \text{He did not use to come.} \end{array} \right\} \text{“他过去常不来。”}$

第三节 否定其他成分的六种方式

26-4 否定陈述句中, 否定其他成分的方式之一: 否定的转移。

否定的转移是指否定的形式在主句, 而否定的内容却在从句; 或者否定的形式在谓语, 而否定的内容却在状语或表语。否定的转移主要有:

① 动词的否定转移:

当主语是第一人称, 谓语动词是 think, believe, suppose, imagine, expect, feel 等时, 说话者要委婉地提出看法时, 其后的 that 从句中的否定谓语动词常变成肯定的形式, 而把否定转移到主句中的这些动词上来, 而且 that 常被省去。

[例] We don't believe he will come tomorrow. “我们相信他明天不会来。”

[例] I don't suppose that I shall be back until eight. “我想我在八点前不会回来。”

[例] I don't expect Tom has eaten all the cake. “我料想汤姆没有吃完整个的蛋糕。”

[例] I don't think you have read that book, have you? “我想你没看过那本书, 对吗?”

触类旁通

当以上所举动词后面含有复合宾语时, 也往往存在否定转移现象。

[例] I do not think it right to do it this way. “我认为这样处理这件事是不对的。”

温馨提示

但在下列几种情况下, 以上所举的动词不用否定转移:

(1) 当此类动词和另一动词构成并列谓语时。

[例] We think and hope you will not lose heart even if you fail. “我们认为并且希望, 即使你们失败了也不要灰心。”

(2) 当它们用在疑问句时。

[例] Do you think he will not join us? “你认为他不会加入到我们中间来吗?”

(3) 当它们用作插入语的谓语动词时。

[例] What he did, I think, is not the same as what he said. “我想他所做的和他所说的不一样。”

(4) 当此类动词前有 do, did 等表示强调时。

[例] I do think she is not the best of all. “我确实认为她不是最好的。”

(5) 当它们之前有副词修饰时。

[例] I almost think you are not a writer. “我差点认为你不是个作家。”

(6) 当此类动词不用在一般现在时陈述句中时。

[例] I have been thinking that we should not have taken her advice. “我一直认为我们本不该听从她的劝告。”

(7) 当其后面的宾语从句中含有 not... at all, not a little, not a few, not... enough, can't help doing 等含有 not 的固定词组时。

[例] I think he does not know me at all. “我认为他根本不认识我。”

(8) 当此类动词后的宾语从句中含有 no, nothing, nobody, nowhere, hardly, seldom, little, few 等否定词或半否定词时。

[例] I think you may have nothing to do today. “我想你今天可能没事干。”

② 状语的否定转移:

当被否定的是后面的状语时,习惯上往往将否定词提前,即否定谓语动词。这样,在形式上是否定谓语动词,但意义上是否定后面的状语。状语部分可以是动词不定式、介词短语、副词,甚至是从句。

[例] I didn't help him in order to be praised. “我帮他并非为了受表扬。”

否定后面的不定式。(并不是“没帮他”)

[例] Jack doesn't seem to like you. “杰克好像不喜欢你。”

否定后面的不定式。

[例] This victory has not been won easily. “这个胜利赢得不易。”

否定后面的副词。(并非说“没胜利”)

[例] Tom didn't go to the station by car. “汤姆并不是坐小汽车去车站的。”

否定后面的介词短语。(并非说“没去车站”)

[例] I didn't take the raincoat because it was raining. “我并不是因为下着雨才带雨衣的。”

否定后面的原因状语从句。(不是说“没带雨衣”)

温馨提示

有些句子容易产生歧义。这在口语中,可以使用不同的语调和逻辑重音,而使句子有不同解释。在书面语中也可以使用标点分隔。

[例] He does not lend his book to anyone.

{ “他的书不借给任何人。” (重读“does not”, 否定动词“lend”。) }
{ “他的书并不是任何人都借给的。” (重读“anybody”, 否定状语“to anybody”。) }

[例] I didn't go because I was afraid. “我不是因为害怕才去的。”

I didn't go, because I was afraid. “因为我害怕,所以没去。”(注意逗号)

26-5 否定其他成分方式之二:部分否定(即:不完全否定)。

① 总括词用于否定结构时,只表示其中的一部分被否定,即不完全否定。

[例] I don't know all of them. “对他们我并不是个个都认识。”

[例] All that glitters is not gold. “闪光的并不都是金子。”

[例] Everyone cannot pass the exam this time. “并非人人都能通过这次考试。”

温馨提示

此时,也可用“not all / both / every + 名词中心词”作主语表示部分否定。

[例] Not everyone will do it. “并非每个人都愿意做这件事。”

[例] Not all the birds go south for winter. “并不是所有的鸟都到南方过冬。”

[例] Not both windows are open. “不是两个窗户都开着。”

触类旁通

常用的此类总括词有: all, both, each, every, everyone, everything, everywhere, many, always 等。

如果要表示全部否定,需要把这些总括词变成与之对应的否定意义的词,如: none, neither, no, no one, nothing, nowhere, never 等。[参见 12—26]

试比较 [例] He is not always angry with us. “他并非总是生我们的气。”

[例] He is never angry with us. “他从来不生我们的气。”

② 此类总括词与含有否定意义的单词连用,谓语动词用肯定式,是表示完全否定(不表示部分否定)。

[例] We all disbelieve him. “我们都不相信他。”

[例] All the books here are useless. “这儿的书全都没用。”

26-6 否定其他成分方式之三:双重否定。

双重否定即指两个表示否定意义的词连用的情况。双重否定实际上是表示肯定,是“肯定”的加强语气的说法。常见的句型有:

① 否定词 no/ not/ never 等 + without。

[例] Plants cannot live without water. “没有水,植物就不生存。”(即:植物生存需要水。)

[例] There is no smoke without fire. “无火不起烟/ 无风不起浪。”

② 否定词 no/ not/ never 等 + 表示否定意义的形容词。

[例] Nothing is changeless. “没有什么东西是一成不变的。”(即:万物都在变化中。)

[例] It's not uncommon to see strange animals in the sea. “在海洋里看到奇怪的动物并非不常见。”

③ 否定词 no/ not/ never 等 + 表示否定意义的动词或短语。

[例] Nobody disagree. “没有人对此提出异议。”

[例] I could not help laughing when I saw it. “当我看到这时,忍不住笑起来了。”(即:当我看到这时便笑了起来。)

26-7 否定其他成分方式之四:加强否定。

有些表示微量的词或大范围的词与否定式谓语动词一起来达到加强否定的目的。

[例] I am not in the least tired. “我一点也不累。”

in the least 是微量词。

[例] I didn't have anything in the world but a million pound note. “我除了一张100万英镑的钞票外,什么也没有。”

in the world 是大范围的词。

触类旁通

常用的表示加强否定的词有: a single day, a bit of water, a drop of rain, a word, an inch, in the least, in the world, on earth, all one's life, not... at all 等。

26-8 否定其他成分方式之五:用含有否定意义的单词或含有否定词缀的词表示否定。

[例] All his plan came to nothing. “他的一切计划都落空了。”

[例] Nobody told us about it. “没有人告诉我们那件事。”

[例] I have never read a better book. “我从未看过比这本更好的书。”

触类旁通

常用的含有否定意义的单词有: no, none, nobody, nothing, nowhere, neither, never 等。[参见12-26]

[例] What he said is useless. “他说的话没有用。”

[例] That's unfair. “那是不公平的。”

触类旁通

含有否定意义的词缀如由 un-, im-, in-, dis- 等组成的词, 如: unhappy, unlucky, impatient, indirect, dislike 等。

26-9 否定其他成分方式之六:半否定词。

有些句子中用半否定词修饰谓语动词。

[例] I hardly know how to write. “我几乎还没学会写字呢。”

[例] He seldom goes there by himself. “他很少自己一个人去那儿。”

[例] Little is known about the accident. “关于那次事故的情况知之甚少。”

触类旁通

常见的半否定词有 scarcely, seldom, hardly, little, few, rarely, nearly, nearly nothing, nearly no, almost never 等。

第四节 不用否定词却暗含否定意思的句式

26-10 不用否定词却暗含否定意思的句式。

①用疑问句表示更强烈的否定。

[例] Who knows it? “谁知道呢?” (= No one knows it.)

②用感叹句表示委婉含蓄的否定。

[例] God only knows! “只有天晓得!” (= No one knows.)

③用祈使句表示绝对的否定。

[例] Catch me doing that! “我决不会做那种事!”

④用条件句表示否定的誓言或对禁止做某事的威胁。

[例] Do that again if you dare. “看你再做那种事!”

第五节 否定句的非否定现象

26-11 有时否定句并不表示否定的意义

有些形式上是否定的句子,并不表示否定,而表示肯定的意义。它们通常是一些固定的搭配和用法。

[例] You can't be careful enough. “你越小心越好。”

[例] —I was riding along the street and all of a sudden, a car cut in and knocked me down.

—You can never be _____ careful in the street.

[北京高考题]

A. much

B. very

C. so

D. too

答案是 D。“我正沿着大街上骑车,突然一辆小汽车超车抢道,把我撞倒。”“在街上你越小心越好。”“can never (not)... too...” = “can never... enough”有特殊含义,意为“越...就越好”或“无论...也不算过分”。

[例] There is nothing but a card in the box. “盒子里只有一张卡。”

[例] Mary is nothing if not hard-working. “玛丽非常勤奋刻苦。”

[例] Aren't they beautiful? “他们多漂亮啊!”

【例】Why not play basketball after school? “放学后怎么不打篮球呢?”(提建议)

【例】He didn't come home until late last night. “他昨晚很晚才回家。”

【例】I can't agree more. “我再同意不过了。(我非常赞成。)”

试比较 I can't agree. “我不能同意。”

即学即用

I. 单项选择

- Which driver was to blame?
—Why, _____! It was the child's fault, clear and simple. He suddenly came out between two parked cars. [北京高考题]
A. both B. each C. either D. neither
- We haven't enough books for _____; some of you will have to share. [全国高考题]
A. somebody B. anybody C. everybody D. nobody
- I made a call to my parents yesterday. To my disappointment, _____ of them answered it. [福建高考题]
A. either B. none C. neither D. nobody
- There's _____ cooking oil left in the house. Would you go to the corner store and get _____? [北京高考题]
A. little; some B. little; any C. a little; some D. a little; any
- It is _____ any wonder that his friend doesn't like watching television much.
A. no B. such C. nearly D. hardly [广东高考题]
- Must I turn off the gas after cooking?
—Of course. You can never be _____ careful with that. [江西高考题]
A. enough B. too C. so D. very
- The weather turned out to be fine yesterday. I _____ the trouble to carry my umbrella with me. [江西高考题]
A. should have taken B. could have taken C. needn't have taken D. mustn't have taken
- The teacher asked us _____ so much noise. [北京高考题]
A. don't make B. not make C. not making D. not to make

II. 根据A句的意思将B句改成否定式

- A: We have to do our homework every day. B: We _____ do our homework every day.
- A: He had many good friends. B: He had _____ good friends.
- A: Not all ants go out for food. B: _____ ants _____ go out for food.
- A: All men are dishonest. B: _____ man is honest.
- A: Please wait here until they come back. B: _____ here before they come back.



点石成金

I. 单项选择

已经表示“是那个孩子的错”，并说明了原因，应用 **neither**，表示全部否定：“两个驾驶员都没有责任”。

从后句得到的信息“你们中的一些人将不得不共用”可知前句为部分否定，即不是人人都能有书，故用 **not enough ... for everybody**。

3 **them** 指上句提到的 **my parents** 两个人；从“让我失望”可以知道后句表示否定意思，即“父母两人都不予回答”。故选 **C**。

4 **little** 表否定含义，**a little** 表肯定。从句意可知出家里没有多少油了。故排除 **C、D**。后句提出请求应用 **some** 于表示委婉请求的疑问句。故选 **A**。

5 **any** 具有否定的暗示，应用 **hardly** 表示否定。**no (= not any)** 要直接放在名词前。

6 **enough** 应在 **careful** 后。故用 **can never be too ... with (sth.)** 表示“怎么…也决不过分”。

needn't have done sth. 表示做了一件本不必要做的事，符合语境。

不定式的否定式为 **not to do sth.**，在此作 **ask** 的宾补。故选 **D**。

II. 根据 A 句的意思将 B 句改成否定式

1. **don't have to** 2. **no** 3. **All; do not** 4. **No** 5. **Don't leave**

第27章

疑问句

高考热点

高考对疑问句的考查主要集中在反意疑问句和特殊疑问句上,一般以单选题的形式出现。对反意疑问句的考查主要通过选择正确的疑问尾句而进行,其主要考点有:1. 陈述部分与疑问尾句的主语及动词的对应;2. 否定转移时疑问尾句的肯定式;3. 陈述部分含有其他表示否定意义的词;4. 祈使句的反意疑问句。特殊疑问句主要考查:1. 根据上下文的语境选择正确的疑问词;2. 特殊疑问句的语序;3. 特殊疑问句与某些从句的区别。此外,对复杂疑问句语序及其变迁的考查也在近年的高考试题中出现过。

高中英语语法

第一节 疑问句的概念及分类

27-1 用来提出疑问的句子叫疑问句。疑问句末尾用问号“?”。疑问句有四类,即一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、选择疑问句、反意疑问句。

[例] Do you speak English? “你讲英语吗?”(一般)

[例] When will you come back? “你什么时候回来?”(特殊)

[例] Which do you prefer, volleyball or basketball? “你喜欢排球还是篮球?”(选择)

[例] They have lunch at home, don't they? “他们在家吃午饭,是不是?”(反意)

第二节 一般疑问句

27-2 一般疑问句是用 yes 或 no,或相当于 yes 或 no 的词语来回答的疑问句。这种疑问句的句末通常用升调。

[例] —Is there anything wrong with the machine ↗? “这台机器出毛病了吗?”

—Yes, there is. / No, there isn't. “是的, 出毛病了。/ 不, 没出毛病。”

[例] —Can you swim ↗? “你会游泳吗?”

—Certainly, I can. “当然, 我会。”

27-3 一般疑问句分为肯定式和否定式。肯定式一般疑问句构成方式有两种: 把第一个助动词、情态动词或 be 动词或“有”动词 have 移到主语前, 或是在主语前加一个助动词 do / does / did。

[例] Was he a teacher? “他曾是位老师吗?”

be 动词前移。

[例] Have you anything to declare? “你有事要宣布吗?”

“有”动词 have 前移。

[例] Shall we return to the topic? “我们再回到主题上好吗?”

助动词 shall 前移。

[例] Might I make a suggestion? “我可以提个建议吗?”

情态动词 might 前移。

[例] Did she do her lesson yesterday? “她昨天做功课了吗?”

在主语前加助动词 did。

温馨提示

(1) 当谓语动词是 do 时, 主语前仍要加助动词 do, does 或 did, 而主语后必须保留动词原形 do。[参见上例]

(2) 当提出疑问的人预期得到肯定的回答时, 则把原来该用非肯定词的地方用肯定词。

[例] Is Dad back already? “爸爸已回来了吗?”

原来的非肯定副词 yet 变成 already。

[例] Is there something wrong with you? “你出什么毛病了吗?”

由原来的非肯定词 anything 变成 something。

[例] I am hungry. Have you some bread, Peter? “我饿了。彼特, 你有些面包吗?”

由原来的 any 变成 some。

27-4 否定式一般疑问句有两种构成方式。

“not”置于主语之前, 并且一定要缩写; 或 not 放在主语之后, 且不缩写。

[例] Isn't it Sunday today? “难道今天不是星期日吗?”

[例] Couldn't the students understand it? “难道学生们不懂吗?”

[例] Don't you think we should try again? “你不觉得我们该再试一试吗?”

[例] Don't you always go to work by bike? “你不是总是骑自行车上班吗?”

温馨提示

(1) 缩写后放到主语之前的句型多用于非正式文体中,带有惊异、责难、感叹等语气,或用来提出邀请或建议。常译作“难道…不…?”

[例] Is it not Sunday today? “今天不是星期日吗?”

[例] Can you not decide before next week? “你下周前不能做出决定吗?”

(2) 不缩写的“not”放在主语后的句型通常用于正式文体中。

27-5 否定式一般疑问句的答语“Yes/No/”与汉语的“是、否”习惯相反。

[例] —Isn't this book Li Hua's? “难道这本书不是李华的?”

—Yes, it is. “不,是他的。”(事实上是李华的书)

—No, it isn't. “是的,不是他的。”(事实上不是李华的书)



温馨提示

在答语中应掌握这个原则:如果完整的回答是肯定的,前面用 yes;如果完整的回答是否定的,前面用 no。因为英语中是针对所答的事实内容的肯定与否定来选用相应的 Yes 或 No 的。(而汉语中的“是”和“否”是用来评论问话人的观点,相当于“是的,你说对了”或“不,你说得不对”。英汉的思维习惯不同。)

27-6 陈述句形式的一般疑问句。

陈述句也可用作一般疑问句,它多用于非正式文体中,句末用问号,用升调。

[例] You understand ↗? “你明白了吗?”

[例] He didn't finish the work ↗? “他没有做完活吗?”

[例] You are fresh from America, I suppose ↗? “我想,你刚从美国来吧?”

27-7 省略形式的一般疑问句。

① 一般疑问句可以省略系动词 be 或助动词或情态动词, 句子用升调即表示疑问。

[例] (Are) You cold ↗? “你冷吗?”

[例] (Has) Susan done her homework ↗? “苏珊做完她的作业了吗?”

② 将助动词和所连用的主语一起省略。

[例] (Do you) Want some coffee ↗? “想喝点咖啡吗?”

③ 有时只保留助动词、情态动词、动词 be、have 或主语。

[例] I like being in London. Don't you ↗? “我喜欢呆在伦敦。你不是吗?”

27-8 回答一般疑问句的多种方式。

除了用 yes 或 no 作答语外, 也可以用: Certainly. / Probably. / Of Course. / Perhaps. / All right. / With pleasure. / I think (expect) so. / Ok. / By all means. / That'll be fine. / Thanks. 等词语或句子代替 yes; 用 Never. / Not at all. / Sorry. 等代替 no, 或用似乎与问题无关的话语来回答。

[例] —Could you please make less noise? “你可以小声一点吗?”

—All right, sir. “好的, 先生。”

[例] —Have you been there? “你到过那里吗?”

—Never. “从来没有。”

[例] —Have you seen my chocolates? “你看见我的巧克力了吗?”

—Well, the children were in your room this morning. “噢, 今天早上孩子们去过你的房间。”

似乎答非所问, 实际已暗示了答案。

[例] —Are they open on Tuesdays? “他们星期二开门吗?”

—I think so. “我看开门。”

帮你归纳

类似这样用 so 代替上述情况还有: I'm afraid so (恐怕如此), I think / believe / expect / guess / imagine / suppose / hope 等 + so. (我想/相信/期望/猜想/料想/认为/希望如此。)

温馨提示

上述表示否定时, 都可用 not 代替 so (即 I'm afraid not. I think / believe / expect / guess / imagine / suppose / hope not)。还可用 I don't think / believe / expect /

imagine / suppose so. 因为它们能构成否定转移[参见 26—4]。但一般不说 I don't hope so / I don't guess so. / I'm not afraid so, 因为 hope, be afraid 后宾语从句中的否定词不转移至主句。

[例] —Is Lydia coming? “莉迪亚来不来?”

—I don't suppose so. / I suppose not. “我看来不会来。”

[例] —Do you think it's going to rain over the weekend? —

A. I don't believe B. I don't believe it C. I believe not so D. I believe not

答案是 D。“你认为周末要下雨吗?”“我相信不会的。”根据句意正确的答语有: I believe so. / I believe not. / I don't believe so. / I don't believe that it is going to rain over the weekend.

[例] —The boys are not doing a good job at all, are they? —

A. I guess not so B. I don't guess C. I don't guess so D. I guess not

答案是 D。“那些男孩的工作干得一点儿也不好,是吗?”“我想不。”A 和 B 形式本身有错;guess 只是在美国俗语中相当于 think, 故用 I guess not 比用 I don't guess so. 更规范,也更常见。同时也要圆滑,不显得把话讲死,因为 D 既可理解为 I guess they are not doing a good job, 也可表示“不同意对方观点”。

第三节 特殊疑问句

27-9 特殊疑问句是就句中某一部分进行提问的疑问句。句首用特殊疑问词(疑问代词或疑问副词),句末用问号。一般用降调,有时也可以用低升调。

[例] Which one do you like best? “你最喜欢哪个?”

[例] Where were you born? “你是在哪儿出生的?”

[例] Who helped him with his lessons? “谁帮助他做功课了?”

[例] How _____ can you finish the drawing?

全国高考题

A. often B. soon C. long D. rapid

答案是 B。“你多久才能画完?”“how often”表示频度,“how long”表示多长时间,“how rapid”表示“多么快”的,rapid 为形容词,不能修饰动词,“how soon”表示“多久以后”。根据题意,排除 A、C、D。

27-10 特殊疑问句有两大特点。

①以 wh-开头的特殊疑问词引导,或以 how 及 how 开头的词组引导。它们分别是:

{ who, whom, whose, which, what, when, where, why
how, how many/ much/ long/ soon/ often/ far/ big, etc.

[例] Why are you always late? “你怎么老是迟到?”

[例] How many books are there on the desk? “桌上有多少书?”

②特殊疑问词在句中担任成分。

a. 疑问代词 who, whom, whose, which, what 在句中可以作主语、宾语、表语或定语;当 who, what, which 做主语时,通常按第三人称对待,要与单数第三人称动词连用;当 whose, which, what 作定语时,被修饰词要紧跟其后,在口语中,作宾语的 whom 在句首时,常用 who 代替。

[例] Who sings the best in your class? “你们班上谁唱得最好。”

疑问代词 who 做主语要按第三人称单数对待,动词 sing 后要加 -s。

[例] Which coat is yours? “哪件外衣是你的?”

疑问代词 which 作定语,修饰 coat。

b. 疑问副词 when, where, why, how, how many 等在句中可作状语或表语。

[例] When will you come back? “你什么时候回来?”

疑问副词 when 作时间状语。

[例] How far is it from here? “离这儿有多远?”

疑问副词 how 与 far 构成短语,作 is 的表语。

27-11 特殊疑问句的两种语序。

①当疑问词做主语或主语的修饰语

时,要用正常语序。

[例] Who was the first man in space?

“谁是第一位进入太空的人呢?”

Who 做主语。

[例] Whose book fell on the floor? “谁的书掉在地板上?”

whose 作定语,修饰 book,需放在一起。

②在其他情况下用疑问语序。

[例] Who are you talking about? “你在谈论谁?”

[例] What does your brother do? “你哥哥是干什么的呢?”

[例] Why did he arrive so late? “为什么他来得这么晚呢?”

温馨提示

“Why + 否定式一般疑问句?”或“Why not...?”常表示请求、建议、责备等。

[例] Why don't you do it right now? “为何不现在就干?”(表建议 = Why not do it right now?)

[例] Why didn't you come to school on time? “你为什么不及时到校?”(表责备)

27-12 特殊疑问句的强调式有四种:

①在疑问词后面加 ever。

[例] Who ever broke that window? “到底是谁打破那窗户的?”

②在疑问词后加 on earth, in the world, the hell, the devil 等表惊讶、诅咒。

[例] What the devil is happening over there? “那儿到底在发生什么事呢?”

③句中使用 just, exactly 等。

[例] Just who is “I” in this story? “在这个故事中究竟谁是‘我’呢?”

④用于强调结构中。

星 22—191

27-13 特殊疑问句的省略式主要有六种:

①仅用疑问词

[例] —I saw a friend of yours today. “我今天见到了你的一位朋友”

—Who? “谁呢?”

②用于“疑问词 + 作用词(或其他成分)”

[例] —I can't understand her. “我听不懂她的话。”

—Who can? “谁能(懂)呢?”

③用于“疑问词 + 介词”

[例] —My brother is going abroad. “我哥哥要出国去。”

—Where to? “去哪儿呢?”

④用于“介词 + 疑问词”

[例] —It all depends. “一切看情况而定。”

—On what? “看什么情况呢?”

⑤用于某些固定词组,如:How about.../What about... 表示请求、邀请、异议等;How come... 表示询问。

[例] What about playing football? “踢足球怎么样呢?”

[例] How come your team is taking in John? “你们队怎么会把约翰吸收进来呢?”

⑥用于“疑问词 + 不定式”(why 后接不带“to”的不定式)

[例] What to do next? “下一步做什么呢?”

[例] Why turn off the gas? “为什么把煤气关掉呢?”

触类旁通

还有一些省略说法。如:What else? “还有什么呢?” So what? “那又怎么样呢?” What then? “下一步呢?” What next? “以下呢?” Who by? “谁写的呢?” Which way? “走哪条路呢?” 等等。

27-14 复杂的疑问句。

这种问句由“一般疑问句”和“特殊疑问词引导的宾语从句”糅合而成,用来询问对方或第三者的想法或意见。这类疑问句中间有 did you say, do you think/ suppose/ imagine/ guess/ believe/ expect (比能用否定转移的词要多)等一般疑问句。还要注意 wh-从句要用陈述语序! 其基本句型为:“疑问词 + do you think/ believe 等(一般疑问

句语序) + 陈述语序”。

[例] What did you say his name was? “你刚才说他叫什么名字?”

动词 was 在主语 his name 之后。

[例] How far do you imagine it is from here? “你想象那儿离这儿有多远?”

动词 is 在主语 it 之后。

[例] Who do you think will win the first prize? “你认为谁会获得一等奖?”

疑问词 who 在从句中做主语, 后面直接用 will win。

[例] Mum is coming. What present _____ for your birthday?

A. you expect she has got

B. you expect has she got

C. do you expect she has got

D. do you expect has she got

答案是 C。“妈妈要来了, 你期望她有什么生日礼物给你?” 应用“疑问词 (what, who, when,) + do you believe/ suppose/ think/imagine 等 + ……”, 后面的部分应用陈述句语序。

[例] _____ be sent to work there?

[上海高考题]

A. Who do you suggest

B. Who do you suggest that should

C. Do you suggest who should

D. Do you suggest whom should

答案是 A。“你建议派谁去那儿工作?” 由 do you think (suppose, suggest, ...) 所引起的宾语从句, 其连接词是 who 需置于 do 之前, 排除 C、D。连接词 who 在从句中做主语, 不能再有其他连接词, 故本题答案为 A。

温馨提示

能用此句型的一般是表示观点、想法和意见的词, 其他词的一般疑问句形式引导宾语从句时, 疑问词不放在句首。

[例] Can you tell me where I can find him. “你能告诉我在哪儿能找到他吗?”

试比较 Who do you think he will go there with? “你认为他会和谁一起去那儿?”

Do you know who he will go there with? “你知道他会和谁一起去那儿吗?”

温馨提示

也有人认为“do you suppose”等短语为插入语。

第四节 选择疑问句

27-15 选择疑问句是提供两种 (或两种以上) 的情况, 问对方选择哪一种的疑问句。在提供两种 (或几种) 情况之间要用连词 or。“or”前的选择对象读升调, “or”后的选择对象读降调。回答这种问句不能用 yes 或 no, 而要用比较完整的句子或说出一个具体选项。

[例] —Can I give you a gin, a whisky or a beer? “来杯杜松子酒,威士忌酒,还是啤酒呢?”

—A whisky will do. “一杯威士忌酒就行了。”

[例] When shall we meet, at six or at seven? “我们什么时候会合,六点还是七点?”

27-16 选择疑问句有两种结构。

①以一般疑问句为基础而构成:“一般疑问句 + or + 一般疑问句?”本结构中 or 之后的问句与之前的问句相同的部分可以省略,只保留选择对象。



[例] Shall we go to see you or will you come to see us? “是我们去看你呢还是你来看我们?”

[例] Would you rather wait or come back later? “你宁愿等还是以后来呢?”
or 之后的问句中省略了 would you rather。

[例] Is her hair long or short? “她的头发是长还是短?”
or 之后的问句中省略了 is her hair。

②以特殊疑问句为基础而构成:“特殊疑问句 + 选项 A + or + 选项 B?”

[例] How shall we go there, by bus or by train? “我们该怎样去那儿呢? 乘公共汽车还是乘火车呢?”

温馨提示

本结构中的选项可以是两项以上。

[例] Which is the biggest, the sun, the moon or the earth? “哪个最大,是太阳、月亮还是地球?”

第五节 反意疑问句

27-17 反意疑问句(也称附加疑问句)是附加在陈述句之后,对陈述句所表示的事实或观点提出疑问的句子。附加疑问句实际上是一种简略的一般疑问句,所以其答语都一般用 yes 或 no。附加疑问句常常是反意的,即陈述句如果是肯定结构,其后的疑问尾句则用否定结构。反之,陈述句如果为否定结构,其后的疑问尾句则用肯定结构。

[例] You won't be away for long, will you? “你不会离开太久,是吧?”

[例] She told you, didn't she? “她告诉你了,不是吗?”

温馨提示

如果反意疑问句前面否定,后面肯定,注意回答时 yes 和 no 在英汉两种语言中的不同翻译。[参见 27-5]

[例] —You haven't been to Beijing, have you?

—_____, How I wish to go there!

A. Yes, I have B. Yes, I haven't C. No, I have D. No, I haven't

答案是 D。“你没到过北京,是吧?”“是的,没去过。我多希望去那儿呀!”事实是否定的“没去过(haven't)”,就用否定词 No。如果问话人换个角度问:“You have been to Beijing, haven't you?”,英语的答语没有变化,仍用“No, I haven't”汉语的答语则变为“不,没去过。”

27-18 反意疑问句有两种语调:“降——升”和“降——降”。

句中前面的陈述部分总是用降调,其后的疑问句部分的语调有两种情况:

①当说话者对陈述部分表示怀疑、没有把握或说话者为了语气婉转而表示客气时,疑问尾句用升调。

[例] You're coming, aren't you ↗? “你会来的,不是吗?”

说话者对所述事实没有把握。

②当说话者坚信陈述句部分是事实,只是用来强调或证实陈述句的事实,疑问尾句用降调。

[例] Beijing is a beautiful city, isn't it ↘? “北京是座美丽的城市,是吧?”

说话者只想强调或证实一下所述事实。

27-19 反意疑问句中,陈述部分与疑问尾句的主语要对应。

①疑问尾句的主语与陈述部分的主语一般在人称、数、性方面保持一致。主语是名词时,疑问尾句中要换成代词。

例] Bill's aim is to inform the viewers that cigarette advertising on TV is illegal, _____?

- A. isn't it B. is it C. isn't be D. is he

[上海高考题]

答案是 A。“比尔的目的是告诉观众在电视上做香烟广告是不合法的,对不对?”此句的主语是 Bill's aim,而不是 Bill 本人,所以反意疑问句应针对 Bill's aim,应用 it 来代替。又因谓语 is 为肯定形式,反疑问句应用否定形式 isn't。故选 A 项。

温馨提示

在 there be 句型中,不需要根据前面主语,而用 be there。be 的形式要与前面一致。

[例] There are no more problems about it, are there? “对此不再有问题了,是吗?”

[例] There was a loud scream from the backstage immediately after the concert ended, _____?

[上海高考题]

- A. wasn't there B. was there C. didn't it D. did it

答案是 A。“音乐会一结束,就从后台传来了一声尖叫声,是不是?”陈述部分是 there be 的肯定形式,反问部分就用 there 和句子中时态的否定形式。故选 A。

②如果陈述部分的主语为 everyone, someone, anyone, no one 等表“人”的不定代词时,其疑问尾句的主语多用 they,也可用 he,从而动词也相应地用复数形式或单三形式。

[例] Everyone knows his job, doesn't he? / Everyone knows their job, don't they? “每个人都了解他(们)的工作,是吗?”

温馨提示

若主语为指“物”的不定代词 everything, nothing, something 等时,则其后的疑问尾句的主语用“it”。

[例] Everything goes very well, doesn't it? “一切进展很顺利,是吗?”

③当陈述句的主语由 neither... nor 或 both... and 连接时,疑问尾句要用相应的复数形式。

[例] Neither you nor I am going on holiday, are we? “你我都不去度假,是吧?”

④不定代词 one 做主语,指“人”时,疑问尾句常用 one,有时也用 you,表示泛指(在美国英语中还可以用 he)。

[例] One can't be too careful, can one (you / he)? “一个人越细心越好,是吧?”

⑤each 做主语强调“单个”时,疑问尾句要用单数形式;强调“全体”时,疑问尾句要用复数形式。

[例] Each of the students has his own desk, hasn't (doesn't) he? “每个学生都有自己的课桌,是吗?”

[例] Each of the students passed the exam, didn't they? “每个学生都通过了考试, 是吗?”

⑥当陈述句中的主语是不定式(短语)、动名词(短语)、词组或从句时, 疑问尾句的主语要用 it。

[例] To drive cars is not easy, is it? “开汽车不容易, 是吧?”

[例] Seeing is believing, isn't it? “眼见为实, 对吧?”

[例] From Beijing to Shanghai is a long way, isn't it? “北京离上海很远, 是吗?”

[例] That you are leaving soon is true, isn't it? “你们很快要离开, 是吗?”

⑦当主语是 I(接谓语动词 am) 时, 表否定的疑问尾句中常用 aren't I?

[例] I am your friend, aren't I? “我是你的朋友, 对吧?”

⑧如果陈述部分的主语是指示代词 this, that 或 these, those 时, 疑问尾句的主语要用人称代词 it 或 they。

[例] This is very important, isn't it? “这很重要, 不是吗?”

27-20 反意疑问句中陈述句部分与疑问尾句的谓语动词要对应。

①一般疑问尾句的谓语动词要与陈述部分的谓语动词在人称、数、时态方面保持一致。陈述句部分的谓语动词如带有助动词或情态动词, 尾句仍保留使用。

[例] He likes English, doesn't he? “他喜欢英语, 是吗?”

[例] Everything has gone wrong, hasn't it? “一切都不正常了, 是吗?”

[例] He cannot swim, can he? “他不会游泳, 是吗?”

②如陈述部分的谓语动词为 have to 或 had to 时, 其疑问尾句的谓语动词通常用 do 的适当形式。

[例] We have to get up at four every day, don't we? “我们每天得四点起床, 是吗?”

[例] They had to leave early, didn't they? “他们不得不早点就出发了, 是吧?”

③陈述部分的谓语动词为 used to 时, 其疑问尾句的谓语动词可用两种形式。

[例] He used to live in London, usedn't he / didn't he? “他以前住在伦敦, 是吗?”

④当陈述部分的动词为 dare, need, 或 have 时, 若它们为实义动词, 疑问尾句的动词用 do 的适当形式; 若 dare, need 为情态动词、have 为助动词时, 疑问尾句用 dare, need 或 have 构成。

[例] We need to do it, don't we? “我们需要做这件事, 是吧?”

[例] You daren't go there, dare you? “你不敢去那儿, 是吗?”

[例] Tom has just bought a new book, hasn't he? “汤姆刚刚买了一本新书, 是吗?”

[例] Sarah had her washing machine repaired the day before yesterday, _____ she?

A. had

B. did

C. hadn't

D. didn't

[广东高考题]

答案是 D。“Sarah 前天把她的洗衣机修理了, 是吗?” 这是“have sth. done”结构, have 是行为动词, 不是助动词, 其反意疑问句不能用 have 的形式。由于前面肯定, 后面应否定。

⑤若陈述部分含有情态动词 must 的句子表示推测, 作“想必”解时, 疑问尾句要根据

must 所表示的时态来确定,不能用 mustn't。

[例] You must be tired, aren't you? “你一定累了,是吗?”

⑥若“must”表示“有必要”时,疑问尾句用 needn't。

[例] You must go home right now, needn't you? “你必须马上回家,是吗?”

⑦若 mustn't 表示禁止时,疑问尾句用 must。

[例] You mustn't walk on grass, must you? “你不可在草地上行走,是吗?”

⑧若陈述句的谓语动词为“must have + 过去分词”时,若尾句强调对过去事情的推测(常带有过去时间),疑问尾句的谓语动词用过去时“didn't + 主语”结构;若强调动作完成,疑问尾句部分的谓语动词用“haven't / hasn't + 主语”结构。

[例] He must have met her yesterday, didn't he? “昨天他一定遇到她了,对吧?”

[例] You must have seen the film, haven't you? “你一定看过这部电影了,是吧?”

⑨反意疑问句中陈述部分谓语出现否定前(后)缀时,疑问尾句仍用否定结构。

[例] He is unfit for his office, isn't he? “他不称职,是吗?”

⑩如果陈述部分含有 no, never, hardly, seldom, few, little, nowhere, nothing 等否定或半否定词时,疑问尾句用肯定形式。

[例] He hardly knows French, does he? “他几乎不懂法语,是吗?”

[例] He never said that he was good at mathematics, _____?

A. was he B. wasn't he C. did he D. didn't he

答案是 C。“他从来没有说过他擅长数学,是吗?”一般情况下,反意疑问句的主语应和主句的主语一致,又因 never 为否定词,反意疑问句应用肯定形式。

27—21 陈述部分如果是“I'm (not) sure.../I (don't) think/believe/suppose/expect(能构成否定转移) + (that) 宾语从句”结构时,疑问尾句的动词和主语应和宾语从句中的动词和主语保持一致。而肯定还是否定则要与主句中的“I (don't) think”相反。

[例] I don't think he can finish the work, can he? “我认为他完成不了这项工作,对吧?”

[例] I'm sure you'd rather she went to school by bus, _____?

A. hadn't you B. wouldn't you C. aren't I D. didn't she

答案 B。“我敢肯定你倒是想让她乘公共汽车去上学,是不是?”I'm sure 表示自己的看法相当于 I think,其反意疑问句要根据后接的宾语从句。you'd rather 是 you would rather 的缩略形式。故选 B。

温馨提示

如主句的主语不是第一人称代词或动词有其他修饰语或与其他动词连用时,疑问尾句的动词和主语应和主句中的动词和主语保持一致。[参见 26—4①]

[例] Mrs. Black doesn't believe her son is able to design a digital camera, _____?

A. is he B. isn't he C. doesn't she D. does she

答案是 D。“布莱克太太认为她儿子不能设计出数码相机,是吗?”主句主语 Mrs. Black 是第三人称,谓语为否定式 doesn't believe, 所以答案应为“does she”。

27-22 祈使句的反意疑问句

陈述部分为祈使句的反意疑问句,即“祈使句+疑问尾句?”其实并不表示“反意”和“疑问”,而是表“邀请”(用 won't you)或表“请求”(用 will you? would you? can you? can't you? 或 shall we?)。当祈使句为否定形式时,尾句一般用“will you?”。

[例] It's a fine day. Let's go fishing, _____?

! 全国高考题

A. won't we B. will we C. don't we D. shall we

答案是 D。“今天天气不错,咱们去钓鱼,好吗?”Let's go fishing 是一个祈使句,Let's... 中“us(咱们)”包括听话者“you”,疑问尾句应该用 shall we? 但是如果是 Let us..., 这时的“us(我们)”不包括听话者“you”,疑问尾句中则应该用“will you?”。如下一例句:

[例] Let us know your new address, _____?

A. shall we B. will we C. can you D. will you

答案是 D。“让我们知道一下您的新住址,行吗?”即:“告诉我们您的新住址,你愿意吗?”句中的“us(我们)”不包括听话人“您(you)”。

[例] Don't smoke in the meeting room, _____?

A. do you B. will you C. can you D. could you

答案为 B。“别在会议室吸烟,好吗?”这是个表示否定的祈使句,疑问尾句需用“will you?”。

[例] We forgot to bring our tickets, but please let us enter, _____.

A. do you B. can we C. will you D. shall we

答案是 C。“我们忘了带票,但请让我们进去吧。”可知这可能是对检票员说的话。us 应不包括听话人在内,应用“will you?”构成后一个分句(为祈使句)的反意疑问句。

27-23 反意疑问句中,疑问尾句的其他表示方式。

疑问尾句有时可用 eh? right? am I right? don't you think? isn't that so? 等表示。

[例] She didn't pass the exam, eh? “她没有通过考试,呃?”

[例] They forgot to attend the lecture, am I right? “他们忘记去上那次课了,对不对?”



即学即用

I. 单项选择

1. It's quite late. Let's go home together, _____?

- A. won't we B. will we C. don't we D. shall we
2. If you want help-money or anything, let me know, _____ you? [上海高考题]
A. don't B. will C. shall D. do
3. Would you like a cup of coffee _____ shall we get down to business right away?
A. and B. then C. or D. otherwise
4. I don't think you've heard of him before, _____ ?
A. have you B. haven't you C. do I D. don't I
5. He seldom has lunch at school, _____ ?
A. hasn't he B. has he C. doesn't he D. does he
6. —I believe we've met somewhere before.
—No, _____ .
A. it isn't the same B. it can't be true C. I don't think so D. I'd rather not
7. Be sure to write to us, _____ ? [全国高考题]
A. will you B. aren't you C. can you D. mustn't you
8. —What happened to the priceless works of art?
—_____ . [北京高考题]
A. They were destroyed in the earthquake B. The earthquake was destroying them
C. They destroyed in the earthquake D. The earthquake destroyed them
9. Brian told you that there wasn't anyone in the room at that time, _____ ? [全国高考题]
A. was there B. wasn't there C. didn't he D. did he
10. "_____ have you been away from home?"
"I have been away from home for five months." [全国高考题]
A. How much B. What time C. How long D. When
11. —We haven't heard from Jane for a long time.
—What do you suppose _____ to her? [全国高考题]
A. was happening B. to happen C. has happened D. having happened
12. —Didn't the policeman let you in?
—_____ , _____ I told him who I was.
A. Yes; if B. No; even though C. Yes; even if D. No; once
13. Everything he does is wrong, _____ ? [上海高考题]
A. does, he B. doesn't it C. is it D. isn't it
14. The news that they failed the driving test discouraged him, _____ ? [上海高考题]
A. did they B. didn't they C. did it D. didn't it
15. I don't suppose anyone will volunteer, _____ ? [上海高考题]
A. do I B. don't I C. will they D. won't they

II. 按要求转换句型, 每空一词

1. Sue comes from London. Ann comes from New York. (改为选择问句)

- _____ come from London?
2. There will be a lecture in Classroom 203 this afternoon. (改为反意疑问句)
There will be a lecture in Classroom 203 this afternoon, _____?
3. It was raining hard when I got home yesterday. (改为一般疑问句)
_____ it _____ hard when I got home yesterday?
4. think, you, what, do, would, he, like. (连成为特殊疑问句)
_____?

III. 将下列句子加上疑问尾句,使其成为反意疑问句

1. Nobody phoned in my absence, _____?
2. One can't work all the time, _____?
3. I don't think she is right, _____?
4. I am late, _____?
5. You must work hard next term, _____?
6. You must have heard the news last night, _____?
7. You must have lived here for a long time, _____?
8. We ought to go there, _____?
9. He used to smoke 40 cigarettes a day, _____?
10. We'd better stay here, _____?
11. You'd rather leave, _____?
12. She seldom goes to the cinema, _____?
13. Let's stop here, _____?
14. He disagrees with us, _____?
15. He had a good time last evening, _____?



点石成金

1. let's... 中“us(咱们)”包括听话者“you”,疑问尾句应该用“shall we?”。
2. 因主干句 let me know 是个祈使句,反意疑问句通常都是“will you?”。
3. “喝咖啡”和“立即开始谈生意”两者只能选其一,用 or 连接,构成选择疑问句。
4. I don't think 引导宾语从句时,反意疑问句必须和从句的主语和动词保持一致,否定词已经转移。故选 A。
5. have 在此为行为动词,又因 seldom“很少”为否定意义的词,反意疑问句应用“does he?”。
6. 答语应表“我想我们从前没见过”,应用 I don't think. 或 I think not。
7. “一定要给我们写信,好吗?”祈使句,表示向对方提出请求,需用“will you?”。
8. 答语的主语也应是这些艺术品或其代词 they。A 项的主体、时态、语态均正确。

- 主句 Brian told you, 本主从复合句的反意疑问句应针对主句, 故选 C。
- 答语回答表示“已经离开家 5 个月了。”故用 how long 提问。
- 第二句为复杂疑问句 (do you suppose 也可视为插入语), 空处为宾语从句的谓语动词, 应首先排除非谓语动词形式的 B 和 D。又因强调对现在有影响, 故用现在完成时 has happened。
- 答语表示“即使我告诉他我是谁, 他也没有让我进去。”事实上“没有让...”, 应用否定回答 no。
- he does 为定语从句; everything 为主语, is 为主句的谓语动词, 故选 D。
- the news 为主句的主语, 谓语动词 encouraged 为肯定式, 故反意疑问句用“didn't it?”。
- I don't suppose... 的反意疑问句应依据宾语从句的主语 (为不定代词 anyone, 可用 they 代替) 和谓语动词, 故可排除 A 和 B。又因 I don't suppose 为否定式, 事实上否定了其后的宾语从句的谓语动词, 故反意疑问句应用肯定式“will they?”。

II. 按要求转换句型, 每空一词

1. Does; Sue; or; Ann 2. won't; there 3. Was; raining 4. What; do; you; think; he; would; like

III. 将下列句子加上疑问尾句, 使其成为反意疑问句

1. didn't they / he 2. can one / he / you 3. is she 4. aren't I 5. mustn't you
6. didn't you 7. haven't you 8. oughtn't we 9. usedn't / didn't he 10. hadn't we
11. wouldn't you 12. does she 13. shall we 14. doesn't he 15. didn't he

第28章

祈使句



高考热点

祈使句是高考的一个常见考点,主要出现在单选题中,有时也出现在改错和完形填空中。对祈使句的考查很少单独进行,主要是通过一定的语境来判断。近年来高考中祈使句的主要考点有:1. 祈使句的否定式;2. 祈使句的反意疑问句;3. 祈使句 + and + 简单句;4. 带呼唤语的祈使句与陈述句的判断等。

第一节 祈使句的概念

28-1 祈使句是用来表示请求、命令、劝告、建议、叮嘱、号召等的句子。祈使句常以原形动词开头,末尾用感叹号或句号,并且通常用降调。

[例] Be careful when you cross the road. “过马路要当心。”

[例] —What should I do with this passage?

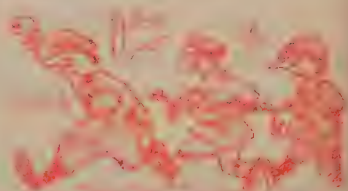
—_____ the main idea of each paragraph.

[重庆高考题]

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| A. Finding out | B. Found out |
| C. Find out | D. To find out |

答案是 C。“我该怎样处理这篇短文?”“请

弄清每段的大意。”答语是祈使句,指示怎么做,应用动词原形。故选 C。



温馨提示

使句的谓语动词虽然用原形,但动作是未发生的,因此常用 I / we will 应答其肯定式,表示愿意接受邀请或命令;用 I won't 来回答否定式,许诺不会出现那种情况。

[例]—Write to me when you get home. — _____.

A. I must B. I should C. I will D. I can

答案是 C。“到家给我写信。”“我会的。”前者发出请求、提出要求,为祈使句。后者表示应许,用 I will。此处不用 must (必须)、should (应该) 或 can 表示“能力”。

[例]—Mr. Gordon asked me to remind you of the meeting this afternoon. Don't you forget it!

—OK, I _____.

A. won't B. don't C. will D. do

答案是 A。“戈登先生叫我提醒你下午的会议,不要忘记了。”“好的,我不会忘记的。”Don't you forget it! 在此相当于 Don't forget it! 为祈使句的否定形式。应用 I won't 来应答否定意义的祈使句。比较: I don't. “我没有忘记”(只是陈述事实)。

第二节 对象不同的各种祈使句

28-2 对象为第二人称的祈使句。

祈使句的主语一般都是第二人称“you”,但往往省去不写。其否定式是在句首加“don't”。

[例] Read after me, please. “请跟我读。”

[例] Don't be late tomorrow! “明天别迟到!”

温馨提示

有时为了强调指明向谁提出要求或命令,第二人称主语也可以表示出来,这时主语须重读。

[例]—Sorry, Joe. I didn't mean to...

—Don't call me “Joe”. I'm Mr. Parker to you, and _____ you forget it!

A. do B. didn't C. did D. don't

答案是 D。“对不起,乔,我本来不是想……”“别叫我‘乔’,对你来说我是帕克先生,你别忘了。”祈使句中的主语 you 加重语气。“Don't you do sth.!”要比“Don't do sth.!”的语势强烈,能引起对方的高度注意。

[例] You boys wash the floor, and you girls clean the windows. “你们男孩刷地板;你们女孩擦窗子。”

[例] You mind your own business! “你少管闲事!”或“你管你自己的事吗!”

28-3 对象为第一人称的祈使句通常由 Let me/us 构成。

【例】Let me have a try again. “让我再试一试。”

【例】Come on, Mary, let's dance! “来, 玛丽, 咱们跳舞吧!”

温馨提示

let us 不包括说话的对方, 而 let's 则包括对方。此种祈使句的否定方式为 “let us / let's not + 动词原形”。在非正式文体中可用 “Don't let's + 动词原形”。

【例】Let's not stay too late. “咱们别呆得太晚了。”

【例】Let us not stand in the sun. “别让我们站在太阳下晒。”

【例】Don't let's do that. “咱们不要做那样的事。”[非正式]

28-4 对象为第三人称的祈使句由 “Let + 第三人称代词 (或其他名词词组) + 动词原形” 构成。

【例】Let him be here by ten o'clock. “让他不迟于 10 点到这儿来。”

【例】Let each man decide for himself. “让每个人都自己决定吧。”

温馨提示

这种祈使句的否定式是在其句首加 don't 即可。

【例】Don't let the fire go out. “别让火灭了。”

【例】Don't let your mother work too hard. “别让你妈妈工作太辛苦了。”

第三节 祈使句的句首呼唤语与陈述句的主语的区别

28-5 祈使句的句首呼唤语与陈述句的主语的区别。

① 带有第三人称主语的祈使句与句首呼唤语的区别

【例】Mary, _____ here - everybody else, stay where you are.

A. come B. comes C. to come D. coming

答案是 A。“玛丽, 来这儿——其他人, 都呆在原处不动。”Mary 是呼唤语, 本句应是祈使句, 要用动词原形 come (与破折号后面的 stay where you are. 结构相同)。

② 带有第三人称主语的祈使句与陈述句区别

【例】Tom play on my side. “汤姆, 到我这边来玩吧。”(祈使句)

【例】Tom plays on my side. “汤姆在我这边玩呢。”(陈述句)



第四节 祈使句的一些特殊结构

28-6 祈使句之后加疑问尾句,以加强语气。

[参见 27-22]

[例] Don't tell anyone, will you? “你可不要告诉任何人哟!”

温馨提示

为了表示强烈的语气,祈使句和后面附加的疑问尾句多用肯定式,且都用降调。[例] Open the door will you? “你给我把门打开吧!”

28-7 祈使句可有被动式,并多属否定结构,肯定结构用 get 代替 be。

[例] Don't be deceived by his look. “不要被他外表所欺骗。”

[例] Get washed. “洗一洗吧。”

28-8 祈使句之后可以加 and 或 or 再加陈述句。

祈使句之后可以加 and 或 or 再加陈述句。此时祈使句在意义上相当于一个 if 引导的条件从句。当前后两部分为承接关系时,用 and 或 then;前后意思为相反关系时,用 or。

[例] Lose one hour in the morning _____ you will be looking for it the rest of the day.

A. but B. and C. or D. so [北京高考题]

答案是 B。“早晨丢掉一个小时,你会整天都在找。”前后两分句之间存在着承接关系,应用 and。全句相当于:If you lose one hour in the morning, you'll be looking for it the rest of the day.

[例] Follow your doctor's advice, _____ your cough will get worse.

A. or B. and C. then D. so [天津高考题]

答案是 A。“听从你医生的建议,否则你的咳嗽会加重的。”前后分句之间存在转折关系,所以选择表示转折的连词 or。全句相当于:If you don't follow your doctor's advice, your cough will get worse.

温馨提示

在该结构中, and 后的分句通常用一般将来时

- [例] Turn on the television or open a magazine and you _____ advertisements showing happy _____ families. [全国高考题]

A. will often see B. often see C. are often seeing D. have often seen

答案是 A。“打开电视或翻开杂志,你常会看到表现幸福家庭的广告。”在句型“祈使句(表条件) + and/ or you will...”中, you 后面的动词通常用一般将来时态表结果。不可受 often 的干扰而误选 B。

28-9 祈使句的强调结构:“Do + 祈使句”只用于省略主语的第三人称和第一人称祈使句。

- [例] Do come on time! “务必按时来!”

- [例] Do let me have another try. “一定让我再试一下。”

温馨提示

有时在句首用 always, 否定式用 never。

- [例] Always remember to smile. “永远记住要面带微笑。”

- [例] Never tell a lie. “决不要撒谎。”

28-10 祈使句的省略形式:无动词结构。

- [例] Not so fast! “别那么快!”

- [例] This way, please! “请走这边!”

- [例] One more week, _____ we will accomplish the task.

A. or B. and C. so that D. if

答案是 B。“再给我们一周时间,我就会完成这个任务。”One more week 为祈使句 Give us one more week 的省略,成为无动词祈使句。故符合“祈使句 + and + 陈述句”结构及意义。

28-11 祈使句的委婉表达方式:

- ① 用低升调

- [例] Give me a hand. ↑ “帮个忙。”

- ② 加 please

- [例] Lend me your ruler, please. “请借用一下你的尺子。”

- ③ 加 will you

【例】Do as you are told, will you? “请按吩咐的做,好吗?”

④ 同时用 please 和 will you

【例】Please keep calm, will you? “请平静下来,好吗?”

⑤ 用 would you 则更加委婉客气

【例】Wait a minute, would you? “等一会儿,好吗?”

⑥ 加 won't you? can / can't you? / why don't you?

【例】Have a cup of tea, won't you? “来杯茶,好吗?”

【例】Give a hand, can/can't you? “帮个忙,好吗?”

【例】Wait for the next train, why don't you? “为什么不等下一趟车呢?”

即学即用

I. 单项选择

- English has large vocabulary, hasn't it?
—Yes, _____ more words and expressions and you will find it easier to read and communicate. [上海高考题]
A. Know B. Knowing C. To know D. Known
- I've never seen anyone run so fast _____ David go. [浙江高考题]
A. just watch B. just to watch C. just watching D. just having watched
- There are eight tips in Dr Roger's lecture on -sleep, and one of them is: _____ to bed early unless you think it is necessary. [重庆高考题]
A. doesn't go B. not to go C. not going D. don't go
- _____ straight on and you'll see a church. You won't miss it. [湖北高考题]
A. Go B. Going C. If you go D. When going
- _____ some of this juice — perhaps you'll like it. [北京高考题]
A. Trying B. Try C. To try D. Have tried
- _____ at the door before entering please. [北京高考题]
A. Knocked B. To knock C. Knocking D. Knock
- Don't be discouraged. _____ things as they are and you will enjoy every day of your life. [上海高考题]
A. Taking B. To take C. Take D. Taken
- _____ it with me and I'll see what I can do.
A. When left B. Leaving C. If you leave D. Leave
- _____ when you cross the road.
A. Do care B. Care C. Do be careful D. To be careful
- _____ go for the book alone, teacher.
A. Let's B. Let me C. Let we D. Allow me
- Alice, you clean the table today, _____? —But I cleaned it yesterday.

- A. do you B. will you C. didn't you D. don't you. [全国高考题]
12. — Don't forget to come to my birthday party tomorrow. — _____.
- A. I must B. I won't C. I can't D. I haven't



点石成金

1. 单项选择

1. A. 全句结构为“祈使句 + and 陈述句 (you will do...)”。
- 破折号表示思想上的突然中断,起着连接作用,接下来为一个祈使句“(省略: 如果不信)就看看 Davis 跑吧!”,因此动词 watch 应用原形。
- 句中的冒号引述其中的一条建议“不要睡早了”,故用祈使句,谓语应用动词原形 don't + go。
4. 句子的结构为“祈使句 + and + 陈述句 (you will do sth:)”,故动词用原形。
5. 句意为:“尝点儿这种果汁吧——也许你会喜欢它。”破折号起到连接作用,相当于 and。故前面为祈使句,要用原形动词。
6. D. 这是祈使句,谓语动词要用原形动词。
7. “对事情能顺其自然,你就会快乐每一天”为“祈使句 + and...”结构,应用 take。
- “把这事留给我,我将看看我能做些什么。”构成“祈使句 + and + 陈述句”的结构。
10. be careful 意为“当心,小心”,符合句意,祈使句前加 do 表示强调。
11. 由 alone 可知是“让一个人去”,故 B。而(D项中的)allow me 后需加 to 才行。
- 根据句意,前句为带主语 you 的祈使句,其反意问句,应用“will you?”。
12. 对否定祈使句的应答应用 I won't, 承诺“我不会忘记的”。

第29章

感叹句

高考热点

感叹句是高考的考点之一,主要出现在单选题及短文改错中。其考查的要点主要有:1. 感叹句中感叹词 what 和 how 的选用。2. 感叹词后接不定冠词时,冠词的位置。3. 感叹词后的名词是否可数,尤其是不可数名词与可数名词的转化。4. 感叹部分后面的主谓结构等。

高中英语语法

第一节 感叹句的概念及分类

29-1 感叹句是表示惊奇、愤怒、赞赏、喜悦等强烈感情的句子。感叹句末常用感叹号,一般用降调。感叹句主要有 what 型和 how 型两种。

[例] How beautiful she is! “她多美啊!”

[例] What a good time we had last night! “昨晚我们玩得多开心啊!”

第二节 常见的 what 型和 how 型的感叹句

29-2 what 型感叹句。

① 在这种感叹句中,“what”是限定词,修饰后面的名词。如果是单数可数名词,则用 what a(an) 修饰;如果是不可数名词或复数名词,则用 what 修饰。

[例] What an interesting film we have seen! “我们看了一部多么有趣的电影啊!”

[例] _____ role she played in the film! No wonder she has won an Oscar.

A. How interesting

B. How an interesting

[上海高考题]

C. What interesting

D. What an interesting

答案是 D。“她在影片中扮演了一个多么有趣的角色啊!怪不得她获得了奥斯卡奖。”本题的前句为感叹句,因主语 she 前出现了名词 role,而且又是可数名词单数,所以应以“what + a(n)...”引起感叹句。答案为 D。

[例] What fine drawings they are! “他们是多美的画啊!”

[例] _____ terrible weather we've been having these days!

[全国高考题]

A. How a

B. What a

C. How

D. What

答案是 D。“这些天来天气真是糟透了!”句中 weather 是不可数名词,用 what 修饰,表示感叹。

[例] What strange ideas you have! “你有多么奇怪的一些想法啊!”

句中 ideas 为复数名词,用 what 来修饰,表示感叹。

温馨提示

有时名词前可以不用形容词,要根据语境判断句意。

[例] What noise they are making! “他们吵闹得多厉害啊!”

[例] What a Chinese he is! 他是个多么了不起的中国人啊!

② 在这种感叹句中,主语和动词用正常语序。

[例] _____ from Beijing to London!

[全国高考题]

A. How long way it is

B. What a long way is it

C. How long way is it

D. What a long way it is

答案是 D。“从北京到伦敦是多长的一段路啊!”句中“way”一词为可数名词,须用 what a 来修饰,表示感叹,故排除 A、C。在 what 引导的感叹句中,主语和动词用正常语序,故排除 B。

③ 当感叹成分是介词的宾语时,介词一般置于句末。

[例] What a difficult situation we are in! “我们处于一种多么困难的境地啊!”

29-3 how 型感叹句。

① 这种感叹句用副词 how 修饰形容词、副词或动词。主语和动词用正常语序。

[例] How careless she is! “她是多么粗心啊!”

How 修饰形容词。

[例] How clearly you speak! “你讲得多么清楚啊!”

How 修饰副词

温馨提示

注意 how 型感叹句与 how 引导的疑问句在语序上的区别。

How far it is from London to Beijing! “伦敦到北京多么远啊!”

How far is it from London to Beijing? “从伦敦到北京有多远?”

[例] How it rained! “雨下得真大啊!”

How 修饰动词 rained。

② “how + 形容词”可置于带不定冠词的单数可数名词前,构成感叹句。但不能置于不可数名词或复数名词前。

[例] How strange a feeling it was! “这是一种多么奇怪的感觉!”

= What a strange feeling it was! (但不可说 “How strange feelings they are!”)

温馨提示

注意不定冠词的位置。

29-4 What 和 How 型感叹句都可以省略句中的主谓语。

[例] What an interesting story (it is)! “多有趣的故事啊!”

[例] How blind (you are)! “你们真瞎了眼!”

第三节 其他类型的感叹句

29-5 其他类型的感叹句。

除上述两个基本句型的感叹句外,陈述句、疑问句、祈使句,甚至一个分句、一个词组、一个词都可以通过强势语调、加强重音或利用表情或动作变成感叹句,表示强烈的感情。在书面语中往往使用感叹号。

[例] I wish I had your brain. “我真希望有你的脑子。”(陈述句)

[例] —What do you think of my roses? “你认为我的玫瑰怎么样?”

—Aren't they lovely! “它们是多么漂亮呀!”(疑问句)

[例] Mind your own business! “你少管闲事!”(祈使句)

[例] If only you'd asked me earlier! “要是你早一点问我就好了!”(分句)

[例] (He's won a gold medal.) Fancy that! (他获得了一枚金牌)“真想不到!”(词组)

[例] How can you be so silly! “你怎么这么傻呀!”(疑问句)

[例] Help! “救命呀!”(单词)



即学即用

先释

- _____ the students were hearing the exciting news!
A. How pleased B. What a fun C. How happily D. What pleasure.
- _____ he gave us!
A. What a useful information B. What useful informations
C. What useful information D. How useful information
- My home town has taken on a new look! _____!
A. Great changes have been taken place B. What great change
C. How it has changed D. How great it has changed
- _____ girl she is!
A. How clever a B. What clever a C. How a clever D. How clever
- _____ of people went on shopping on Sunday!
A. How crowded B. How a crowd C. What crowded D. What crowds
- _____ hawks we saw yesterday!
A. What lot of B. How lot of C. What many D. What a lot of
- _____ dollars she has in her handbag!
A. What B. What an amount of C. How D. How much
- Oh, John, _____ you gave us!
A. how a pleasant surprise B. how pleasant surprise
C. what a pleasant surprise D. what pleasant surprise

[全国高考题]

在下面每句的空白处填入适当的冠词或代词。

- A: What a cold day today!
B: _____ today!
- A: Our new classroom is big and nice.
B: _____ our new classroom is!
- A: Salt Lake City is a beautiful city.
B: _____ Salt Lake City is!
- A: These are tall buildings.
B: _____ buildings these are!
- A: They are clever children.
B: _____ they are!



点石成金

1. 点石成金

1 “听到那个消息时学生们多么高兴啊!”应用 how 修饰形容词作表语。故选 A。

2 information 是不可数名词,不能加 a 或用复数形式,也不能用 how,只能用 what。

3 How 直接修饰动词,构成感叹句。A 项不能用被动式;B 项 change 应用复数形式;D 项修饰动词 change 应用副词,而不能用形容词 great。

“how + 形容词”可置于带不定冠词的单数可数名词前,构成感叹句 = what a clever girl。

因 crowds 是复数名词,故用 what 修饰。后面有 of,不能用形容词 crowded。

用 what 修饰复数名词 hawks。故选 D。如果名词前是表示数量的词,如 many, much, little, few 修饰,如一般应用 how,故排除 C。

dollars 是可数名词,需用 what 修饰。an amount of 与不可数名词连用,可排除 B。故选 A。

surprise 是个抽象名词,但此处表示“一种”或“一个”,要用 a 来修饰。故与 what a 构成感叹句。

4. 点石成金: 点石成金,点石成金,点石成金,点石成金,点石成金

1. How; cold; it; is 2. How; big; and; nice 3. What; a; beautiful; city

4. What; tall 5. What clever; children

第30章

倒装句

高考热点

倒装是高考考点之一,除了在阅读和写作中经常见到之外,单选题也常常对此进行考查。近年来考查较多的有:1. 否定意义的词放在句首的部分倒装;2. 以 only 开头的部分倒装;3. 句型:so/ nor/neither + 助动词 + 主语;4. as 引导让步状语从句时的倒装;5. 以某些副词(如 here, there, now, then, up, down, away, in, out)开头的全部倒装;6. 以某些介词短语开头的全部倒装等。

第一节 倒装的概念及分类

30-1 自然语序与倒装语序。

英语句子通常有两种语序:一种主语在前,谓语在后,称为自然语序;另一种谓语在前,主语在后,称为倒装语序。

[例] I can speak English now. “我现在会讲英语了。”

句子的主语 I 位于谓语 can speak 之前,所以这个句子是自然语序。

[例] He opened the box and out flew a bird. “他打开了盒子,飞出了一只鸟来。”

前一分句主语 he 位于谓语动词 opened 之前,是自然语序;后一分句主语 a bird

放在动词 flew 之后,是倒装语序。

[例] Have you seen a pen? I left it here this morning. “你见到一支钢笔了吗? 我今天上午把它落在这儿啦。”

前面问句中的 have 是助动词,系谓语的一部分,位于主语 you 之前,是倒装语序。

30-2 倒装有两种:全部倒装和部分倒装。

在倒装语序中,若整个谓语都在主语之前,称为全部倒装;若谓语的一部分(通常是助动词或情态动词)位于主语之前,则称之为部分倒装。

[例] Out went the children. “孩子们出去了。”

在这个句子中,谓语 went 位于主语 the children 之前,是全部倒装。

[例] Are you still working in that factory? “你还在那个工厂工作吗?”

在这个句子中,谓语 are working 中的助动词 are 位于主语 you 之前,而谓语中的 working 仍位于主语 you 之后,因此是部分倒装。

30-3 引起倒装的两个原因:语法需要和修辞需要

引起倒装主要有两个原因:一个是由于语法结构的要求,另一个是修辞上的需要。在语法需要时,倒装是必须的,否则会出现语法错误;在修辞需要时,倒装是任意的,目的是为了强调,否则的话,还可以还原成自然语序。

[例] Do you think I could borrow your dictionary? “你看我能借一下你的字典吗?”

[全国高考题]

在这个疑问句中,助动词位于句首主语之前,是英语语法要求构成一般疑问句所必需的,因此这个句子倒装是属于语法需要。

[例] Little did he care about his own safety, though he was in great danger himself. “尽管他自己也很危险,却很少考虑个人的安危。”

在这个句子中,含有否定意义的词 little 位于句首,强调主语 he 对自己的安全“不在意”,如果不强调这一点,可以用自然语序 He cared little about his own safety, though he was in great danger himself. 因此这个句子倒装是属于修辞需要。

第二节 因语法需要而引起的倒装

30-4 多数疑问句都是倒装语序。

疑问句分为一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、选择疑问句和反意疑问句,多数疑问句都是倒装语序。

[例] Is this raincoat yours? “这件雨衣是你的吗?”

这个句子中系动词 is 位于主语 raincoat 之前,构成一般疑问句,属于根据语法需要而构成的倒装语序。

[例] Do you like playing football or basketball? “你喜欢踢足球还是打篮球?”

这个句子中助动词 do 位于主语 you 之前,构成选择疑问句,属于根据语法需要而构成的倒装语序。

[例] When shall we meet again? “我们什么时候再见面?”

这个句子中助动词 shall 位于主语 we 之前,构成特殊疑问句,属于根据语法需要而构成的倒装语序。

温馨提示

当主语是疑问词或是被疑问词所修饰的词时,就要用自然语序。

[例] Who is the tallest in your class? “你们班谁的个子最高?”

在这个句子里,主语 who 是疑问词,因此句子用自然语序。

[例] Which team won? “哪个队赢了?”

在这个句子里,疑问词 which 作主语 team 的定语,因此句子用自然语序。

30 -5 there be 句型及其变体用倒装语序。

在 there be 句型及其变体 there live (stand, lie, appear, seem, remain, exist... 等) 中,按语法需要,谓语动词全部位于主语之前,成为倒装语序。

[例] There is a beautiful lake in the center of our city. “我们的市中心有个美丽的湖泊。”

在这个句子里,谓语动词 is 位于句子主语 lake 之前,构成倒装语序。

[例] There once lived in the house an old hunter. “这所房子里曾住过一位老猎人。”

在这个句子里,谓语动词 live 位于句子主语 hunter 之前,构成倒装语序。

30 -6 省去 if 的虚拟条件从句需用倒装语序。[参见 5—3]

表示虚拟语气的条件状语从句若省去 if 时,要将 were, had 或 should 置于从句的主语之前。若从句是否定句,否定词留在主语之后。

[例] _____ fired, your health care and other benefits will not be immediately cut off. [湖北高考题]

A. Would you be

B. Should you be

C. Could you be

D. Might you be

答案是 B。“如果你要是被解雇了,你的医疗和其

他津贴都不会立即被取消。”主句虽用陈述句语气,但前半句是省略了 if 的虚拟条件句,应把 should 提至句首,而其它三个都不能这样倒装。

[例] Were I you, I would go and ask the teacher. “我要是你的话,我就会去问老师。”

在这个句子里,谓语动词 were 位于句子主语 I 之前,构成倒装语序。

[例] Had it not been for your help, I couldn't have finished my homework. “要不是你帮

忙,我不可能已经完成了工作。”

在这个句子里,谓语动词 had 位于句子主语 it 之前,构成倒装语序。

30-7 以 so, neither 或 nor 引起的表示和前面句子意思相同的句子用倒装语序。

在以 so(肯定句时)和 neither 或 nor(否定句时)引起的句子如表示和前面的句子所说的情况相同,则用倒装语序。

[例]—It's burning hot today, isn't it?

—Yes, _____ yesterday.

A. So was it B. So it was C. So it is D. So is it

答案是 A。“今天非常热,是吗?”“是的,昨天也很热。”答语讲的是昨天的情况,所以用过去时。昨天和今天一样,因此要用倒装。而不是 so it was yesterday。(意为“昨天的确如此”)。

[例]—I would never ever come to this restaurant again. The food is terrible!

—_____.

A. Nor am I B. Neither would I C. Same with me D. So do I

答案是 B。“我再也不会来这家饭店了,食物太差了。”“我也不会来了。”以 so/nor/neither 开头的倒装句在意义及时态、语态、助动词、情态动词等谓语形式上应与上文一致,第一句话中 never 表示否定,第二句也应为否定,只有 Neither would I 符合要求。

温馨提示

“So + 主语 + 助动词或情态动词”意为“确实如此”,表示对前面所提到信息的肯定。

[例]—Maggie had a wonderful time at the party.

—_____, and so did I.

A. So she had B. So had she C. So she did D. So did she

答案是 C。“玛吉在晚会上玩得很开心。”“她确实如此,我也玩得开心。”So she did,不倒装,是对前面所提到信息的肯定,did 代替在第一句中的实义动词 had(a wonderful time)。此处不表示“后者的情况也适合于前者”,不能用 So did she(她也是这样)。“So + 主语 + 助动词或情态动词”意为“确实如此”,表示对前面所提到信息的肯定。

[例]—Father, you promised!

—Well, _____. But it was you who didn't keep your word first.

A. so was I B. so did I C. so I was D. so I did

答案是 D。“爸爸,你答应过的呀!”“我是答应过的呀,但是你首先不守诺言的。”此处表示对前面提到信息的赞同,应用 so I did(did 代替上句中的行为),而不表示“后者的情况也适合于前者”。故选 D。

30-8 以 there(或 there, now, then) 开头且谓语动词是 be(或 come, go 等) 的句子用倒装语序。

在以 here, there, now, then 等副词开头的句子里, 当谓语动词是 be, come, go 等词的一般现在时形式, 而主语又是名词时, 需要用全部倒装。这种用法多见于描述性句子之中。

[例] Here are some advertisements about English language training from newspapers.

“这儿有几则选自报纸的关于英语语言培训的广告。”

副词 here 位于句首, 且 are 是谓语动词 be 的一般现在时形式, 而主语 advertisements 又是名词, 故句子用倒装语序。

[例] There goes the bell. “打铃了。”

副词 there 位于句首, 谓语动词是 go, 因此句子用倒装语序。

[例] Now comes your turn. “现在轮到你了。”

副词 now 位于句首, 谓语动词是 comes, 因此句子用倒装语序。

温馨提示

如果句子主语是代词, 则不用倒装。

[例] Here you are. “给你。”

在这个句子里, 虽然副词 here 位于句首, 且谓语动词是 be 的一般现在时形式, 但因句子主语是代词 you, 因此不用倒装语序。

试比较 [例] Here he comes. “他来了。”

主语是代词, 不用倒装。

[例] Here comes the bus. “公共汽车来了。”

主语是名词, 需要倒装。

30-9 as 引导的让步状语从句用倒装语序。[参见 23-19]

[例] _____, Carolina couldn't get the door open.

A. Try as she might

B. As she might try

C. She might as try

D. Might she as try

答案是 A。“尽管卡罗琳娜尽力了, 但没有能把门打开。”用“谓语动词 + as + 主语 + 情态动词”结构, 使句子倒装。可转化为 Though she might try. 故选 A。

温馨提示

as 引导的让步状语从句中被倒装的部分一般分为三种:表语、状语和动词原形。如果表语是单数可数名词,前边的 a(或 an)要省去。被倒装的动词原形常与 may, might, will, would 等词连用,而这些词都要保留在原来位置上[如上例]。此外,这个倒装在句首的动词原形不能是连系动词(若是连系动词,倒装的部分是表语),一般多为不及物动词。

[例] Child as he is, he speaks English well. “他虽是个孩子,但英语却说得很好。”

位于句首的表语是单数可数名词,所以要省略冠词 a。

[例] Much as I hate him, I will not kill him. “虽然我非常恨他,却不愿杀了他。”

副词 much 作状语,被倒装于句首。

30-10 直接引语前置,名词作引述句主语时,用倒装语序。

直接引语的一部分或全部放在句首,表示“某人说”(特别是主语是名词而谓语动词部分较短)时常采用倒装语序。

[例] “It is just unbelievable!” said a teacher from Guangdong province.

“一位来自广东的教师说:‘这真叫人难以置信。’”

直接引语全部放在句首,引述句的主语是名词,谓语 said 位于主语 a teacher 之前,构成倒装语序。

温馨提示

现代英语中,如果主语是人称代词,而谓语动词部分比较长,或其后跟间接宾语时,则仍用自然语序。

[例] “I wouldn't leave her out in the cold!” he said. “‘我不愿将她留在寒冷的外面!’”他说道。”

[例] “What are you up to?” she asked. “她问道:‘你在搞什么呀?’”



30-11 某些表示愿望的感叹句用倒装语序。

在某些表示祝愿的感叹句中,要使用倒装语序。

[例] May our friendship last forever! “愿我们的友谊天长地久!”

谓语中的情态动词放在主语 our friendship 之前,构成倒装语序。

[例] Long live the People's Republic of China! “中华人民共和国万岁!”

谓语动词放在主语 the People's Republic of China 之前,构成倒装语序。

第三节 因修辞需要而引起的倒装

30-12 only 及其所修饰的状语位于句首时用倒装语序。

当 only 位于句首强调状语部分时,主句要用倒装语序,从句仍用自然语序。被强调的状语一般为副词(如 then 等)、介词短语(如 in this way 等)或状语从句(如 when 从句等)。

[例] Only then _____ how much damage had been caused.

A. she realized B. she had realized C. had she realized D. did she realize

答案是 D。“只有到了那时他才意识到造成了多么大的损坏。”only then 放在句首,要用倒装语序。then 是过去时间,应用一般过去时。故选 D。

[例] _____ by keeping down costs will Power Data hold its advantage over other companies.

[浙江高考题]

A. Only B. Just C. Still D. Yet

答案是 A。“只有保持成本低,电力数据才会对别的公司具有优势。”从题干中 will Power Data 可以看出句子使用的是倒装语序,应用“only + 介词短语”开头。

[例] Only when your identity has been checked, _____.

A. you are allowed in B. you will be allowed in

C. will you allow in D. will you be allowed in

答案是 D。“只有核对了你的身份,才会让你进去。”“only + 状语从句”位于句首,主句应倒装;根据句意,应用被动语态。故选 D。

温馨提示

如果 only 强调的是主语部分,虽然位于句首,句子仍用自然语序。

[例] Only a doctor can do that. “只有医生能做这件事。”

在这个句子里,only 位于句首,但它强调的是主语 a doctor,因此仍用自然语序。

[例] Only Tom knows who did it. “只有汤姆知道这件事是谁干的。”

在这个句子里,only 位于句首,但它强调的是主语 Tom,因此仍用自然语序。

30-13 由否定词 never 等和含否定意义的短语,如 in no time 等所引起的句子用倒装语序。

由否定词或含否定意义的短语所引起的句子要用倒装语序。这类否定词和含有

否定意义的短语主要有 no, not, never, little, hardly, scarcely, barely, not until, neither... nor, not only... but also, no sooner... than, hardly... when, in no time, in no way, by no means 等。

[例] Never shall I do this again. “我再也不干这事了。”

[例] Hardly did I know about it. “我对此几乎一无所知。”

[例] I've tried very hard to improve my English. But by no means _____ with my progress.

[重庆高考题]

A. the teacher is not satisfied

B. is the teacher not satisfied

C. the teacher is satisfied

D. is the teacher satisfied

答案是 D。“我已经尽力去提高我的英语了,但是老师对我的进步却根本不满意。”“by no means”决不“表示否定意义,置于句首,应用部分倒装,后面不再用否定。故选 D。

[例] Never in my wildest dreams _____ these people are living in such poor conditions.

A. I could imagine

B. could I imagine

[安徽高考题]

C. I couldn't imagine

D. couldn't I imagine

答案是 B。“我做大梦也想象不到这些人生活在如此贫困的条件下。”否定词 never 位于句首,要用部分倒装,可排除 A 和 C; never 本身就表示否定意义,不需要再用 not。故选 B。

[例] _____ snacks and drinks, but they also brought cards for entertainment when they had a picnic in the forest.

A. Not only they brought

B. Not only did they bring

C. Not only brought they

D. Not only they did bring

答案是 B。“他们到森林中野餐时不但带了快餐和饮料,而且还带了扑克来玩。”not only... but also 结构中,not only 位于句首引导一个分句时,该分句使用部分倒装,故选 B 项。

[例] They have a good knowledge of English but little _____ they know about German.

A. have

B. did

C. had

D. do

[天津高考题]

答案是 D。“他们对英语知道得很多。但对德语了解甚少。”but 后的并列分句是用否定词 little 开头,要部分倒装。前后时态应一致,所以用助动词 do。故选 D。

[例] The old couple have been married for 40 years and never once _____ with each other.

[全国高考题]

A. they had quarreled

B. they have quarreled

C. have they quarreled

D. had they quarreled

答案是 C。“那老俩口结婚四十年了,他们一次也没争吵过。”never once 放在句首,应使用部分倒装语序。根据句意,应用现在完成时,故选 C。

温馨提示

如果 not only... but also 等引导的不是句子,而是并列主语,则句子仍用自然语序。

[例] Not only does she sing well, but also she plays the violin well. “她不仅歌唱的出色,小提琴拉得也很好。”

not only 位于句首引导句子,用倒装语序。

[例] Not only he but also I am going to attend the meeting. “不仅是他,我也要出席这个会议。”

句中,not only 只连接了两个并列主语,并没有引导句子,因此用自然语序。

[例] Not until all the fish died in the river _____ how serious the pollution was.

A. did the villagers realize

B. the villagers realized

C. the villagers did realize

D. didn't the villagers realize

答案是 A。“直到河里的鱼都死了,村民们才意识到污染是多么严重。”否定词 not until 引起的从句在句首时,后面主句用部分倒装,排除 B、C。因 until 前已有“not”,主句的动词要用肯定形式,排除 D。正常语序应为 The villagers did not realize how serious the pollution was until all the fish died in the river.

温馨提示

not until... 如果用“it is / was ... that...”强调结构中,不需要部分倒装。

[见 22—21]

30-14 当 so...that 和 such...that 位于句首时用倒装语序。

so...that 和 such...that 引导状语从句,当这种结构中的 so 或 such 位于句首时,主句要用倒装语序。

[例] _____ about wild plants that they decided to make a trip to Madagascar for further research.

[江苏高考题]

A. So curious the couple was

B. So curious were the couple

C. How curious the couple were

D. The couple was such curious

答案是 B。“这对夫妻对野生植物是如此地好奇以致他们决定做一次马达加斯加之行来做进一步研究。”原句为 so...that 复合句,“so + 形容词”强调提前,需倒装。故选 B。

[例] So little _____ with each other that the neighbouring countries could not settle their differences.

[上海高考题]

A. they agreed

B. agreed they

C. did they agree

D. they did agree

答案是 C。“他们观点一致的地方极少,以致邻国不能解决他们(之间)的分

歧。“so + 形容词或副词”位于句首,主句用部分倒装结构,故选 C 项。

30-15 当表示地点的介词短语放在句首作状语时,常用全部倒装。

表示地点的介词短语放在句首作状语时,常用全部倒装

【例】At the foot of the mountain _____.

[四川高考题]

A. a village lie B. lies a village C. does a village lie D. lying a village

答案是 B。“山脚下坐落着一个村庄。”“at the foot of the mountain”在“山脚下”是表示地点的介词短语,位于句首时,用全部倒装。故选 B。

【例】Just in front of our house _____ with a history of 1,000 years.

A. does a tall tree stand B. stands a tall tree

C. a tall tree is standing D. a tall tree stands

答案是 B。“就在我们的房前,有一棵千年大树。”just in front of our house 是表示地点的介词短语作状语,因在句首,需全部倒装。选择 B。

30-16 表示时间频率的状语位于句首,且表示强调时,用倒装语序。

当表示时间频率的状语位于句首,且表示强调时,用倒装语序。若不强调时,也可以用自然语序。常用的频率状语有 always, usually, often, now and then, once, many a time, every day, every other day, every few weeks 等。

【例】Often did we warn them not to do so. “我们曾常常警告他们不要这样做。”

频率状语 often 位于句首,且强调“常常”,故用倒装语序。若不强调的话,也可用 Often we warned them not to do so.

【例】Many a time has Mike given me good advice. “麦克曾经多次给我提出好的建议。”

30-17 某些描述情景的句子用倒装语序。

在描述情景时,为了使景象更生动,有时可以把 out, off, in, over, away, up, down 等作状语的副词放在句首,同时句子用倒装语序。这种句子的谓语动词通常为 go, come, rush, fly, fall 等表示运动的不及物动词的肯定式的一般现在时或一般过去时形式。

【例】Out ran a group of children. “一群孩子跑了出来。”

out 位于句首作状语,谓语 ran 置于句子主语 a group of children 之前,构成倒装语序(全部倒装)

【例】The door opened and in came an old woman. “门开了,进来一位老太太。”

温馨提示

在这类句子中,如果主语是人称代词而不是名词时,应用自然语序。

【例】Off he went. “他走了。”

此处尽管副词 off 位于句首作状语,但主语是人称代词 he,因此仍用自然语序。

30-18 有时为了保持句子平衡,而使用倒装语序。

有时为了使句子结构平衡(如句子主语太长等)或是为了强调句子的表语、宾语或状语,还有时为了使上下文衔接得更紧密,也常用倒装语序

[例] Among the students sat an old man with gray hair. “在这些学生中坐着一位头发花白的老人。”

在这个句子里,介词短语 among these students 位于句首作状语,主语 man 后面有一个介词短语作后置定语,故谓语动词 was 置于主语之前以保持句子平衡,用倒装语序。

[例] On top of the books _____ the photo album you're looking for.

[上海高考题]

A. is

B. are

C. has

D. have

答案是 A。“你正在寻找的影集就在那些书之上。”介词短语放在句首,用完全倒装结构。原句为: The photo album you're looking for is on top of the books, 主语 the photo album 为单数,谓语句应用“is + 介词短语”。故选 A 项。



即学即用

I. 单项选择

- In the dark forests _____, some large enough to hold several English towns.
A. stand many lakes
B. lie many lakes [辽宁高考题]
C. many lakes lie
D. many lakes stand
- Of the making of good books there is no end; neither _____ any end to their influence on man's lives.
A. there is
B. there are
C. is there
D. are there [广东高考题]
- Maybe you have been to many countries, but nowhere else _____ such a beautiful palace.
A. can you find
B. you could find
C. you can find
D. could you find [辽宁高考题]
- Never before _____ in greater need of modern public transport than it is today.
A. has this city been
B. this city has been [上海高考题]
C. was this city
D. this city was
- I failed in the final examination last term and only then _____ the importance of studies.
A. I realized
B. I had realized
C. had I realized
D. did I realize [重庆高考题]
- Only after my friend came _____.
A. did the computer repair
B. he repaired the computer [福建高考题]
C. was the computer repaired
D. the computer was repaired

7. I finally got the job I dreamed about. Never in all my life _____ so happy!
A. did I feel B. I felt C. I had felt D. had I felt [北京高考题]
8. _____ can you expect to get a pay rise. [北京春季高考题]
A. With hard work B. Although work hard
C. Only with hard work D. Now that he works hard
9. Not only _____ interested in football but _____ beginning to show an interest in it.
A. the teacher himself is; all his students are [上海高考题]
B. the teacher himself is; are all his students
C. is the teacher himself; are all his students
D. is the teacher himself; all his student are
10. Only in this way _____ to make improvement in the operation system. [海高考试题]
A. you can hope B. you did hope C. can you hope D. did you hope
11. _____ homework did we have to do that we had no time to take a rest. [福建高考题]
A. So much B. Too much C. Too little D. So little
12. _____ it rain tomorrow, we would have to put off the visit to the Yangpu Bridge.
A. Were B. Should C. Would D. Will [上海高考题]
13. Not until I began to work _____ how much time I had wasted. [全国高考题]
A. didn't I realize B. did I realize C. I did realize D. I realized
14. _____, he managed to finish it on time.
A. The job was hard B. Hard as was the job
C. Hard as the job was D. Hard was the job
15. —You ought to have given them some advice. —_____, but who cared what I said.
A. So I should have B. So ought you C. So did you D. So I do
- II 倒装句在英语中有一类句型, 请完成下列各题。
1. My father seldom has a cold. So does my mother.
2. Here is some live fish for you.
3. So badly did she do her homework that the teacher punished her.
4. It is warmer today. So is it.
5. Gone are the days when we were poor.
6. Only by reading extensively you can widen your knowledge.
7. Rarely have we heard of such a clever person.
8. In the wall, there are two windows.
9. Would the rain stop, the crops would be saved.
10. "Where is your teacher?" "Oh, here he comes."



点石成金

I. 单项选择

1. 表地点的介词短语置于句首, 句子倒装; 湖泊位于某处, 应用 lie.
neither 在分句的句首, 应用部分倒装, 表示“也一样不”。此处 any end 为单数。
2. 否定词 nowhere else 在句首, 要用部分倒装语序。表示现在情况, 应用 can.
never 位于句首表示强调, 应用部分倒装语序; before 常和现在完成时连用。故选 A。
3. and 后一分句以 only 开头, 须倒装; 该句的谓语是过去某时的动作, 须使用一般过去时。
4. only 位于句首, 主句应部分倒装; repair 为及物动词, 应用被动语态。故选 C。
5. 句首的“never”是否定词, 要求用倒装语序, 排除 B 和 C。“一生中从没感到如此快乐”是在“got the job”以前, 因此要用过去完成时, 故选 D。
6. 从后面倒装结构“can you expect”就能选出 C。only 开头, 句子倒装。
7. 由 not only 引起的第一个分句应用倒装语序, 而 but (also) 引起的第二个句子则用自然语序, 故答案为 D。
8. “only + 状语”放在句首, 要部分倒装。再根据句意和时态, 答案应该为 C。
9. 根据后面的倒装结构 did we have 可知应是“so + 形容词或副词”位于句首。由语境“我们没有时间休息”可判断出“作业多”。
10. “如果明天下雨的话, 我们只好推迟参观杨浦大桥。”这是个与将来事实相反的虚拟条件句, 条件从句的谓语只能用 Should, 相当于 if it should rain tomorrow, 故排除 A、C 和 D。
11. not until 位于句首后面的主句用部分倒装, 且不能用否定词 not (不与前面的 not 重复)。
12. 应用 as 引导让步状语从句, hard 提前, 但从句的主谓语并不颠倒, 相当于 Though / Although the job was hard, ...
13. A. 由答语的后部分“谁在乎我说的话”可知, 应用 A, 表示“我的确本应该这样”, 而是事实没有。不表示“也怎么样”。

II. 辨别正误

1. So 改为 Neither 或 Nor.

2. is 改为 are

3. ✓

4. is it 改为 it is

5. ✓

6. you can 改为 can you

7. ✓

8. ✓

9. Would 改为 Should

10. ✓

第31章

句子成分与词类的关系



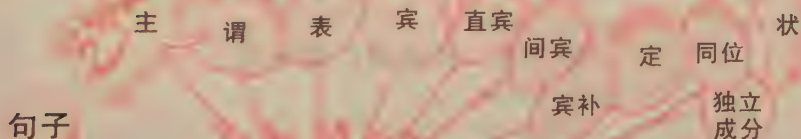
高考热点

虽然近几年的高考中一般不直接考查句子成分,但他们在英语学习中还是非常重要的。只有了解和掌握句子的结构,才能正确理解句子的意义,写出符合语法的句子,真正提高运用英语的能力和水平。

高中英语语法

第一节 英语句子的成分

31-1 英语句子的成分:主语、谓语、表语、宾语、直接宾语和间接宾语、复合宾语、定语、同位语、状语和独立成分。



[例] George is a born leader. “乔治是个天生的领导者。”

主语 George; 谓语动词 is; 表语 a born leader; 定语 born。

[例] Tom is a sports fan and a lover of the outdoors. “汤姆是个运动迷,喜欢户外运动。” 533

主语 Tom; 谓语动词 is; 表语 a sports fan and a lover; 定语 sports 和 of the outdoors.

- [例] Susan, a biology student, has a particular interest in wildlife. “苏珊,一位生物学的学生,对野生动物有着特别的兴趣。”

主语 Susan; 同位语 a biology student; 谓语 has; 宾语 a particular interest 定语 in wildlife and particular.

- [例] She would like to study the environment and wild animals. “她想研究环境和野生动物。”

主语 she; 谓语 would like to study (复合谓语); 宾语 the environment and wild animals.

- [例] Someone called me up in the middle of the night. “有人在半夜给我打来电话。”

[全国高考题]

主语 someone; 谓语 called up; 宾语 me; 状语 in the middle of the night.

- [例] Allan goes everywhere with Birgitta Anderson, a 54-year-old secretary. “艾伦和伯吉塔·安德森,一位54岁的秘书,哪儿都去。”

主语 Allan; 谓语 goes; 状语 everywhere; 状语 with Birgitta Anderson; 同位语 a 54-year-old secretary; 定语 54-year-old.

- [例] The graying of America has made usa very different society. “美国的老龄化给我们造成了一个完全不同的社会。”

主语 The graying of America; 谓语 has made; 间接宾语 us; 直接宾语 a very different society; 定语 of America; 状语 very.

- [例] People called him a dreamer. “人们叫他梦想家。”

主语 People; 谓语 called; 宾语 him; 宾语补足语 a dreamer.

- [例] Among these people was a man named Alfred Butts. “在这些中间有一个男人,他的名字是阿尔雷德·巴兹。”

表语 Among these people; 谓语 was; 主语 a man; 定语 named Alfred Butts.

第二节 英语词汇的分类

31-2 英语词汇可分为两种十类。一种是可以在句子中独立担任成分的实词,即名词、代词、动词、数词、形容词和副词;另一种是不能在句子中独立担任成分的虚词,即冠词、介词、连词和感叹词。

词汇分类表

词类	英语名词 (缩写形式)	作用	例词
名词	The Noun (<i>n.</i>)	表示人或事物的名称	boy 男孩 book 书
代词	The Pronoun (<i>pron.</i>)	代替名词、数词等	we 我们 many 很多
动词	The Verb (<i>v.</i>)	表示动作或状态	go 去 be 是
数词	The Numeral (<i>num.</i>)	表示数量或顺序	one 一 first 第一
形容词	The Adjective (<i>a., adj.</i>)	用以修饰名词,表示人或事物的特征	tall 高的 good 好的
副词	The Adverb (<i>ad., adv.</i>)	用以修饰动词、形容词、副词等,表示动作特征或状态特征	slowly 慢慢地 very 非常
冠词	The Article (<i>art.</i>)	用在名词前,帮助说明名词所指的人或事物	a, an 一 the 这、那
介词	The Preposition (<i>prep.</i>)	用在名词、代词等的前面,说明它与别的词之间的关系	in 在…… 里面 about 关于
连词	The Conjunction (<i>conj.</i>)	用来连接词与词、短语与短语或者句与句	and 和 when 当……时
感叹词	The Interjection (<i>interj.</i>)	表示说话时的感情或口气	oh 哦 ah 啊

第三节 句子成分与词类的关系

31-3 英语中 9 种句子成分与 10 大词类之间有相对固定的对应关系。搞清这些语法关系对于理解和表达都是很重要的。

[例] The story is written by an _____ (澳大利亚) engineer.

答案是 Australian。“这个故事是一位澳大利亚的工程师写的。”应填词在句中作定语,修饰名词 engineer,要用形容词 Australian。填名词“Australia”不能得分。

[例] The National Games were well _____ (组织).

答案是 organized 或 organised。“全国运动会组织得很好。”“组织”在句中作谓语,应该用动词;运动会应是“被”组织,应该用动词的过去分词形式。不能错写成名词“组织 organization”。

英语句子成分与词类关系一览表

句子成分		主语	谓语 动词	表语	宾语	宾语补 足语	定语	同位语	状语	独立 成分
词类等										
实词	名词	√	×	√	√	√	√	√	○	√
	代词	√	×	√	√	×	√	√	×	○
	动词	×	√	×	×	×	×	×	×	○
	形容词	○	×	√	○	√	√	√	○	○
	副词	×	×	√	○	○	○	×	√	○
	数词	√	×	√	√	×	√	√	×	×
虚词	冠词	×	×	×	×	×	√	×	×	×
	介词	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
	连词	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
	感叹词	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	√
短语	名词短语	√	×	√	√	√	√	√	√	√
	介词短语	×	×	√	×	√	√	×	√	×
	独立主格结构	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	√	○

句子成分		主语	谓语 动词	表语	宾语	宾语补 足语	定语	同位语	状语	独立 成分
词类等										
非谓	动名词(短语)	√	×	√	√	×	√	√	×	×
语动	分词(短语)	○	×	√	○	√	√	×	√	○
词	不定式(短语)	√	×	√	√	√	√	×	√	○
从句	从句	√	×	√	√	×	√	√	√	○

注：“√”表示常用的；“×”表示一般不用的；“○”表示虽不多用，但有时也用的。

【例】Several new railways are under _____ (建设) in China.

全国高考题

答案是 construction。“在中国，有几条新的铁路正在建设中。”“under”是介词，所填词应为介词的宾语，应为名词。不能填“build”，这是动词原形，不能作宾语。

【例】The students were listening to the teacher _____ (专心).

全国高考题

答案是 attentively。“学生们正在专心地听老师讲。”“专心”是修饰动词“听”，作状语，应该用副词形式。不能错用名词 attention 或形容词 attentive。

【例】改错：They eager to know everything about China.

全国高考题

答案是 They are eager...“他们渴望了解中国的一切...”句中的 eager 是形容词，只能作表语，因此句中缺了谓语动词。必须在主语和表语之间加个连系动词“are”。

【例】改错：I'd like to your pen friend, and get to know more about your country.

[全国高考题]

答案是 I'd like to be/become your pen friend...“我很想成为你的笔友，更多地了解你们国家。”句型“I'd like to”中的 to 是不定式的符号，其后不可跟名词，要跟一个动词原形才行。实际上是不定式“to be your pen friend”作动词 like 的宾语。

【例】改错：I live in Beijing, where is the capital of China.

全国高考题

答案是 which is the capital of China。“我住在北京，中国的首都。”猛一看，看不出错误，因为 Beijing 是个地点，用 where 去指代地点是常见的现象；但仔细分析，“Beijing”在从句中应该做主语，故应该用关系代词 which 做主语，而不能用关系副词 where 做主语，因为副词不能用做主语。

【例】改错：I look forward to hear from you soon.

1997 年高考试题

答案是 to hearing from...“我盼望着很快能收到你的来信。”“盼望 look forward to”这个固定搭配中的 to 是介词，其后的宾语不能用动词原形 hear，因为动词不能做宾语，须将其改为动名词 hearing，才能作介词的宾语。

[例]改错: Play football not only makes us grow up tall and strong but also...

答案是 Playing football... “踢足球不仅能使我们长得又高又壮,而且...” “play football” 是“动词+宾语”结构,动词原形不能做主语,改成动名词短语形式才能做主语。

31-4 主语是句子所谈的对象,它可以由名词、代词、数词、动名词(短语)、不定式或从句构成。

[例] Todd was working at his gas station at night when he heard over the radio that a bank in Long Island had been broken into by an armed man who had killed the night guard and got away with \$150,000. “托德当晚正在他的加油站上班,这时他听收音机广播说,长岛一家银行被一武装分子闯入,夜班警卫被杀,15万美元被抢。”

[全国高考题]

主句和各分句中的主语分别是 Todd(专有名词), he(人称代词), a bank(普通名词), who(关系代词)。

[例] Today 10 out of every 100 Americans are over 65. “今天,每 100 个美国人中有 10 个人超过了 65 岁。”

[全国高考题]

句中主语由 10(数词)构成。

[例] Owning a dog means yet more taxes. “养狗意味着纳更多的税。”

[全国高考题]

句中主语由 Owning a dog(动名词短语)构成。

[例] It can be learnt from the text that the aging of the population in America has changed people's understanding of age. “由课文可知,在美国,人口的老龄化已经改变了人们对年龄的认识。”

[全国高考题]

句中主语由 It(作形式主语)和 that... age(主语从句)(真正的主语)构成。

31-5 句子的谓语说明主语的情况。它有两种形式:简单谓语和复合谓语。简单谓语由一个动词或动词短语表示;复合谓语由两部分组成,分为三种类型:情态动词+不带 to 的不定式;动词+不定式;系动词+表语。



[例] Suppose you work in a big firm and find English very important for your job because you often deal with foreign businessmen. “假定你在一家大公司工作,因为你要经常同外国商人打交道,因此你发现英语对你的工作很重要。”

句中谓语: Suppose, work, find(单个动词) deal with(短语动词)。

[例] Now you are looking for a place where you can improve your English especially your spoken English. “现在你正在寻找一个地方,以提高你的英语水平,尤其是口语。”

[全国高考题]

句子的谓语: are looking for(动词短语), can improve(情态动词+不带to的不定式)

[例] I watched until she was out of sight and the nurse had turned back to writing in the big book. “我看着直至她在我的视野中消失,那位护士又回到那本大部头书中的作品里去了。”

[全国高考题]

句中谓语由 watched(单个动词), was... sight(连系动词+表语)和 had turned back(助动词+动词短语)构成。

31-6 句中表语表示主语的特征、状态身份等。也可以说它是一种主语补足语。它位于连系动词之后,与之构成系表结构。可以用作表语的有:名词、代词、数词、形容词、不定式(短语)、动名词(短语)、分词(短语)、介词短语、从句等。

[例] “Most people don't seem to mind Allan,” says Birgitta, who thinks he is wonderful. “大多数人似乎并不介意艾伦,”伯吉塔说,她认为他实在棒极了。”

[全国高考题]

句中表语: to mind Allan(不定式短语), wonderful(形容词)

[例] Merlin's work was making musical instruments. “默林的工作是制作乐器。”

[全国高考题]

句中表语由动名词短语 making musical instrument 构成。

[例] The reason is that there was no suitable work for him. “原因是没有适合他的工作。”

句中表语由 that... him(表语从句)构成。

[例] But Ella Fant, who was filled with happiness, shouted at the top of her voice: ‘Look at them! They are all out of step except my John!’ “但是埃拉·范特,她满心欢喜,高声喊道:‘瞧啊!除了我的约翰,他们全乱了步伐!’”

[全国高考题]

句中表语: filled with happiness(过去分词短语), out of step(介词短语)

温馨提示

有些副词如: here, there, in, out, away 等也可作表语。

[例] Sorry, Mary isn't in. “对不起,玛丽不在家。”

31-7 宾语是动作的承受者,可以用作宾语的有名词、代词、数词、名词短语、不定式(短语)、动名词(短语)、名词化的分词、从句等。

[例] Merlin began to think how to make a grand entrance at the party. He had an idea. He

thought he would get a lot of attention if he could skate into the room. “默林开始考虑如何在晚宴上来个辉煌的入场式。他有了一个主意。他想如果他像溜冰似的溜进屋子,定能引人注目。” [全国高考题]

第1句动词 began 的宾语是不定式短语“to think... party”;其中:不定式复合结构“how to make...”作 think 的宾语,名词短语“a grand entrance”作 make 的宾语,名词“the party”作介词 at 的宾语。第2句动词 thought 的宾语是从句“(that) he would... room”;其中: get 的宾语为 a lot of attention,而 attention 又是介词 of 的宾语, the room 是介词 into 的宾语。

[例] 改错: Also, the sport teaches us the important of obedience.

答案是把形容词 important 改为名词 importance。“而且,运动也教会我们服从的重要性。”作宾语时一般不用形容词。

温馨提示

“the + 形容词”表示“一类人”或“一类事”时,已被名词化,可作宾语、主语。

[例] I hate _____ when people talk with their mouths full.

A. it B. that C. these D. them

答案是 A。“我不喜欢人们吃着饭还说话。”it(人称代词)用作某些动词或介词的宾语,词义含糊,构成习语,如: Keep at it! 别松劲! You'll catch it! 你可小心点儿!

[例] I continued knocking at the door. “我继续敲门。”

句子的宾语是 knocking... door(动名词短语)。

[例] What do we know about Mary Cassatt's marriage? “我们对玛丽·卡萨丝的婚姻有何了解?”

疑问代词 What 作谓语动词 know 的宾语。

[例] The railway owes me £ 12. “铁路部门欠我十二英镑。”

句中 me(人称代词)和 £ 12(名词)分别作谓语动词 owes 的间接宾语和直接宾语。本句还可改成: The railway owes £ 12 to me.

[例] Each time, he told himself that sometimes the truth causes too many problems.

“每次他都告诉自己,真话有时也会带来太多的问题。”

句中 told 的宾语有 himself(反身代词)(间接宾语),和 that... problem(宾语从句)(直接宾语);从句中 causes 的宾语是 too many problems(名词)。

[例] But you didn't get one for your daughter, did you? “但是你没有为你的女儿买票,对吧?”

不定代词 one 用作句子谓语动词 get 的直接宾语。

[例] Give it to me. “把它给我。”

人称代词 *it* 作句子谓语动词 *give* 的直接宾语。

31-8 复合宾语由两部分构成：“宾语 + 宾语补足语”。宾语由名词或代词担任；用作宾语补足语的主要有：名词、形容词、可作表语的副词、介词短语、分词、不定式。

【例】The best time for us is setting the birds free. [全国高考题]

“对我们来说最快乐的时候就是将鸟放飞。”

句子的复合宾语是 *the birds free* (名词 + 形容词)。

【例】What made it possible for Mark to be found on the buoy?

“是什么使得马克有可能在浮标上被人们找到?”

谓语动词 *made* 的复合宾语：*it possible* (代词 + 形容词)，*it* 用作形式上的宾语；*for Mark to be found on the buoy* (不定式复合结构) 是真正的宾语。

【例】They had their arms and legs cut off. “他们的手臂和腿被砍掉。” [全国高考题]

句子谓语动词的复合宾语是：*their arms and legs cut off* (名词 + 过去分词)

【例】Soon they found themselves in a thick fog.

“很快他们便发现自己身处浓雾之中。”

句中复合宾语是 *themselves in a thick fog* (代词 + 介词短语)

【例】Sam let him in all right. [全国高考题]

“山姆总算让他进去了。”

句中复合宾语是 *him in* (代词 + 副词)。

【例】Dr Johnson invited Dr Turner to have dinner with him.

“约翰逊大夫邀请特纳大夫同他一起进餐。”

句中复合宾语是 *Dr Turner to have dinner* (名词 + 不定式)。

【例】They make sunlight dance on the wall with a hand mirror.

“他们用一面小镜子让阳光在墙上跳舞。”

句中复合宾语是 *sunlight dance* (名词 + 不定式)。

温馨提示

make, see, hear, watch, feel, notice, have, let 这类动词，常用一个不带 *to* 的不定式构成复合宾语。

31-9 定语是用来说明名(代)词的品质与特征的词或一组词。可以用作定语的有形容词、名词、代词、数词、副词、不定式(短语)、动名词(短语)、分词(短语)、介词短语或从句等。

【例】Buses going to the town center will leave the main hall.

“开往市中心的公共汽车将驶离主厅。”

[全国高考题]

句中定语:going to the town center(现在分定语词短语)和 main(形容词)。

- [例] All Students who want to use the library borrowing services must have a new summer card. [全国高考题]

“所有想使用图书馆借阅服务的同学都必须办理一个新的夏季书卡。”

句中定语: All(形容词), who... services/(定语从句), library(名词), borrowing(动名词), new(形容词)和 summer(名词)。

- [例] Merlin received an invitation to attend a fancy dress ball.

“默林收到一个参加化装舞会的请柬。”

句中定语: to attend... ball(不定式短语)。

- [例] The doctor, whose name was Johnson, lived in London.

“那位医生住在伦敦,他的名字是约翰逊。”

句中定语: whose... Johnson(非限制性定语从句)。

- [例] He is going to be the best soldier there ever was.

“他将成为至今最优秀的士兵。”

句中定语: the best(形容词最高级)和 there ever was(定语从句)。

- [例] Jim Hatfield has three boys and his wife died.

“吉姆·哈特菲尔德有三个男孩子,他妻子去世了。”

句中定语: three(数词)和 his(形容词性物主代词)。

- [例] The Bismark's first torpedo hit the Hood.

“俾斯麦号的第一枚鱼雷击中了胡德号。”

句中主语 torpedo 的定语是 Bismark's(名词所有格)和 first(数词)。

31-10 状语修饰动词、形容词、副词、短语、从句以及全句。可用作状语的有副词、数词短语、形容词短语、不定式短语、分词短语、介词短语、从句等。

- [例] Don't be frightened by the television camera.

Just speak _____ (自然地). [全国高考题]

答案是 naturally。“不要被电视摄影机吓着了。尽量自然地讲话。”修饰动词 speak,要用副词 naturally,而不能用形容词 natural 或名词 nature。

- [例] 改错: Unfortunate, there are too many people in my family. [全国高考题]

答案是把 Unfortunate 改为 Unfortunately。“不幸的是我家人口太多。”作状语要

用副词,一般不用形容词。

- 【例】According to one U. S. study, women are more truthful than men, and honesty increases as we get older. [全国高考题]

“根据美国的一项研究,妇女比男人更真诚,而且人的诚实与年龄同步增长。”

方式状语:According to... study(介词短语);比较状语:more... than men(比较状语从句);时间状语:as we get older(时间状语从句)。

- 【例】John got married six months ago and like many young people these days, they are struggling to make a home at a time when the cost of living is very high. [全国高考题]

“约翰六个月以前结的婚,并像当今许多年轻人一样,在这样一个生活费用很高的年代里,他们也在奋力营造自己的家。”

时间状语:six months ago(数词短语), at a time(介词短语), these days(名词短语);方式状语:like... people(介词短语);目的状语:to make a home(不定式短语);程度状语:very(副词)。

- 【例】European football is played in 80 countries _____ it the most popular sport in the world. [全国高考题]

A. making B. makes C. made D. to make

答案是A。“八十个国家踢欧式足球,它成了世界上流行的运动。”句中由介词短语构成的地点状语有两个:in 80 countries, in the world. making... world是现在分词短语做伴随情况状语。

- 【例】Down fell the mirror, breaking to pieces. “镜子掉下来,摔成了碎片。” [全国高考题]

地点状语:down(副词);伴随情况状语:breaking to pieces(现在分词短语)。

- 【例】Arriving late, he explained that traffic had been bad. “他到得很迟,解释说交通状况很糟。” [全国高考题]

现在分词短语 arriving late 在句中用作时间状语。

温馨提示

(1)某些名词短语也可用作状语。如:在 He's two years old. 中,名词短语 two years 作程度状语,修饰 old。

(2)一个句子中可以有多个状语从不同侧面去修饰,但不可重复赘述。

- 【例】Whenever I see them I will often think of my English teacher.

“只要我看见他们,我就要想到我的英语老师。”(改错)

答案:去掉 often。因为 whenever 状语从句所表示的含义与 often 所表示的含义重复,属于赘述。

31-11 当两个指同一事物的句子成分放在同等位置时,一个句子成分可被用来说明或解释另一句子成分,前者就叫做后者的同位语。可用作同位语的词语有名词、代词、数词、动名词、名词短语、从句等。

- [例] Samuel Pepys, the famous writer, wrote about the fire. “著名作家塞缪尔·佩皮斯描述了这场火”。

全国高考题

句中 the famous writer(名词短语)作句子主语 Samuel Pepys 的同位语。

- [例] It seems that the writer of the text was most sorry for the fact that many famous buildings were destroyed. “似乎本文的作者对许多著名的建筑被毁这一事实感到非常的惋惜。”

句中 that... destroyed(同位语从句)作名词 the fact 的同位语。

- [例] Catalogue cards usually give the shelf-mark, that is, the Dewey number which helps people to find where the books are. “目录卡通常列出架号,亦即杜威号码,它帮助人们找到书的处所。”

全国高考题

句中同位语是 the Dewey number... are。



温馨提示

同位语与其所说明的名词之间常插入一些词语,常用的有 namely(即), that is(亦即), that is to say(也就是说), in other words(换言之), or(或), for example(例如), such as(比如), in particular(特别是)。

- [例] Praia, the capital of Cape Verde, is on Sao Tiago. However, the largest city, Mindelo, is on Sao Vicente, the sixth largest island of the group. “佛得角首都普拉亚在圣地亚哥岛。然而,最大的城市明德卢却在群岛的第六大岛屿圣维森特岛上。”

全国高考题

句中主语 Praia 和 the largest city 的同位语分别是: the capital of Cape Verde 和 Mindelo。

- [例] Tom felt that he knew everybody's business better than they knew it _____.

A. themselves B. oneself C. itself D. himself

答案是 A。“汤姆觉得对别人的事他比人家自己都更清楚。”句中的 themselves(自身代词)用做主语 they 的同位语,它的位置也可以在 they 之后。

31-12 独立成分与句子的其他成分没有语法上的联系,能用作独立成分的有:感叹语、呼语、插入语。

- [例] Hi, Tracy, you look tired. “嗨,特蕾西,你看上去疲倦极了。”

全国高考题

感叹词 Hi 和呼语 Tracy 用作独立成分,其中呼语 Tracy 还可置于句末。

- [例] What's more, their parents allow them to stay out. “此外,他们的父母还让他们呆在户外。”

全国高考题

从句式插入语 What's more 在句中用作独立成分。

【例】As a result, 'Scrabble' became a big success in the United States. “结果, ‘拼字’在美国大获成功。”

插入语 As a result 在句中用作独立成分。

【例】Oh, I'm sure it's nothing serious. “哦, 我确信没啥严重的情况。”

感叹词 Oh 在句中用作插入语。

即学即用

I. 划出句子的主语, 并说明其构成方式

1. It has been a pleasure to show you round.
2. It will freeze hard in most of the country, they said.
3. What he said annoyed her.
4. Collecting stamps is one of his hobbies.
5. Isn't it rather foolish to write about oneself?
6. It's good you've got the machine fixed.
7. Two-thirds of the students are girls.
8. It hasn't been announced when they are leaving for home.
9. It was nice seeing them again after so many years.
10. Whether she will join us is still a question.

II. 划出句中的定语并说明其构成方式

1. The population of Hong Kong is over 4.5 million.
2. The currency is called the Hong Kong dollar.
3. It is also a very popular tourist place.
4. It is an interesting place and has a long history.
5. People from many countries came to live and work in Macau.
6. The church of St. Paul has only the front wall with many steps leading up to it.
7. When you are tired and hot, there are small cool gardens to rest in.
8. Nearby are some islands, which are also nice to visit.
9. There's not much of the old Hong Kong left.
10. Hong Kong is also a good place for Chinese cooking.

III. 划出句中的状语并说明其构成方式

1. The ship is really a floating hotel, almost a small floating town.
2. These days many people can take their cars across the channel on a hovercraft.
3. It does not go up and down in the water like a boat.
4. Will you call me when you get there, please?
5. You'll see it yourself if you keep an eye open.
6. They won't give you any help even if you ask them politely.

7. Thanks all the same.
8. They went there to trade with China.
9. He stood there for an hour watching the game.
10. He came in, followed by his dog.



点石成金

I. 划出句子的主语,并说明其构成方式

1. 真正的主语:不定式短语 to show you round;形式上的主语:it
主语:人称代词 It, they
3. 主语:主语从句 What he said;人称代词 he
4. 主语:动名词短语 Collecting stamps
真正的主语:不定式短语 to write about oneself;形式上的主语:it
形式上的主语:It;真正的主语:主语从句(that) you've got ... fixed
7. 主语:数词短语 Two thirds of the students
形式上的主语:It;真正的主语:主语从句 when ... home
9. 形式上的主语:It;真正的主语:动名词短语 seeing... years
10. 主语:主语从句 Whether... us

II. 划出句中的定语并说明其构成方式

1. of Hong Kong (介词短语)
popular, tourist (形容词)
2. Hong Kong (名词)
interesting, long (形容词)
5. from many countries (介词短语), many (形容词)
6. of St. Paul (介词短语), front (名词), with many steps (介词短语), leading up to it (现在分词短语)
7. to rest in (不定式短语), small, cool (形容词)
8. which are al so nice to visit (非限制性定语从句), some (形容词)
9. of the old Hong Kong (介词短语), left (过去分词)
10. good (形容词), for Chinese cooking (介词短语)

III. 划出句中的状语并说明其构成方式

1. really (副词), almost (副词)
3. these days (名词短语), across the channel (介词短语), on a hovercraft (介词短语)
4. up and down (副词短语), in the water (介词短语), like a boat (介词短语)
4. when you get there (时间状语从句)
5. if you keep an eye open (条件状语从句)
6. even if you ask them politely (让步状语从句)
7. all the same (形容词短语)
8. to trade with China (不定式短语)
9. for an hour (介词短语), watching the game (现在分词短语)
10. followed by his dog (过去分词短语)

第32章

标点符号、斜体及大写

高考热点

高考现在不直接考查标点符号(多结合非谓语动词和非限制性定语从句[参见上述章节])及大小写,但它们在英语学习中也还是比较重要的。有的学生平时不注重基本功的掌握,经常乱用标点符号及大小写。在高考作文中此类错误太多,势必会影响成绩,应引起同学们的重视。

第一节 标点符号

32-1 句号(.)

① 用于陈述句或部分祈使句之末。

【例】I see . “我明白了。”

【例】Look out for white cars . “留心白色的小卧车。”

温馨提示

英语的句号是个实心的点,而汉语的句号是个空心的圈。

② 用于缩写词之后。

【例】Mrs . Green telephoned just now. “格林太太刚才打电话了。”

温馨提示

当句子的最后一个单词后有表示缩写的点(.)时,不再另加句号。

【例】Choice of morning or evening classes, 3 hours per day, Mon. - Fri. “可选上早晨的

班或晚上的班,每天三小时,从星期一到星期五。”

[例] Entrance exams: June 1 and Dec. 1. “入学考试:6月1日和12月1日。”

直接引语在句首或句中时,直接引语末原有的句号要改用逗号。

[例] “He’s my fourth child,” she says. “他是我的第四个孩子。”她说道。

[例] “You are welcome,” the girl said. “女孩说:‘不用谢。’”

32-2 问号(?)

① 用于疑问句后。

[例] Which do you like better? “你更喜欢哪一个?”

[例] Do you know what time it was? “你知道当时是几点钟吗?”

温馨提示

陈述句后面不能用问号。

[例] He asked me who was the tallest. “他问我谁最高。”

② 用于 yes 之后,表示询问对方“有什么事?”,或表示对对方有怀疑,或鼓励对方讲下去;或用于 really 等词之后表示惊讶。

[例] ‘Yes?’ Todd asked while making up his mind for sure. “‘什么事?’托德问道,同时心里打定了主意。”

[例] Really? But I haven’t heard about it before. “真的?我以前从未听说过。”

③ 用于句中某一词之后,常放于圆括号之内,表示对一词、一事或一数字等的疑问。

[例] Chaucer (1340? —1440) was one of the greatest writers. “乔叟(1340? ~1440)是最伟大的作家之一。”

32-3 感叹号(!)

① 用于各种类型的感叹句末。

[例] What a long way it is from Beijing to London! “从北京到伦敦真远啊!”

[全国高考题]

[例] It is just unbelievable! “真是不可思议!”

[全国高考题]

[例] Hands up and get out! “举起手,滚出去!”

[全国高考题]

② 用于富于强烈感叹色彩的单词或短语后。

[例] Help! “救命!”

[例] It’s a fine hospital. But such floors! “那是所好医院。但地板真脏!”



[全国高考题]

32-4 逗号(,)

① 用来连接句中的平行成分。

[例] General English in all four skills: listening, speaking, reading, and writing. “普通英语的四种技能:听、说、读、写。”

全国高考题

② 用来把非限制性的同位语或定语与句子的其他部分分开。

[例] He saw the number, LJR1939. “他看见了车牌号码, LJR1939。”

[全国高考题]

[例] The Olympic Games, first played in 776 B. C., did not include women players until 1912. “奥运会,首次于公元前 776 年举行,直到 1912 年才有女运动员参赛。”

[全国高考题]

③ 用来把独立成分、呼语或语气词等与句子的其他部分分开。

[例] He's the tallest man in the world, I think. “我想他是世界上最高的人。”

[例] Now, Jimmy, did you get a good view of the accident? “那么,吉米,你是否看清了事故发生的情况?”

[全国高考题]

④ 用来把状语与句子的其他部分分开。

[例] In the 1930s, a lot of people in the USA were out of work. “20 世纪 30 年代,美国有许多人失业。”

[全国高考题]

[例] One day, walking along the sands towards his boat, Crusoe saw in the sand the mark of a man's foot. “一天,克鲁索沿着沙滩走向他的小船时,看到沙地上有一个人的脚印。”

[例] The teacher came in, book in hand. “老师进来了,手里拿着一本书。”

温馨提示

“not until...”或“only...”引起的状语从句在句首时,其后一般不用逗号。

[例] Not until all the fish died in the river did the villagers realize how serious the pollution was.

“直到河里的鱼都死光了,村民们才意识到污染的程度有多么严重。”

⑤ 用来把重复强调的成分分开。

[例] Long, long ago there lived a very, very old farmer. “很久,很久以前,有个非常非常老的农夫。”

⑥ “he said”等引起直接引语的说明语,位于句首或句中时,其后用逗号。

[例] Many people say, “I am much younger than my mother—or my father—was at my age.”

“很多人都说:‘与我父母在我这个年龄时相比,我显得年轻得多。’”

全国高考题

[例] “This is my book,” said Tom, “so you can borrow it.” “‘这是我的书,’汤姆说,

‘所以你可以借走。’”

该例句里汉语中用逗号,而英语中要用逗号。

⑦ 用来表示省去的词语。

[例] My husband will go to Shanghai; and I, to Xinjiang. “我丈夫要去上海,而我要去新疆。”

⑧ 用来把反意疑问句中的陈述部分和疑问部分分开

[例] His wife had the front door painted green yesterday, didn't she? “昨天他妻子叫人把前门漆成了绿色,是吧?” [全国高考题]

⑨ 用来标写日期和地址。

[例] I was born in Dalian, Liaoning Province in February 15, 1977. “我于1977年2月15日生于辽宁省大连市。” [全国高考题]

⑩ 用来分开倒装的姓名。

[例] Shakespeare, William (= William Shakespeare) “威廉·莎士比亚”

⑪ 阿拉伯数字倒数每隔3位加一逗号(也称“分节号”)。

[例] 2, 121, 212 “二百一十二万一千二百一十二”

[例] 1, 548 “一千五百四十八”

32-5 分号(;)

① 用来把两个意思上有一定关系的句子并列起来。这时可有并列连词,或有表连接意义的其他词(如:however 然而, otherwise 否则, 等等),或仅有分号。话语的重点是在后面的分句上。

[例] Karl Marx stayed in Belgium for a few years; then he went to France. “卡尔·马克思在比利时住了几年,后来到了法国。”

② 用于分隔已用逗号分开的项目。

[例] He likes to use A, B, C; a, b, c; i, ii, iii... “他(在讲稿中)喜欢使用 A, B, C...; a, b, c...; i, ii, iii...”

32-6 冒号(:)

① 用于列举的内容前面。[例见 32-4①]

② 用于进一步说明前面的句子。

[例] I don't like him; he's too selfish. “我不喜欢他:他太自私。”

③ 用以引出一些重要的见解或引文等。

[例] This is my belief: Man will conquer nature. “我相信:人定胜天。”

④ 美语中,在信函的称呼之后常用冒号(而英语中则多用逗号)。

[例] Dear Mr Smith: “亲爱的史密斯先生:”

32-7 破折号(—)



图 32-7

① 表示某人的思路或某种语法结构突然转变

【例】Many people say, “I am much younger than my mother — or my father — was at my age”. “很多人都说:‘与在我这个年龄时候的我妈——或我爸——相比,我要年轻得多。’” [全国高考题]

② 用来把解释性的插入语同句子的其他部分分开

【例】The 20 students — 18 boys and 2 girls — had a thousand reasons to be proud of themselves. “那20位学生——18位男生和2位女生——有充分的理由为他们自己而感到自豪。”

图 32-8

③ 表示词与词之间的停顿,用来表示迟疑或犹豫等

【例】One — two — three — go! “一——二——三——开始!”

【例】I — I — I think — maybe — he took it. “我——我——我想——或许——是他拿了。”

④ 用于概括前面所列举的东西或引出后面所要列举的东西

【例】New buildings, larger schools and wide streets — everywhere we can see the changes. “新的建筑物、扩建的学校和宽阔的街道,到处我们都可以看到这些变化。”

【例】The aging of the population will affect American society in many ways — education, medicine and business. “人口的老龄化将会在诸多方面影响到美国的社会——教育、医疗和商业。” [全国高考题]

图 32-9

⑤ 表示时间、地点、数目等的起止

【例】Small classes (12 — 16 students) on Sat. & Sun. from 2:00 — 5:00 pm.

“小班(12—16名学员)在星期六和星期日上午上课,从下午2点到5点。”

⑥ 用于引语出处之前

【例】The measure of a man's real character is what he would do if he knew he would never be found out. — Thomas Macaulay

“衡量一个人真正的品格的标准就是要看当他知道永远没有人会发现时他将会做些什么。”——托马斯·麦考莱 [全国高考题]

图 32-10

⑦ 用于表示两人对话

【例】— Is this raincoat yours? “这件雨衣是你的吗?”

— No, mine is hanging there behind the door. “不是,我的挂在门后边。”

图 32-11

⑧ 用于新闻标题中的副标题之前

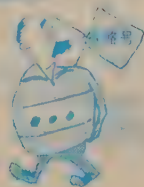
【例】Seven Returns to Homeland “七回祖国”

— An Interview with Zhao Haosheng “——和赵浩生一席谈”

32-8 省略号(...)

① 用来表示省略的部分

【例】On hearing “... there's been a terrible mistake...” Frank was most likely to be disappointed. “一听说‘...出了大错了...’,福兰克很



可能会失望。”

[全国高考题]

温馨提示

英语的省略号是 3 个点“...”，且靠下；而汉语的省略号是 6 个点“……”，且居中。

② 用来表示断断续续的话。

[例] I'd like to ... that is ... if you don't mind. ... “我愿意... 那就是说... 假如你不介意的话...”

③ 用来表示未说完的句子。

[例] “Mr. Smithson,” one of them said, “we're from Bigwoods Pools. I'm afraid there's been a terrible mistake...” “‘史密森先生，’其中的一位说道，‘我们从足球赌博公司来。恐怕大大地搞错了...’”

[全国高考题]

温馨提示

若省略号在句尾，一般不再加句号。

[例] There are newspapers, magazines, novels ... on the desk. 或: There are newspapers, magazines, novels, etc. on the desk. “桌上有报纸、杂志、小说等等。”

省略号“...”与“etc. (等等)”不能连用，不说“... etc.”。

32-9 撇号(')

① 表示名词和不定代词的所有格。

[例] Tom's bag “汤姆的书包”

[例] do one's best “尽最大的努力”

② 表示省略了字母或数字。

[例] o'clock (= of the clock) “点钟”

[例] the war of '37 “1937 年的战争”

③ 表示数字、字母或所提及的词의复数。

[例] in the 1990's “在 20 世纪 90 年代”

[例] three I's “3 个字母 i”

[例] He used many and's. “他用了许多‘and’。”

④ 汉语地名译成英语时，保留原有的汉语拼音中的隔音符号(')。

[例] Xi'an “西安”

[例] Tian'anmen Square “天安门广场”

全国高考题

32-10 连字号(-)



① 用于单词移行。

需要按音节把单词断开,在上行末加“-” 如:bor-row 借 [误:bo-rrow]

[误:borr-ow] [正:bor-row]

温馨提示

(1) 单音节词不能移行,如:straight 直的。 [误:strai-ght]

(2) 一个字母的音节不能放在上行末或下行首,如:afraid 害怕,city 城市(不可断成 a-fraid 或 cit-y) [误:a-fraid] [cit-y]

(3) 单词本身含有连字号的,必须从连字号处断开;并常用双连字号。如:get-together(联欢会) [正:get-together] [正:get-together] [误:get-to-gether]

② 用于构成合成词

[例] man-made food“人造食品”

[例] a five-year-old boy“一个五岁的男孩”

[例] two-and-three-word verbs“双词动词和三词动词”

[例] the Beijing-Shanghai Railway“京沪铁路”

[例] X-ray“爱克斯光”

③ 可使单词的字母各自分开,表示它的拼法。

[例] My name is Tom, T-O-M.“我的名字叫汤姆,T—O—M。”

④ 表示说话时口吃的动作:

[例] “P-p-p-lease t-t-t-ry,” his teeth chattered.“他的牙齿打着战说:‘请——请——请您试一试——试一下。’”

32-11 双引号(“”)

① 用来表示直接引语部分。

[例] As we turned to go out of the door, Mum bowed politely to the nurse and said, “Thank you.” “当我们转身要出门的时候,妈妈彬彬有礼地向护士鞠了一躬,并且说道:‘谢谢您。’” [全国高考题]

② 用来显示所列文章标题、书中篇章、散文篇名、故事名、诗歌题目或节目名称等。有时也可显示书名、报刊名。

[例] The underlined word “leg” in (the report) “Bicycle tour and race” probably means part of the tour. “‘自行车越野赛’(报导)中的划线词‘leg’很可能是指赛程的一部分。” [全国高考题]

[例] Have you ever read “Red Star Over China”? “你读过《西行漫记》这本书吗?”

③ 用于显示有特别意义的词或被强调的词。

[例] In their skins they have tiny plants which act as “dustman”, taking some of the waste products from the coral(珊瑚) and giving in return oxygen which the animal needs to breathe. “它们的皮肤里有些微小的植物,这些植物就像‘清洁工’一样,把珊瑚产生的一些废物吸收掉,然后释放珊瑚呼吸所需的氧气。”

本句中的“dustman”已不是普通意义的“清洁工”。注意区别:上述第②条的前一例句中的“leg”加了引号则是为了强调。

32-12 单引号(‘ ’)

① 引语内的引语,习惯上用单引号。

[例] The friend answered, “The bear said, ‘Don’t trust your friend!’.” “朋友回答说:‘熊说:“别相信你的朋友!””

② 在现代英语中,常用单引号代替双引号。甚至单引号在外,双引号在内。

[例] ‘What should I do?’ Todd had to make a quick decision. “‘我该怎么办呢?’托德必须迅速做出决定。”

[全国高考题]

[例] As a result, ‘Scrabble’ became a big success in the United States and soon it spread to Australia and then to other English-speaking countries. “结果,‘拼词游戏’在美国获得了巨大的成功,并很快传到了澳大利亚和其他讲英语的国家。”

[全国高考题]

32-13 圆括号(())

① 表示补充说明、附加解释等。

[例] 3-month (700 yuan), 6-month (1,200 yuan) and one-year (2,000 yuan) courses.

“开设为期三个月的(学费700元)、六个月的(学费1,200元)和一年的(学费2,000元)课程。”

② 表示可省略的部分。

[例] colo(u)r “颜色”

③ 表示可代换的部分。

[例] a new (an old) hand “新(老)手”

32-14 方括号([])

① 用于加注音标、补充性说明、评论或修正等。

[例] do [du:] “做”

[例] The papaya [a kind of tropical fruit] is good to eat. “木瓜[一种热带水果]是非常好吃的。”

② 用于已用了圆括号的句子。方括号常在圆括号外,也可用在圆括号内。

[例] We have mentioned before [see page 55 (footnote)] that. . .

或: We have mentioned before (see page 55 [footnote]) that. . .

“我们曾提到过(见第 55 页脚注)……”

32-15 斜线号(/)

① 用来分隔并列的几项内容。

[例] hand in / hand on / hand down “交上;传(递)下去;传下来”

[例] have sth. on / with / about sb. “(某人)随身带着某物”

② 代替 per “每”之意。

[例] 20km. / hr (= 20km. per hour) “每小时 20 公里”

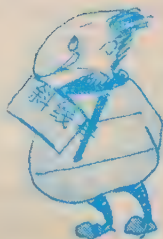
③ 当把诗句连起来写时,行与行之间要用斜线号分隔。

[例] Lifting my head I watch the bright moon,

Lowering my head I dream that I'm home.

可连写为:

Lifting my head / I watch the bright moon, / Lowering my head / I dream that I'm home. “举头望明月,低头思故乡。”



第二节 斜体字

32-16 斜体字

① 用于书报、杂志、戏剧、电影等的名称,用于火车、飞机、船舶等的名称。

[例] Shakespeare's *Othello* “莎士比亚的名剧‘奥赛罗’”

[例] *Apollo 13* “阿波罗 13 号太空船”

② 用于强调某字母、某单词或某成分。

[例] The *h* in *hour* is silent. “单词 hour 中的 h 不发音。”

③ 用于某些外来词语。

[例] Students should learn from teachers and *vice versa*. “学生应该向老师学习,老师也应当向学生学习。”[vice versa 反过来(拉丁文)]

[例] *Li* “里” *mu* “亩” *yuan* “元”



第三节 大写

32-17 大写

① 句首的第一个字母要大写。

[例] *He's* tall. “他个子高。”

② 专有名词中的实词要大写。

[例] *Tom* “汤姆”[人名]

[例] London“伦敦”[地名]

[例] May Day“五一节”[节日名称]

[例] French“法语,法国的”[语言名称]

[例] the United Nations“联合国”[组织名称]

③ 星期名称和月份名称要大写。

[例] Sunday“星期日”

[例] September“九月”

[例] I'll go and see you next _____ (星期六).

答案是 Saturday。“下周六我将去看望你。”

④ 特指的某个学校、政府、党派、委员会或涉及到具体人名的职位,其首字母要大写。

[例] The Committee has discussed his proposal.“委员会已讨论了他的建议。”

[例] He is a Party member.“他是党员。”

[例] Reagan, President of the U. S. A., came to visit China.“美国总统里根曾来华访问。”

⑤ 诗的每行中的首字母要大写。[举例参见 32—15③]

⑥ 某些特殊词汇、缩略词、标志语、特殊用语等,要大写首字母或要全大写。

[例] OK“好吧,行”TV“电视”

[例] I“我”O“哦”

[例] No Smoking 或: NO SMOKING“禁止吸烟”

[例] T-shirt“T 恤衫”

[例] With Best Wishes for a Happy New Year!“祝您新年快乐!”

⑦ 需强调句中的某个词或某一部分时,常用全大写形式

[例] “I'm NOT your slave!” he shouted.“‘我不是你的奴隶!’他喊道。”



即学即用

I. 英译汉

1. China _____ china _____

2. May _____ may _____

3. March _____ march _____

4. Job _____ job _____

5. Green _____ green _____

6. Miss _____ miss _____

II. 给下列短文加标点符号,注意大小写

june 1st 1995

dear peter

were so glad youre coming to join us on sunday here is how you can find us well have our picnic in the peoples park you know where that is dont you after you enter the park by the main gate walk straight on till you come to a stream cross the stream and turn right after walking for a while youll come to a hill walk round to the other side of the hill there youll see a lake well have our picnic there in the small woods by the lake Im sure youll have no

trouble finding us do come

li hua



点石成金

I. 英译汉:

1. 中国;瓷器
2. 五月;可以
3. 三月;行进、行军
4. 约伯(《圣经》中的人物,希伯来族长,吃苦耐劳的代表者);工作
5. 格林(姓氏);绿色
6. 小姐;错过、想念

II. 这是篇简短的中文原文,请补全英文。从这个练习中可以更深刻地体会到正确运用标点符号和大小写的重要性。

June 1st 1995

Dear Peter

We're so glad you're coming to join us on Sunday. Here is how you can find us. We'll have our picnic in the People's Park. You know where that is, don't you? After you enter the park by the main gate, walk straight on till you come to a stream. Cross the stream and turn right. After walking for a while you'll come to a hill. Walk round to the other side of the hill. There you'll see a lake. We'll have our picnic there in the small woods by the lake. I'm sure you'll have no trouble finding us. Do come!

Li Hua

高中英语语法

第33章

交际用语

高考热点

交际用语一直是高考考查的热点,且近几年来,考查的比重有所加大。此类试题在单选题中一般情况下至少有一题。考查的交际用语项目基本上都是教学大纲里所要求掌握的,其中道歉、感谢、帮助、请求、建议、祝愿等最基本的知识点出现的频率最高。考查设置的场景多为打电话、问路、看病、购物、就餐、等车、学校等等,目的是考查学生在特定的语言环境下,灵活、得体地运用语言进行交际的能力。

交际用语灵活多变,需要我们在平时的学习中多记、多背一些常用的表达法,在日常生活中多多运用,在实际交际中提高交际能力。

第一节 交际用语的特点

33-1 英语交际用语范围广泛,形式多样,语言灵活多变,表达常随不同语境而变化。

[例] - Would you like some more tea?

- _____, please.

[全国高考题]

A. No more B. Just a little C. I've had enough D. Yes, I would

答案是B。“还要些茶吗?”“请再来一点点。”please一词表示同意对方的建议。A、C选项多表示拒绝,不符合句意,D选项不合语法规则,B选项为I'd like just a little tea, please的省略形式。

[例] - Would you like some more soup?

- _____. It is delicious, but I've had enough.

[重庆高考题]

A. Yes, please B. No, thank you. C. Nothing more D. I'd like some

答案是B。“你还要一点汤吗?”“不要了,谢谢。汤是很好喝,但是我已经喝饱了。”由答语的后部分可知应答者已不想再喝了。应用 No, thanks / thank you. 谢绝(更符合英美人交流时注意礼貌的习惯)。故选B。

温馨提示

两题问题相同,但答语语境不同,故选项不同。

【例】— How about putting some pictures into the report?

— _____ A picture is worth a thousand words.

[江苏高考题]

A. No way. B. Why not? C. All right? D. No matter.

答案是B。“把一些图片放进报告里怎么样?”“为什么不呢,一图比得上千言嘛。”从答语的后半部分可知,前面的答语是对建议的认同和肯定,why not? (“干吗不”)恰好是用反问的语气来表示赞同。比较:No way. “不可能”; All right? “可以吗?”; No matter. “无关要紧”。

【例】— How about seeing the new movie at the theatre tonight?

— _____, but I've got to go over my notes for tomorrow's exam. [重庆高考题]

A. All right B. Sounds great C. I can't D. No, I am terribly sorry

答案是B。“今晚到剧院看那部新片怎么样?”“听起来不错,但我不得不为明天的考试复习我的笔记。”从后面的答语可知被邀请人实际上是不能去看电影的。应选B(为 It sounds great. 的省略形式,这样与 but 搭配自然)。A是答应了别人,与后面矛盾;C和D的口气较生硬,且不可与 but 连用。两句都是提建议,但答语语境不同,故选项不同。

【例】— Now, where is my purse?

— _____! We'll be late for the picnic.

[湖南高考题]

A. Take your time B. Don't worry C. Come on D. Take it easy

答案是C。“哎,我的钱包呢?”“快点,我们野餐要迟到了!”根据后半句提供的语境可知,此处说话人应用 come on 来催促对方加快速度。而不宜用:Take your time! “慢慢来!”、Don't worry! “别着急!”或 Take it easy! “别紧张!”

33-2 交际用语与文化背景、风俗习惯密切联系。

【例】— What a beautiful picture you've drawn!

— _____ [四川高考题]

A. Not at all. B. Thank you. C. You're great. D. I'm proud of you.

答案是A。“你画的画多漂亮啊!”“谢谢!”对于别人的称赞,回答时一般要表示感谢,用 Thank you。比较:“Not at all.”意为“一点也不”,中国人喜欢谦虚,但这不符合英美人对别人的赞美的应答习惯;“You are great.”和“I'm proud of you.”都用来称赞别人。

[例] —It's getting late. I'm afraid I must be going now.

—OK. _____

[全国高考题]

- A. Take it easy B. Go slowly C. Stay longer D. See you

答案是D。“天晚了,恐怕我现在得走了。”“好吧,再见。”客人要走,主人说OK,表明同意,下句应是“再见(See you, Goodbye. 之类)”,而不能说“别着急”(A),“再呆一会儿”(C);至于“慢走”(B)属中国式英语,不符合西方人的习惯;故选D项。

33-3 交际用语遵循的是约定俗成,而非语法规则。

[例] —How are you getting on with your cleaning? Do you need my help?

—_____, but I think I'm all right.

[安徽高考题]

- A. No, thanks B. That's OK C. You are helpful D. That's very kind of you

答案是D。“你打扫得怎么样了,需要我帮忙吗?”“太感谢了,但我能行。”对方主动询问是否需要帮助,对此应表示感谢。虽然下文说:“我能行”,但用了but表示转折,故选That's very kind of you. (你真是太好了)。如用No, thanks, 表示“不,谢谢。”就不要再再用but。You are helpful 虽符合语法规则,但不符合习惯。

[例] —Lovely weather, isn't it? “天气真好,不是吗?”

—Yes, isn't it? “是呀,可不是吗?”

本句的答语看似不合语法规则,但是约定俗成,西方人经常使用。

第二节 交际用语考查中干扰项的设置

33-4 东西方不同的思维方式,即:母语干扰。

[例] —_____ I didn't hear you clearly. It's too noisy here.

—I was saying that the party was great.

[辽宁高考题]

- A. Repeat. B. Once again. C. Sorry? D. So what?

答案是C。没有听别人的话,请别人再说一遍,多用pardon, I beg your pardon. 等礼貌性用语,也可用Sorry, / I'm sorry, / Excuse me. 等来引出问题。A、B、D在英美人看来,语气生硬,不够礼貌。故选C。

[例] —Can I speak to Mr. Wang, please?

—_____

[全国高考题]

- A. Who are you? B. I'm Wang. C. Speaking. D. Are you John?

答案是C。“请叫王先生接电话。”“(我就是,)请讲。”这里Speaking = This is Wang speaking. 说明接电话者就是对方要找的人。其他三个选项都是中国式英语,不符合英美人的表达习惯。

33-5 交际功能不同但字面意义相近的表达。

[例] — Guess what! I came across an old friend at the party last night.

— _____ I'm sure you had a wonderful time.

[辽宁高考题]

A. Sounds good! B. Very well. C. How nice! D. All right.

答案是C。“你猜什么来着。我在昨晚的聚会上碰见了一位老朋友。”“太好了，我相信你们一定非常开心。”对话的一方喜形于色地介绍自己意外的惊喜，另一方应对此做出反应，故选How nice。几个选项虽然都表示“好”，但功能不同。A多用来应答别人的建议，意为“听起来很好！”；B多表示“身体好或事干得好”；D多用来接受请求或命令，意为“好吧！”

[例] — Could you do me a favor and take these books to my office?

— Yes, _____.

[山东高考题]

A. for pleasure B. I could C. my pleasure D. with pleasure

答案是D。“你能帮个忙把这些书拿到我的办公室吗？”“非常乐意。”回答对方提出的请求帮忙，应用with pleasure“非常乐意”。A、C、D三个选项看上去很相似，但功能不同。比较：A“为了取乐”（表示目的），C相当于It's my pleasure，用于应答别人道谢。只有with pleasure可用于别人请求帮忙时。

第三节 交际用语的主要考查项目

33-6 道歉及应答

[例] — I'm sorry I'm late. I got held up in the traffic on my way here.

— _____.

A. Don't be late next time B. You should be blamed
C. It doesn't matter, I'm also late D. Never mind. Come and sit down

答案是D。“很抱歉，我迟到了。我在来这儿的路上堵车耽误了。”“别介意，进来坐吧。”D项表示对对方的安慰，原谅对方，与语境相符。A“下次不要迟到”和B“你应该受到责备”含有教训和责备的意思，不太礼貌。上下文没有表明“我也迟到了”。

[例] — I'm terribly sorry that I made your table cloth dirty.

— _____.

[陕西高考题]

A. Never mind B. Don't mention it C. That's right D. Sorry

答案是A。“非常抱歉，我把你的桌布弄脏了。”“没关系。”对于对方的道歉，要用Never mind、“没关系”来回答。Don't mention it.是回答别人感谢时的用语。C、D与语境明显不符。

[例] — I'm terribly sorry I broke your glass.

— _____.

[安徽高考题]

A. That's right B. Bad luck C. Sorry D. You can forget it

答案是D。“对不起我打碎了你的眼镜。”“没事，忘了它吧/别放在心上。”D适

项实际上是在安慰对方。A“这是正确的”、B“倒霉”、C“对不起”均不适合用来应答对方的道歉。

[例] —Oh dear! I've just broken a window.

— _____. It can't be helped.

[全国高考题]

A. Never mind B. All right C. That's fine D. Not at all

答案是A。“噢，天哪！我刚才把窗子弄坏了。”“没关系，这是没办法的事。”对于对方的道歉，应用 never mind“没关系；不要紧”来宽慰对方。也与 It can't be helped 意为“这是不可避免的”语境相符。All right.“好吧”（表示接受对方邀请或请求）；That's fine.“那好”（表示赞同或称赞）；Not at all“不用谢”或“一点也不（介意）”。

[例] —James, I am sorry I used your computer when you were away this morning.

— _____.

[福建高考题]

A. That's all right B. It's a pleasure C. You are welcome D. Don't mention it

答案是A。“对不起，詹姆斯，今天上午你不在的时候我用了你的电脑。”“没关系。”应答对方的道歉，应用 That's all right. 其他三个选项常用来应答别人的感谢。

33-7 打电话及应答

[例] Tara: This is Tara Patel from Cotton House in Kidderminster. Could I speak to Mr. Smith, please?

[广东高考题]

Mr. Smith: _____

A. Hello. B. I'm Mr. Smith. C. Who are you? D. Speaking.

答案是D。“塔拉说：我是基德明斯特棉花公司的塔拉帕特尔，请找史密斯先生接电话。史密斯先生说：请讲，”根据语境，此处应是打电话。接电话的正是要找之人，故选D。相当于 This is Mr. Smith (speaking)。也可省略为 (Mr. Smith) Speaking。B和C都为典型的受汉语的干扰。

[例] —Hello, Mr. Smith. This is Larry Jackson. I am afraid I won't be able to arrive on time for the meeting in your office.

— _____. We'll wait for you.

[江西高考题]

A. Hurry up B. No doubt C. Cheer up D. That's all right

答案是D。“喂，史密斯先生，我是赖瑞·杰克森。我恐怕不能按时到达你的办公室见面。”“没关系，我们将等你。”由后面的答语可知，接电话的人已经接受了对方的解释，应用 That's all right.“没有关系”表示出安慰。比较：hurry up“赶快”；no doubt“毫无疑问”；cheer up“振作起来”。

[例] —No, I'm afraid he isn't in. This is his secretary speaking. Can I help you?

— _____.

[广东高考题]

A. Oh, you will. B. Oh, that's a pity.

C. I should think so.

D. Well, I look forward to hearing from you.

答案是C。“对不起,他不在,我是他的秘书。需要帮忙吗?”“我想应该是吧。”
本题语境中,秘书接了电话,并说明情况,并主动提供帮助。作为打电话之人可用 I should think so, 表示需要帮忙,是对 Can I help you? 的婉转的肯定回答;其他选项不太礼貌或不合语境。

33-8 主动帮忙和求助

[例] —Would you take this along to the office for me?

[浙江高考题]

A. With pleasure B. That's right C. Never mind D. Don't mention it

答案是A。“你替我把这个带到办公室好吗?”对方请求帮忙,应用 With pleasure. (“非常乐意”)作肯定回答。比较:B“那是对的”,C“不要紧,没关系”,D“别提了”,皆不合语境。

[例] —These books are too heavy for me to carry.

[辽宁高考题]

A. You may ask for help B. I'll give you a hand
C. I will do you a favor D. I'd come to help

答案是B。“这些书太重了,我搬不动。”“我来帮你。”对方在请求帮助,故选B,表示主动提供帮助。而A“你可以请求帮助”显得拒绝人于千里之外;C do sb. a favor 常用于请求;D的时态及表达语气不对。

[例] —Shall I give you a ride as you live so far away?

[江西高考题]

A. It couldn't be better B. Of course you can C. If you like D. It's up to you

答案是A。“你住那么远,我开车送你,好吗?”“那再好不过了。”对方主动提供帮助,表示感谢后,应对所提供的帮助表示认可和赞赏。故选A。其他三项都不合适。

33-9 请求及允许

[例] — Could I ask you a rather personal question?

[全国高考题]

A. Yes, don't worry B. Of course, go ahead
C. Yes, help yourself D. Of course, why not

答案是B。“我可以问一个私人的问题吗?”第一人在请求允许,第二人用 yes 或 of course 都表示给以肯定答复,而后部分的几个习语中,只有 go ahead 符合这里对请求的应答,此处表示“问吧!”予以鼓励。故选B。

[例] —I wonder if I could possibly use your car for tonight?

— _____. I'm not using it anyhow.

- A. Sure, go head B. I don't know C. Yes, indeed D. I don't care

答案是A。“我想知道今晚我是否可以借用你的小汽车。”“当然可以,用吧。反正我也不用。”由后面的语境可知同意把车借给对方,应用A。比较:B“我不知道”;C“是的,的确”;D“我不在乎”

[例] —I'd like to take a week's holiday.

— _____, we're too busy.

- A. Don't worry B. Don't mention it C. Forget it D. Pardon me

答案是C。“我想休假一周。”“忘了它吧,我们太忙了。”一方要求休假,而另一方说工作太忙。由此可推知答语是否定的,拒绝了其要求。只有Forget it. (“忘了这事儿吧”)可表示强势拒绝。而B多用于对道歉的答语,D多用于没听清对方的话;若选A,后面的话最好是you can take one a month later之类的话。故C项符合语境。

[例] —Do you think I could borrow your bicycle?

— _____

- A. How come? B. Take your time. C. Yes, go on. D. Yes, help yourself.

答案是D。“你认为我能够借你的自行车吗?”“好的,请随便用吧。”Yes, help yourself. 除作“请随便”解外,还表示“自取”。比较:How come?“怎么会的?”;take your time“不用急”;Yes, go on.“是的,继续”。

33-10 劝告和建议

[例] —Go for a picnic this weekend, OK?

— _____. I love getting close to nature.

- A. I couldn't agree more B. I'm afraid not
C. I believe not D. I don't think so

答案是A。“本周末去野餐,好吗?”“我完全同意,我喜欢接近大自然。”I believe not 相当于I don't think so 及I'm afraid not 都表示婉转拒绝,表示不去,与后面“我喜欢接近自然”矛盾。应用I can't agree more. 表示强烈同意。

[例] —Let's go and have a good drink tonight.

— _____. Have you got the first prize in the competition?

- A. What for? B. Thanks a lot. C. Yes, I'd like to. D. Why not?

答案是A。“今晚咱们出去好好喝一顿吧。”“为何事(庆祝)?你是不是在竞赛中得了一等奖?”前句建议喝一顿,后句询问原因,故选what for(为何而做某事?)表示后者惊讶、疑问和兴奋。其余选项均不合语境。

[例] —Shall we go to the art exhibition right away?

— _____

- A. It's your opinion B. I don't mind C. It's all up to you D. That's your deci-

sion

答案是C。“我们马上去看艺术展览好吗?”“由你来决定。”问句中出现了 Shall we... 这个“征求别人意见”的常用句型,故用C项最适合。A项“它是你的意见”;B项“我不介意”;D项“那是你的决定”;三者都不是对别人征求意见的礼貌的应答。

[例] —Let's go to a movie after work, OK?

[山东高考题]

A. Not at all. B. Why not? C. Never mind. D. What of it?

答案是B。“咱们下班后去看电影,好吗?”“为什么不去了?”此处回答的是别人的建议,几个选项中 Why not? “为什么不呢?”表示同意,最为适合。比较: Not at all. “别客气,一点也不”; Never mind. “不要紧,没有关系”; What of it? “那又怎么样呢?”

33-11 祝贺、祝愿、鼓励和安慰

[例] Tom: Mike, our team will play against the Rockets this weekend. I'm sure we will win.

Mike: _____!

[广东高考题]

A. Congratulations B. Cheers C. Best wishes D. Good luck

答案是D。“汤姆:‘麦克,我们的球队本周末要与火箭队比赛,我相信我们会赢的。’麦克:‘祝你们好运。’”由于比赛还没有进行,应用 Good luck. 表示祝福。而 Congratulations 是对已经取得的成绩表示祝贺。Cheers 意为“为...干杯”; Best wishes 意为“万事如意”均不合句意。

[例] —I'm dead tired. I can't walk any farther, Jenny.

—_____, Tommy. You can do it!

[江西高考题]

A. No problem B. No hurry C. Come on D. That's OK

答案是C。“我累死了,珍妮,我走不动了。”“加把劲,汤米,你能行的。”根据后面的答语,此处应是鼓励对方,故用 come on “加把劲!加油!”,符合语境。比较: no problem “不麻烦、没问题”(回答对方的感谢或道歉或请求); no hurry “不要着急”(安慰对方); that's OK “不客气,没关系”(应答对方表示感谢或道歉)。

[例] —I'm thinking of the test tomorrow. I'm afraid I can't pass this time.

—_____! I'm sure you'll make it.

[天津高考题]

A. Go ahead B. Good luck C. No problem D. Cheer up

答案是D。“我在想着明天的考试,恐怕这次我不能及格。”“振作起来,我相信你会成功的。”cheer up 意为“高兴起来,振作起来”,用于鼓励对方。由前面的语境 I'm afraid I can't pass this time. 可知对方对考试信心不足。而后面“我相信你会成功的”也是鼓励性话语。故选D。

33-12 征求意见

[例] —Can I look at the menu for a few more minutes before I decide?

—Of course. _____ sir.

[全国高考题]

A. Make yourself at home

B. Enjoy yourself

C. It doesn't matter

D. Take your time

答案是 D。“我在决定点菜前可以再看一会儿菜单吗?”“当然,先生,您别着急,慢慢看。”对话发生在餐馆,根据前面答语 of course 可知,只有选 Take your time。(别着急。)才符合语境。A 用于客人到家中来时,主人对客人说的话,意为“别客气,请随便坐/随便吃”等。B 意为“请享用”或“好好吃/好好玩”之意,饭菜上来后服务员才能说。C 是用于道歉的答语。故选 D,近似于“Don't worry / There is plenty of time”。

[例] —Do you mind my smoking here?

—_____

[四川高考题]

A. No, thanks. B. No. Good idea. C. Yes, please. D. Yes. Better not.

答案是 D。“我在这抽烟你介意吗?”“介意,你最好不抽。”问句用 Do you mind... 句型来表示请求许可,应用 Yes 表示“介意”,即“不可以抽”,与 Better not“你最好不抽”语意一致。而用 No 则表示“不介意”,即“可以抽烟”。这样 B 和 C 答语本身前后矛盾;而 A 用于婉拒对方邀请的。故选 D。

[例] —Would you mind my coming over and having a look at your new garden? My little son's curious about those roses you grow.

—_____. You're welcome.

[湖北高考题]

A. Yes, I do B. Never mind C. Yes, please D. Not at all

答案是 D。“我过来看看你的新花园你不介意吗?我的小儿子里对你种的玫瑰花非常好奇。”“当然不介意,欢迎你们。”问句子中出现了 mind(要求针对“介意或不介意”来回答);而答语后面表示“欢迎你们”。故应用 not at all 表示“一点也不介意”。

[例] —We'd like you to start work tomorrow if possible.

—I'm sorry, but I can't possibly start until Monday. _____?

[辽宁高考题]

A. Do you agree with me

B. Is that a good idea

C. Do you think I'm right

D. Will that be all right

答案是 D。“如果可能的话,我们想叫你明天开始工作。”“对不起,但我到星期一才能开始。那样可以吗?”D 项“那行吗?”表示征求对方的意思,且语气比较委婉,符合语境。比较:A“你同意我的意见吗?”,B“它是一个好主意吗?”,C“你认为我是正确的吗?”,均不合语境。

33-13 判断与猜测

[例] —It's been raining for a whole week. I think it'll get fine soon.

—_____. We are getting into the rainy season now. [安徽高考题]

- A. Yes, it will B. Of course not C. It's possible D. It's hard to say

答案是D。“整整一个星期一直在下雨、我想天气很快会好起来。”“那很难说,我们现在正进入雨季”由后句答语可判断出“天是否会晴”是件说不准的事。故用 It's hard to say.“这很难说”,表示没有把握,其它三项均表示有把握的判断,与语境不符。

[例] —You know who came yesterday?

—Yao Ming. We had a basketball match.

—_____. He came and watched the game. [湖北高考题]

- A. You guessed it! B. How did you know that?
C. Well done! D. That was good news!

答案是A。“你知道昨天谁来了?”“姚明。我们有场篮球赛。”“你猜对了,他来看比赛了。”根据最后的答语的语境可知前面的猜测“姚明昨天来了”是正确的。故选 You guessed it! 意为“你猜对了”。B和D项与语境不符。Well done! 意为“干得好!”,是对对方的表扬。

33-14 询问信息

[例] —How long are you staying?

—I don't know. _____. [江苏高考题]

- A. That's OK B. Never mind C. It depends D. It doesn't matter

答案是C。“你打算呆多久?”“我不知道,视情况而定吧。”由答语 I don't know 可知只有 It depends. 可表示“不好说/视情况而定吧!”,符合语境。That's OK. 用于对道谢和道歉的答复(没关系,别客气);Never mind 和 It doesn't matter 用于对道歉的答复,意为“不要紧,没关系”,均不合语境。

[例] —How did you find your visit to Qingdao, Joanna?

—_____. [山东高考题]

- A. Oh, wonderful indeed B. I went there alone
C. First by train and then by ship D. A guide showed me the way

答案是A。“乔安娜,你觉得你的青岛之行怎么样?”“啊,真的好极了。”此处 how did you find..., 不表示“你是怎么找到……?”或“你是怎么到……?”,而是询问看法或感受,故不用其他选项。

[例] —Excuse me, Sir, is the swimming pool open all day?

—_____ Only from 6:00 pm to 10:00 pm. [广东高考题]

- A. That's right. B. Yes, of course.
C. Sorry, I am not sure. D. Sorry, I'm afraid not.

答案是D。“先生,请问游泳池整天开放吗?”“对不起,恐怕不是。只从下午六

点到晚上十点开放。”根据答语 Only from 6:00 pm to 10:00 pm. 可判断出游泳池并不是全天开放的。应用 Sorry, I'm afraid not. “对不起,恐怕不是”来婉转否定对方期盼。故选 D。

[例] —Excuse me, can you tell me where the nearest bank is, please?

—_____ Oh yes! It's past the post office, next to a big market.

A. Mm, let me think.

B. Oh, I beg your pardon?

C. You're welcome.

D. What do you mean?

答案是 A。“打扰了,请问最近的银行在哪儿?”“嗯,让我想一想。噢,对了,过了邮局,在一个超市旁边。”根据答语的后部分可知,说话者经过思考,最终回答了问题。应用 A。比较:B“请再说一遍”;C“不用谢”;D“你是什么意思?”。

[例] —How often do you eat out?

—_____, but usually once a week.

[天津高考题]

A. Have no idea

B. It depends

C. As usual

D. Generally speaking

答案是 B。“你多长时间出去吃一次饭?”“那要看情况。但通常每周一次。”答语中的 but usually 是关键。C“和平常一样”、D“一般来说”,与 usually 意义一致,不能用表示转折意义的 but。A“不知道”和后面“通常每周一次”矛盾。只有 It depends 意为“不好说/说不准/那要视情形而定”,符合题意。

[例] —Will you be able to finish your report today?

—_____.

[全国高考题]

A. I like it

B. I hope so

C. I'll do so

D. I'd love it

答案是 B。“你今天能够完成你的报告吗?”“但愿如此。”I hope so. 意为“但愿如此”,用来回答对方的提问,与上文语境相符。A“我喜欢它”、C“我会那样做的”和 D“我很喜欢它”都不宜回答上面的问题。

33-15 其他

[例] —Michael was late for Mr. Smith's oral class this morning.

—_____. As far as I know, he never came late to class.

[江西高考题]

A. How come

B. So what

C. Why not

D. What for

答案是 A。“今天上午史密斯先生的口语课迈克尔迟到了。”“怎么会迟到呢?据我所知,他上课从来没有迟到过。”由答语的后部分可知,应用 how come?“他怎么会迟到呢?”表示惊讶与怀疑。比较:So what?“那与我有什么关系呢?”;Why not?“干吗不呢?”;What for“为了什么?/出于什么目的?”。

[例] —My family usually goes skating for vacation. I like skating, but I want to try something different this year.

—_____.

[重庆高考题]

A. Let's go.

B. Cheer up.

C. Like what?

D. Take care.

答案是 C。“我家通常去滑冰度假。我虽然喜欢滑冰,但今年我想尝试点不同

的。“像什么?”前面并没有说什么不同的事情,故用 Like what?,可将话题合理地继续下去。而 Let's go 表示赞同,响应;Cheer up 表示鼓劲;Take care 表示提醒。三者都不合语境。

【例】—Andrew won't like it, you know.

—_____. I don't care what Andrew thinks!

[广东高考试题]

A. So what B. So where C. So why D. So how

答案是 A。“你知道,安德鲁会不喜欢的。”“那又怎么样?我不在乎安德鲁怎么想”so what 意为“那又怎么样?无所谓”。根据答语的后半部分可知此处应该表示“安德鲁喜欢不喜欢都无所谓”。故选 A。

【例】—It's cloudy outside. Please take an umbrella.

—_____.

[湖南高考试题]

A. Yes, take it easy B. Well, it just depends
C. OK, just in case D. All right, you're welcome

答案是 C。“外边阴天,请带把雨伞。”“好吧,以防万一。”根据语境,此处应用 C 来应答最佳。比较:take it easy“从容/不紧张”;it just depend“那要看情况”;you are welcome“别客气/不用谢”。

【例】—People should stop using their cars and start using public transport.

—_____. The roads are too crowded as it is.

[浙江高考试题]

A. All right B. Exactly C. Go ahead D. Fine

答案是 B。“人们应该停止使用小汽车,开始使用公共交通工具。”“确实如此,正是,路本来就太拥挤了。”根据后一句答语可知,说话人同意前面的话。所以用 exactly 表示“确实应该如此”。故选 B。

【例】—It'll take at least 2 hours to do this!

—Oh, _____! I could do it in 30 minutes.

[天津高考试题]

A. come on B. pardon me C. you are right D. don't mention it

答案是 A。“做这事至少要用两个小时。”“咳,得啦,我只要 30 分钟就能完成了。”come on 除作“快点;赶快”(催促)、“加油;振作起来”(鼓励)解外,还可表示“得啦;算了吧”。此处用来指责对方说得不对。pardon me“再说一遍”;you are right“你是对的”;don't mention it“没关系,别提了”,三者都不符合语境。

【例】—You haven't lost the ticket, have you?

—_____. I know it's not easy to get another one at the moment.

[江西高考试题]

A. I hope not B. Yes, I have C. I hope so D. Yes, I'm afraid so

答案是 A。“你没有把票丢了,是吧?”“我希望没有丢。我知道现在再弄一张票很不容易。”本题 B、D 两项以 yes 开头,那就表示已经把票丢了,与后文内容不相符;C 项用于前句是肯定句的时候,此处若用,意思就是:我希望如此(=我希望我已经把票丢了),显然不合理;A 项中的 not 一词替代一个与上文相同的否定句,表示“我希望没有丢”,合乎语境。



即学即用

1. — I think you should phone Jenny and say sorry to her.
— _____. It was her fault. [全国高考题]
A. No way B. Not possible C. No chance D. Not at all
2. — I'm sorry I'm calling you so late.
— _____ okay. [北京高考题]
A. This is B. You're C. That's D. I'm
3. — It's been a wonderful evening. Thank you very much.
— _____. [北京高考题]
A. My pleasure B. I'm glad to hear that C. No, thanks D. It's OK
4. — I'm taking my driving test tomorrow.
— _____! [全国高考题]
A. Cheers B. Good luck C. Come on D. Congratulations
5. — I've got your invitation.
— Oh, good. _____. [北京高考题]
A. Can you come? B. Thanks a lot. C. I'll take it. D. May I help you?
6. — Good morning, Grand Hotel.
— Hello, I'd like to book a room for the nights of the 18th and 19th.
— _____. [全国高考题]
A. What can I do for you? B. Just a minute, please.
C. What's the matter? D. At your service.
7. — Waiter!
— _____.
— I can't eat this. It's too salty. [全国高考题]
A. Yes, sir? B. What? C. All right? D. Pardon?
8. — What about having a drink?
— _____. [全国高考题]
A. Good idea B. Help yourself C. Go ahead, please. D. Me, too
9. — I just heard that the tickets for tonight's show have been sold out.
— Oh no! _____. [北京高考题]
A. I was looking forward to that B. It doesn't matter
C. I knew it already D. It's not at all interesting
10. — I believe we've met somewhere before.
— No, _____. [北京高考题]
A. it isn't the same B. it can't be true C. I don't think so D. I'd rather not

11. — I'm going downtown.
— Come on. _____
A. I'll give you a lift. B. You are welcome. C. Don't do it. D. Come with me.
12. — I'm afraid I must be off now.
— _____
A. You are nice. B. So long. C. That's all right. D. What a pity.
13. — Do you think it will rain tomorrow?
— _____, otherwise we can't go out for a picnic.
A. I hope not. B. Yes, it will. C. It depends on. D. I'm not sure.
14. — Did your sister pass the exam?
— She failed and is in low spirit.
— I'm sorry for her.
— _____
A. Thank you. B. You are welcome. C. I would think so. D. Never mind.
15. — Shall we go for a picnic in the mountains this Sunday?
— _____ I'm fed up with staying in the city for a whole month.
A. Why not? B. I think so. C. Why, yes. D. Of course.



点石成金

I. 单项选择

1. A. “No way.”意为“没门；决不”。“Not possible.”意为“不可能”。口语中无“No chance”这种惯用表达。“Not at all”意为“一点也不”。结合答语中的“It was her fault”, A项为最佳答案。
2. C. 应答对方的道歉, C项合适。
3. A. 回答别人的感谢时, 一般用“My pleasure. (别客气)”、“That’s all right. (甬谢)”、“That’s OK. (甬谢)”、“Don’t mention it. (不足挂齿)”等。故本题选A。
4. B. 当别人去旅游或者将做一件事时, 为了表达你的良好祝愿, 英语里常说“Good luck!”意为“祝你好运, 一路顺风, 万事如意”。Cheers! 表示“干杯, 谢谢”。Come on! 表示“赶快, 来吧, 得了吧”。Congratulations! 表示对已发生的事情进行祝贺。本题应选B。
5. A. 按照一般的风俗习惯, 送出请帖后应落实客人是否收到请帖并且是否能来或者收到请帖后应通知主人自己是否能去。根据本题对话情景, 选A是很自然的。
6. B. 顾客想预定旅馆房间, 接待处服务员应给予肯定或否定回答, 或者说“稍等一等, 给你查查情况”之类的话。所以本题的B最合适。A、C两项与语境不符。D项意为“听凭你使用”, 因旅馆工作人员并非你的仆人。故B比D更符合此处的交际语境。

“Yes, sir?”是 waiter 对客人的应承语,而且其中包含着“您有事吗?”“您有什么事?”一类意思,符合此处的交际语境。

“喝一杯怎么样?”A“好主意。”表示赞同,符合交际语境。比较:B“你自己动手(夹菜)吃吧。”(请他人用餐);C“请继续吧。”(是允许他人行事);D“我也要(一杯吧)”(表示自己也如此)。

从答语“Oh no!”可看出说话者的心情是多么懊恼、遗憾,因此应接着说“我原来一直期盼着要看今晚的表演”。而 B“没关系”、C“我已经知道了”、D“表演一点儿意思都没有”都不合题意。

答语应表“我想我们从前没见过”。而 A 项表“这是不同的”,B 项表“这不可能是真的”,D 项表“我宁愿没”,都与上文不符。

A 意为“我让你搭便车。”在此表示主动帮忙,与对话中的 Come on 语境一致。B 是对别人感谢的应答。C、D 表示要求、命令,与语境不符。

前文表示要离开了,此处应用 So long 表示“再见”。选项 A 是对他人的评价、C 是对感谢的应答、D 表示对事情的遗憾;均与语境不符。

根据答语的后半句“否则我们就不能出去野餐了。”可知说话者不希望天下雨。A 项意为“希望不要下雨”,与语境相符。

上文的 I'm sorry for her. 表示对对方的妹妹的关心,因此应用表示感谢的用语来应答,故选 A。

根据后面答语“我讨厌整整一个月都呆在城里”,可知说话人应该是赞同“去山里野餐”的提议的。故选 Why not? “为什么不呢?”表示赞同。

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

学生实用高中英语语法全解与训练/刘锐诚主编.

-北京:人民日报出版社,2001.5(2008.5 重印)

ISBN 978-7-80153-394-4

I. 学… II. 刘… III. 英语-语法-中学-教学参考资料

IV. G634.413

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2001)第 021764 号

书 名:学生实用高中英语语法全解与训练

主 编:刘锐诚

责任编辑:曼 熁

装帧设计:吴本泓

出版发行:人民日报出版社

社 址:北京金台西路 2 号

邮 编:100733

经 销:新华书店

印 刷:安阳市华豫印刷厂

开 本:890×1240 1/32

字 数:450 千

印 张:18.25

印 数:5000 册

印 次:2001 年 6 月第 1 版 2008 年 5 月第 2 次印刷

书 号:ISBN 978-7-80153-394-4

定 价:23.80 元



A path is trod by foot and history
is written by man. Everyone,
with his every action,
is always writing his own history.
路是脚踏出来的, 历史是人写出来的。
人的每一步行动都是在书写自己的历史。

Seeking knowledge is
like planting trees:
blossoming in spring
and bearing fruits
in autumn.

求学如种树: 春天开花,
秋天结果。



Youth is an ordinary title.
It's happy and beautiful,
but it is also full of
difficulties and hardships.
青春是一个普通名称。
它是幸福美好的, 但它
又充满着艰苦的磨炼。



● 世界各国最新国旗 ●



博茨瓦纳
Botswana



布基纳法索
Burkina Faso



布隆迪
Burundi



赤道几内亚
Equatorial Guinea



多哥
Togo



厄立特里亚
Eritrea



佛得角
Cape Verde



冈比亚
Gambia



刚果
Congo



刚果民主共和国
D.R. Congo



吉布提
Djibouti



几内亚
Guinea



几内亚比绍
Guinea-Bissau



加纳
Ghana



加蓬
Gabon



津巴布韦
Zimbabwe



喀麦隆
Cameroon



科摩罗
Comoros



科特迪瓦
Côte d'Ivoire



肯尼亚
Kenya



莱索托
Lesotho



利比里亚
Liberia



利比亚
Libya



卢旺达
Rwanda



马达加斯加
Madagascar



马拉维
Malawi



马里
Mali



毛里求斯
Mauritius



毛里塔尼亚
Mauritania



摩洛哥
Morocco



莫桑比克
Mozambique



纳米比亚
Namibia



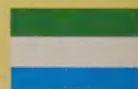
南非
South Africa



尼日尔
Niger



尼日利亚
Nigeria



塞拉利昂
Sierra Leone



塞内加尔
Senegal



塞舌尔
Seychelles



圣多美和普林西比
São Tomé and Príncipe



斯威士兰
Swaziland



苏丹
Sudan



索马里
Somalia



坦桑尼亚
Tanzania



突尼斯
Tunisia



乌干达
Uganda



赞比亚
Zambia



乍得
Chad



中非
Central Africa



大洋洲
OCEANIA



澳大利亚
Australia



巴布亚新几内亚
Papua New Guinea



斐济
Fiji



基里巴斯
Kiribati



马绍尔群岛
Marshall Is.



密克罗尼西亚联邦
F.S. of Micronesia



瑙鲁
Nauru



帕劳
Belau



所罗门群岛
Solomon Is.



汤加
Tonga



图瓦卢
Tuvalu



瓦努阿图
Vanuatu



萨摩亚
Samoa



新西兰
New Zealand



北美洲
NORTH AMERICA



安提瓜和巴布达
Antigua and Barbuda



巴巴多斯
Barbados



巴哈马
Bahamas



巴拿马
Panama



多米尼加
Dominica



哥斯达黎加
Costa Rica



格林纳达
Grenada



伯利兹
Belize



古巴
Cuba



海地
Haiti



洪都拉斯
Honduras



加拿大
Canada



美国
United States



墨西哥
Mexico



尼加拉瓜
Nicaragua



危地马拉
Guatemala



萨尔瓦多
El Salvador



圣基茨和尼维斯
St. Kitts and Nevis



圣卢西亚
St. Lucia



特立尼达和多巴哥
Trinidad and Tobago



牙买加
Jamaica



南美洲
SOUTH AMERICA



阿根廷
Argentina



巴拉圭
Paraguay



巴西
Brazil



秘鲁
Peru



玻利维亚
Bolivia



厄瓜多尔
Ecuador



哥伦比亚
Colombia



圭亚那
Guyana



苏里南
Suriname



委内瑞拉
Venezuela



乌拉圭
Uruguay



智利
Chile



其他
OTHERS



联合国
United Nations



国际奥林匹克委员会
International Olympic Committee



国际红十字会
International Red Cross

学

生

实

用



高中英语语法

全解与训练

PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR

- ◆ 课标为本 有的放矢
- ◆ 深入浅出 讲解明晰
- ◆ 全解训练 分层推进
- ◆ 内容精练 查阅方便

ISBN 978-7-80153-394-4



9 787801 533944 >

定价：23.80元